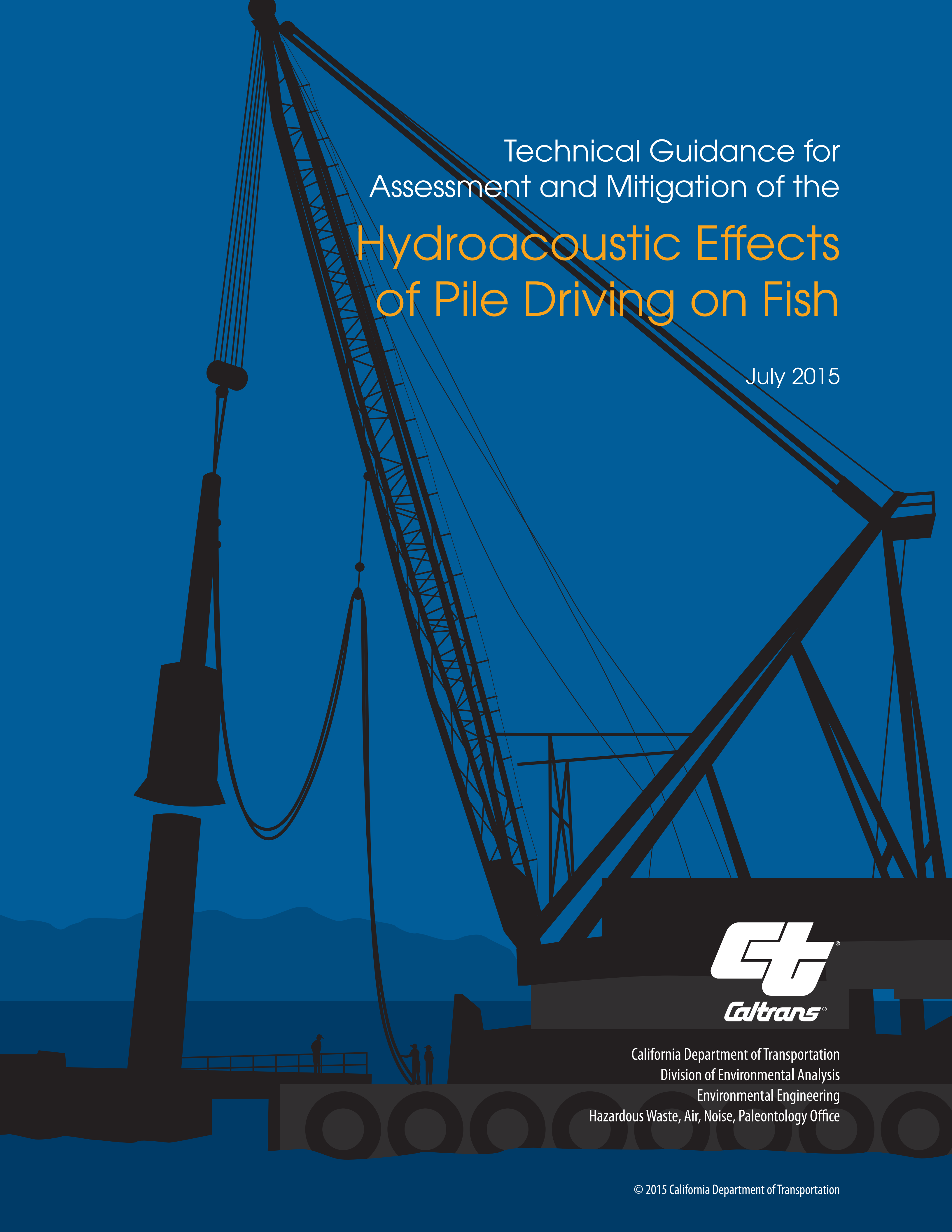


Technical Guidance for Assessment and Mitigation of the Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish

July 2015

California Department of Transportation
Division of Environmental Analysis
Environmental Engineering
Hazardous Waste, Air, Noise, Paleontology Office

CALTRANS Technical Report Documentation Page

<table>
<tr><td>1. Report No.

CTHWANP-RT-15-306.01.01</td><td>2. Type of Report

Report</td><td colspan="2">3. Report Phase and Edition

Final</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">4. Title and Subtitle

Technical Guidance for Assessment and Mitigation of the Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish</td><td colspan="2">5. Report Date

July 2015</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">6. Author(s)
David Buehler, P.E., Rick Oestman, James Reyff, Keith Pommerenck, Bill Mitchell</td><td colspan="2">7. Caltrans Project Coordinators
Bruce Rymer, Sr. Engineer, P.E.
Melinda Molnar, Sr. Planner</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">8. Performing Organization Names and Addresses

Division of Environmental Analysis
California Department of Transportation
1120 N Street, MS-27
Sacramento CA 95814
www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/</td><td colspan="2">9. Task Order No.
1
Amendment No.
NA</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">10. Contract No.
43A0306 – ICF International, Illingworth and Rodkin, Inc.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">11. Sponsoring Agency Name and Address

California Department of Transportation
Sacramento, CA 95814</td><td colspan="2">12. Caltrans Functional Reviewers:

Division of Environmental Analysis
Melinda Molnar, Bruce Rymer</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">14. Supplementary Notes
Written in collaboration with the Fish and Hydroacoustics Working Group members which include: NOAA West Coast Region, NMFS, USFWS, FHWA, CDFW, Oregon DOT, WSDOT.</td><td colspan="2">13. External Reviewers</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">15. Abstract
The purpose of this technical guidance manual is to provide Department engineers, biologists, and consultants with guidance related to the environmental permitting of in- and near-water pile driving projects. Appendix I Compendium presents a collection of pile driving data, under a variety of conditions, which can be used as an empirical reference for
the permitting process. Specifically, this manual provides guidance on:
• Fundamentals of hydroacoustics;
• Fish hearing and hydroacoustic impacts on fish;
• Environmental documentation and permit applications required for pile driving projects;
• Assessment of potential impacts on fish and their habitat from sound generated from pile driving;
• Measures to avoid or minimize pile driving impacts; and
• Methods to assess impacts, mitigation, and compensation for pile driving impacts on fish.</td></tr>
<tr><td>16. Key Words
Pile driving, hydroacoustics, bioacoustics, bubble curtain, coffer dam, fish hearing, fish injury threshold, underwater sound attenuation, vibratory hammer, drop hammer, diesel impact hammer, H-pile, steel pipe pile, CIDH pile, CISS pile.</td><td colspan="2">17. Distribution Statement

Available to the general public</td><td>18. No. of pages

430+</td></tr>
</table>

DEDICATION

This guidance manual represents over a decade of on-going work accomplished by engineers and biologists working together to lower construction noise impacts on protected fish species. It is dedicated to all the Caltrans personnel, resource agencies, and consultants who made a contribution…

Technical Guidance for Assessment and Mitigation of the Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish

California Department of Transportation
Division of Environmental Analysis
Environmental Engineering
Hazardous Waste, Air, Noise, Paleontology Office
1120 N Street, Room 4301 MS27
Sacramento, CA 95814
Contact: Bruce Rymer
916/653-6073

July 2015

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Abbreviated Terms

λ	wave length
μPa	micro-Pascal
AIP	Agreement in Principal for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities
BA	Biological Assessment
BCDC	San Francisco Bay Conservation and Development Commission
BMPs	best management practices
CCC	California Coastal Commission
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
CESA	California Endangered Species Act
CISS	cast-in-shell steel
dB	decibel
DCH	designated critical habitat
DFW	California Department of Fish and Wildlife
EFH	essential fish habitat
ESA	Endangered Species Act
ESU	evolutionarily significant unit
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FHWG	Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group
Hz	hertz
I	intensity
J/m^2-s	joules per square meter per second
L_{PEAK}	peak sound pressure level
m/s	meters per second
msec	milliseconds
MSFCMA	Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act
MSFMCA	Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Management and Conservation Act
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOAA Fisheries	National Marine Fisheries Service
Pa msec	Pascals milliseconds
psi	pounds per square inch
PTS	permanent threshold shift

RMS	root mean square
SEL	sound exposure level
$SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$	accumulated sound exposure level
$SEL_{CUMULATIVE}$	cumulative sound exposure level
SER	Standard Environmental Reference
SPL	sound pressure level
TEF	total energy flux
Tf	final time
the Department	California Department of Transportation
the Services	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service
Ti	initial time
TTS	temporary threshold shift
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
W/m^2	watts per square meter
WSDOT	Washington Department of Transportation

Chapter 1 Introduction and Background

Most estuaries and major streams in California provide habitat for one or more fish species listed as threatened or endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA) or California ESA (CESA), or for species managed under the essential fish habitat (EFH) provisions of the Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Management and Conservation Act (MSFMCA). The potential for death or injury of fish resulting from driving piles has elevated public and resource agency concerns relative to effects on populations of these fish species. Required development of minimization measures to protect fish species listed under the ESA has resulted in costly project delays and has increased project implementation costs for the California Department of Transportation (the Department) and other transportation departments and ports on the West Coast.

The purpose of this technical guidance manual is to provide Department engineers, biologists, and consultants with guidance related to the environmental permitting of in-water pile driving projects. Specifically, this manual provides discussions of guidance on the following topics.

- Fundamentals of hydroacoustics.
- Fish hearing and hydroacoustic impacts on fish.
- Environmental documentation and permit applications required for pile driving projects.
- Assessment of potential impacts on fish and their habitat from sound generated from pile driving.
- Measures to avoid or minimize pile driving impacts.
- Methods to assess impacts, mitigation, and compensation for pile driving impacts on fish.

The chapters and appendices in this guidance manual are briefly described below.

Chapter 2, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics*, provides key information on the generation, propagation, and measurement of underwater sound from pile driving. Key terminology and metrics used to describe and measure underwater sound are provided, along with a discussion of methods used to attenuate underwater pile driving sound.

Chapter 3, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustic Impacts on Fish*, discusses the types of impacts on fish and their habitat that could result from the sound generated during pile driving. The chapter also describes how effects might vary depending on the location, species presence, physiological attributes of species, species life history and behavior, timing of activities, and other environmental conditions (e.g., channel morphology, depth of water, and tidal conditions).

Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*, provides guidance on preparation of environmental documentation and permit applications for projects involving pile driving. The chapter first explains what documentation, permits, or consultations will be required for projects with pile driving, based on the design and location of the project. The primary focus of this chapter is a description of how to comply with the ESA, CESA, and EFH provisions of the MSFMCA. The chapter discusses applicable laws, avoidance and minimization measures, best management practices, performance standards, and impact assessment methodology.

Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, provides a summary of measured underwater sound levels for a variety of pile driving situations.

Appendix II, *Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound*, provides guidance in measurement of underwater pile driving sound.

Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*, provides a synopsis of the fish species that might be present at project sites, their status (whether federally or state listed), and habitat types.

Appendix IV, *Tools for Preparing Biological Assessment*, provides tools and templates that are commonly used in the preparation of a project biological assessment.

Appendix V, *U.S. Patent for Underwater Energy Dampening Device*, is the Caltrans patent for a bubble curtain attenuation system.

The *Glossary* provides definitions of key terms used in this manual.

A wide variety of pile types and pile driving methods are used on Department projects. Users of this manual should have a basic understanding of the types of piles and driving methods that are used. Rather than providing a detailed description of this information here, the reader is referred to the Department's Foundation Manual. The manual can be found at:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/esc/construction/manuals/OSCCompleteManuals/Foundation.pdf.

The effects of pile driving sound on marine mammals can also be an issue of concern on projects constructed in or near water. Many of the methods specified in this manual with regard to the estimation of underwater sound can be used to assess the effects of pile driving sound on marine mammals. However, the criteria for injury and harassment are completely different. This guidance document does not specifically address the effects of pile driving sound on marine mammals. More information on this topic can be found at the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Fisheries Southwest Fisheries Science Center website at:

https://swfsc.noaa.gov/textblock.aspx?Division=PRD&ParentMenuId=148&id=1253

Chapter 2 Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics

This chapter summarizes information about underwater sound generated by in-water pile driving. "In-water pile driving" is defined as the placement of piles within the ordinary high water mark or in saturated soils adjacent to the reach. This chapter contains the following main sections.

- Section 2.1, *Fundamental Principles of Hydroacoustics*.
- Section 2.2, *Underwater Sound Propagation*.
- Section 2.3, *Measurement of Underwater Sound*.
- Section 2.4, *Examples of Underwater Pile Driving Sound Levels*.
- Section 2.5, *Common Underwater Sound Control Measures*.

This chapter is supplemented by Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, which provides an extensive summary of measured underwater sound levels at a number of project sites, and Appendix II, *Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound*, which provides guidance on how to measure underwater sound.

2.1 Fundamental Principles of Hydroacoustics

Sound is defined as small disturbances in a fluid from ambient conditions through which energy is transferred away from a source by progressive fluctuations of pressure (or sound waves). Sound waves are always produced by vibrating objects. In this discussion, the vibrating object is a pile that has been struck by a pile driver. As the vibrating surface moves, it compresses the molecules in the adjacent medium, creating a high-pressure region. As the object vibrates back to its original position, the molecules in contact with the vibrating surface produce a low-pressure region. These areas are known as "compressions" and "rarefactions," respectively. In fluids (e.g., gases and liquids), sound waves can only be longitudinal. In solids, sound can exist as either a longitudinal or a transverse wave. The pressure fluctuations are expressed in standard units of pressure (e.g., pounds per square inch [psi], Pascals, and bars).

Sound levels often are expressed in decibels (dB). The decibel is used for many different engineering applications, and it is commonly used to describe the magnitude of a sound pressure. It is a convenient way of expressing sound pressure level (SPL) because the sounds we typically hear result from a very wide range of pressures. A decibel used to describe sound is a logarithmic measure of the sound strength. The mathematical definition of a decibel is the "base 10 logarithmic function of the ratio of the pressure fluctuation to a reference pressure." This is shown mathematically in the *Calculation of Sound*

Calculation of Sound Pressure Level (SPL):

$$SPL = 10 \log (p/p_{ref})^2, dB$$

or

$$SPL = 20 \log (p/p_{ref}), dB$$

where p_{ref} is the reference pressure:
for air, $p_{ref} = 20\ \mu Pa$
for water, $p_{ref} = 1\ \mu Pa$

As a result:

$$SPL_{water} = SPL_{air} + 26\ dB$$

For example:

$$1\ psi = 6{,}859\ Pa = 197\ dB\ re{:}\ 1\ \mu Pa$$

Pressure Level box. Note that the reference pressure in air is different than the reference pressure in water. It is important to clearly state the reference pressure when expressing sound levels in decibels.

Three metrics are commonly used in evaluating hydroacoustic impacts on fish.

- Peak sound pressure level (L_{PEAK}).
- Root mean square (RMS).
- Sound exposure level (SEL).

Figure 2-1 represents a sinusoidal (single-frequency) pressure wave and the various metrics that are used to describe amplitude. The amplitude of the pressure is shown on the vertical axis, and time is shown on the horizontal axis. The wave is shown to fluctuate around the neutral point. The L_{PEAK} is the absolute value of the maximum variation from the neutral position; therefore, it can result from a compression or a rarefaction of the fluid. The peak-to-peak sound pressure is the absolute sum of the positive and negative peak amplitudes. The average amplitude is the average of the absolute value of all amplitudes over the period of interest. The root-mean-squared amplitude is a type of average that is determined by squaring all of the amplitudes over the period of interest, determining the mean of the squared values, and then taking the square root of the mean of the squared values. SEL is the constant sound level over 1 second that has the same amount of acoustic energy, as indicated by the square of the sound pressure, as the original sound. These metrics are discussed in detail later in this section.

Typical sound levels found in underwater environments where pile driving normally occurs are shown in Table 2-1. The sound levels are shown in terms of decibels and Pascals. One can readily see how the range of pressures is reduced by using the decibel scale. **All underwater sound levels referenced in this document are in dB referenced to 1 micro Pascal (1 µPa).**

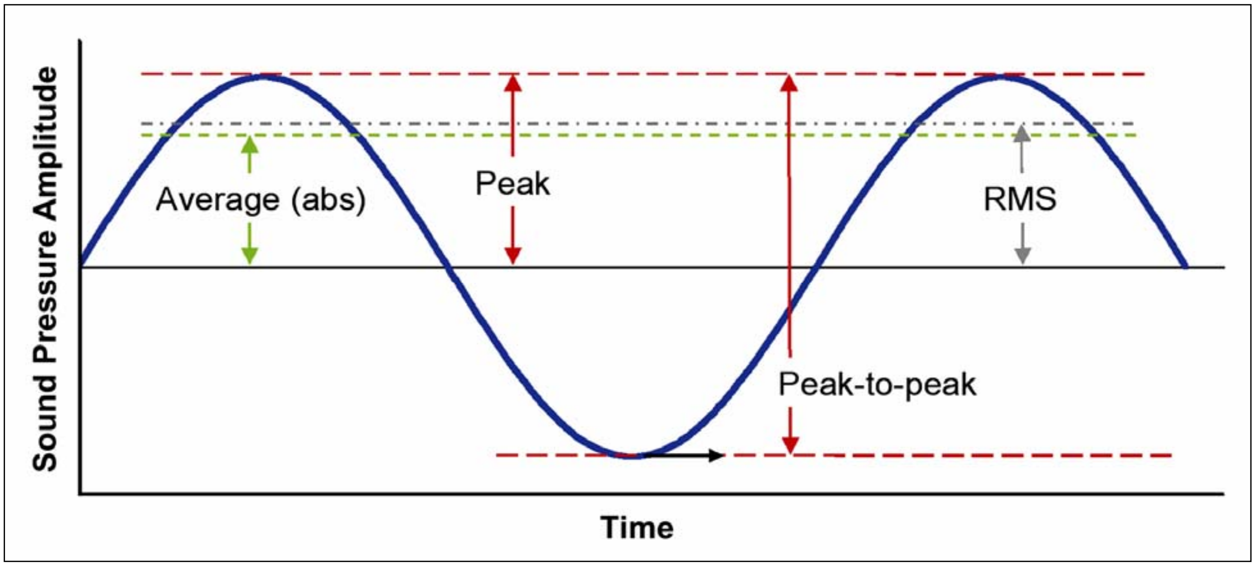


Figure 2-1. Sound Level Metrics

Table 2-1. Typical Sound Levels in Underwater Environments Where Pile Driving Normally Occurs

Sound Source	Sound Pressure Level (dB RMS)	Sound Pressure (Pascals)
High explosive at 100 meters	220	100,000
Airgun array at 100 meters	200	10,000
Unattenuated pile strike at 200–300 meters at the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge and the Benicia-Martinez Bridge	180	1,000
Large ship at 100 meters	160	100
Fish trawler passby (low speed) at 20 meters	140	10
Background with boat traffic (ranging from quiet estuary to water body with boat traffic)	120	1
	100	0.1
	80	0.01
	60	0.001

The *Acoustic Properties* and *Acoustic Properties Characteristic Impedance* boxes describe several acoustic properties that illustrate the difference between sound in water and sound in air. The speed of sound (c) relates primarily to the temperature and density of a medium. The speed of sound in sea water at a standard temperature of 21º C is equal to 4.4 times the speed of sound in air at standard temperature and pressure. The wavelength of the sound waves (λ), which is the length of one full cycle (i.e., the distance between peaks), is equal to the speed of sound divided by the frequency (i.e., peaks per second expressed as hertz [Hz]). The example in the *Acoustic Properties* box shows that, at a frequency of 250 Hz, the wavelength in water is 6 meters (20 feet), and the wave length in air is 1.4 meters (4.5 feet).

Acoustic Properties:

Speed of Sound

- Function of temperature, salinity, and depth
- For 21°C, $c = 1{,}521$ m/sec
- Relative to air, $c_{water} = c_{air} \times 4.4$

Acoustic Wavelength ($\lambda = c/f$)

- Relative to air, $\lambda_{water} = \lambda_{air} \times 4.4$
- At 250 hz, $\lambda_{air} = 1.4$ m (4½ feet) and $\lambda_{water} \approx 6$ m (20 feet)

Acoustic Properties Characteristic Impedance (ρc):

- $\rho_{water} \approx \rho_{air} \times 811, \quad \rho c_{water} \approx \rho c_{air} \times 3{,}570$
- For a constant volume displacement source in air and water:
  - Acoustic pressure is 60 times greater than in air (~36 dB)
  - With the difference in references, SPL_{water} would be 62 dB greater than SPL_{air}
- Because $\rho c_{water} >> \rho c_{air}$, the transmission loss between them is about 30 dB

Another important acoustical property is the characteristic impedance (ρc), which is the product of the density (*ρ*) and speed of sound (c) of a material. The *Acoustic Properties Characteristic Impedance* box illustrates the relationship between acoustic pressure in air and water**.** Because the characteristic impedance of water is much greater than that of air, a sound source located above the water surface (in the air) has less effect under the water. The difference in the characteristic impedance values of air and water causes a sound transmission loss between air and water of about 30 dB.

The preceding discussion has focused on simple signals at a single frequency. The following discussion addresses pile driving strikes and other examples of waveforms.

Figure 2-2 shows a waveform for a typical pile driving pulse displayed over a period of 0.18 second. It can be seen that the peak pressure occurs early in this sample waveform.

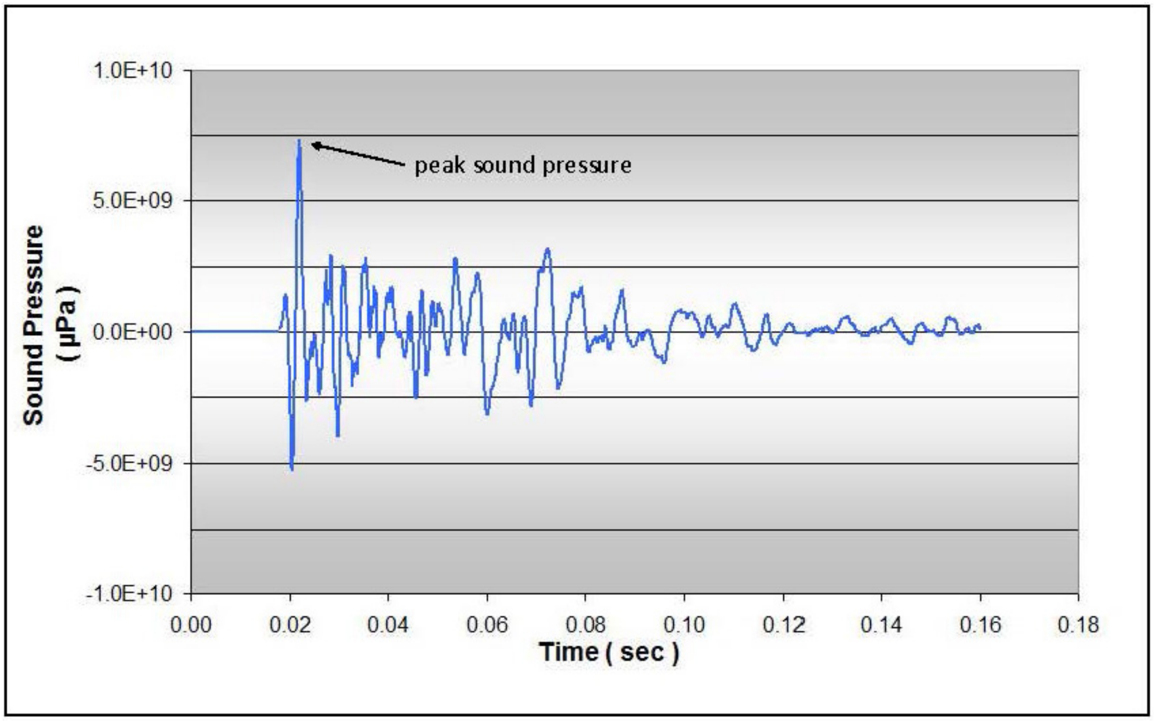


Figure 2-2. Peak Sound Pressure

Figure 2-3 illustrates the "rise time," which is the time interval a signal takes to rise from 10 to 90 percent of its highest peak value. In this example the rise time is 1 millisecond.

Figure 2-4 illustrates an acoustical impulse. This is often referred to in literature in terms of the "psi-millisecond metric" or the "Pascal-second metric." This metric has been used by researchers to evaluate the effects of blast signals on fish where the signal is typically characterized by a single positive peak pressure pulse.

Figure 2-5 illustrates how the RMS sound pressure level is determined from a pulse such as a pile strike. This metric has been used in the assessment of the effects of underwater sound on marine mammals and fish. As noted earlier, the RMS is the square root of the mean of the squares of the pressure contained within a defined period from the initial time (Ti) to a final time (Tf).

For marine mammals, the RMS pressure historically has been calculated over the period of the pulse that contains 90 percent of the acoustical energy (the total energy minus the initial 5 percent and the final 5 percent). This is called the "effective pressure," as shown in Figure 2-6.

Comparative analysis of pile driving pulses has shown that the "impulse" setting on a precision sound level meter usually provides a good estimate of the effective pressure.

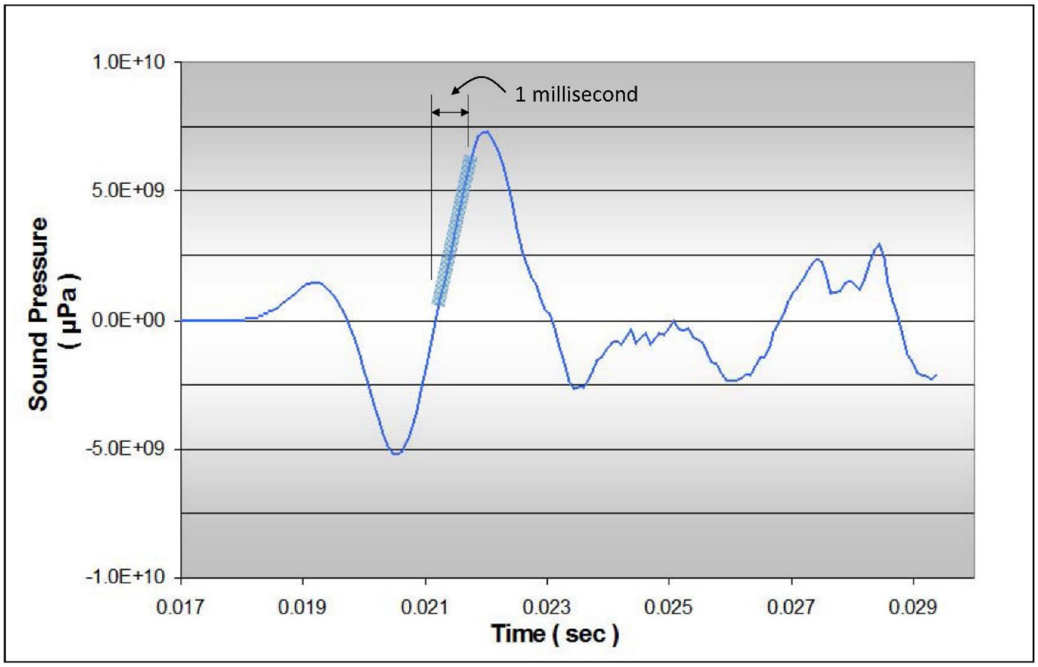


Figure 2-3. Signal Rise Time

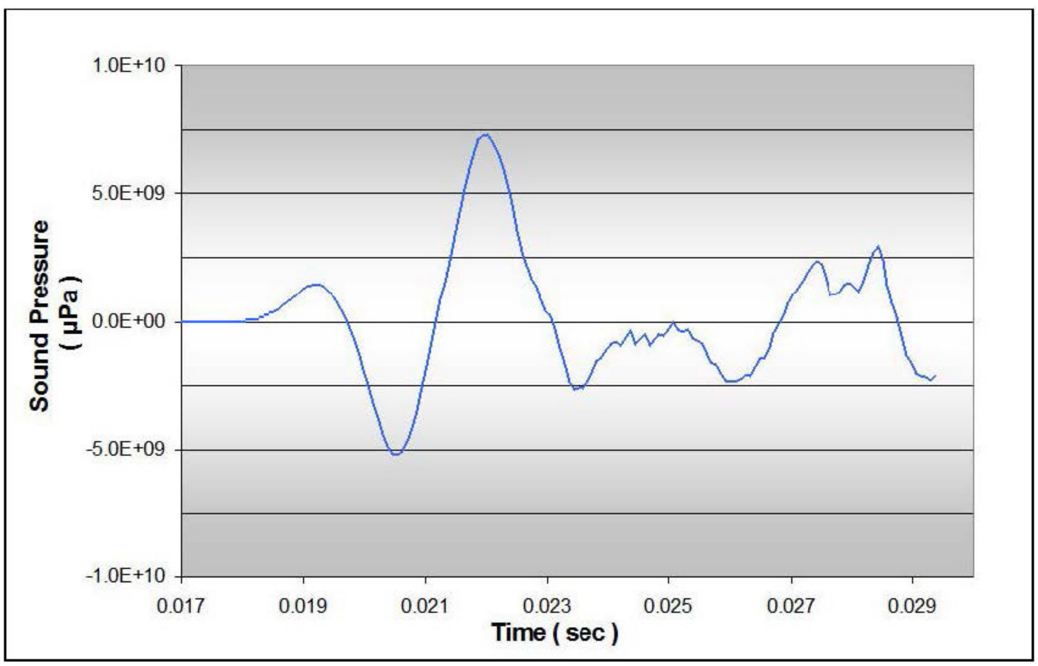


Figure 2-4. Acoustical Impulse

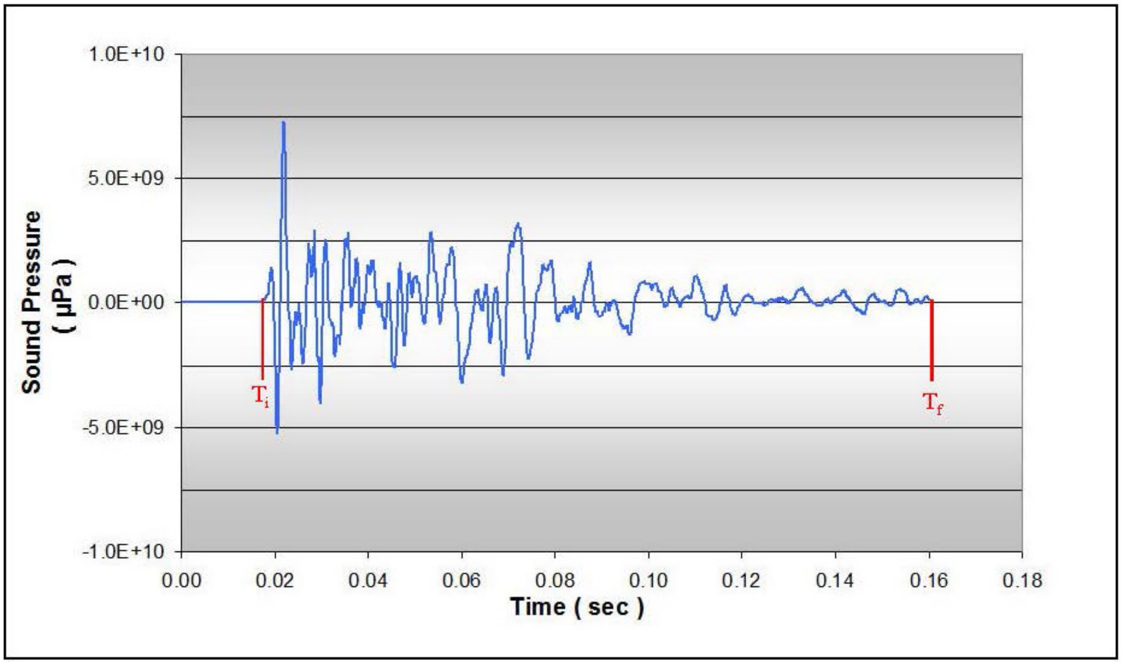


Figure 2-5. Root Mean Square Sound Pressure Level

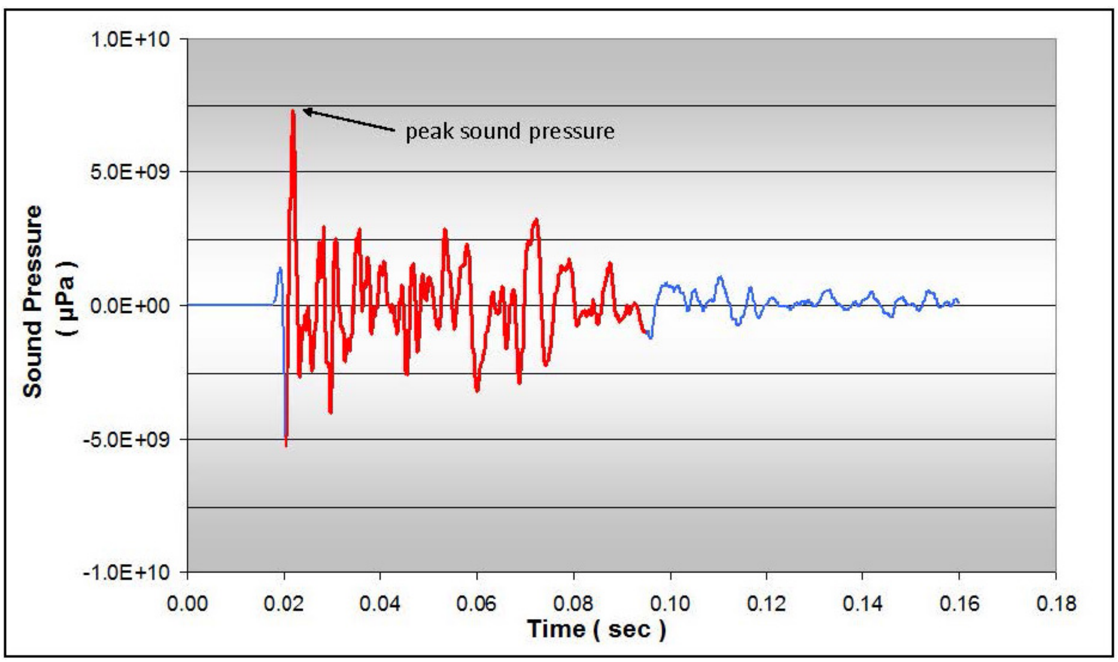


Figure 2-6. Effective Sound Pressure Level

Another way to quantitatively describe the time history of a pressure signal generated by a pile driving pulse is to describe the total sound energy in the pressure signal. In this guidance manual, sound energy associated with a pile driving pulse, or series of pulses, is characterized by the SEL. As noted above, SEL is the constant sound level in 1 second and which has the same amount of acoustic energy as the original time-varying sound (i.e., the total energy of an event). SEL is calculated by summing the cumulative pressure squared over the time of the event.

Figures 2-7 and 2-8 show the sample waveform and the pressured squares over time, respectively. Figure 2-9 shows the accumulated energy in the pulse, with the resulting level representing the SEL. The same chart with the trailing energy at the end of the waveform removed shows the SEL calculated over the period where 90 percent of the energy in the pulse is contained, excluding the initial 5 percent and the final 5 percent.

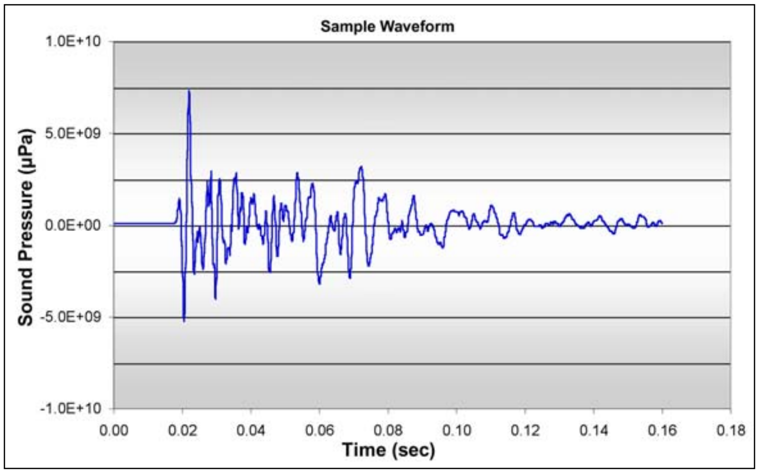


Figure 2-7. Sound Exposure Level for a Single Pile Driving Impulse

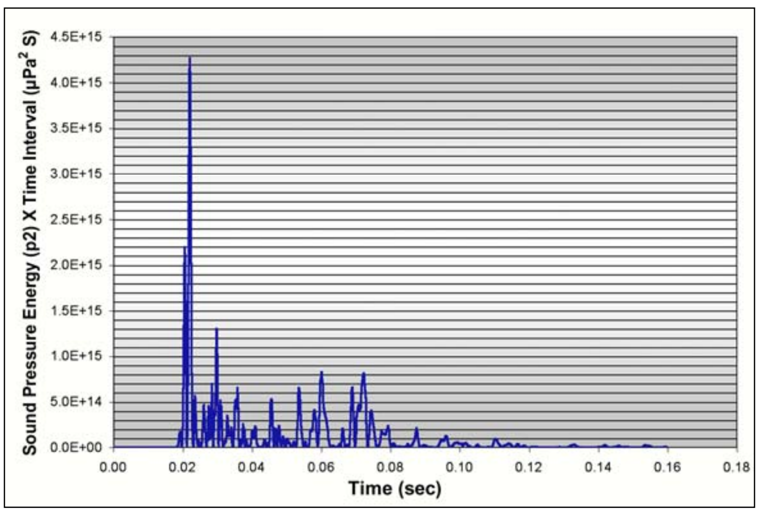


Figure 2-8. Sound Exposure Level Calculation

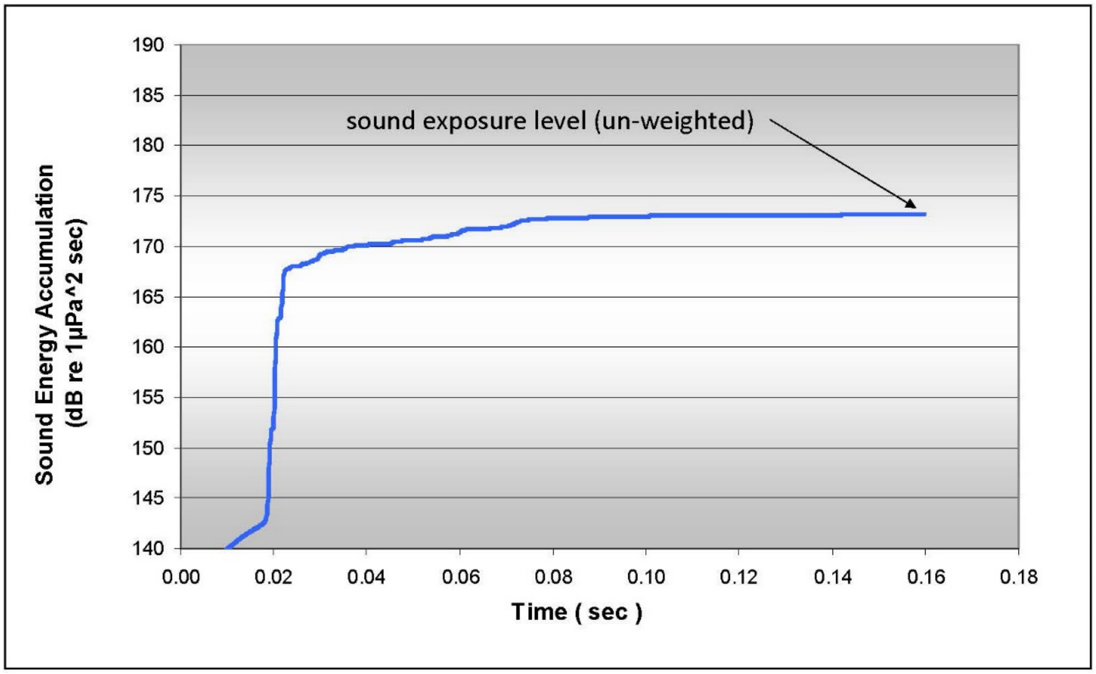


Figure 2-9. Sound Exposure Level

The acoustic energy flux density, or intensity (I), of a sound wave is the product of sound pressure and acoustic particle velocity divided by the acoustic impedance of the medium. To estimate the acoustic energy flux, or total energy flux (TEF) as it is sometimes referred to in literature, most researchers use the assumption that pressure and velocity are in phase with one another. This assumption, however, is only true for conditions approaching plane waves. (A plane wave is a constant-frequency wave whose wavefronts are infinite parallel planes of constant amplitude normal to the velocity vector of the wave). In many environments, particularly in shallow water near shore, pressure and velocity are complex quantities that are not likely to be in phase. This is also true near the sound source in what is called the “acoustic near field.” Because of the difficulty in measuring total energy flux in the field, SEL is used as the energy metric in this guidance manual.

Most sounds, including the sound of a pile driving pulse, are composed of many different frequencies. This is referred to as the “frequency spectrum” of the sound. A typical sound pressure spectrum is shown in Figure 2-10. The amplitude of the sound in dB re: 1 micro-Pascal is shown on the vertical axis, and the frequency of the sound is shown on the horizontal axis. Frequency is measured in cycles per second (Hz). When characterizing a sound pressure spectrum for a waveform, the unit of amplitude is normally the RMS pressure, which is measured over a defined frequency bandwidth. The bandwidth can be as narrow as 1 Hz or as wide as 1/3 octave (an octave is a doubling of frequency); therefore, the bandwidth must be specified. Frequency spectra are important because the frequency content of the sound may affect the way the fish respond to and is affected by the sound (in terms of physical injury as well as hearing loss). It also can be important for other species when determining how the sound may interfere with their ability to communicate using sound. From an engineering perspective, the frequency spectrum is important because it affects the expected sound propagation and the performance of a sound attenuation (i.e., reduction) system, both of which are frequency dependent.

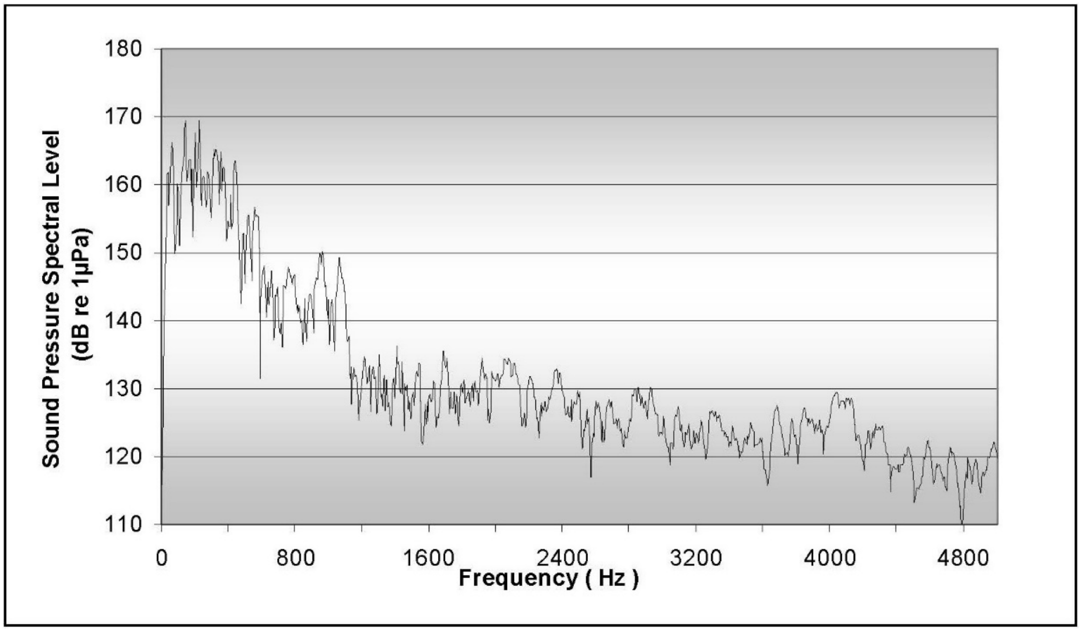


Figure 2-10. Narrow-Band Frequency Sound Pressure Spectrum Level

In an evaluation of pile driving impacts on fish, it may be necessary to estimate the cumulative SEL ($SEL_{cumulative}$) associated with a series of pile strike events. $SEL_{cumulative}$ can be estimated from a representative single-strike SEL value and the number of strikes that likely would be required to place the pile at its final depth by using the following equation:

Equation 2-1

$$SEL_{cumulative} = SEL_{single\ strike} + 10 \log (\#\ of\ pile\ strikes)$$

Equation 2-1 assumes that all strikes have the same SEL value and that a fish would continuously be exposed to pulses with the same SEL. This is never actually the case. The equation does, however, provide a reasonable estimation of the cumulative SEL value, given a representative single-strike SEL value and an estimate of the number of strikes.

Although not currently used as a criterion metric, the vector quantity particle velocity may emerge as a useful metric for evaluating the effect of underwater sound on fish. When applied to a sound wave traveling through water, particle velocity would be the physical speed of a water molecule as the wave passes by it.

2.2 Underwater Sound Propagation

Underwater sound propagation is complex but is similar in certain respects to sound propagation through the air. Sound propagation in water is subject to the same governing propagation equations that apply in air. There is the primary direct transmission path between the source and the receiver; there is reflection from extended surfaces, such as the water surface and the bottom; and there are refraction effects and shielding effects. A significant difference between the propagation of sound underwater and sound in air is that the underwater medium has distinct boundaries (the water surface and the bottom) that can substantially affect propagation characteristics. In addition, when pile driving is the source of noise, there is the potential for the vibration that results from the pile being struck by the hammer to shake the ground, which then re-radiates noise back into the water. Figure 2-11 illustrates these basic propagation concepts.

Generally, underwater sound propagation is divided into two categories: deep water and shallow water (Richardson et al. 1995). For most projects involving pile driving, the conditions shown in Figure 2-12 that describe a shallow-water environment are applicable. There is a direct transmission from the source to the receiver, and there are reflected paths from the surface and the bottom. As described above, with pile driving, there is also the potential for sound energy that is re-radiated from the ground to reach the receiver. Normally, the ground-radiated noise is dominated by low frequencies, which cannot propagate efficiently through shallow water.

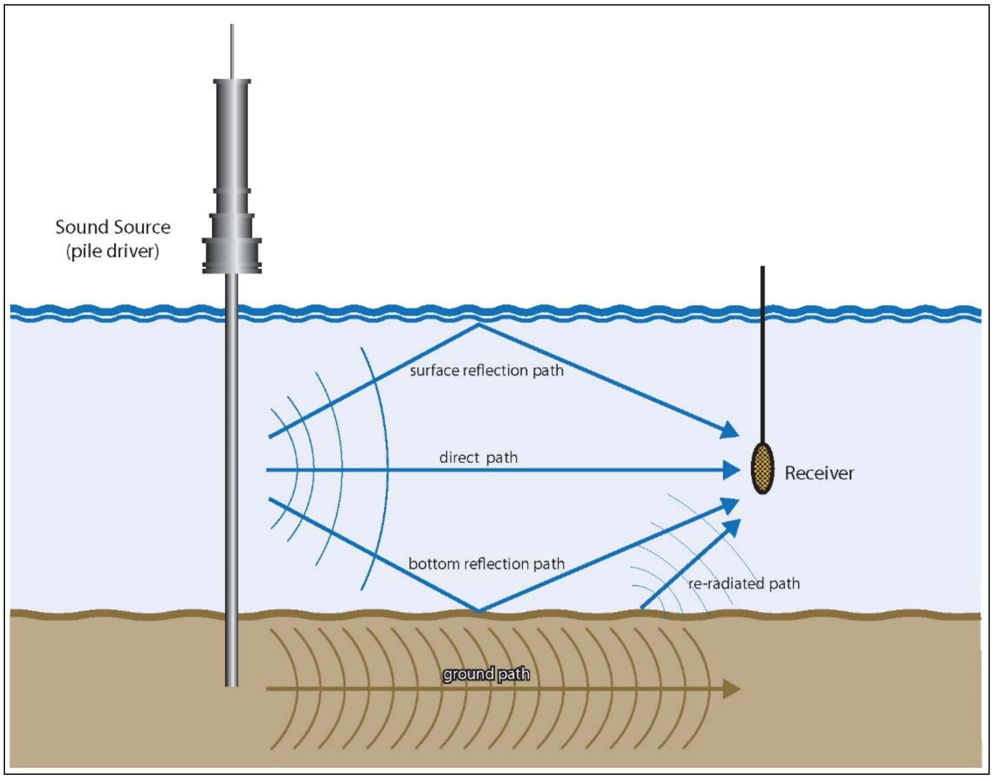


Figure 2-11. Underwater Sound Propagation Paths

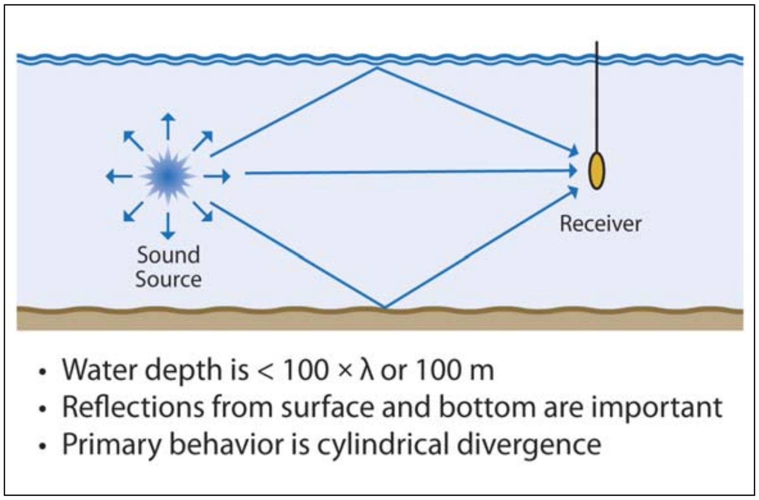


Figure 2-12. Underwater Sound Propagation in Shallow Water

Figure 2-13 shows what happens in shallow water near the surface. At this location, there is a "pressure release," which is a 180-degree shift in the phase of the sound wave. Excess attenuation from wave cancelation effects can occur because of the interaction between the direct and out-of-phase reflected waves near the surface.

The pile segment that is in the water is an extended source (not a point source) that typically extends from the water surface to the mud line. In some cases, the tops of the piles are driven all the way to the mud line using a submersible hammer, as indicated in Figure 2-14. In these situations, when the pile does not extend from the water surface to the mudline, the source and propagation characteristics associated with the pile will change as the top of the pile is submerged.

All pile driving projects for which data are available are in shallow-water environments that exhibit all of the propagation complexities previously described. Normally, the geotechnical conditions below the mud line are not completely known. As previously noted, the potential for the direct transmittance of energy through the bottom substrates below the mudline complicates the prediction of sound propagation to any point in the water. In addition, obstructions, such as barges, other piles, and other structures (e.g., existing bridges), and channel characteristics, such as the narrowness of the channel and the slope of side of the channel, can modify how sound propagates in water.

Because of these complications, empirical data rather than mathematical models are used to predict sound propagation effects. On several projects, sound levels have been measured at varying distances. This information is documented in Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, and the methodology for applying these data sets is described in Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish.*

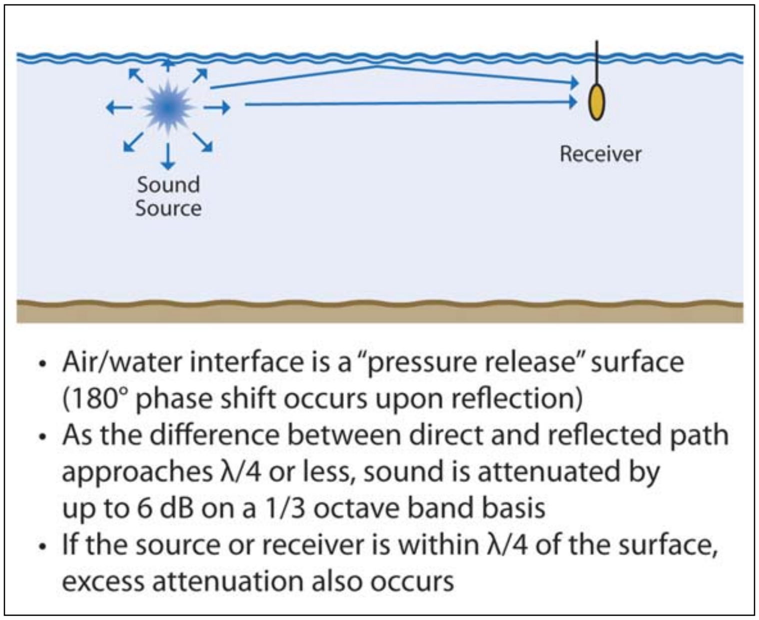


Figure 2-13. Underwater Sound Propagation in Shallow Water near the Surface

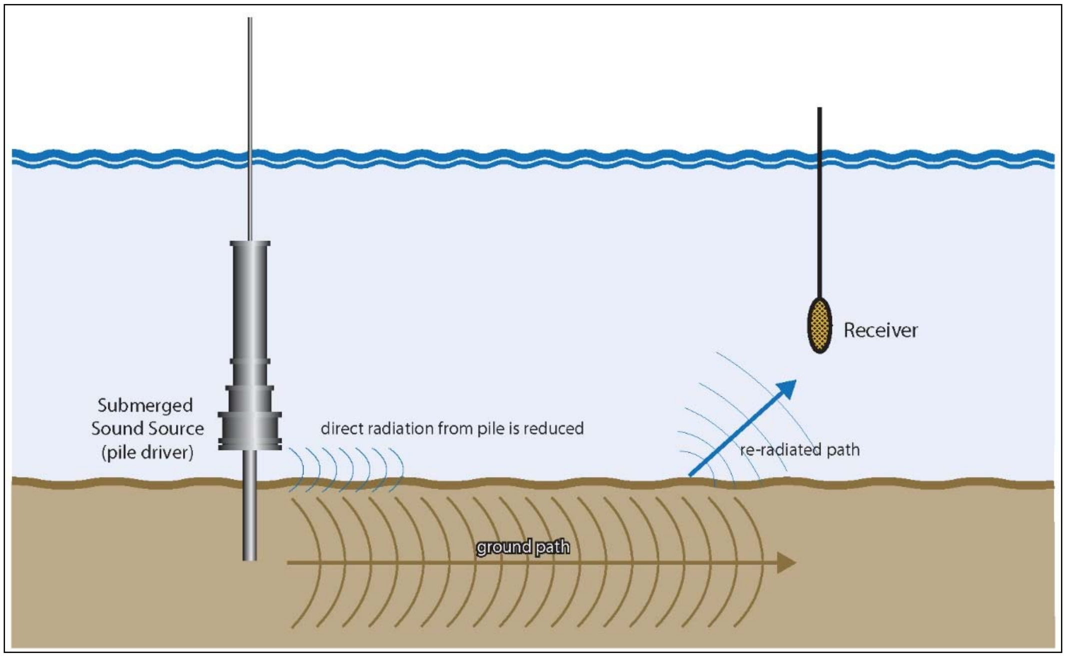


Figure 2-14. Underwater Sound Propagation with Submerged Hammer

Analytical methods for evaluating the attenuation of underwater sound over distance are discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.6.3, *Calculating Underwater Sound Attenuation*.

2.3 Measurement of Underwater Sound

This section provides an overview of measuring underwater sound resulting from in-water pile driving. Example data are provided. Appendix II, *Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound*, provides a detailed procedure for conducting measurements of noise generated during pile driving events.

The basic measurement system consists of a hydrophone, like a microphone, that is waterproof and connected via cables to recording devices. Usually, specialized signal conditioners and power supplies are required. This equipment system is shown in Figure 2-15. Figure 2-16 shows an actual measurement system. The equipment shown in the photograph consists of a hydrophone; a thermometer used to measure water temperature; cables; and a field case that includes power supplies, signal conditioners, a two-channel digital audio recorder, and data loggers. In this application, the signal from the hydrophone is transmitted separately to a field data logger, which is a precision sound level meter, and the digital audio recorder for subsequent laboratory analysis. This measurement system allows the person conducting the measurements to determine the approximate L_{PEAK}, RMS, and SEL values directly in the field.

The hydrophone sensor is normally placed in a water column at least 1 meter deep, with the sensor located at a depth of 0.5 meter above the bottom of the water column. Monitoring plans typically specify the minimum water column depth and the depth of the hydrophone sensor.

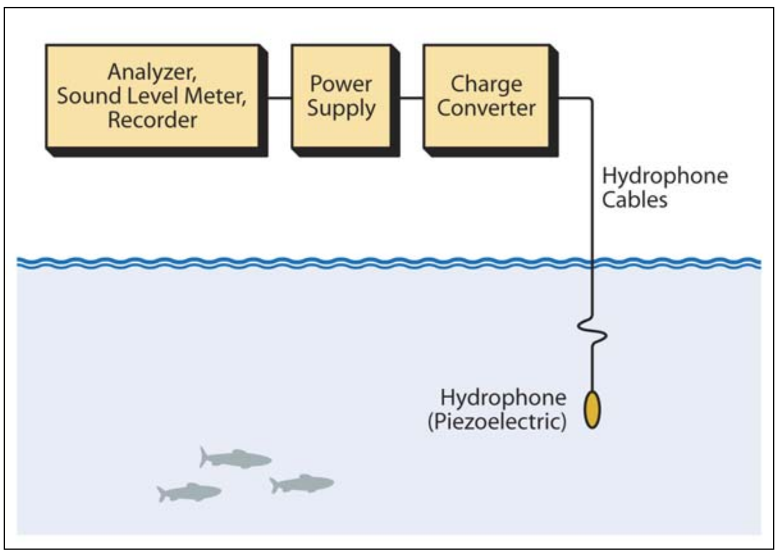


Figure 2-15. Basic Hydrophone System

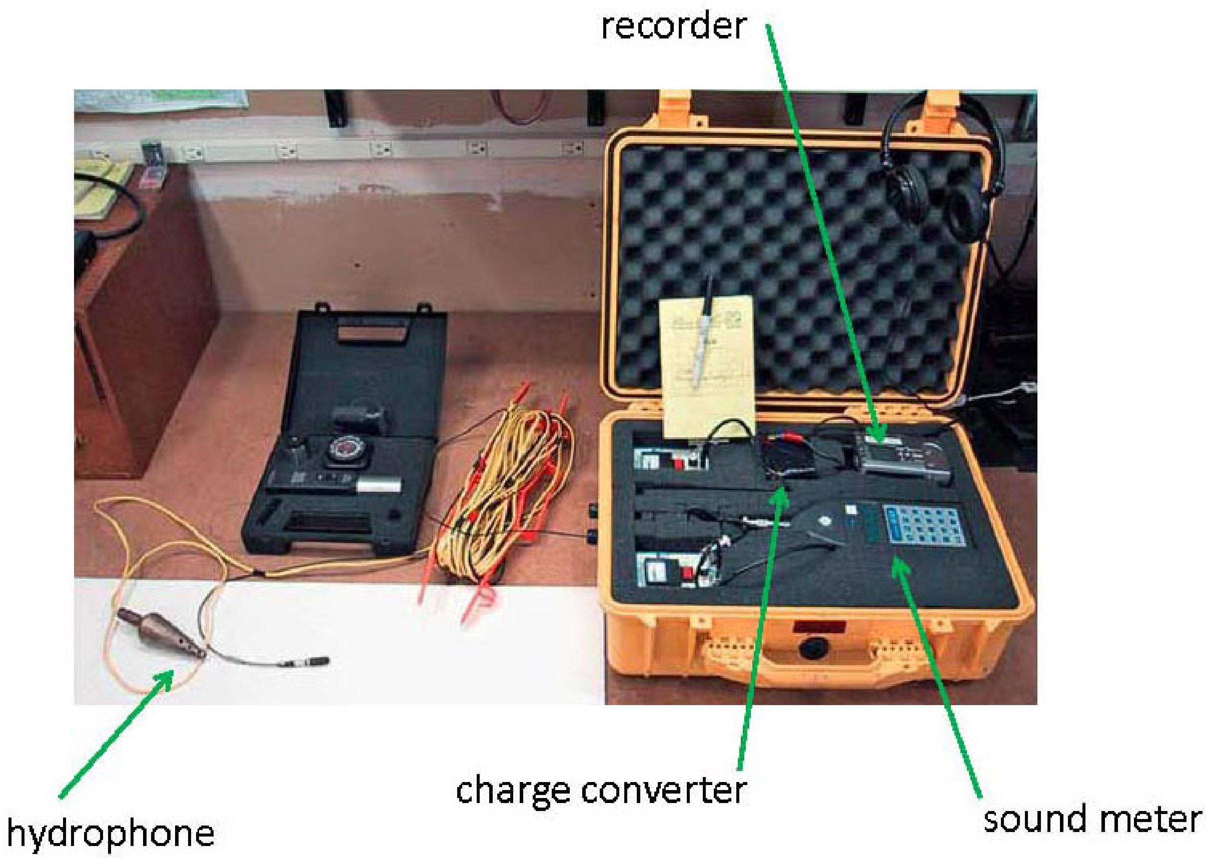


Figure 2-16. Measurement System

Figure 2-17 shows three representative hydrophones with differing sensitivities. The selection of the appropriate sensor is based on the anticipated amplitude of the signal. Where signal levels are low, a sensitive hydrophone is used to detect the low signals; where signals are expected to be very high, a sensor such as the blast transfuser can be used. If the wrong sensor is selected, the signal can be below the minimum signal that the sensor can measure or the signal can exceed the capability of the sensor, thereby saturating the measurement system and invalidating the measurement.

The instrumentation must be calibrated so that the correct levels can be determined from the recorded data. Figure 2-18 is a photograph of a field calibration system. The various methods for achieving calibration are described in Appendix II, *Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound*.

Figure 2-17. Pressure Sensors

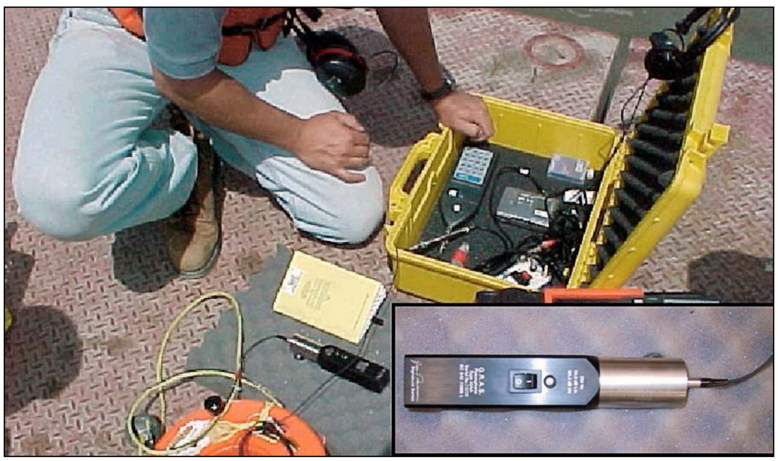


Figure 2-18. Calibration in the Field

2.4 Examples of Underwater Pile Driving Sound Levels

Typical sound levels associated with different types of piles are shown in Table 2-2. Reference sound levels from pile driving normally are reported at a fixed distance of 10 meters from the pile. **In this document, all underwater peak and RMS decibel levels are referenced to 1 μPa, and the SEL is referenced to 1 μPa^2-sec.** These data show that different types of piles result in different sound pressures. The data also illustrate the relationship between the peak pressure, the RMS sound pressure, and the SEL. A typical waveform, frequency spectrum, accumulation of energy curve, and data summary from a 96-inch-diameter cast-in-shell steel (CISS) pile are shown in Figure 2-19. Additional data on a wide variety of pile sizes and pile driving conditions are provided in Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*.

Table 2-2. Single-Strike Sound Levels Associated with Different Piles (Measured at 10 Meters from Pile)

Pile	Peak Pressure (decibels)	Sound Pressure Level (dB RMS)	Sound Exposure Level (decibels)
Timber (12-inch) drop	177	165	157
Cast-in-shell steel (CISS) (12-inch) drop	177	165	152
Concrete (24-inch) impact	193/183	175/171	160
Steel H-type impact	190	175	Not available
CISS (12-inch) impact	190	180	165
CISS (12-inch) impact	200	184	174
CISS (30-inch) impact	208	190	180
CISS (96-inch) impact (at 25 meters)	212	197	188

Note: Dual values for 24-inch concrete represent the range of measured levels.

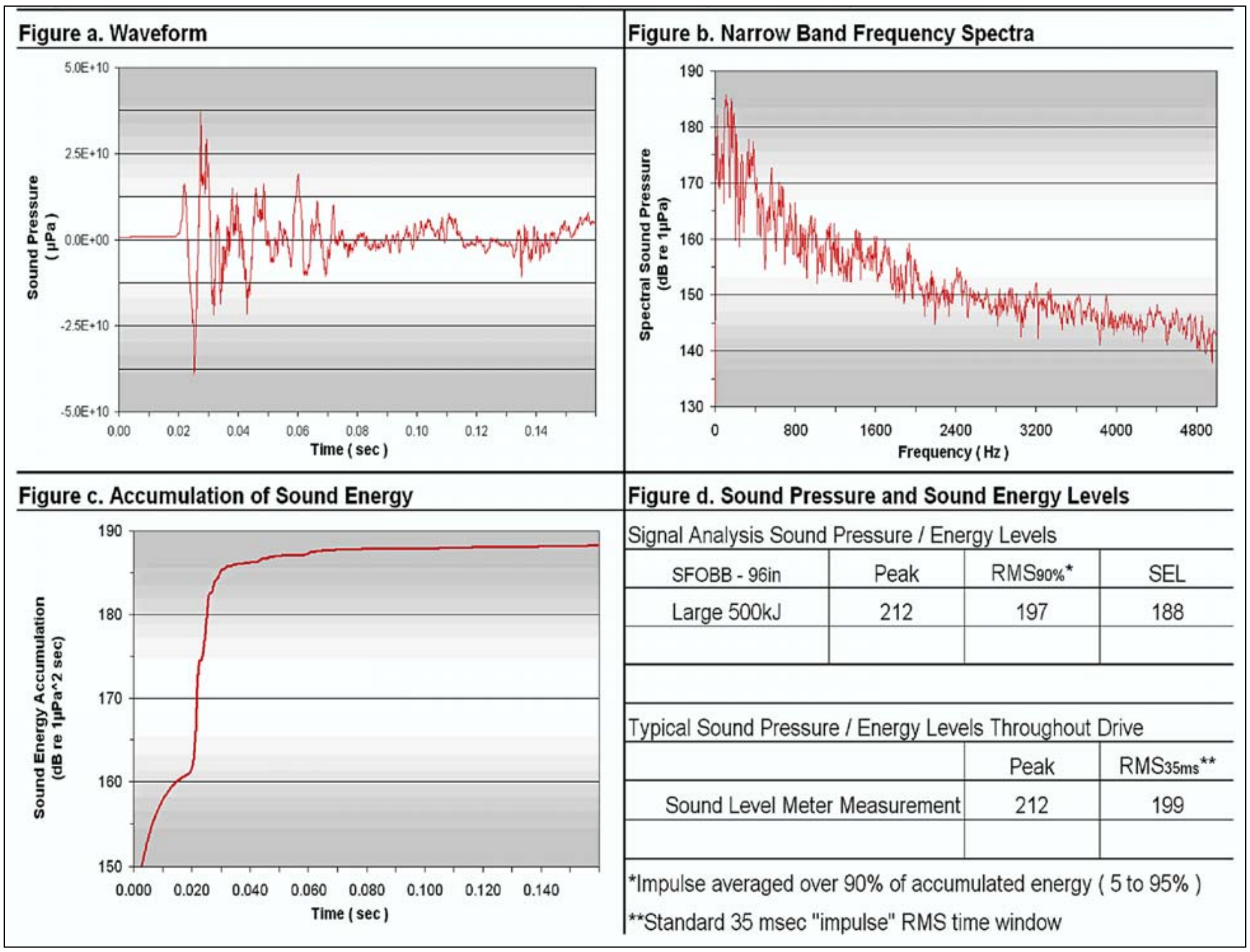


Figure 2-19. Representative Pile Strike at 25 Meters from a 96-Inch-Diameter CISS Pile with a 500-Kilojoule Hydraulic Hammer

As discussed in Section 2.1, *Fundamental Principles of Hydroacoustics*, it may be necessary to estimate $SEL_{cumulative}$ for a given pile driving scenario. Such an estimate requires an estimate of the representative single-strike SEL at a fixed distance from the pile and an estimate of the number of pile strikes needed to place the pile at its final elevation. The number of strikes needed to install a pile depends on many factors, such as the size and type of the pile, the type of substrate, and the size of the hammer. It may also be necessary to estimate the total number of strikes that may occur in a day if multiple piles are driven in the same location on the same day.

Data from past projects on the actual number of pile strikes per pile and per day are limited. Table 2-3 summarizes available strike data for a range of pile types. The data reported in Table 2-3 are based on examples of past projects and may not be representative of other projects that use different construction techniques (e.g., pile driving from barge rather than from a trestle).

Table 2-3. Summary of Typical Strike Data

Pile Type, Size, and Shape	Typical Use	Typical Installation Duration	Typical Strikes per Pile
Concrete, 24-inch hexagon	Wharf construction projects	1 to 5 piles per day	580
Thin steel H, small	Temporary installation	6 piles per day	550
Steel pipe, 40-inch diameter	Permanent installation	1 to 5 piles per day	600
Cast-in-steel shell (CISS) pipe, 30-inch diameter	Permanent installation	2 to 4 piles per day	1,600 to 2,400 per day
CISS pipe, 96-inch diameter	Permanent installation	1 to 3 pile sections per day	7,000 per day

2.5 Common Underwater Sound Reduction Measures

Various measures have been developed to reduce underwater sound generated by in-water pile driving. These measures fall into two general categories.

- Treatments that reduce the transmission of sound through the water.
- Treatments to reduce the sound generated by the pile.

The first category includes simple unconfined air bubble curtains, multiple-stage unconfined air bubble curtains, confined air bubble curtains, and cofferdams. The second category includes alternative hammer types, such as vibratory hammers and oscillating, rotating, or press-in systems. The use of wood, nylon, and micarta pile caps also would fall in the second category.

Information is currently available on the general effectiveness of various air bubble curtain systems and dewatered cofferdams in attenuating underwater sound. Some limited data are also available on the effectiveness of treatments, such as pile caps, in reducing the sound generated by the pile. These data area discussed below and in Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*.

Vibratory hammers generally produce less sound that impact hammers and are often employed as a mitigation measure to reduce the potential for adverse effects on fish that can result from impact pile driving. There are no established injury criteria for vibration pile driving, and resource agencies in general are not concerned that vibratory pile driving will result in adverse effects on fish. Sound data from vibration pile driving is provided in Appendix I.

As more measurement data become available for other pile installation methods, the data will be added to this document and the compendium of underwater sound data presented in Appendix I.

2.5.1 Bubble Curtains

The underlying mechanism of bubble curtains is changing the local impedance in the area where the bubbles are introduced. This change in impedance can have two effects.

- To act as a barrier for the sound to pass through once the sound is radiated from the pile.
- To reduce the radiation of sound from the pile into the water by having the low-density bubbles very close to the pile.

The first effect is assessed by modeling the attenuation as a simple sound transmission problem through multiple media (i.e., transmission from water, through a water/air mix, and back to water). For the water/air mix, consider the local density as a function of the percentage of air, or bubbles. The two parameters are then the bubble percentage and the thickness of the bubble curtain. Basically, attenuation increases with more bubbles and. to a point, a thicker curtain. There was success in Canada using a relatively narrow curtain produced by a 50-millimeter-wide bubbler (Frasier River Pile and Dredge undated). Studies on blast pressure attenuation by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers have indicated some, but not complete, success in reducing fish mortality using a lower air flow rate per hole and a wider bubbler. Using this system, there was still mortality of approximately 6 percent of the fish evaluated. This would be expected because the percentage of bubbles has a greater influence than the curtain thickness on the degree of attenuation.

Figure 2-20. Unconfined Air Bubble Curtain Systems

For the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration Project, the bubble curtain system achieved 0 to 2 dB of attenuation. For other various pile driving projects the system achieved 0 to 5 dB of attenuation.

For the second effect (changing the radiation from the pipe), the sound power radiated by the pile is directly proportional to the characteristic impedance of the media it is radiating into. The impedance for water is almost 4,000 times greater than for air. This means, in the extreme, that the potential exists for reductions up to 36 dB as the impedance of air is approached. But other factors would affect this result. An assessment of the actual potential effect must take into account the effects of the different densities of water and air on the vibration of the pile, and the change in radiation efficiency in water due to the change in coincidence frequency in water.

Air bubble curtains can be confined or unconfined. In a confined system, the bubbles are confined to the area around the pile with a flexible material (plastic or cloth) or a rigid pipe. The material of the confining casing does not affect the overall sound reduction provided by the system (i.e., steel or cloth would work equally as well). Confined systems are most often used when there is potential for high water-current velocities to sweep the bubbles away from the pile. A confined system utilizes a flexible sleeve or another larger pile to confine the bubbles to the immediate area around the pile. Unconfined systems have no such system for restraining the bubbles. The first known unconfined air bubble curtain system in California was used on the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration Project, shown in Figure 2-20. Because the diameter of the air bubble curtain system was large with respect to the pile, the bubble screen that this system generated was not immediately adjacent to the pile. This type of bubble screen has the disadvantage of allowing the sound pulse to propagate into the water. The bubble screen was also affected by the currents, which swept the bubbles away from the pile. Although this system provided only a minimal measured attenuation of 0 to 2 dB, similar systems used on various other pile driving projects have resulted in 0 to 5 dB of attenuation in high current situations. In low current situations, 5 to 15 dB of noise reduction has been achieved.

Figure 2-21 shows another bubble ring system used during construction on the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge. This system employs a smaller diameter ring and was utilized only in light current conditions. A similar system has been used on concrete piles on wharf repair projects in the San Francisco Bay region. This system has been shown to provide 5 to 15 dB of attenuation in the overall pressure where currents are light or non-existent. Figure 2-22 shows the dual-stage (with an upper and lower bubble ring) unconfined air bubble curtain system used on the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge when the piles were re-struck to assess their resistance to forces about a year after they were originally driven. This system provided 5 to more than 20 dB of attenuation but was found to provide different levels of attenuation, depending on the direction from the pile. This directional characteristic was likely due to the current or ground-borne vibration propagation. Figures 2-23 and 2-24 show the waveforms and frequency spectra with this system turned on and turned off. The waveforms show the significant reduction in the peak pressure realized with this air bubble curtain system. The frequency spectra in Figure 2-24 show that the reduction in sound provided by the attenuation system varies as a function of frequency.

Figure 2-21. Bubble Ring

For the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, the bubble ring provided 5 to 15 dB of attenuation in light to nonexistent current for 30- to 66-meter piles driven in shallow water.

Figure 2-22. Dual-Stage Unconfined Air Bubble Curtain

For the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration Project re-strike, the unconfined air bubble curtain provided about 5 to 20 dB of attenuation.

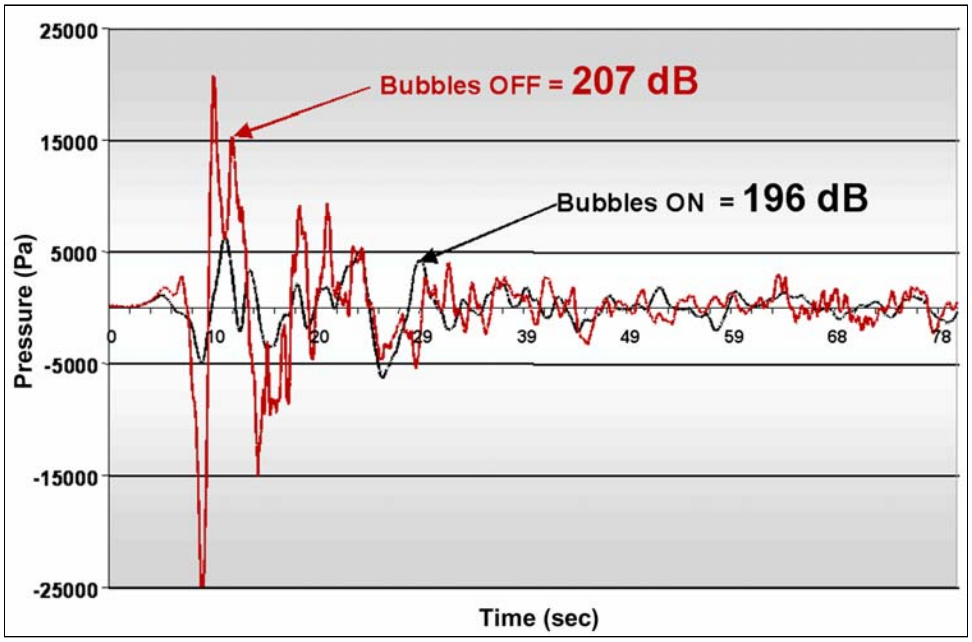


Figure 2-23. San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Re-Strike Air Bubble Curtain Waveforms

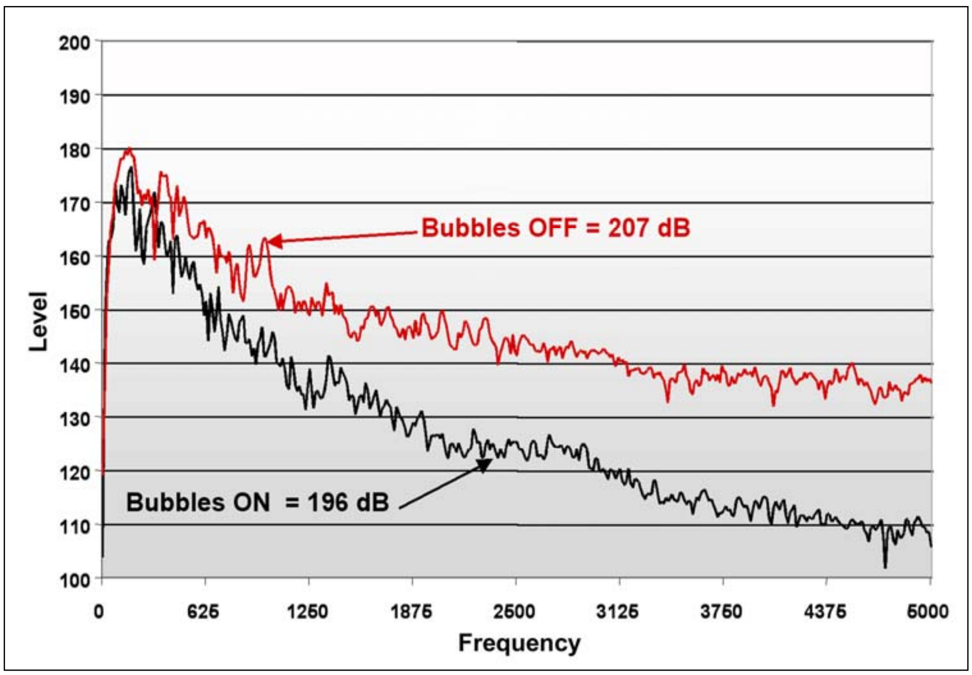


Figure 2-24. San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Re-Strike Frequency Spectra

Construction of the Benicia-Martinez Bridge provided additional complications primarily due to deep water and strong currents. To deal with these factors, an attenuator was developed consisting of nine different bubble rings (nine stages) stacked vertically, as shown in Figure 2-25. Five stages were typically operational. This system provided outstanding performance, with attenuation in the range of 15 to more than 30 dB across the entire frequency spectrum. Figures 2-26 and 2-27 show waveforms and frequency spectra for this system.

Figure 2-25. Multiple-Stage Unconfined Air Bubble Curtain System

For the Benicia-Martinez Bridge, the unconfined air bubble curtain system achieved about 15 to more than 30 dB of attenuation.

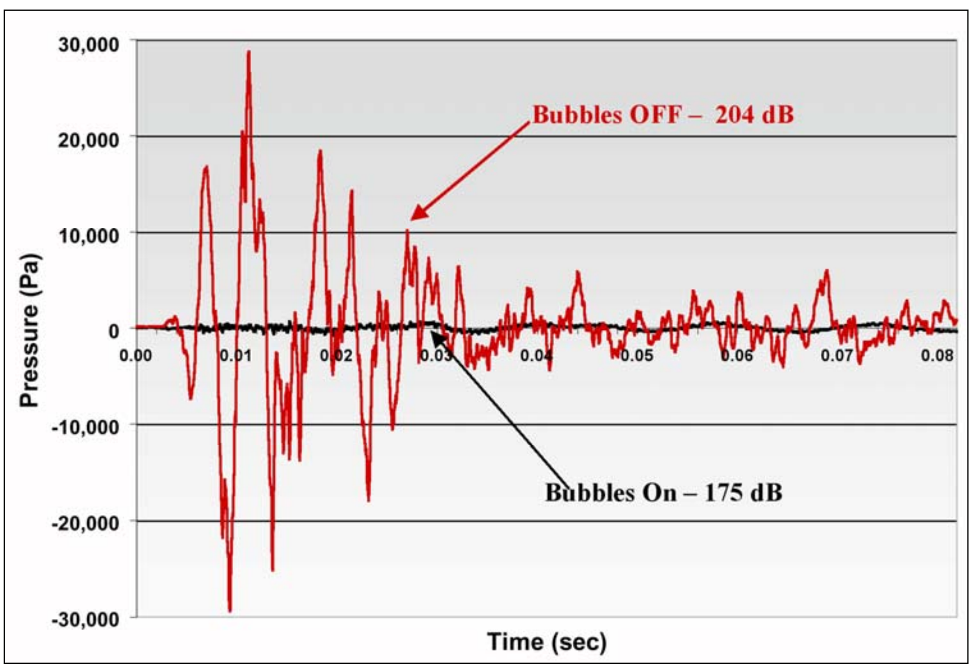


Figure 2-26. Benicia-Martinez Bridge Waveforms

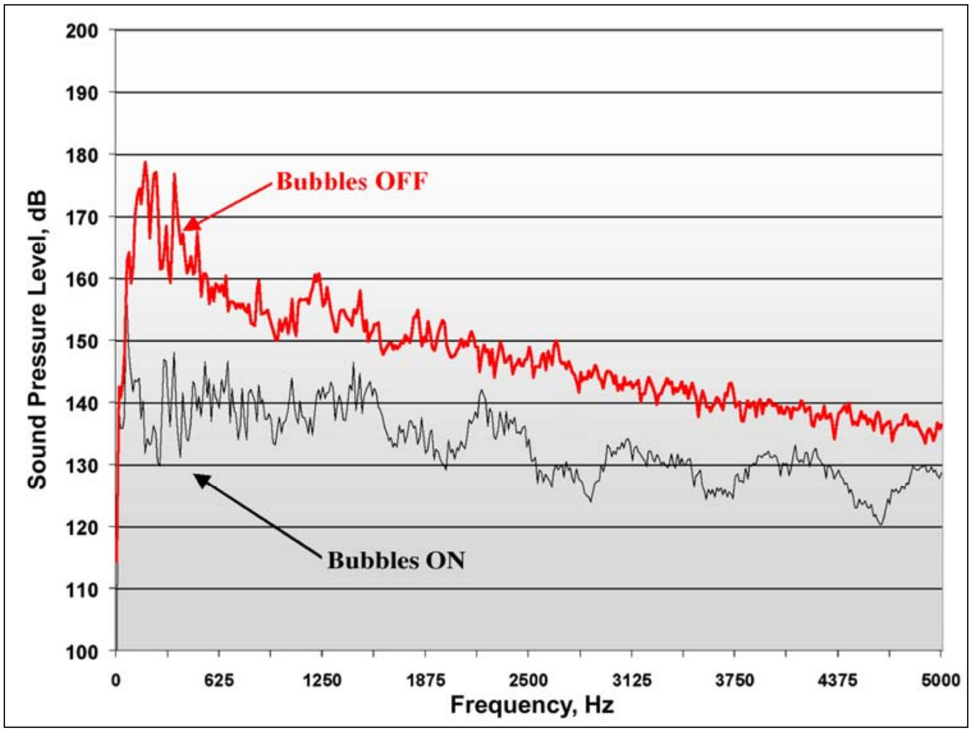


Figure 2-27. Benicia-Martinez Bridge Bubble Curtain Sound Pressure Reduction

Proprietary confined air bubble curtain systems have been developed by several manufacturers, in consultation with the Department and independently. Figure 2-28 shows the proprietary bubble curtain system that was used for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration Project. The system achieved 5 to 10 dB of attenuation. Although they can be effective, proprietary systems in some cases can be more costly than non-proprietary systems without providing significant benefit over non-proprietary systems.

Figure 2-28. Proprietary Confined Air Bubble Curtain System

For the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration Project, the air bubble curtain system achieved about 5 to 10 dB of attenuation.

Figures 2-29 and 2-30 show the isolation casing used on the Benicia-Martinez Bridge. The isolation casing provided attenuation similar to the nine-stage bubble curtain.

Figure 2-29. Confined Air Bubble Curtain System Used at an Isolation Pile at the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

For Benicia-Martinez Bridge Pier 9, the system achieved about 20 to 25 dB of attenuation—either with bubbles or no water.

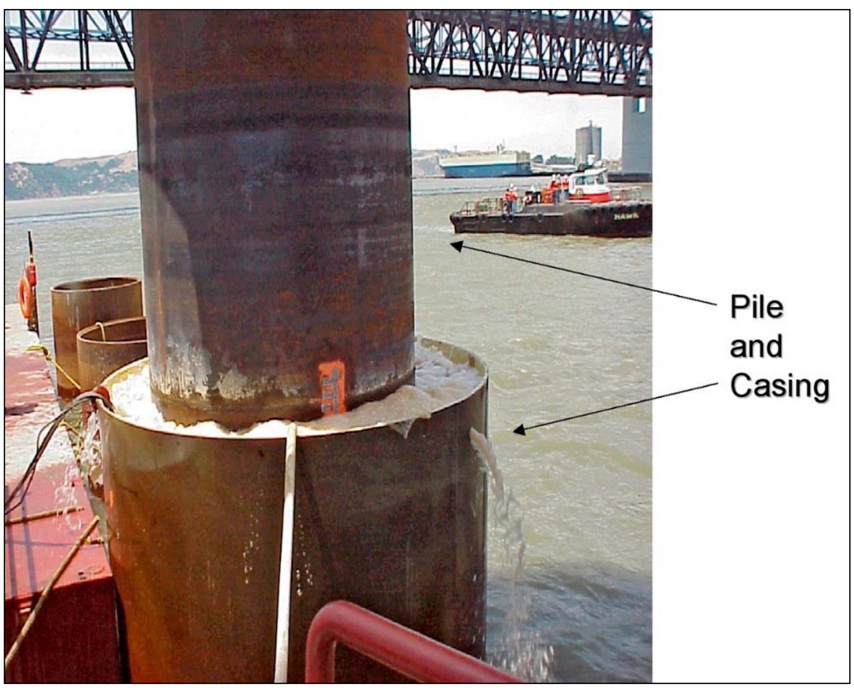


Figure 2-30. Confined Air Bubble Curtain System Used in an Isolation Pile at the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

For Benicia-Martinez Bridge Pier 9, an oversized-diameter pipe was used to decouple the pile from the water column.

Figure 2-31 shows a simple confined air bubble curtain system. This system proved to be very effective when properly deployed and operating, and achieved about 15 to 30 dB of attenuation.

Several confined and unconfined systems were tested for the Humboldt Bay Bridges Project. In this situation, the best attenuation system could provide only 10 to 15 dB of attenuation, because the ground-radiated sound appeared to dominate the attenuated received level. As a general rule, sound reductions of greater than 10 dB with attenuation systems cannot be reliably predicted.

Figure 2-31. Simple Confined Air Bubble Curtain System

For the Humboldt Bay Bridges Project, the system achieved about 10 to 15 dB of attenuation.

In 2006 Caltrans obtained a patent on a bubble curtain design. A copy of the patent is provided in Appendix V.

2.5.2 Coffer Dams

Cofferdams are sometimes used during in-water and near-water pile driving. A cofferdam may be used for acoustic or non-acoustic reasons. Cofferdams full of water provide only limited attenuation. Sometimes bubble curtains are used within a watered cofferdam if dewatering is not practical. Cofferdams that have been dewatered down to the mud line substantially reduce underwater pile driving sound. This is the best isolation that can be provided. The sound, however, is not eliminated because some of the energy is transmitted through the ground (as previously discussed).

2.5.3 Vibratory Hammers

Vibratory hammers are routinely used on smaller piles and to install sheet pile. Although peak sound levels can be substantially less than those produced by impact hammers, the total energy imparted can be comparable to impact driving because the vibratory hammer operates continuously and requires more time to install the pile. To meet pile resistance requirements for some projects, piles need to be struck multiple times with an impact hammer; this can preclude the use of vibratory hammers in many cases. Vibratory drivers, however, can be used as a mitigation measure to reduce the potential for adverse effects from an impact driver. A vibratory driver is first used to drive a pile as far as possible. An impact hammer is then used to drive the pile to its final position. There are no established injury criteria for vibration pile driving, and resource agencies in general are not concerned that vibratory pile driving will result in adverse effects on fish.

2.5.4 Other Sound Reduction Systems

Other sound reduction systems utilize mechanisms for oscillating, rotating, or pressing in the pile. These systems have limitations related to pile size and type, and pile resistance. No acoustical data are known to exist for these alternative systems. They are, however, expected to generate substantially lower sound pressures than either impact or vibratory hammers. Pre-drilling the hole for the pile also can serve as a means to reduce the number of pile strikes needed to place a pile.

2.6 References

Frasier River Pile and Dredge Ltd. (undated). Bubble Curtain Systems for Use during Marine Pile Driving.

Richardson, J. W., C. R. Greene, C. I. Malme, and D. H. Thomson. 1995. *Marine Mammals and Noise*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Chapter 3 Fundamentals of Hydroacoustic Impacts on Fish

3.1 Introduction

Sound generated by percussive pile driving has the potential to affect fish in several ways. Potential effects range from alteration of behavior to physical injury or mortality. These effects depend on the intensity and characteristics of the sound, the distance and location of the fish in the water column relative to the sound source, the size and mass of the fish, and the fish's anatomical characteristics (Yelverton et al. 1975—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005).

Because little was known about the effects of underwater pile driving noise on fish, the Department commissioned the preparation of several white papers to collect and evaluate literature that could be used to establish interim criteria for the analysis of pile driving impacts on fish. Hastings and Popper (2005) reviewed the literature on the effects of sound on fishes, and identified data gaps and potential studies that would be needed to address areas of uncertainty relative to the measurement of sound and the response of fishes to sound. This paper concluded that duel interim criteria were warranted, including criteria for single-strike peak pressure and criteria for single-strike accumulated pressure (i.e., SEL).

The need to further research the applicability and application of the dual interim criteria led to the publication of two additional white papers, Popper et al. (2005) and Carlson et al. (2007), which ultimately led to the interagency Agreement in Principle for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities (Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group 2008). This agreement is contained in Appendix IV and is discussed in Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*. Refer to the Department's website for copies of these studies and additional related information:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm.

A technical report prepared by ANSI-Accredited Standards Committee S3/SC1, *Sound Exposure Guidelines for Fishes and Sea Turtles* (Popper et al. 2014), provides a significant update to the body of work related to the effects of pile driving sound on fish. It summarizes current key research related to this topic.

This chapter summarizes those papers' discussions of the anatomy and physiology of fishes that are fundamental to understanding the types of impacts that could result from pile driving.

3.2 Types of Fishes

More than 29,000 fish species have been identified worldwide (Froese and Pauly 2005). With such a large and diverse group, there are many ways to classify fish species. One way is to distinguish between cartilaginous and bony fishes. Cartilaginous fishes include sharks and rays, while bony fishes compose the vast majority of fish species—including the more advanced family of teleosts (e.g., salmon, tuna, perch, sturgeon, and most commercially important species). Research completed thus far on hearing in fish has been based primarily on bony fishes.

Fish also can be categorized by the way they hear. All fish fall into two hearing categories: hearing generalists (such as salmon and trout) and hearing specialists (such as herring and shad). Hearing generalists sense sound directly through their inner ear but also sense sound energy from the swim bladder. Hearing specialists are more complex. Many of the hearing specialists have evolved any of a number of different mechanisms to couple the swim bladder (or other gas-filled structure) to the ear. The swim bladder is stimulated by the pressure of sound waves and serves as a transducer that re-radiates energy in the form of particle motion that is detected by the inner ear. This anatomy means that hearing specialists have greater hearing sensitivity than hearing generalists have. Therefore, hearing specialists are more susceptible to impacts from loud noises.

Most teleost fishes maintain their buoyancy by inflating and deflating their swim bladder with air. Fish with swim bladders can be categorized into two groups. Physostomes are fish with ducted swim bladders (e.g., salmon, trout, pike, sturgeon, and catfish). In physostomous fish, the swim bladder is directly connected to the esophagus by a thin tube, allowing the fish to expel air from the swim bladder through this tube and out of the mouth. The second group, called physoclists (e.g., perch and tuna), have non-ducted swim bladders. Physoclistous fish fill their swim bladder by forcibly excreting oxygen from an area rich in arterial and venous blood vessels, called the gas gland, and reabsorbing gas into their bloodstream at a site called the oval. Some physostomous fish also have a gas gland or resorbant area in addition to the pneumatic duct, but these tend to be weakly developed in comparison with physoclistous fish.

The distinction between physostomes and physoclists has the potential to inform how fish are affected by underwater noise. Tissue damage can occur when sound passes through a fluid tissue (e.g., muscle) into a gas void (swim bladder) because gas is more compressible. When a fish is exposed to a sound wave, gas in the swim bladder expands more than surrounding tissue during periods of underpressure and contracts more than surrounding tissue during periods of overpressure. This expansion and contraction can result in swim bladder tissue damage, including rupture of the swim bladder (Alpin 1947, Coker and Hollis 1950, Gaspin 1975, Yelverton et al. 1975—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Yelverton et al. (1975—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) found that physostomous fish were just as vulnerable to injury and death due to underwater sound impulses created by blasts as physoclistous fish. However, Hastings and Popper (2005) note that fish with ducted swim bladders may be able to respond to other types of sound with longer rise or fall times that would allow them more time to respond to the change in pressure by releasing air from the swim bladder.

3.3 Fish Hearing

Fish live in highly complex acoustic environments that appear to require the animals to perform “auditory scene analysis” in essentially the same manner as other vertebrates. Moreover, because of how sound propagates in water, fish are able to extract the direction of a sound source by directly sensing the motion of the sound particles traveling through the water. Fish are also able to use sound to communicate, locate prey, avoid predators, and gain an understanding of their physical environment.

Two independent but related sensory systems in fish are used for "hearing," the inner ear and the lateral line system. The primary auditory structures in a fish's inner ear are sensory hair cells and otoliths. Otolithic organs are dense calcified structures that overlie a tissue layer containing numerous sensory hair cells. Because the body of a fish contains mostly water, and otoliths are stiffer and denser than the rest of the body, sound will penetrate the otoliths more slowly than the rest of the fish. The difference between the motion of sound through the fish and the otoliths stimulates the sensory hair cells, resulting in detection of sound in the brain. Otolithic organs contain thousands of these sensory hair cells and can be damaged by exposures to loud sounds. However, these hair cells continue to be produced throughout much of the fish's life (Hastings and Popper 2005). There is also evidence that fish can replace or repair sensory hair cells that have been damaged in both the inner ear and lateral line (Meyers and Corwin 2008). Lombarte et al. (1993—cited in Meyers and Corwin 2008) showed that, when damaged by exposure to certain drugs, fish were able to produce new hair cells to replace the ones lost. More recently, Smith et al. (2006) demonstrated that goldfish with hair cells damaged by sound exposure were able to produce replacement hair cells to a level similar to the recovery seen in earlier studies regarding hair cell damage by drug treatment.

Organs in the lateral line (neuromasts) can detect the relative motion of water past these organs when hair cells are stimulated by this movement. These cells detect water motion relative to the fish within a few body lengths of the animal (Coombs and Montgomery 1999, Popper et al. 2003—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Sound passing through water creates particle motion, which is detected by the neuromasts and transmitted via neurons to the brain.

Data on hearing capabilities exist for perhaps only 100 of the 29,000 or more extant species of fish (Popper et al. 2003—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Consequently, any extrapolation of hearing capabilities between different species, especially those that are taxonomically distant, must be done with the greatest caution.

3.4 Potential Effects of Pile Driving Noise on Fish Hearing

Exposure to low levels of sound for a relatively long period of time, or exposure to higher levels of sound for shorter periods of time, may result in auditory tissue damage (damage to the sensory hair cells of the ear) or temporary hearing loss—referred to as a "temporary threshold shift" (TTS). The level and duration of exposure that cause auditory tissue damage and TTS vary widely and can be affected by factors such as repetition rate of the sound, pressure level, frequency, duration, size and life history stage of the organism. Both peak sound pressure level and SEL can affect hearing through auditory tissue damage or TTS. TTS will occur at lower levels than auditory tissue damage. Vulnerability to non-auditory tissue damage increases as the mass of the fish decreases. Therefore, non-auditory tissue damage criteria differ depending on the mass of the fish. Carlson et al. (2007) proposed separate peak and SEL interim criteria for auditory tissue damage and TTS for both hearing generalists and hearing specialists (see Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*, for a complete description of proposed interim thresholds for pile driving).

By definition, hearing recovers after TTS. The extent of TTS (how many dB of hearing loss) depends on the variables listed above, among others. Fish may recover from TTS minutes to days following exposure. Popper et al. (2005) found that both hearing specialists and generalists were able to recover from varying levels of substantial TTS in less than 18 hours after exposure.

An additional possible effect on hearing from loud underwater sound is referred to in the literature as a “permanent threshold shift” (PTS). PTS is a permanent loss of hearing and is generally accompanied by death of the sensory hair cells of the ear. There is only a small body of peer-reviewed literature showing that exposure to extremely high sound pressure levels can destroy the sensory cells in fish ears (Enger 1981, Hastings et al. 1996, McCauley et al. 2003—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005).

Indirect effects of hearing loss in fish may relate to the fish’s reduced fitness, which may increase the animal’s vulnerability to predators and result in the reduction or elimination of the ability to locate prey, inability to communicate, and inability to sense the physical environment.

3.5 Potential Effects of Pile Driving Noise on Fish Anatomy and Physiology

Compared with data for the effects of exposure to sound on fish hearing capabilities and the ear, there are even fewer peer-reviewed data regarding effects on other aspects of fish anatomy and physiology. It is widely known that exposure to sounds at high levels can alter the physiology and structure of terrestrial vertebrates (e.g., Fletcher and Busnel 1978, Saunders et al. 1991—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Effects may include cellular changes, organ system changes, or stress level effects caused by exposure to sound. However, these effects have not been observed at the lower sound frequencies generated by impact pile driving.

As described in Section 3.2, *Types of Fishes*, gas oscillations induced by high sound pressure levels can cause the swim bladder in fishes to tear or rupture. Several gray literature reports (e.g., Alpin 1947, Coker and Hollis 1950, Gaspin 1975, Yelverton et al. 1975—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) have detected this effect on fish as a result of exposure to explosive stimuli. Similar results have been seen from pile driving (Caltrans 2001 and 2004—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Carlson et al. (2007) found that the literature does not show a correlation between non-auditory tissue damage and peak sound pressure level, but that tissue damage is related to the mechanical work (or force) exerted on tissue, which can be estimated by $SEL_{cumulative}$. The effect of the accumulated sound energy on a fish is dependent on the mass of the fish (see Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*, for a complete description of proposed interim thresholds for pile driving).

Other non-auditory damage to fish caused by sound has been explored in studies by Hastings 1990 and 1995, Turnpenny et al. 1994, and Caltrans 2001 and 2004—all cited in Hastings and

Popper 2005. This damage includes capillary rupture in skin, neurotrauma, eye hemorrhage, swim bladder rupture, and, in some cases, death.

Sound at sufficiently high pressure levels can generate bubbles from micronuclei in the blood and other tissues such as fat (ter Haar et al. 1982—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). Because blood vessels in fish are particularly small in diameter, bubbles that are forced to come out of solution at low frequencies could cause an embolus or clot and burst small capillaries. Bursting of small capillaries can also occur in the eyes of fish, where tissue might have high levels of gas saturation (Gisiner 1998, Turnpenny et al. 1994—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005).

Because high-level transient sound can cause traumatic brain injury, it is suspected that fish with swim bladder projections or other air bubbles near the ear could be susceptible to neurotrauma when exposed to high sound pressure levels. In humans, effects can include instantaneous loss of consciousness, sustained feelings of anxiety and confusion, and amnesia, and may result in death (Elsayed 1997, Knudsen and Oen 2003—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). In several studies, Hastings (1990 and 1995—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) reported "acoustic stunning" in four blue gouramis (*Trichogaster trichopterus*). The loss of consciousness exhibited by these fish could have been caused by neurotrauma, especially because a bubble of air in the mouth cavity located near the brain enhances the hearing capability of this species (Yan 1998, Ladich and Popper 2004—all cited in Hastings and Popper 2005).

It is important to note that no studies have examined the longer term effects of exposure to pile driving sounds that may lead to delayed death or, perhaps, to other alteration in behavior that could affect the survival of individuals or of populations of fishes. Non-mortality effects may include temporary injury that heals, injury that leads to a slow death (e.g., breakdown of tissues in some organ system), temporary or permanent hearing loss, movement of fish away from feeding grounds, and—as discussed in Section 3.4—effects such as reduced fitness, vulnerability to predators, reduction or elimination of the ability to locate prey, inability to communicate, and inability to sense the physical environment. Thus, future investigations must not only examine immediate mortality of fish as a result of pile driving noise exposure but must also consider longer term effects on physiology and behavior, as well as effects on fishes that are at some distance from the source.

It is also important to consider the effects of cumulative exposures related to mortality, physiology, and behavior, including the effects of exposure to multiple impacts from pile driving and strike intermittency (e.g., one strike every few seconds to several per second). One issue in this regard is whether exposure to a very frequent sequence of high-level sounds has a different effect than exposure to a sequence that allows some "recovery" time between sounds. Another aspect of cumulative exposure that needs consideration is the potential effect on a fish that is exposed to pile driving and then exposed again to pile driving noise several hours, days, or weeks later.

3.6 Life History Considerations

Key variables that appear to control the physical interaction of sound with fishes include the size of the fish relative to the wavelength of sound, mass of the fish, anatomical variation, and location of the fish in the water column relative to the sound source (Yelverton et al. 1975—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005; Carlson et al. 2007).

Whereas it is possible that some (although not all) species of fish would swim away from a sound source, thereby decreasing exposure to sound, larvae and eggs are often found at the mercy of currents or move very slowly. Eggs also can be stationary and, thus, could be exposed to extensive human-generated sound if it is presented in the surrounding water column or substrate. Data are limited concerning the effects of sound on developing eggs and larvae. A study by Banner and Hyatt (1973) found increased mortality was found in eggs and embryos of sheepshead minnow (*Cyprinodon variegates*) exposed to broadband noise (100–1,000 Hz) that was about 15 dB above ambient sound level. However, the same study found that hatched fry of sheepshead minnow and fry of longnose killifish (*Fundulus similes*) were not affected by the same exposure.

3.7 Behavioral Effects

Little is known about the effects of pile driving on fish behavior. Currently, data are lacking on behavioral responses to pile driving, such as a startle response to noise or movement away from highly utilized habitats affected by sound (Hastings and Popper 2005). Field studies by Engås et al. (1996—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) and Engås and Løkkeborg (2002—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005), while not actually observing the behavior of fish, showed that there was a significant decline in the catch rate of haddock and cod that lasted for several days after termination of air gun use, after which time the catch rate returned to normal. The authors concluded that the catch decline resulted from fish moving from the area because of the sound of the air guns, although there were no direct data to support this conclusion. Again, in 2004, this same group (Slotte et al. 2004—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) showed parallel results for several additional pelagic species that included blue whiting and Norwegian spring spawning herring. Slotte et al. (2004—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005) found that fishes in the area of air guns appeared to go to greater depths compared with their vertical position prior to the air gun usage. A non-peer reviewed report by Gausland (2003—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005), however, suggests that the declines in the catch rate observed in these studies may have resulted from other factors and are not statistically different than the normal variation in catch rates over several seasons. Another study completed on a coral reef found no permanent changes in behavior, and no animals appeared to leave a reef when subjected to air guns (Wardle et al. 2001—cited in Hastings and Popper 2005). The studies raise questions on how territorial fish may react to high sound levels.

Pile driving sound has the potential to produce longer term impacts on behavior, such as the inability of fish to reach valuable habitat upstream of a continuous noise source or difficulty in locating mates or food due to continuous sounds from pile driving. These longer term potential impacts on behavior have not been studied.

3.8 Environmental Factors to Consider in Analysis

Effects of sound on fish hearing and physiology likely will depend in part on the local environment, such as channel morphology, depth of water, and tidal conditions. Hastings and Popper (2005) state that the characteristics of the underwater sound field need to be investigated. Underwater sound propagation models need to be developed for locations of interest and integrated with pile structural acoustics models to estimate received levels of sound pressure and particle velocity in the vicinity of pile driving operations. These models will help to define zones of impact on fishes. Model results will need to be verified with field measurements of underwater sound pressure.

Chapter 4, *Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish*, addresses the framework and process for the analysis of pile driving noise impacts based on current research and information.

3.9 References

Banner, Arnold and Martin Hyatt. 1973. Effects of Noise on Eggs and Larvae of Two Estuarine Fishes. *Trans. Amer. Fish Soc., 1973*, No. 1.

Carlson, T., M. Hastings, and A. N. Popper. 2007. *Update on Recommendations for Revised Interim Sound Exposure Criteria for Fish during Pile Driving Activities*. Memorandum to Suzanne Theiss (California Department of Transportation) and Paul Wagner (Washington Department of Transportation).

Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group. 2008. *Agreement in Principal for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities*. Memorandum. June 12. Available at: http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/files/fhwgcriteria_agree.pdf. (Also see *Appendix IV*.)

Froese, R. and D. Pauly (eds.). 2005. FishBase. Version 07/2005. Available at: http:\\www.fishbase.org.

Hastings, M. C. and A. N. Popper. 2005. *Effects of Sound on Fish*. Prepared for Jones & Stokes and the California Department of Transportation. Sacramento, CA.

Meyers, J. R. and J. T. Corwin. 2008. Morphological Correlates of Regeneration and Repair in the Inner Ear. In *Springer Handbook of Auditory Research*, Vol. 33: Hair Cell Regeneration, Repair, and Protection. R. J. Salvi, A. N. Popper, and R. R. Fay, eds.

Popper, A. N., M. E. Smith, P. A. Cott, B. W. Hanna, A. O. MacGillivray, M. E. Austin, and D. A. Mann. 2005. Effects of Exposure to Seismic Airgun Use on Hearing of Three Fish Species. *J. Acoustic Soc. Am.*, 117:3958-3971.

Popper A. N., A. D. Hawkins, R. R. Fay, D. Mann, S. Bartol, Th. Carlson, S. Coombs, W. T. Ellison, R. Gentry, M. B. Halvorsen, S. Løkkeborg, P. Rogers, B. L. Southall, D. G. Zeddies, W. N. Tavolga. 2014. *Sound Exposure Guidelines for Fishes and Sea Turtles*. A Technical Report prepared by ANSI-Accredited Standards Committee S3/SC1 and registered with ANSI.

Smith, M. E., A. B. Coffin, D. L. Miller, and A. N. Popper. 2006. Anatomical and Functional Recovery of the Goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) Ear following Noise Exposure. *Journal of Experimental Biology* 209 (Pt 21):4193–4202.

Chapter 4 Framework and Process for Environmental Analysis of Pile Driving Impacts on Fish

4.1 Introduction

Projects that involve driving piles in or near water typically require a number of federal, state, and local permits. Acquisition of these permits requires evaluation of the project to ensure its compliance with the laws and regulations pertaining to the environment and the geographical area of the project. This chapter focuses on one element of the permitting process: the environmental analysis required by the permitting agencies to evaluate the effect on fish of underwater sound pressure generated by pile driving. This chapter describes the permitting and regulatory requirements for pile driving activities and the approaches and information necessary to evaluate potential project-related impacts. Best management practices (BMPs), avoidance and minimization measures, and performance standards are addressed. In addition to discussing the process for preparing an impact analysis, this chapter presents empirical data from projects involving pile driving and lessons learned from impact analyses conducted for prior projects.

4.2 Permits and Regulatory Requirements for In-Water and Near-Water Pile Driving Activities

Table 4-1 identifies the permits and approvals that typically require an evaluation of underwater sound pressure generated by pile driving and the types of information that are included in the analysis and documentation. For a complete discussion of permits and approvals required for Department projects and associated regulatory procedures, please refer to the Department Standard Environmental Reference (SER) at: http://www.dot.ca.gov/ser.index.htm.

4.3 Information Needed to Evaluate Impacts

The following discussion addresses the information needs for and approaches to evaluating impacts on fish caused by underwater sound generated from pile driving. The permit application and documentation process used by the Department is outlined in the SER. Table 4-2 outlines the information needs and the level of detail required to evaluate the hydroacoustic effects of pile driving on fish. In addition. The Department has developed a stand-alone Hydroacoustic Project Information Checklist that can be used to gather the information typically necessary for a hydroacoustic analysis. A copy of the checklist is provided in Appendix V, *Tools for Preparing Biological Assessment*.

Table 4-1. Federal and State Permits and Authorizations Typically Required for Projects Resulting in Underwater Sound Pressure from Pile Driving

Permit or Authorization	Type of Project and Relation to Sound Impacts on Fish
Federal Permits and Authorizations	
National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) review *Federal lead agency*	For actions that may adversely affect environmental resources. NEPA mandates that federal[1] agencies evaluate projects for potential adverse effects on environmental resources. This evaluation must summarize the significance of impacts of pile driving sound on fish and fish habitat, and on threatened and endangered species.
Clean Water Act Section 404 *U.S. Army Corps of Engineers [Corps]*	For actions that dredge or fill waters of the United States. Temporary and permanent piles placed in waters of the United States are considered fill, and projects that include pile driving in waters of the United States require a Section 404 permit. The Corps must consult with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and the National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries) (collectively, the Services) to ensure that issuance of a Section 404 permit is in compliance with the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA) (see below).
Endangered Species Act *NOAA Fisheries and USFWS*	For actions that may adversely affect species listed as threatened or endangered. The ESA requires that all federal[1] actions avoid and minimize potential take of listed species and the adverse modification of critical habitat. "Take" includes harm and harassment of listed species. Sound from pile driving and other sources needs to be evaluated to determine the potential for effects on species that could result in take. This evaluation must identify effects that result in injury or death and effects that modify the behavior of the fish (an action that is likely to injure wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns such as breeding, feeding, or sheltering). If an action has the potential to affect listed species or their habitat, informal or formal consultation with the Services is required. The analysis for underwater sound impacts would be provided in the Biological Assessment prepared for the consultation. The Services then determine whether the action would jeopardize the continued existence of listed species or destroy or adversely modify designated critical habitat. The Services can require terms and conditions to further minimize or avoid take.
Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) essential fish habitat (EFH) *NOAA Fisheries*	For actions that may adversely affect EFH. The federal lead agency must consult with NOAA Fisheries on all federal[1] projects that may adversely affect EFH (defined as those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth). The MSFCMA addresses effects on habitat (not on individuals of the species). Underwater sound generated by pile driving can be considered a temporary impact on EFH.
Coastal Zone Management Act *Delegated state and local agencies*	See *State Permits and Authorizations* below.
Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act *Multiple agency coordination*	For actions that affect, control, or modify surface waters, including wetlands. Federal agencies permitting actions that include impoundment, diversion, deepening, or other modification of waters must coordinate with the federal and state fish and wildlife agencies (USFWS, NOAA Fisheries, and California Department of Fish and Wildlife [DFW]). The fish and wildlife agencies review the proposed federal project (through the NEPA or Section 404 permit processes) and can recommend measures to prevent loss of or damage to fish and wildlife resources, including recommendations for non-listed species.

[1] "Federal" in this table means any project that is funded, permitted, or otherwise approved or carried out by a federal agency.

Table 4-1. (Continued)

Permit or Authorization	Type of Project and Relation to Sound Impacts on Fish
State Permits and Authorizations	
California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) *State lead agency*	For state[2] projects that may adversely affect environmental resources. CEQA requires identification of significant impacts and mitigation measures, and analysis of project alternatives. CEQA requires an evaluation of all potential effects on aquatic resources, including fish species listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA or the California Endangered Species Act (CESA). The underwater sound pressure analysis generally is based on an assessment of such effects conducted as part of the ESA or CESA documentation, depending on the federal[3] or state[2] funding or authorities.
Lake or Streambed Alteration Agreement *Department of Fish & Wildlife*	For any project that would divert, obstruct, or change the natural flow or bed, channel, or bank of any river, stream, or lake a California Department of Fish & Wildlife Section 1602 authorization is required. In-water pile driving is included in the above categories. Potential sound impacts from pile driving would need to be addressed but generally would be summarized, with references to the ESA or CESA documentation. If the project would result in substantial adverse effects on existing fish or wildlife, DFW is required to propose reasonable project changes to protect the resource.
California Endangered Species Act *Department of Fish & Wildlife*	For project that require a California Department of Fish & Game Section 2081 permit. The process roughly parallels the federal ESA in providing protection to state-listed species. CESA does not officially identify "harm and harass" (non-lethal effects) as take of a species, as the ESA does; however, adverse modification of habitat is considered take if the modifications would be a proximate cause of death. Concerning underwater sound, CESA requires an evaluation of physical injury to state-listed species but not behavioral effects that do not result in death. CESA also requires mitigation for the take (death or proximate cause of death) of state-listed species, in contrast to the ESA.
Coastal Development Permit *California Coastal Commission (CCC)* Consistency Determination *CCC and San Francisco Bay Conservation and Development Commission [BCDC]*	For any project located in a coastal zone with the potential to affect coastal resources. The CCC or BCDC (or other local jurisdictional entity) reviews proposed projects with the potential to affect coastal resources to ensure project consistency with the Coastal Zone Management Plan and California's federally approved Coastal Management Program (i.e., the Coastal Act). The Consistency Determination would require compliance with the ESA and CESA.

[2] "State" in this table applies to projects or programs proposed to be funded, carried out, or approved by California state and local public agencies.

[3] "Federal" in this table means any project that is funded, permitted, or otherwise approved or carried out by a federal agency.

Table 4-2. Information Needed for Evaluation of Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish

Information Needed	Level of Detail
Project Description	
Description of the project	Describe the location, purpose and need, design, construction, and operation and maintenance activities of the project. Identify construction methods, schedule, and proposed mitigation measures related to pile driving activities. Identify the alternatives that were considered and rejected.
Environmental Setting	
Description of the physical, chemical, and habitat conditions in the vicinity of the project	Describe channel dimensions and geometry, hydrology (e.g., average seasonal flows), habitat type (e.g., freshwater tidal stream), and key physical, chemical, and habitat conditions in the project action area affecting sound transmission and species presence/abundance (e.g., water depth).
Description of Piles and Pile Driving Activities	
Type(s) and number of piles	Specify the number, composition, size, and location of the piles (e.g., in water, within 200 feet of the edge of water). Catalog and identify the locations of both temporary and permanent piles.
Location of piles in the channel	Provide scaled drawings that include the water depth in profile view and the channel width in plan view. Illustrate the approximate locations of temporary and permanent piles. Include location and distance of piles driven out of water up to 200 feet away or to ordinary high water, whichever is greater.
Type(s) of pile driver(s) to be used	Identify whether impact, vibratory, or other type of hammer would be used to drive piles. Identify whether pre-drilling would be used. Specify the approximate size and energy rating of the hammer, if the information is available.
Overall project phasing and pile driving schedule	Indicate the total project schedule, as well as construction phases and the pile driving schedule. Discuss for all phases what piles would be driven, when piles would be driven, the size of piles to be driven during each phase, and any actions such as the need for splicing or welding pile sections. For underwater sound pressure analyses, describe the sequence and duration of all in-water and near-shore (within 200 feet of shore) pile driving activity.
Number of strikes per pile by type	Estimate the number of strikes per pile by pile type and size (engineer's estimate)
Number of piles driven each day and total pile driving days	Provide a reasonable upper limit for the number of piles that are anticipated to be driven in a day (i.e., estimate the number on the high side), the number of hours of pile driving expected in a day, and the total number of days of pile driving activities. Include a discussion of the duration of activities between each pile drive (e.g., does the driver need to be repositioned between each drive; do pile sections need to be welded before continuing the driving?) The time between driving events can affect sound exposure level calculations.
Description of cofferdam installation and uses	Cofferdams are sometimes constructed to isolate pile footings. If so, provide detailed information regarding when, where, and how they would be constructed, what type of hammer would be used for installation, when the cofferdam would be removed, and how that would be accomplished. Identify whether cofferdams would be dewatered.
Description of any sound attenuation that will be used	Identify the type of attenuation anticipated to be used (e.g., bubble curtain, isolation casing, cushion block, or dewatered cofferdam). Indicate which piles the attenuation would be used for. State the anticipated decrease in transmitted sound pressure level from the sound attenuation device. See Chapter 2, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics*, and Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*.

Table 4-2. (Continued)

Information Needed	Level of Detail
Description of Other Activities that Could Generate Underwater Sound Pressure	
Description of activities	Identify existing structures to be removed and dynamic methods that will be used, such as hoe rams, jack hammers, and blasting.
Methodology	
Methodologies for evaluation	Describe the methodologies used to evaluate the potential effects on fish of pile driving sound. Section 4.6.3 describes the calculation of sound transmission loss used to evaluate sound attenuation through water. Note any site conditions that could block or attenuate sound (e.g., river bends and existing in-water structures); the transmission loss calculations in Section 4.6.3 do not account for attenuating effects of structures.
Results	
Pile driving-generated sound estimates	Estimate the sound generated from each pile type and size with attenuation (if used). Sound monitoring has been conducted for numerous pile driving projects. Data in Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, may be used to estimate source sound pressure levels for underwater sound generation by pile size and composition. See Section 4.6.2, *Determining Expected Pile Drive Sound Pressure Levels*, and Chapter 2, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics*.
Project action area determination	Define the project action area for pile driving-generated sound. See Section 4.6.6.1, *Impact Assessment for Construction during Migration Periods*. The distance at which the generated underwater sound attenuates to the ambient sound level is generally considered the project action area for pile driving sound, even though the distance that the sound is attenuated to the injury threshold (see Section 4.6.4) is a much smaller area.
Acoustic impact area determination	Estimate the attenuation of sound through water to the injury threshold (see Section 4.6.4). See Section 4.6.6.2, *Impact Assessment for Construction during Non-Migration Periods or When Fish are Otherwise Present*.
Special-Status Species	
Special-status species in the project action area	Identify the special-status species that could occur in the project action area. Contact USFWS, NOAA Fisheries, and DFW to identify federally listed and state-listed species that could occur in the project action area. Also document whether the project action area is located in designated critical habitat.
Fish presence, life history stages, and habitat type	Describe historical and current species presence, life history stages, and habitat in the project action area. Identify the timing of various life stages that could occur in the project action area (e.g., spawning, rearing, and migration). Specify documented migration periods and in-water work windows approved by NOAA Fisheries, USFWS, and DFW.
Consultation History	
Agency consultation	Provide documentation of all interactions with USFWS and NOAA Fisheries regarding the project, including the initiation of the consultation process (documentation of meetings, calls, and decisions, and prior written documentation). Describe any changes to the proposed project required or requested by these agencies.
Impact Assessment	
Effects on listed and other species and habitats	Estimate the area in which sound pressure levels, with any attenuation, exceed injury thresholds. (If practical, specify the number of fish potentially exposed to such levels) (see Section 4.6.6, *Impact Assessment for Construction during Migration Periods*).

Table 4-2. (Continued)

Information Needed	Level of Detail
Mitigation	
Proposed mitigation	Identify mitigation other than attenuation that would avoid and minimize impacts on listed species and their habitats. This mitigation may include pile type or placement, types of pile drivers used, and project timing.
Best management practices	Identify any best management practices included in the project. These practices may include use of attenuation devices such as air bubble curtains, cofferdams, isolation casings, and cushion blocks.
Performance measures	Identify any performance measures, such as the maximum allowed underwater sound pressure levels.
Mitigation for take of listed species	Identify potential mitigation for take of state-listed species. Under the California Endangered Species Act, the state requires mitigation for take of listed species. The amount of mitigation required must offset the loss of individuals resulting from the project, including any fish mortality from fatal exposure to pile driving sound.
Essential Fish Habitat Analysis	
Essential fish habitat (EFH)	Identify EFH within the project action area. The EFH analysis typically is provided as an appendix to the Biological Assessment. In California, there are three EFH types: Pacific Coast Groundfish, Coastal Pelagic Species, and Pacific Salmon (see Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*). The Pacific Salmon EFH in California consists of only Chinook and coho salmon habitats.

As noted in Table 4-2, most analyses will require a detailed project description that identifies the purpose and need for the project and the alternatives that were considered and rejected.

The project components should be described in sufficient detail to support the analysis of pile driving effects on fish and aquatic habitats. Typically, this information is collected by the sound analyst in coordination with the project engineers. This initial description should specify all pile driving activities associated with the project, including which piles (e.g., permanent and temporary piles, and cofferdams) would be located in or near surface waters. A description of the construction methods that may be used (e.g., construction site isolation from water [cofferdams or water bladders], dewatering of the isolation structure, construction of footings, methods of demolition of the structure being replaced, temporary bridges or trestles, temporary fill, use of barges or tugs, and use of explosives) is important because methods would contribute to the level, attenuation, and duration of underwater sound generation.

The information gathered for the Description of Piles and Pile Driving Activities in Table 4-2 is required to estimate the underwater sound that the project is expected to generate. The pile size and type and pile driver type are factors for estimating the unattenuated peak sound pressure level and single-strike SEL. These estimates require further refinement if some method of sound attenuation is planned (e.g., a bubble curtain, cofferdam, isolation casing, or cushion blocks). The information about number of piles, number of strikes per pile, and phasing of pile driving activities is used to estimate the underwater sound pressure level that a fish might be exposed to through a pile driving event (e.g., 1 day of pile driving), which is referred to as accumulated SEL ($SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$).

Information on the consultation history typically refers to any consultation with USFWS, NOAA Fisheries, or DFW regarding project-related potential effects on federally listed or state-listed species and their habitat. It is particularly important to discuss any modifications to the project design or timing in response to federal, state, or local agency requirements or recommendations.

A description of special-status fish species is required to determine which species and life histories may be exposed to and affected by underwater sound during pile driving. Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*, provides information on special-status species that generally may occur throughout the state and within isolated habitats. The project biologist should contact NOAA Fisheries, USFWS, and DFW to determine which species to address for the watershed in which the project is located. The discussion should address federally listed and state-listed species and the potential presence of other sensitive fish species in the project action area. The presence of EFH needs to be determined (see Section 4.5.4, *Protected Status*). Many of the listed species are anadromous, which means that hatching and some duration of juvenile rearing occurs in freshwater, the juvenile fish migrate to the ocean to rear to adults, and the adults then return to their natal freshwater areas to spawn. The location of the project in the watershed and the timing of the project are important factors in determining the presence and relative abundance of fish that could be exposed to pile driving sound. NOAA Fisheries, USFWS, and DFW staff should be contacted to determine the approved in-water work windows during which pile driving can occur. The agencies have established these timing windows to minimize the potential for listed fish species to be present in the project area during construction activities.

In some locations, sensitive fish species are present year-round. For instance, rearing coho salmon and steelhead can be present throughout the year, particularly in coastal streams. Green sturgeon is considered present year-round in the Bay-Delta and Sacramento River, and potentially the lower reaches of the San Joaquin River and tributaries of the two rivers. Eulachon, Sacramento splittail, and delta and longfin smelt may be present in San Francisco Bay and estuary year-round. Territorial species, such as tidewater gobies, also may be present year-round in specific estuaries. Other listed species occur year-round in restricted habitats throughout the state (see Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*)

The timing and duration of pile driving activities and the life history phase of fish exposed to sound generated by pile driving are important factors in determining effects on the various species of fish that could be present during pile driving activities. The following section describes a suite of measures that can be incorporated into the design phase to avoid or minimize potential effects on species, best management practices (BMPs) that can be implemented in the field, and performance measures that can be used to ensure that potential project effects are minimized.

4.4 Avoidance and Minimization Measures, Best Management Practices, and Performance Standards

4.4.1 Avoidance and Minimization Measures

Avoidance and minimization measures are incorporated into the project during the design phase; they include design and timing elements to avoid or minimize the potential exposure of fish to sound generated by pile driving. The following discussion addresses how project timing, pile placement, equipment used, pile type, and pile size could avoid or minimize impacts on fish and their habitat.

4.4.1.1 Project Timing

Resource agencies typically set in-water work windows to avoid or minimize the effects of construction on fish species. The in-water work windows represent the periods with the least potential for a species, or a particular life history stage of a species, to be present in areas that might be affected by a project. Common work windows in California relate to the migratory patterns of salmon, steelhead, and other migratory species. Although the specific timing can vary by location, species, and life stage of concern, in-water work windows for salmonids typically are outside the principal migration periods, which generally extend from October through June. Local DFW and NOAA Fisheries biologists should be contacted to determine the applicable in-water work windows. For larger or more complex projects, it may not be possible to complete pile driving within the work windows. Also, some project areas support listed species year-round (e.g., rearing salmonids, green sturgeon in the Sacramento River and Bay Delta, and tidewater gobies in many coastal estuaries). If in-water pile driving is unavoidable outside of the established in-water work window, the project description should clearly state why it is not feasible to limit construction activities to the established window. In these cases, additional BMPs typically would be required to minimize the potential for adverse effects related to underwater sound pressure (see Section 4.4.2, *Best Management Practices*).

4.4.1.2 Pile Placement

In-water pile driving is defined as the placement of piles within the ordinary high water mark or in saturated soils adjacent to the reach. For some projects, it may be possible to design the project to avoid in-water work (i.e., where in-water reaches can be avoided by placing piles outside of ordinary high water or adjacent saturated soils). This may not be feasible due to engineering considerations. In such cases, limiting the number of piles that need to be placed in water could be considered. If in-water pile driving is unavoidable, the project description should clearly state why alternative designs that eliminate or minimize the number of piles placed in water are not feasible. The determination to limit the number of piles that need to be placed in water would need to be made by the project engineer, and this approach should not be suggested as an avoidance or minimization measure unless the engineer has verified its feasibility.

4.4.1.3 Pile Driving Equipment

In some instances, it may be possible to use alternative pile driving equipment that produces lower peak sound levels. Alternative methods would include the use of vibratory hammers, push or press-in pile installation, or oscillating pile installation. The potential for use of these alternative methods depends on a number of factors, including pile size (length and diameter) and composition, the bearing capacity necessary for the pile, and the substrate conditions. Even if these methods are feasible, piles typically need to be proofed (i.e., tested for bearing capacity and structural integrity) with an impact pile driver. The project engineer would need to determine the feasibility of using alternative drilling or pile driving equipment, and this approach should not be suggested as an avoidance or minimization measure unless the engineer has verified its feasibility.

4.4.1.4 Pile Type

Piles used for construction are typically composed of wood, steel, or concrete. Plastic piles are sometimes uses for fender piles in wharf construction but have limit applicability to Caltrans projects. Piles also come in various shapes, including tube, H-type, and I-type steel piles and square, octagonal, or circular cross-section concrete. Permanent structural pilings for bridges are typically CISS piles. Pile size, composition, and, shape depend on a number of factors, including necessary bearing capacity, pile length and diameter, pile function, and cost.

Alternative pile types can be used to reduce underwater sound levels from individual pile strikes. For example, driving concrete or wood piles instead of steel piles, or driving H-type piles instead of CISS piles results in less sound from individual pile strikes (see Chapter 2, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics*, and Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*). The use of an alternative pile type must be reviewed by the project engineer for engineering feasibility before any alternative method is suggested as an avoidance or minimization measure.

4.4.1.5 Pile Size

Use of smaller piles can be considered for construction in or close to sensitive habitats, as long as engineering constraints do not limit smaller pile feasibility. For instance, if an over-water structure is constructed near an occupied sensitive habitat (e.g., high-quality occupied salmonid rearing habitat), reduction in the pile size may reduce peak sound pressure levels, which would attenuate to non-injurious levels before entering the habitat of concern. However, care should be taken in determining whether using smaller piles would be more protective than using larger ones. Use of smaller piles often requires that more piles be driven—resulting in a larger number of pile strikes than if larger piles were used. Therefore, even though peak sound pressure values may be reduced by using smaller piles, accumulated SEL values during a pile driving event could be greater with smaller piles than with larger ones. In addition, the project engineer must verify that use of smaller piles as a sound reduction strategy is feasible before this strategy is proposed to the resource agencies.

4.4.2 Best Management Practices

BMPs are actions incorporated into the project during the construction phase, such as the use of sound attenuation devices, to avoid or minimize exposure of fish to sound generated during pile driving. Various measures have been developed to attenuate underwater sound generated by pile driving, such as air bubble curtains, cofferdams, isolation casings, and use of smaller piles. These measures are discussed in detail in Chapter 2, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustics*, and are summarized below. With regard to the implementation of attenuation methods, the goal is to demonstrate the intent to reasonably reduce sound.

4.4.2.1 Air Bubble Curtains

Air bubble curtains infuse the area surrounding the pile with air bubbles, creating a bubble screen that inhibits the propagation of sound from the pile. Results on the effectiveness of air bubble curtains in reducing sound pressure waves are varied. Reyff (2003, cited in Washington Department of Transportation [WSDOT] 2006) reviewed reports on the effectiveness of air bubble curtains in reducing sound and found a 0- to 10-dB reduction in RMS sound pressure levels. In his own study, Reyff (2003, cited in WSDOT 2006) found that air bubble curtains reduced peak pressures by 6 to more than 20 dB (3–10 dB RMS). Thorson and Reyff (2004, cited in WSDOT 2006) found similar results with reductions in the range of 5 to 20 dB, while Vagle (2003, cited in WSDOT 2006) reported reductions of 18 to 30 dB. The confined bubble curtain strategy was found to reduce peak pressures by 23 to 24 dB (Reyff et al. 2002 cited in WSDOT 2006). Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, provides additional information on the effectiveness of air bubble curtain systems.

The data generally indicate that an air bubble curtain used on a steel or concrete pile with a maximum cross-section dimension of 24 inches or less will provide approximately 5 dB of sound reduction. For a mid-sized steel pile (with a dimension greater than 24 but less than 48 inches), the data indicate that an air bubble curtain will provide about 10 dB of sound reduction. For larger piles (with a dimension of greater than 48 inches) about 20 dB of sound reduction is indicated. Proper design and implementation of the air bubble curtain are key factors in the effectiveness of this strategy. For example, use of a bubble curtain in a channel with substantial current would be not effective without a sleeve around the pile to confine the bubbles to the area around the pile. Because of the uncertainties associated with degree of attenuation that would be provided by an air bubble curtain, it is recommended that attenuation assumed for any attenuation device be limited to 5 dB.

4.4.2.2 Cofferdams

Cofferdams are temporary structures used to isolate an area generally submerged underwater from the water column. Cofferdams are most commonly fabricated from sheet piling or inflatable water bladders. Cofferdams can be used to isolate the piling from the surrounding water column. Cofferdams typically are dewatered to isolate the piling from the water, which attenuates sound by providing an air space between the exposed pile and the water column. If a dewatered cofferdam is proposed for use, NOAA Fisheries- or DFW-approved dewatering and fish salvage protocols may be required. Cofferdams that are not dewatered also can be used, but they provide only limited attenuation of underwater sound. If the cofferdam cannot be effectively dewatered, additional attenuation can be achieved by using a bubble curtain inside a cofferdam. The project engineer must verify that use of a cofferdam as a sound reduction strategy is feasible before this strategy is proposed to the resource agencies.

Dewatered cofferdams generally can be expected to provide attenuation that is at least as great as the attenuation provided by air bubble curtains. Because of the uncertainties associated with degree of attenuation that would be provided by a cofferdam, it is recommended that attenuation assumed for any attenuation device be limited to 5 dB.

4.4.2.3 Isolation Casings

Isolation casings are hollow casings slightly larger in diameter than the piling to be driven. The casing, typically a larger hollow pile, is inserted into the water column and bottom substrate. The casing then is dewatered, and the piling is driven within the dewatered isolation casing. Isolation casings are similar to cofferdams in that they isolate the work area from the water column; however, because isolation casings have a smaller footprint, they cannot be used to isolate large areas. In addition, because the air space is smaller between the pile and the casing, isolation casings do not have as much attenuation value as cofferdams. Dewatered isolation casings generally can be expected to provide attenuation that is at least as great as the attenuation provided by air bubble curtains. Because of the uncertainties associated with degree of attenuation that would be provided by isolation casings, it is recommended that attenuation assumed for any attenuation device be limited to 5 dB.

4.4.2.4 Cushion Blocks

During impact pile driving, pile caps are typically placed between the top of the pile and the hammer. The caps are typically 1 to 3 inches thick and made with wood, nylon, or a polymer material. The caps are used to absorb and dissipate heat and to protect the top of the pile from damage. WSDOT conducted a study to evaluate the effectiveness of each of the material types in reducing underwater sound generation (WSDOT 2006) during the driving of 12-inch diameter steel pipe piles. The study results indicate the following reductions in sound levels relative to having no pile cap in place.

- Wood – 11 to 26 dB
- Polymer – 7 to 8 dB
- Nylon – 4 to 5 dB

Because a pile cap is typically used for impact driving, the absolute sound level reductions indicated here do not represent the sound level reductions that can be expecting using any given pile cap. However, the results do indicate that wood is the most effective and nylon the least effective in reducing underwater sound. Unfortunately, wood is less durable than nylon and polymer materials and may be impractical to use in most situations. Because of the limited nature of this study, it is recommended that use of pile caps not be considered a specific noise reduction treatment and that no specific sound level reduction credit be taken for the use of pile caps.

4.4.3 Performance Standards

Performance standards based on measurable objectives consistent with a project's regulatory or permitting requirements may define an acceptable level of environmental effect from project activities. For some project elements that are unknown at the time of an environmental assessment, it may be necessary to indicate what performance standards will need to be met even though there may some uncertainty as to how an activity will be performed or what measures will be implemented to avoid or minimize potential adverse effects. For example, if the type of equipment or construction method has not been determined or is subject to change, the engineer or biologist can specify the performance standards that will be monitored (or verified) during construction, and the measures that will be implemented if the standards are not met.

In the subsequent section, methods are presented to determine the potential impacts on fish from underwater sound pressure generated by pile driving. In the pre-project analysis, several assumptions are made regarding the duration of activities, the magnitude of sound propagation, natural sound attenuation, and the effectiveness of sound attenuating devices used for pile installation. Performance standards required for pile driving can include monitoring the actual pile driving activity and monitoring received sound pressure levels at various distances from the pile driving activity.

The pile driving logs that are compiled during the actual pile driving activity provide useful information that can contribute to performance evaluations. The follow data may be recorded in these logs.

- Activity date
- Location of pile
- Depth, type, and diameter of pile
- Type of pile driver
- Start and completion time for each pile driven
- Actual drive time
- Blow counts
- Blow rates
- Energy of each blow
- Type of blow
- Downtime

These data can be compiled for an accurate record of activities and sound generation. In combination with sound monitoring (see Appendix II, *Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound*), this information is useful for post-project evaluations.

The scope of the sound monitoring studies depends on the specific activities, site-specific environmental conditions, and the type and sensitivity of the species and habitats in the vicinity of the project. Appendix II discusses sound monitoring goals and objectives, and methods currently used to monitor sound associated with pile driving.

4.5 Considerations for Assessing Impacts

Fish can be found in nearly any marine, estuarine, and freshwater environment. Therefore, pile driving activities in or near any aquatic environment should be assessed for potential impacts on fish species and their habitats. Four factors generally should be considered when assessing impacts on different fish populations: habitat, sound sensitivity, behavior and life history, and protected status.

4.5.1 Habitat

California contains a variety of aquatic habitat types—from large bays and mainstem rivers to estuaries, lakes, and small headwater streams. A diverse assemblage of fish species uses these aquatic habitats. A description of the various habitats and a list of sensitive species likely to be encountered in these diverse environments are included in Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*. This document does not provide a comprehensive list of all the fish species that may be encountered in California waters but identifies the most common and those that are currently protected by state or federal regulations. The information provided here is intended to aid in determining what fish species may be present in a given aquatic habitat. After determining which species are likely to occur in the affected habitat, one must consider the potential for impacts on the species based on its sensitivity and probable exposure and response to pile driving sound.

4.5.2 Sound Sensitivity

Fish differ in regard to their sensitivity to sound. As discussed in Chapter 3, *Fundamentals of Hydroacoustic Impacts on Fish*, some species (e.g., herring, croakers, shad) are particularly sensitive to sound, possessing specialized structures and sensory systems to detect and, presumably, use sound to direct their activities and respond adaptively to their environment. Consequently, these species are likely most sensitive to pile driving and other sources of underwater sound. However, most species that may be encountered during pile driving projects in California do not have specialized structures or behavior related to sound.

Body size also affects the sensitivity of fish to sound. Smaller fish are generally more susceptible to physical injury from sound than larger fish. However, larger fish are generally more susceptible to temporary threshold shift (TTS) than smaller fish (see Section 4.6.4, *Interim Injury Thresholds*). Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*, provides basic information on the hearing sensitivity of some fishes, but the effects of underwater sound on most fish species are not known. The most comprehensive reviews of this information were conducted by Hastings and Popper (2005), Popper et al. (2006), and Carlson et al. (2007); these reviews are summarized in Chapter 3.

4.5.3 Behavior and Life History

The behavior and life history of fish affect how they are exposed to sound generated by pile driving activities. Fish display a wide variety of behaviors that can affect their susceptibility to sound exposure and their response to sound and other disturbances. An understanding of these behaviors can help avoid impacts. For example, information about migration timing for different salmon runs can be used to determine the appropriate timing for pile driving activities to avoid or minimize exposure of migrating fish. Other species like tidewater goby are less mobile and are, therefore, potentially subject to longer periods or higher levels of exposure. Other fish may behave and use habitats differently; these factors must be considered when determining potential effects on fish present in the area of pile driving activities.

4.5.4 Protected Status

Some species have distinct legal status and require special protection. ESA and CESA regulate actions in aquatic environments as they relate to specific listed fish species. Under both federal and state laws species may be listed as threatened or endangered, or may be considered candidates for federal or state listing. While there is considerable overlap in the species that are listed under the two Endangered Species Acts, the lists do not coincide exactly. Tables III-2 and III-3 in Appendix III, *Fish Habitat Types and Distribution*, provide the latest information on species status with respect to ESA and CESA. It is important to note that the listing status of these species can change at any time; therefore, updated species lists always should be requested from the regulatory agencies (NOAA Fisheries, USFWS, and DFW) when planning a project involving pile driving in or near fish-bearing waters.

The ESA requires designation of critical habitat for listed populations. Designated critical habitat (DCH) refers to areas that are considered necessary for the survival and recovery of a species federally listed as threatened or endangered. Tables III-2 and III-3 in Appendix III identify species with DCH in California. The USFWS Threatened and Endangered Species System database is an excellent source of all regulatory information for federally listed species, including listing and critical habitat information, recovery plans and other recovery documents, habitat conservation plans, candidate conservation agreements, and safe harbor agreements. The data for California species are located at http://ecos.fws.gov/tess_public/pub/stateListingIndividual.jsp?state=CA&status=listed and are updated regularly.

Other habitats for commercially important fish species are protected under the MSFCA. As noted earlier, the MSFCA governs the conservation and management of EFH and "those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity." EFH has been designated for 83 species of Pacific Coast groundfish, three species of salmon (two of which, Chinook salmon and coho salmon, are found in California), and five species of coastal pelagic fish and squid that are managed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council. EFH for rockfish, flatfish, skates, and sharks (groundfish) and for sardines, anchovy, mackerel, and squid (pelagic fish) is located along all areas of the California coast—from nearshore marine and estuarine waters to 200 miles offshore at the U.S. Economic Exclusion Zone boundary. EFH in estuarine and marine habitats for salmon consists of all coastal areas from Point Conception northward. For locations of Chinook and coho salmon freshwater EFH in California, and for general descriptions of species and recommended conservation and enhancement measures to consider, see the Pacific Fishery Management Council website (http://www.pcouncil.org/), the NOAA habitat conservation website (http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/protection/efh/), and Appendix III.

4.6 Impact Analysis

Once the project has been described and the considerations identified above have been determined, the impact analysis can proceed. This section describes the types of information necessary to assess potential impacts on fish from pile driving sound. The discussion walks the reader through example assessments and the process used to determine anticipated ambient sound levels, the level of underwater sound generated by pile driving, the potential impact of the sound on fish, and the distance at which pile driving sound will attenuate to ambient sound levels or interim criteria levels for injury. The process of assessing sound impacts on fish from pile driving is complex and requires a high level of expertise and experience. The information in this document is not intended to enable the reader to conduct these analyses; the intent is to educate Department staff on the process so that work conducted by experts in acoustic analysis can be effectively reviewed and evaluated.

The rate of sound attenuation through a body of water is used to predict the area that would be exposed to direct and indirect effects. This area is referred to as the "project action area" in ESA Section 7 consultations. The methods described below also can be used to evaluate the distance from a pile at which the sound would attenuate to the injury thresholds.

Depending on the species potentially present and environmental conditions, the information in the following sections can be used to determine the amount of species habitat affected. A spreadsheet model developed by NOAA Fisheries is presented. The spreadsheet can be used to develop a first-order approximation of the habitat area in which fish may be exposed to injurious levels of underwater sound from pile driving. These methods describe the basic process for evaluating underwater water sound impacts and may not be appropriate for all situations. Because of the difficulties in estimating the number of fish potentially exposed to harmful sound levels, NOAA Fisheries commonly uses the habitat area in which impacts may occur as a surrogate for establishing limits (i.e., incidental take limits) on the number of fish subject to harm from pile driving sound.

The discussion of impact assessment factors and methodology addresses the following components.

- Determining ambient sound levels.
- Determining expected pile driving sound pressure levels.

- Calculating underwater sound attenuation.
- Interim injury thresholds.
- Behavioral thresholds.
- Determining impact areas.
- Assessing potential impacts on fish from pile driving sound.

4.6.1 Determining Ambient (Background) Sound Levels

The general level of ambient underwater sound in the project area should be determined and considered when analyzing the effects of pile driving sound on fish. Commercial vessels and recreational boats produce high levels of underwater sound (Scholik and Yan 2001). Commercial shipping in the Northern Hemisphere has been implicated in increasing oceanic sound levels 10–100 fold (Tyak 2000 cited in Scholik and Yan 2001). Large tankers and naval vessels produce up to 198 dB, depth sounders can produce up to 180 dB (Heathershaw et al. 2001 cited in WSDOT 2006), and commercial sonar operates in a range of 150 to 215 dB (Stocker 2002 cited in WSDOT 2006). Even small boats with large outboard motors can produce sound pressure levels in excess of 175 dB (Heathershaw et al. 2001 cited in WSDOT 2006). Ambient sound also is produced by natural sources, such as snapping shrimp, lightning strikes, snowfall (Crum et al. 1999), and breaking waves (Wilson et al. 1997). In the absence of measured ambient sound level data for a particular site, Table 4-3 can be used as a guide to estimate the ambient sound level data for various environmental settings when analyzing impacts on fish from pile driving sound. It is difficult to specify ambient underwater sound levels in stream environments because of substantial variation in sound levels associated with variable water depths and velocities and the effects of different substrates, woody material, and other physical structures as water flows over or through these features.

Table 4-3. Reported Ambient Underwater Sound Levels (dB re: 1 μPa) Recorded at Various Open Water Locations in the Western United States

Environment	Location	Ambient Sound Levels	Source
Large marine bay, heavy industrial use, and boat traffic	San Francisco Bay – Oakland outer harbor, California	120 – 155 dB_{PEAK}, 133 dB_{RMS}	Strategic Environmental Consulting, Inc. 2004
Large marine bay and heavy commercial boat traffic	Elliot Bay – Puget Sound, Washington	147 – 156 dB_{PEAK}, 132 – 143 dB_{RMS}	Laughlin 2006
Large marine inlet and some recreational boat traffic	Hood Canal, Washington	115 – 135 dB_{RMS}	Carlson et al. 2005
Open ocean	Central California coast	74 – 100 dB_{PEAK}	Heathershaw et al. 2001 cited in WSDOT 2006
Large marine bay, nearshore, heavy commercial, and recreational boat traffic	Monterey Bay, California	113 dB_{PEAK}	O'Neil 1998
Large marine bay, offshore, heavy commercial, and recreational boat traffic	Monterey Bay, California	116 dB_{PEAK}	O'Neil 1998
Marine surf	Fort Ord beach, California	138 dB_{PEAK}	Wilson et al. 1997

4.6.2 Determining Expected Pile Driving Sound Pressure Levels

The following items should be considered when developing the information needed to estimate underwater pressure levels for analysis of impacts on fish from pile driving.

- Type of pile driver.
- Type and size of piling.
- Type of attenuation (if used).
- Site-specific conditions such as channel dimensions, geometry, and substrate.

The compendium attached as Appendix I includes the studies cited in this chapter and additional information, such as sound measurements at a variety of distances and water depths, and sound measurements of pile driving with sound attenuation measures. Detailed data of sound pressure levels produced by different pile types at different depths with and without attenuation measures also may be found in Illingworth & Rodkin (2001). Hammer and pile type descriptions are discussed in detail at:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/esc/construction/Manuals/OSCCompleteManuals/Foundation.pdf.

4.6.2.1 Type of Pile Driver

Generally, three types of pile drivers may be used: vibratory, push, and impact hammer pile drivers. The type and size of pile driving equipment can affect the underwater sound generated during pile driving events.

Impact pile driving is the most commonly used pile driving method. Impact pile drivers are piston-type drivers that use various means (ignition, hydraulics, or steam) to lift a piston to a desired height and drop the piston (via gravity) against the head of the pile in order to drive it into the substrate. The size and type of impact driver used depend on the energy needed to drive a certain type of pile in various substrates to the necessary depth. The magnitude and characteristics of underwater sound generated by a pile strike depend on the energy of the strike, and the pile size and composition (see Table 2-1 in Chapter 2, *Fundamental of Hydroacoustics*, and Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*).

In some instances, a vibratory hammer may be used to drive piles. Vibratory hammers use oscillatory hammers that vibrate the pile, causing the sediment surrounding the pile to liquefy and allow pile penetration. Peak sound pressure levels for vibratory hammers can exceed 180 dB; however, the sound from these hammers rises relatively slowly. The vibratory hammer produces sound energy that is spread out over time and is generally 10 to 20 dB lower than impact pile driving. As discussed in Chapter 2, vibratory hammers generally produce less sound that impact hammers and are often employed as a mitigation measure to reduce the potential for adverse effects on fish from impact pile driving. There are no established injury criteria for vibration pile driving and resource agencies in general are not concerned that vibratory pile driving will result in adverse effects on fish. Sound data from vibration pile driving is provided in Appendix I. Although this method results in lower levels of sound generated during the driving of a pile, it cannot be used in all situations (e.g., because of certain sediment conditions or load-bearing requirements). Further, load-bearing piles typically need to be driven with impact hammers, at a minimum to determine their load- bearing strength (proofing).

The hydraulic static pile driver is a relatively newer technology that potentially can be used under some circumstances. In general this type of driver is limited to relatively shallow water (50 feet or less) and areas with a soft substrate. With this system, hydraulic jacks are used to push piles into the substrate using static force, which substantially reduces the underwater sound produced. As with piles driven with vibratory hammers, this technology cannot be used in many situations and proofing of piles with an impact hammer may be required. Consequently, this type of system may not necessarily eliminate impact driving.

4.6.2.2 Type and Size of Piles

Piles are generally fabricated out of wood, concrete, or steel. Plastic piles are sometimes used for fender piles in wharf construction but have limit applicability to Caltrans projects. The material used to fabricate a pile is an important consideration because of the differences in sound pressure levels generated by driving piles constructed of different materials. Different types and diameters of piles produce different levels of underwater sound when they are driven. The peak sound pressure levels from driving piles of different sizes and compositions have been measured 10 meters from the pile; levels generally range from 177 dB (for a 12- to 14-inch wood pile) to 220 dB (for a 96-inch steel pile). Table 2-1in Chapter 2, *Fundamental of Hydroacoustics*, and Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*, identify the anticipated sound pressure levels produced by different pile types and sizes, with and without sound attenuation measures.

4.6.2.3 Type of Attenuation

Several types of sound attenuation methods can be used to increase sound attenuation and thus decrease the distance at which pile driving sound injury thresholds would be exceeded. Several methods, specifically, air bubble curtains, cofferdams, isolation casings, and cushion blocks, are described in Section 4.4.2, *Best Management Practices*.

4.6.3 Calculating Underwater Sound Attenuation

An analysis of hydroacoustic effects on fish is complicated by a number of factors that include the type of water body (e.g., open water versus river or stream environments, deep versus shallow water), uncertainties associated with predicting ambient and pile driving sound pressure levels, and uncertainties associated with determining the mobility and behavioral responses of the fish being evaluated.

As discussed in Section 2.2 of Chapter 2, *Fundamental of Hydroacoustics*, the propagation of pile driving sound underwater is highly complex due to many factors including the fact that the river or ocean bed and the surface of the water are distinct boundaries that can affect propagation. In addition, the pile that is driven by an impact driver generates ground vibration in the substrate which can re-radiate sound energy back into the water.

In practice, it impractical to model all of the factors involved in the propagation of sound underwater. Simplified models often are used to predict sound levels at various distances from a pile and the distance at which pile driving sound attenuates to a specific criterion level. The practical spreading loss model is one such model and is typically used to estimate the attenuation of underwater sound over distance in the context of a pile driving sound analysis. The basic practical spreading loss model is provided in Equation 4-1.

Equation 4-1

$$\text{Transmission loss (dB)} = F * \log(D_1/D_2)$$

Where:

D_1 = The distance from which transmission loss is calculated (usually 10 meters).

D_2 = The distance at which the targeted transmission loss occurs.

F = A site-specific attenuation factor based on several conditions, including water depth, pile type, pile length, substrate type, and other factors.

Transmission loss (TL) = The initial sound pressure level (dB) produced by a sound source (i.e., pile driving) *minus* the ambient sound pressure level or a target sound pressure level (e.g., the injury threshold for salmon). TL also can be thought of as the change in sound pressure level between D_1 and D_2. As applied here TL is a negative number.

Measurements conducted by the Department and its consultants indicate that the attenuation constant (F in Equation 4-1) can be in the range of 5 to 30. The discussion below provides a summary of F values measured under various conditions. It is common to express the rate of attenuation as the dB of attenuation per doubling of distance. This can be determined by inserting D_1/D_2 as 0.5 in equation 4-1. For example, when F = 5, the attenuation is 1.5 dB per doubling of distance. When F = 30, the attenuation is 9 dB per doubling of distance.

To solve for the distance at which the ambient sound level or threshold sound pressure level will be reached, solve for D_2 as shown in Equation 4-2.

Equation 4-2

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

4.6.3.1 Empirical Sound Attenuation Data

The following discussion provides some background on attenuation rates that have been measured under various conditions. With the exception of the relatively few larger bridges (e.g., in San Francisco Bay, Humboldt Bay, and San Diego), pile driving is usually conducted in shallow water where depths are 15 meters or less. Much of the pile driving measured in

California has been conducted in very shallow water where depths are less than 10 meters. Measured transmission loss rates in shallow water typical at pile driving sites have been found to vary considerably from site to site. The rates also vary somewhat between the different measurement metrics: peak SPL, RMS, and SEL. A logarithmic rate has provided the best fit to the data because sound pressure waves spread out in a spherical pattern. The rate that sound attenuates with distance underwater is complicated by the air/water boundary and the bottom boundary conditions and substrate type. Over long distances (greater than 500 meters), linear correction factors accounting for excess attenuation have improved the prediction. Because hearing is frequency dependent and the transmission loss also is frequency dependent, predicting audibility (or detectability) with any certainty at distances beyond 500 to 1,000 meters is not possible.

Empirical data provide examples of sound attenuation with distance. Projects involving pile driving that were studied indicate that a base 10 logarithmic rate of attenuation is most appropriate. Examples of these projects are described below.

At the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Project, the transmission loss rates for unattenuated piles varied as a function of pile location and the direction of the measurement from the pile. Attenuation rates were in the range of 4.5 to almost 9 dB per doubling of distance (F values in the range of 15 to 30). When an air bubble curtain was in operation, the attenuation rate was somewhat higher. Measurements between 100 and 1,000 meters indicated F values of 19 and 18, respectively, for peak and RMS sound pressure levels. For distances between 10 and 100 meters from the source, F was found to be 20. When pile driving was conducted within a dewatered cofferdam, F was found to be 15.

Under each of these conditions, sound pressure levels measured at the same distance varied by at least 5 dB, even at positions close to the pile. As the measurement position was moved farther away from the pile, the variation in sound pressure levels measured increased to 10 dB. For dewatered cofferdams, sound pressure levels either did not drop off or actually increased within 100 to 150 meters of the pile. Beyond that distance, sound pressure levels decreased, but at different rates for different directions. In some cases, the measured peak SPL at 500 meters in one direction was similar to the measured peak SPL within 100 meters of the pile.

At the Benicia-Martinez Bridge, numerous measurements were taken to document the variation in sound pressure level as a function of distance from an unattenuated pile. F values for distances between 100 and 500 meters from unattenuated piles were found to be 15, 16, and 17, respectively, for peak SPL, RMS, and SEL.

Greeneridge Sciences measured transmission loss at Port MacKenzie during the driving of 36-inch-diameter pipe piles. At distances between 60 and 1,000 meters from an unattenuated pile, F values were found to be in the following ranges.

- F_{peak} = 18 to 21
- F_{RMS} = 18 to 23
- F_{SEL} = 16 to 22

The range in F values was dependent on the depth of the water column, with lowest values at the deepest depths.

Measurements taken for pile driving at the Russian River near Geyserville reflect how the transmission loss varies with the depth of the pile. Because this project was in shallow water, the transmission loss through the saturated ground substrate was substantial. During the initial stages of driving the pile, sound pressure levels were greatest near the pile. As the pile was driven deeper, sound pressure levels near the pile (10 to 20 meters) decreased, but levels increased slightly at positions 50 meters farther away. However, sound pressure levels at 70 meters were much lower than at 50 meters and did not show much of a change through the entire driving period.

For pile driving sounds that are predominately high frequency (e.g., small-diameter steel pipe or steel H-type piles), the transmission loss can be higher than losses associated with piles that predominantly produce lower frequencies (e.g., larger diameter piles). Small-diameter steel H-type piles have been found to have high F values in the range of 20 to 30 near the pile (i.e., between 10 and 20 meters). Small unattenuated steel pipe piles show F values in the range of 15 to 25. Most measurements for concrete piles have been made about 10 meters from the pile. Some projects included limited measurements at 10 and 20 meter positions, and one project included measurements at 100 meters. The F value for concrete piles, based on these data, is about 15.

The use of attenuation systems such as air bubble curtains complicates the drop off rate. These systems can be very effective at reducing underwater sounds where the primary source of sound is the pile in the water column. As one moves farther away from the pile, ground-borne sound generated from vibration at the tip of the pile may become the primary source of sound. Therefore, the attenuation rate may flatten out, or in some cases become positive (i.e., the sound pressure level may increase with increasing distance) for a short distance.

These data indicate that determination of appropriate attenuation rates requires careful consideration of site-specific conditions and empirical sound attenuation data from pile driving in conditions similar to the project under consideration.

NOAA Fisheries has developed a spreadsheet model for evaluating underwater sound from pile driving. Guidance in this spreadsheet recommends that the practical spreading model with F =15 be used unless data are available to support a different model. When F = 15, the attenuation rate is 4.5 dB per doubling of distance. In the absence of data on site-specific attenuation rates, an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance should be used for all projects.

4.6.4 Interim Injury Thresholds

4.6.4.1 Background

Since 2004 the Department has been at the forefront of efforts to develop interim sound pressure level criteria for evaluating the potential for injury to fish from pile driving. In coordination with the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) and the departments of transportation in Oregon and Washington, the Department established a Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group (FHWG) to improve and coordinate information on fishery impacts resulting from underwater sound pressure caused by in-water pile driving. In addition to the above transportation agencies, the FHWG is composed of representatives from NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region, USFWS, DFW, and the Corps. The FHWG is supported by a panel of hydroacoustic and fisheries experts who are recommended and approved by FHWG members. A Steering Committee oversees the FHWG and is composed of managers with decision-making authority from each of the member organizations.

This effort has resulted in preparation of several key reports and documents that can be reviewed on the Department website at:

> http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm.

A meeting of the FHWG in June 2008 resulted in an agreement on interim criteria for injury to fish. At this meeting the Agreement in Principal for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities (AIP) was developed. The agreement is provided in Appendix IV. The agreed upon criteria identify sound pressure levels of 206 dB-peak and 187 dB accumulated SEL for fish larger than 2 grams and an accumulated SEL of 183 dB, for fish less than 2 grams.

These criteria should be used for all Department underwater sound pressure studies that involve impact pile driving until further studies and agreements indicate that different criteria should be used. Because of the ongoing research efforts related to these criteria, they may evolve as new information is determined. Recent research summarized in Popper et al. 2014 suggests that cumulative SEL thresholds for injury may be well above 200 dB. However, until there is broad agreement on the use of higher thresholds, the thresholds from the 2008 agreement should be used. It is very important to recognize that these criteria were developed for impact pile driving only. They do not apply to vibratory pile driving or any other sound-generating activities. They should not be used to assess sound from vibratory pile driving because the injury thresholds for impact driving are likely to be much lower than the injury thresholds for non-impulsive, continuous sounds produced by vibratory drivers (Stadler pers. comm.).

These interim injury criteria are conservative in order to be protective of listed fish species.

4.6.4.2 Behavioral Thresholds

The ESA defines "harm" to include actions that would kill or injure fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding, and sheltering. "Harass" is defined as any act that creates the likelihood of injury to a species to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns such as feeding, breeding, or sheltering.

Little is known regarding the thresholds of behavioral effects of pile driving sound on fish or the types of behavioral modification that may be considered harm or harassment. It is clear that fish can react to a sudden loud sound with a startle or avoidance response, but they also may quickly habituate to the sound. Hastings and Popper (2005) and Popper et al. (2006) indicate that no scientifically supported threshold for the onset of behavioral effects from underwater sound generated from pile driving can currently be established. The AIP specifically does not address behavioral impacts on fish. Accordingly, at the time of this writing, there is no agreement on impact thresholds for behavior.

As a conservative measure, NOAA Fisheries and USFWS generally have used 150 dB_{RMS} as the threshold for behavioral effects on ESA-listed fish species (salmon and bull trout) for most biological opinions evaluating pile driving, citing that sound pressure levels in excess of 150 dB_{RMS} can cause temporary behavioral changes (startle and stress) that could decrease a fish's ability to avoid predators. As of this writing, neither NOAA Fisheries nor USFWS has provided any research data or related citations to support this threshold. Nonetheless, until further research is conducted, it should be anticipated that NOAA Fisheries and USFWS will expect to see a discussion in biological assessments of the effects of pile driving on fish behavior, with reference to the 150 dB_{RMS} threshold. NOAA Fisheries staff informally indicated at the June 2008 FHWG meeting that they do not expect exceedance of the 150 dB_{RMS} behavior threshold to trigger any mitigation requirement (Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group 2008).

4.6.5 Determining the Impact Areas

The project action area is defined as all areas that are predicted to be affected directly and indirectly by the federal action, not merely the immediate area involved in the action. NOAA Fisheries and USFWS require identification of a project action area for Section 7 consultation under the federal ESA. With regard to underwater sound from pile driving, USFWS consider the project action area to be the underwater area where peak pile driving sound is predicted to exceed the ambient sound level. The project action area is therefore defined by the distance needed for the sound pressure level generated by pile driving activities to attenuate to a level that is equal to the ambient sound level. For the purposes of determining the project action area, the predicted RMS sound pressure level generated by pile driving should be compared with the background RMS sound pressure level. The determination of this distance is at best a rough approximation because of the uncertainties associated with determining the ambient sound level and the attenuation of sound over distance.

A similar process is used to estimate the acoustic impact area, which is based on the distance at which pile driving sound attenuates to a level that equals an injury threshold. In general, if injury thresholds are not predicted to be exceeded beyond 10 meters from the pile, no further analysis is necessary and no injury to fish is anticipated. If the thresholds are predicted to be exceeded beyond 10 meters from the pile, the acoustic impact area needs to be determined. The following discussion describes the process used to determine the project action area and the acoustic impact area.

4.6.5.1 Underwater Sound Prediction Methods and Tools

NOAA Fisheries has developed a spreadsheet that estimates the distance at which pile driving sound attenuates to threshold levels. This spreadsheet and reference data from Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data,* are the primary tools for estimating underwater sound levels from pile driving. Other tools include used in preparing project biological assessments include the Caltrans Hydroacoustic Project Info Checklist and the FHWG Monitoring Plan

Template. These tools and a copy of the data entry form for the NMFS spreadsheet are provided in Appendix IV. The NMFS pile driving noise spreadsheet can be downloaded from the following Caltrans link:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm

4.6.5.2 Project Action Area

The process of determining the project action area for in-water pile driving typically focuses on RMS sound pressure levels anticipated to be produced by the pile driving activity. The first step in the process is to estimate the typical RMS ambient sound level using measured data from a similar environment (refer to Table 4-3 for typical ambient sound pressure level data). In some cases, such as in the case of a highly controversial project, it may be appropriate to actually measure the ambient sound level in the water at the project site. As discussed above an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance (F = 15) should be used for all projects unless data on site-specific attenuation rates is available. As a practical matter such data is rarely if ever available so an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance is typically used. The predicted RMS pile driving sound pressure level, the attenuation factor, and the ambient sound pressure level are then used in Equation 4-2 to determine the distance at which the pile driving sound pressure level attenuates to a level that is equal to the ambient sound level. Examples below demonstrate how this calculation is typically done.

In some cases, only RMS or only peak ambient sound level data are available. The relationship between the peak ambient sound level and the RMS ambient sound level can be highly variable, depending on the nature of the underwater sound sources in the area. Accordingly, there is no fixed relationship between peak and RMS ambient sound pressure levels. For the purposes of determining the project action area, the peak pile driving sound pressure level can be estimated from the RMS ambient sound pressure level and vice versa. In many environments, peak ambient sound levels exceed the RMS ambient sound level by 5 to 10 dB. Accordingly, it may be appropriate in many situations to subtract 5 to 10 dB from the peak ambient sound level to estimate the RMS ambient sound level.

For the reasons discussed in Section 4.6.3.1, *Empirical Sound Attenuation Data*, it is not possible to reliably predict audibility (or detectability) with any certainty at distances beyond 500 to 1,000 meters. Consequently, the project action area based on pile driving sound should never be considered to extend more than 1,000 meters from the pile driving activity.

In open water conditions such as San Francisco Bay, the project action area typically will be defined by the distance at which the pile driving sound attenuates to a level that is equal to the ambient sound level in all directions (Figure 4-1). In rivers and streams, the project action area can extend bank to bank across the river and the distance upstream and downstream at which the pile driving sound attenuates to the ambient sound level (Figure 4-2).

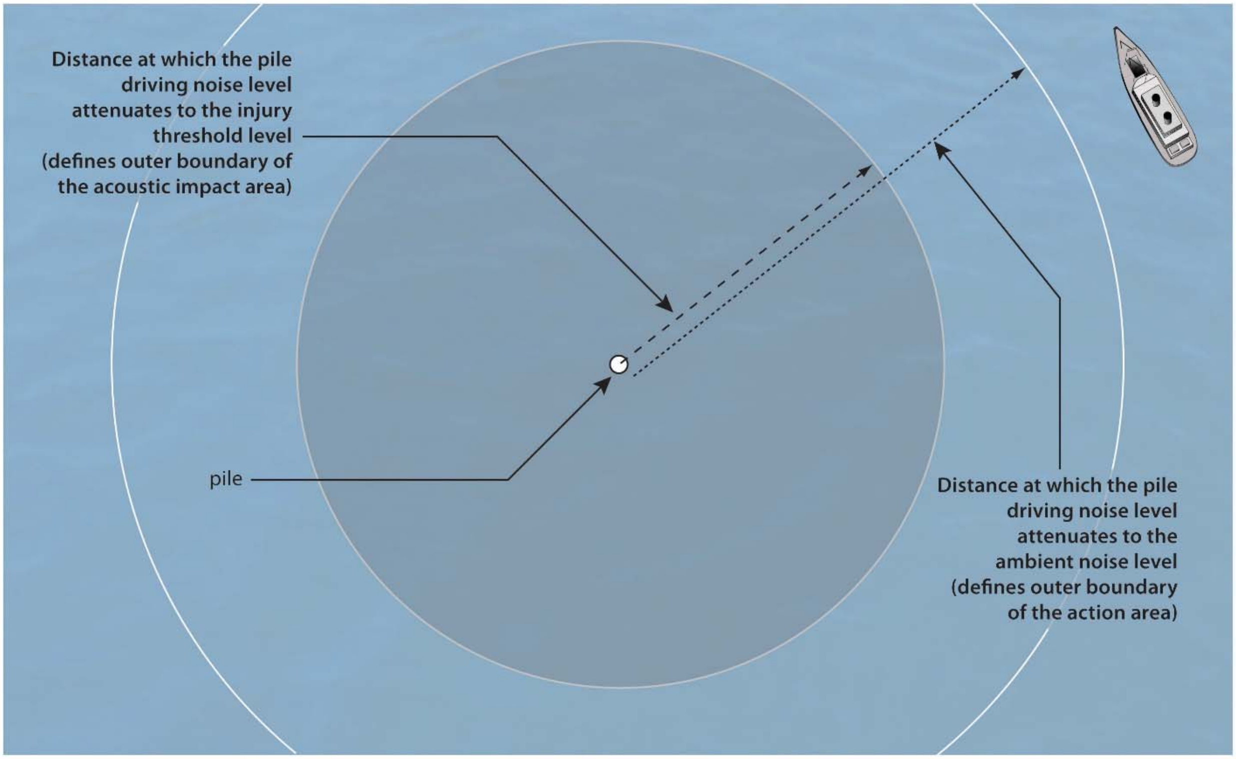


Figure 4-1. Action Area and Acoustic Impact Area in Open Water

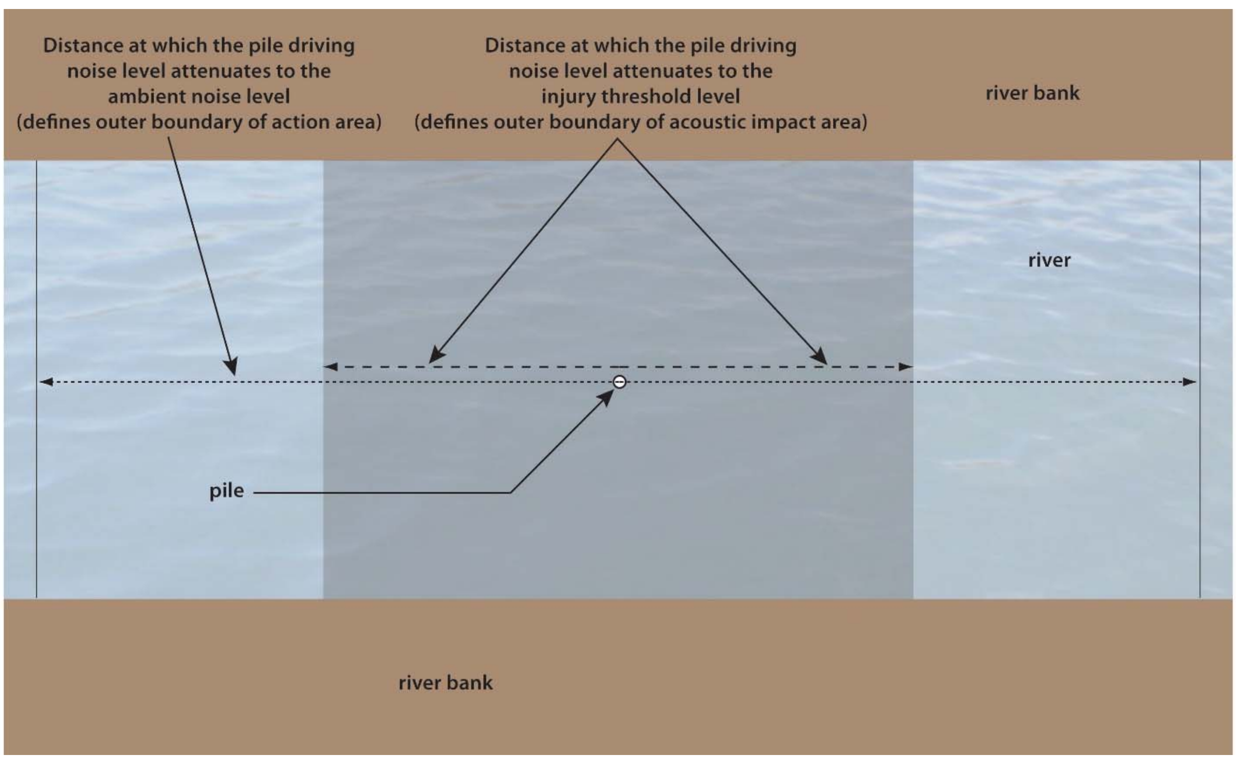


Figure 4-2. Action Area and Acoustic Impact Area in River

4.6.5.3 Acoustic Impact Area for In-Water Pile Driving

Before describing the use of the NOAA Fisheries spreadsheet, the following discussion is provided to describe the methods that are used by the model to determine the acoustic impact area of underwater pile driving sound. The process for determining the acoustic impact area for in-water pile driving is similar to the process described above for the project action area in that an area is defined by a distance within which a criterion sound pressure level is exceeded. This distance is commonly referred to as the "isopleth distance" because it is a distance within which a specific sound pressure level is exceeded.

The process for determining acoustic impact area is substantially more complicated than the process for determining the project action area because two thresholds (peak and accumulated SEL) are involved. The distance calculation relative to the peak sound pressure level is straightforward because it simply involves the use of Equation 4-2 and the difference between the peak pile driving sound pressure level and the 206-dB_{PEAK} threshold. The distance calculation for accumulated SEL is also straightforward if it is assumed that the fish are stationary for the entire duration of exposure to the pile driving sound and the single strike SEL is constant of the entire exposure period. In this case, the accumulated SEL can be calculated from the single-strike SEL and the estimated number of pile strikes. The distance within which the 187 dB-SEL criterion (or the 183 dB-SEL criterion in cases where fish less than 2 g are present) is exceeded then can be calculated using Equation 4-2.

4.6.5.4 Acoustic Impact Area for Near-Water Pile Driving

The process for determining the acoustic impact area for piles driven near but not in water is essentially the same as that described for in-water pile driving; however, data measured for similarly driven piles (piles driven near the water's edge) should be used for the source sound pressure levels. In general, piles driven within about 200 feet of the edge of the water should be evaluated. Piles farther inland may need to evaluated in wetland and floodplain areas where a connection between groundwater and surface water may exist.

4.6.5.5 Example Calculations

The following simple examples show the general process used to determine the project action area and the acoustic impact area.

Example 1

For example 1, the following conditions are assumed.

- Site conditions: Large marine bay, nearshore, with heavy commercial and recreational boat traffic.
- Pile type: 96-inch-diameter CISS pile.
- Driver: Impact hammer.
- Attenuation device: None.
- Piles driven per day: One.
- Number of strikes per pile: 4,000.
- Injury criteria: 206 dB_{PEAK} and 187 dB-$SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$.

The first step in the process is to estimate the sound pressure level produced by the pile driving. Data for a similarly sized pile and site conditions should be used for this purpose. The compendium of measured pile driving sound levels in Appendix I provides a detailed summary of source levels for various types of piles and conditions. If the pile size being evaluated is not available in the table, data for the next larger size should be used.

The data in Table I.2-3 in Appendix I for 96-inch-diameter CISS piles driven in San Francisco Bay indicate that piles of this size driven with an impact hammer in this environment will produce single-strike sound pressure levels of 220 dB_{PEAK}, 205 dB_{RMS}, and 194 dB-SEL at 10 meters. No site-specific attenuation data is available so an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance (F = 15) would be used in in the practical spreading model (Equation 4-1).

To determine the project action area, the ambient sound pressure level must be estimated. Data in Table 4-3 indicate that 133 dB_{RMS} is a reasonable estimate for the ambient sound pressure level in this environment. This information, in combination with the source sound pressure level and attenuation assumptions, then is used with Equation 4-2 to estimate the project action area. In this case, TL is the difference between the source pressure level at 10 meters and the ambient sound pressure level (205 – 133 = 72 dB).

Equation 4-2 is used as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{72/15})$$

$$D_2 = 631{,}000 \text{ meters}$$

Because the calculated D_2t value is greater than 1,000 meters, the project action area should be assumed to be the area within 1,000 meters of the pile driving activity.

Equation 4-2 also is used to determine the acoustic impact area based on the peak sound pressure level. In the case of the peak sound pressure level, the change in the sound pressure level needed to attenuate sound to 206 dB is 14 dB. Equation 4-2 then is used to determine the distance needed to attenuate to this level, as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{14/15})$$

$$D_2 = 86 \text{ meters}$$

To calculate the acoustic impact area based on accumulated SEL, the accumulated SEL first must be calculated. This requires an estimate of the total number of pile strikes per day. This number should be determined through consultation with the project engineer. In this example, the number of strikes per day is 4,000. It is assumed that fish would be exposed to a constant single-strike SEL value throughout the entire exposure period.

Equation 2-1 then is used, as follows:

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = SEL_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (\#\text{ of pile strikes})$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 194_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (4{,}000)$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 194_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 36$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 230 \text{ dB at 10 meters}$$

Equation 4-2 then is used to determine the distance needed for sound to attenuate to 187 dB, as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{-43/15})$$

$$D_2 = 7{,}356 \text{ meters}$$

Because the calculated D_2 value is greater than 1,000 meters, the area within which the 187 dB criterion is exceeded should be assumed to be the area within 1,000 meters of the pile driving activity.

Example 2

For Example 2, the following conditions are assumed.

- Site conditions: Inland river with recreational boat traffic.
- Pile type: 24-inch-diameter octagonal concrete pile.
- Driver: Impact hammer.
- Attenuation device: None.
- Piles driven per day: Five.
- Strikes per pile: 580.
- Injury criteria: 206 dB_{PEAK} and 187 dB-$SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$.

Table I.2-3 in Appendix I has data for several conditions involving 24-inch-diameter octagonal concrete piles. None is in a river environment. However, conditions at the Port of Oakland in the Oakland estuary are most similar to conditions in a river environment. The data from the Port of Oakland indicate that piles of this size driven with an impact hammer in this environment will produce single-strike sound pressure levels of 188 dB_{PEAK}, 176 dB_{RMS}, and 166 dB-SEL at 10 meters. No site-specific attenuation data is available so an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance (F = 15) would be used in the practical spreading model (Equation 4-1).

To determine the project action area, the ambient sound pressure level must be estimated. Data in Table 4-3 indicate that 135 dB_{RMS} is a reasonable estimate for the ambient sound pressure level in this environment (a marine inlet with recreational boat traffic). This information, in combination with the source sound pressure level and attenuation assumptions, is used with Equation 4-2 to estimate the project action area. In this case, TL is the difference between the source level at 10 meters and the ambient sound pressure level (176 – 135 = 41 dB).

Equation 4-2 is used as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{41/15})$$

$$D_2 = 5{,}411 \text{ meters}$$

Because the calculated D2 value is greater than 1,000 meters, the project action area should be assumed to be the area within 1,000 meters of the pile driving activity.

Because the reference peak sound pressure level at 10 meters of 188 dB is less than the 206-dB_{PEAK} injury threshold, the 206-dB_{PEAK} clearly does not extend beyond 10 meters from the pile.

To calculate the distance within which the accumulated SEL criterion would be exceeded, the accumulated SEL must first be calculated. Using data from Table 2-3 for 24-inch-diameter concrete piles, the total number of strikes in a single day is estimated to be 2,900 (five times 580).

Equation 2-1 then is used, as follows:

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = SEL_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (\#\ of\ pile\ strikes)$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 166_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (2{,}900)$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 166_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 35$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 201 \text{ dB at 10 meters}$$

Equation 4-2 then is used to determine the distance needed for sound to attenuate to 187 dB, as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{-14/15})$$

$$D_2 = 86 \text{ meters}$$

This indicates that the 187 dB-$SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$ threshold would be exceeded in the area within 86 meters of the pile.

Example 3

Example 3 is the same as Example 2, except that an air bubble curtain attenuation device is applied. The bubble curtain is assumed to provide 5 dB of sound reduction. With 5 dB of attenuation, the source levels would be reduced from 188 dB_{PEAK}, 171 dB_{RMS}, and 166 dB-SEL to 183 dB_{PEAK} and 161 dB-SEL. The sound level reduction needed to get to the 135 dB ambient sound level is 36 dB (171 – 135). The project action area then is calculated as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{-36/15})$$

$$D_2 = 2{,}512 \text{ meters}$$

Because the calculated D2 value is greater than 1,000 meters, the project action area should be assumed to be the area within 1,000 meters of the pile driving activity.

Because the peak sound pressure level at 10 meters is less than 206 dB_{PEAK}, there is no acoustic impact area based on the peak threshold.

Equation 2-1 is used as follows to calculate the accumulated SEL:

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = SEL_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (\#\ of\ pile\ strikes)$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 161_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 10 \log (2{,}900)$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 1614_{SINGLE\ STRIKE} + 35$$

$$SEL_{ACCUMULATED} = 196 \text{ dB at 10 meters}$$

Equation 4-2 then is used to determine the distance needed for sound to attenuate the accumulated SEL value of 196 dB to 187 dB, as follows:

$$D_2 = D_1/(10^{TL/F})$$

$$D_2 = 10/(10^{-9/15})$$

$$D_2 = 40 \text{ meters}$$

The use of the air bubble curtain would reduce the accumulated SEL impact distance from 86 meters to 40 meters, a substantial reduction. The acoustic impact area with the bubble curtain in place is, therefore, the area within 40 meters of the pile driving activity.

4.6.5.6 Application of the Practical Spreading Model and NOAA Fisheries Calculation Spreadsheet

NOAA Fisheries staff from the West Coast Region (John Stadler, (360) 753-9576, John.Stadler@noaa.gov) and (Jacqueline Pearson-Meyer, (707) 575-6057, Jacqueline.Pearson-Meyer@noaa.gov), have developed a spreadsheet that implements the practical spreading loss model. The spreadsheet is available for downloading at the following website:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm

The spreadsheet implements Equations 4-1 and 4-2 to develop distances within which specific thresholds are exceeded. The spreadsheet addresses a condition where fish are assumed to be stationary relative to the pile driving. The spreadsheet allows input of single-strike peak, SEL, and RMS values; the number of pile strikes; and the attenuation constant (F). As a simple example, assume that pile driving produces a sound of 208 dB-peak at a distance of 10 meters. To estimate the sound level at 100 meters, Equation 4-1 is used. With an attenuation constant of 15, the sound level at 100 meters is predicted as follows:

$$\text{Transmission loss} = 15 \log (10/100) = -15 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{Peak sound level at 100 meters} = 85 \text{ dB } (100 \text{ dB} – 15 \text{ dB})$$

To determine the distance at which the peak sound level attenuates to a specific criterion level (for example, 206 dB) Equation 4-2 is used. The difference between 206 dB and 208 dB is -2 dB (transmission loss is always a negative, as applied here). Therefore, -2 dB is the transmission loss needed to attenuate the sound to 206 dB. The distance to 206 dB is predicted as follows:

$$D_2 = 10 / (10^{-2//15}) = 13.6 \sim 14 \text{ meters}$$

These same equations can be used with SEL values and the number of pile strikes to evaluate the accumulated energy associated with pile driving. As an example, assuming that the single-strike SEL is 180 dB at 10 meters and the pile will be driven with 1,000 pile strikes, the accumulated SEL is 210 dB using Equation 2-1. To determine the distance to a specific criterion level (for example, 187 dB accumulated SEL) Equation 4-2 is once again used. The difference between 187 dB and 210 dB is -23 dB. The distance to 187 dB is predicted as follows:

$$D_2 = 10 / (10^{23/15}) = 341 \text{ meters}$$

The NOAA Fisheries spreadsheet introduces the concept of "effective quiet." This concept assumes that energy from pile strikes that are less than 150 dB-SEL do not accumulate to cause injury. For any given condition, at some distance, sound attenuates to the level of effective quiet (i.e., 150 dB-SEL). Under the concept of effective quiet, this spreadsheet assumes that the distance to the accumulated criterion level cannot extend beyond the distance to effective quiet. Using the example above of a single-strike SEL value of 180 dB, the distance to the effective quiet level of 150 dB is 1,000 meters, based on Equation 4-2 and a transmission loss value of -30 dB. Therefore, the spreadsheet limits the distance to the accumulated SEL criterion to 1,000 meters for these specific conditions. This corresponds to about 5,000 pile strikes. Consequently, if the number of pile strikes is greater than 5,000, the distance to the 187 dB accumulated SEL does not increase.

4.6.6 Assessing Potential Impacts on Fish from Pile Driving Sound

The discussion above describes the analytical methods that can be used to determine the acoustic footprint where a fish could be exposed to sound loud enough or long enough to produce injury, based on the interim criteria.

In most cases it will be impractical to accurately predict the number of fish that could be exposed to sound pressure levels that exceed the injury thresholds. Difficulties in predicting fish numbers generally relate to the high spatial and temporal variability of fish distribution and abundance in open water environments, and the physical challenges of developing accurate estimates using standard fish sampling methods. In addition, dead or injured fish are often difficult to detect or recover due to their size in relation to the area or volume of the action area and other environmental conditions (e.g., strong currents or turbidity). In such cases, a common approach for establishing regulatory limits on potential impacts is to use the estimated acoustic impact area as a surrogate for the number of fish subject to harm from pile driving sound. For example, for the purposes of defining the allowable extent of incidental take resulting from injury or death of listed fish species, NOAA Fisheries typically requires peak SPLs or cumulative SELs above the interim thresholds to not extend beyond specific injury isopleth distances from piles (as measured by the methods described above), and requires implementation of an approved hydroacoustic monitoring plan to ensure compliance. Underwater sound levels are typically monitored at 10 meters from the pile and at the injury isopleth distance. An underwater noise monitoring plan template prepared by the Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group is provided in Appendix IV.

Compliance requirements during construction should always be based on actual measured sound pressure levels and not the number of pile strikes per day or number of piles installed per day. Estimates of pile strikes per day and piles installed per day are used to develop isopleth distances, but actual site conditions may be such that the assumed relationship between number of daily strikes and sound pressure level is not accurate. For example if 2,000 strikes per day was assumed in the analysis, it would not be appropriate to stop work after 2,000 strikes if the measured sound level at the calculated isopleth distance is well below the injury threshold. It is also possible that the injury threshold at the isopleth distance could be exceeded with fewer than 2,000 strikes.

Estimation of the number of fish that may be injured, killed, or otherwise subject to potentially injurious pile driving sound may be feasible in some situations where existing information on fish migration timing, movements, and densities in the action area are available or can be reasonably estimated from surveys conducted in the action area prior to proposed pile driving activities. Analytical procedures will vary depending on the spatial and temporal scale of the data (e.g., site- versus reach-specific) and assumptions related to fish distribution and behavior. In general, these procedures will involve 1) estimation of the timing, duration, and rate of pile driving activities based on the proposed construction schedule, 2) estimation of acoustic impact area based on predicted SPLs or cumulative SELs, and 3) estimation of the probable number of fish and duration of exposure based on their distribution, density, and behavior at the time of pile driving activities. The following section illustrates this general approach as applied to two scenarios, one in which fish are moving through the action area (in this case, migrating juvenile salmonids) and one in which the fish are stationary (e.g., summer rearing salmonids).

4.6.6.1 Impact Assessment for Construction during Migration Periods

Although in most cases in-water pile driving would be limited to the in-water work windows when migrating fish presence would be minimal, in some cases (e.g., large projects such as the Bay bridges retrofit projects), pile driving may be required during migration periods. In the case of evaluating pile driving projects in waters with migratory fishes and constrained channels, fish movement through the impact areas must be understood to estimate the impact. Many factors influence fish migration, both temporally and spatially. Temporally, salmon and steelhead have two migration periods each year: when young salmon and steelhead smolts migrate downstream to the ocean and when adult salmon and steelhead migrate upstream to their natal spawning grounds. Smolts typically migrate downstream in spring, and most adults migrate upstream in late summer to winter. Fisheries agencies should be consulted to determine the migration timing for the evolutionarily significant units of salmon and steelhead that potentially occur in the watershed where the project is planned. On a shorter time scale, river conditions such as water flow and water temperature may affect these migrations. For instance, returning adult salmon or steelhead may not enter small coastal streams in California until there is sufficient rainfall to increase flows and provide suitable passage conditions from the ocean to upstream spawning areas.

Spatially, migrating fish may occur within a particular portion of a river where conditions are more favorable to their migration. For instance, in the lower reaches of rivers in and near estuaries, fish may "prefer" migration in the deeper, swifter water within the thalweg (the deepest part of the channel) to accelerate their entry to the sea. This behavior was evident in recent acoustic tracking studies of Chinook salmon near the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 2007).

A simplistic model is presented below (Equation 4-3) to illustrate the basic concept in evaluating pile driving sound impacts on annual cohorts (year classes) of migrating fishes. The effects on cohorts of specific species are particularly important when evaluating population-level impacts. The model in Equation 4-3 may be used to assess the proportion of the population that may transit or enter the acoustic impact areas based on past (historical) data on migration timing and abundance in the project action area. It should be recognized that the model results may be subject to substantial uncertainty because of data limitations and assumptions that need to be made to address these limitations. However, such models may allow an evaluation of potential impacts based on a range of input parameters and conditions representing a reasonable range of uncertainty in fish migration timing and distribution, pile driving schedules, and environmental conditions affecting potential exposure to pile driving sound.

Equation 4-3 presents a basic conceptual model for estimating the proportion of migrating fish that transit acoustic impact areas.

Equation 4-3

Where:

$$PP_e = \sum^{n}_{d} (PP_d \times PT_d \times PW_d)$$

Where:

PP_e = Proportion of annual juvenile salmon migrant population affected per pile driving event (*e*).

PP_d = Proportion of annual migrating juvenile salmon passing a pile per day (d) of active pile Driving.

PT_d = Proportion of time that active pile driving occurs each day.

PW_d = Proportion of cross-sectional area of wetted channel occupied by acoustic impact area.

n = Number of days of pile driving per event.

Note: In this case, a pile driving event is defined by a relatively discrete period of pile driving lasting several days to weeks.

The calculation estimates the proportion of fish that pass through the acoustic impact area during a pile driving event based on the daily proportions of juvenile salmon migrating downstream during the course of the event. The daily population (fish that move past a given point in the river in a day), would be estimated by the timing of the downstream migration. For simplicity, a symmetric (normally distributed) bell-shaped distribution can be used to estimate the proportion of each population that might pass the project site over the migration season (i.e., to determine the percentage of the population that passes the project action area on a daily basis). If reasonably accurate daily proportions are known from historical monitoring data, use of that data would be more appropriate.

The difficulty arises when one tries to apply assumptions concerning the spatial and temporal distribution of the fish in relation to the pile at the time a strike occurs. The concept above assumes a homogeneous temporal and spatial distribution of the fish—that is, it assumes a constant density through the river and through time. Thus, if fish migrate at night when pile driving does not typically occur, or if fish use a preferred area of the river (such as the thalweg) when pile driving is in shallow waters, this approach could result in significant error.

Impact analyses for migrating fishes such as salmon are further complicated when evaluating the effects of accumulated exposure. The fish's transit speed through the project area and its location in the channel in relation to the pile being driven will substantially affect accumulated sound exposure. The speed at which a fish transits the acoustic impact area would affect how many pile strikes the fish would be exposed to while transiting. The location in the channel would determine the distance between the fish and the actively driven pile; thus, its received sound (the attenuation distance) would vary.

In addition to the spatial and temporal issues associated with estimating fish exposure, accurately portraying pile driving operations is problematic. The actual drive times typically are less than the total operational time because of other activities between the time a pile is put into position and the time the operation is completed. Other activities could include dead blows (ineffective hammer strikes), equipment breakdown, welding sections of piles, environmental delays based on wind and tidal velocity, realigning piles, removing or relocating driving templates, installing pile driving followers, and adjusting hammer leads. Because of these other activities, using the total operation time to drive a pile would overestimate the exposure of fish to pile driving sound.

Until an accepted probabilistic model is developed that includes a realistic estimate for drive time, the assessment of pile driving on migrating fish will be a significant point of discussion with the resource agencies. Agreement on assumptions and methods has taken from 6 to 8 months in the case of some of the large bridge projects. Proponents of projects located in waters with migrating fish should allow sufficient time in their permitting schedules for model development and negotiation, and consultation with the agencies should be initiated early in the process (see Section 4.8, *Lessons Learned*).

4.6.6.2 Impact Assessment for Construction during Non-Migration Periods or When Fish are Otherwise Present

Depending on the time of year and the location of the project, pile driving can occur in areas supporting summer-rearing salmonids (e.g., coho salmon and steelhead) or other summer-rearing fish, rather than migrating salmon. Pile driving may also occur in areas where other types of fish are permanent residents. An analysis would need to be conducted for all permanent and temporary piles driven in water and piles driven close to water where sound might propagate into the water from the pile driving activity. An example analysis for a hypothetical bridge replacement project involving in-water pile driving is presented below. To analyze the exposure of stationary fish to pile driving sound, one can use the NOAA Fisheries model or create a relatively simple spreadsheet based on the equation presented in Section 4.6.3.1, *Empirical Sound Attenuation Data*.

In this simple example, construction of a new bridge project that requires two piers is proposed in a salmon-bearing river that supports summer rearing. Each pier consists of two 48-inch diameter steel piles. For simplicity, the example assumes that no permanent abutment piles or temporary trestle piles will be required for construction. If they were required, assessments would be needed for each.

The following source levels are assumed based on data for a similar project provided in Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*.

Single strike peak level: 205 dB at 10 meters.

Single strike SEL value: 185 dB at 10 meters.

Single strike RMS value: 195 dB at 10 meters.

The project engineer has estimated that 900 pile strikes would be required to drive each 48-inch diameter pile. Because up to two piles can be driven in 1 day, it is assumed that up to 1,800 strikes would occur during each pile driving day. No site-specific data on underwater sound attenuation is available. Accordingly, the assessment will assume an attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance. It is anticipated that a bubble curtain will be used that will provide 5 dB of additional attenuation.

Table 4-4 summarizes that data assumptions and the analysis results.

The results in Table 4-4 indicate that the 206 dB peak level would not extend beyond 10 meters. The 187 dB injury threshold would extend to 505 meters and the 183 dB injury threshold would extend to 934 meters. The distance to 150 dB behavior threshold would extend to 4,642 meters.

For this example project, the river being crossed is 20 meters wide and 1 to 2 meters deep. Based on the estimated distance to attenuate to the $SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$ criteria at 505 meters, it is estimated that an area of 10,100 square meters would be subject to accumulated sound pressure levels above the 187 dB injury threshold during each pile driving day.

Depending on the waterbody, data to estimate summer salmonid rearing densities may, or may not be available. It is best to first consult the local area fisheries biologists with DFW and the NOAA Fisheries. In some cases, river conditions are appropriate for conducting reconnaissance-level or more intensive snorkel surveys to gather reach-specific data. Snorkel surveys are generally not required but can be very effective in verifying the species and densities that might be affected.

Table 4-4. Example Summary Table

Site	Location	Pile Type/ Size	Total Piles	Piles/ Day	Strikes/ Pile	Strikes/ Day	Data Source	Assumed Source Levels (dB) at 10 Meters			Attenu-ation from Bubble Curtain (dB)	Assumed Source Levels (dB) at 10 Meters with Bubble Curtain Attenuation			Distance to Effective Quiet	Accumu-lated SEL at 10 m	Distance (m) to threshold			
																	Onset of Physical Injury			Behavior
																	Peak	Cumulative SEL		RMS
								Peak	SEL	RMS		Peak	SEL	RMS			206 dB	Fish ≥ 2 g 187 dB	Fish < 2 g 183 dB	150 dB
North Pier	in water	48-inch diameter steel	2	2	900	1,800	Caltrans 2015. Table I.2-3. 48-inch diameter steel pile driven in the Russian River	205	185	195	-5	200	180	190	1,000	213	<10	505	934	4,642
South Pier	in water	48-inch diameter steel	2	2	900	1,800	Caltrans 2015. Table I.2-3. 48-inch diameter steel pile driven in the Russian River	205	185	195	-5	200	180	190	1,000	213	<10	505	934	4,642

The example used here assumes that no scour holes or other habitat features would concentrate fish and that no other characteristics of the river would affect a uniform density. Based on data for this particular reach of river (or data from a similar river situation), the example assumes (again for simplicity) a density of the fish rearing in this reach of the river of one fish per 10 square meters. Assuming this density, approximately 1,010 fish could be exposed to $SEL_{ACCUMULATED}$ above the interim criteria on each pile driving day.

4.6.6.3 Screening Tool

The Department has developed a simple screening tool that can be used by biologists, planners, and engineers to make an initial determination as to whether or not pile driving sound will be a significant concern on a project. The tool is a spreadsheet that lists a typical range of pile types and the expected distance within which injury thresholds are expected to be exceeded. The number of strikes per day can be adjusted along with the assumed attenuation from an attenuation system such as a dewatered cofferdam or a bubble curtain. The cumulative SEL injury criterion (187 dB or 183 dB) can be selected as well.

Appendix IV provides results from the tool under various conditions. Table VI-1 provides results using the 187 dB cumulative SEL criterion and no additional attenuation from an attenuation system. The tool indicates that an 18-inch concrete pile that is driven with fewer than 1,000 strikes in one day would not likely result in an injury distance that extends beyond 10 meters from the pile. On the other hand, driving of a 14-inch steel H pile would be expected to result in an injury distance that extends beyond 10 meters after only 10 strikes. Table VI-2 provides results based on 5 dB of attenuation from the use of a bubble curtain. As would be expected, the calculated distances and related impact areas are reduced with the addition of an attenuation system. Tables VI-3 and VI-4 show results using the 183 dB cumulative criterion. Tables VI-5 and IV-6 show results for pile driving on land.

4.7 Monitoring during Project Construction

Monitoring and reporting of underwater sound levels is typically required for most projects. The FHWG has developed the Underwater Noise Monitoring Template for use during monitoring of the underwater sounds generated by pile driving. The goal of the template is to standardize collecting and reporting underwater noise monitoring data. The FHWG steering committee concurred on the use of the monitoring template at the July 25, 2013, meeting, with key technical and policy staff present FHWA, NOAA Fisheries, USFWS, DFW, and the Departments of Transportation from California, Oregon, and Washington. The template can be found at the Caltrans fisheries bioacoustics website:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm

4.8 Lessons Learned

4.8.1 Initiating Early Discussions with Resource Agencies

The permitting processes for projects involving pile driving in fish-bearing waters can take considerable time. To minimize the potential for project delays related to permitting, Department staff should initiate discussions with resource agency staff as early as possible in the process. Understanding the agencies' concerns early in the process can facilitate the proper information exchange and timely permit processing by ensuring that the concerns are addressed in the permitting documentation.

4.8.2 Understanding the Issues

The evaluation of bioacoustic impacts on fish from pile driving activities requires a clear understanding of construction methods, fish biology, and underwater acoustics. It is also important to recognize that the analysis of pile driving sound pressure on fish is not an exact science; it requires best professional judgment based on scientific research and experience. Further, the knowledge regarding bioacoustic assessments is evolving and it is important to keep current. The interim criteria may change as the research efforts continue.

In some cases, the staff from the regulating agency will not be completely familiar with this type of analysis and what can and cannot be done to minimize impacts. It is important that the assumptions, analysis, and conclusions are clear and understandable in the documentation to the reviewing agency.

4.8.3 Portraying Reasonable Worst-Case Conditions

The hydroacoustic impact assessment is based on a number of assumptions that must be provided by the project design engineers. The assessment is based on assumptions regarding the number, size, and location of piles along with the number of impact pile strikes that could occur in a single day. It is typical that the design engineers will not be able to provide design level information at the time the assumptions are needed for the hydroacoustic impact assessment. Consequently, the design engineers will need to provide reasonable worst-case assumptions to be used in the assessment. It is highly likely that these assumptions will form the basis of terms and conditions that will be placed on the project by resource agencies. Therefore, it is important for the design engineers to estimate on the high side and provide upper boundary assumptions with regard to size of piles and number of strikes per day. In short, the design engineers and ultimately the construction contractor will need to accept constructing the project within the upper boundary assumptions provided for the hydroacoustic impact assessment or run the risk of project delays associated with re-initiation of consultation with the resource agencies.

4.8.4 Understanding the Ramifications of Permit Conditions

Regulatory agencies can require that numerous terms and conditions be met prior to issuing permits and consultation documents. Permit conditions related to pile driving can be included in the Biological Opinion (terms and conditions), the 1602 Streambed Alteration Agreement, CESA consistency determination, the Coastal Development Permit, and other permits and authorizations. Permit conditions related to pile driving can include a wide variety of requirements, such as daily and seasonal timing restrictions, peak and cumulative sound limitations, requirements for underwater sound attenuation systems, fish salvage or exclusion, hydroacoustic monitoring, fish monitoring, and special studies, and mitigation plans for the take of state-listed species.

It is important that Department staff understand the implications of permit conditions. It is always prudent to ask to review draft permit conditions from the permitting agency. Conditions that are not feasible, that would significantly affect schedule, or that are cost prohibitive should be addressed and negotiated with the appropriate permitting agency.

4.8.5 Developing Mitigation under CESA

If the project results in the take of state-listed fish species, mitigation will be required. The CESA consistency determination must evaluate the effect of the project on listed species and the effect of the mitigation in offsetting that take, based on information from the federal consultation. Therefore, it is important to determine mitigation options while preparing the Biological Assessment (BA) and to include an analysis of the mitigation as part of the BA. The BA also must provide statements committing Department funding to the mitigation plan.

4.9 Conclusion

The evaluation of potential effects of pile driving sound on fish is one of the most significant tasks associated with permitting many of the bridge projects carried out by the Department and is probably the least understood. This guidance manual was developed to provide Department staff with up-to-date information regarding recent developments in the evaluation of pile driving sound and its potential effects on fish. Developing an understanding of this issue requires knowledge of the underlying acoustic principals related to sound generation and transmission of sound through water, the biology and behavior of fishes, the physical effects of sound on fish (both temporary and permanent), the regulatory framework in which the effects are evaluated, and the information and evaluation gaps. By providing this information to Department staff who are involved in permitting, it is hoped that Department staff become better informed regarding pile driving and its potential effects and, thus, can be better prepared to address resource agency requests and concerns during the permitting process.

4.10 References

Carlson, T. J., D. A. Woodruff, G. E. Johnson, N. P. Kohn, G. R. Plosky, M. A. Weiland, J. A. Southard, and S. L. Southard. 2005. *Hydroacoustic Measurements during Pile Driving at the Hood Canal Bridge, September through November 2004*. Battelle Marine Sciences Laboratory. Sequim, WA.

Carlson, T. J., M. Hastings, and A. N. Popper. 2007. *Update on Recommendations for Revised Interim Sound Exposure Criteria for Fish during Pile Driving Activities*. Memorandum to Suzanne Theiss (California Department of Transportation) and Paul Wagner (Washington Department of Transportation).

Crum, L. A., H. C. Pumphrey, R. A. Roy, and A. Prosperetti. 1999. The Underwater Sounds Produced by Impacting Snowflakes. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, Vol. 106, 4:1765–1770.

Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group. 2008. *Agreement in Principal for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities*. Memorandum dated June 12, 2008. Available online at: http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/files/fhwgcriteria_agree.pdf. (Also see *Appendix IV*.)

Hastings, M. C. and A. N. Popper. 2005. *Effects of Sound on Fish*. (J&S 43A0139.) Prepared for the California Department of Transportation. Sacramento, CA.

Illingworth & Rodkin. 2001. *Noise and Vibration Measurements Associated with the Pile Installation Demonstration Project for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span*. Final Data Report, Task Order 2, Contract No. 43A0063.

Laughlin, J. 2006. *Ambient Underwater Sound Measurements in Elliot Bay, March 21, 2006*. Washington Department of Transportation memorandum dated March 23, 2006. Olympia, WA.

O'Neil, D. M. 1998. *Comparison of the Underwater Ambient Noise Measured in Three Large Exhibits at the Monterey Bay Aquarium and in the Inner Monterey Bay*. Master's thesis. Naval Postgraduate School, Department of Physics. Monterey, CA.

Popper, A. N. 2005. *A Review of Hearing by Sturgeon and Lamprey*. Environmental BioAcoustics, LLC, Rockville, Maryland. Prepared for the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Portland, OR.

Popper, A. N., T. J. Carlson, A. D. Hawkins, B. L. Southall, and R. L. Gentry. 2006. *Interim Criteria for Injury of Fish Exposed to Pile Driving Operations* A white paper.

Popper A. N., A. D. Hawkins, R. R. Fay, D. Mann, S. Bartol, Th. Carlson, S. Coombs, W. T. Ellison, R. Gentry, M. B. Halvorsen, S. Løkkeborg, P. Rogers, B. L. Southall, D. G. Zeddies, W. N. Tavolga. 2014. *Sound Exposure Guidelines for Fishes and Sea Turtles*. A Technical Report prepared by ANSI-Accredited Standards Committee S3/SC1 and registered with ANSI.

Scholik, A. R. and H. Y. Yan. 2001. The Effects of Underwater Noise on Auditory Sensitivity in Fish. *Bioacoustics* 12:186–188.

Stadler, John. Biologist. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Regional Office. Email message to David Buehler, ICF Jones & Stokes. February 6, 2009.

Strategic Environmental Consulting, Inc. 2004. *Monitoring the Effects of Conventional Pile Driving on Three Species of Fish – Progress Report*. San Rafael, CA.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2007. *Juvenile Salmonid Outmigration and Distribution in the San Francisco Estuary*. Draft Annual Report. San Francisco District, San Francisco, CA

Washington Department of Transportation. 2006. *Biological Assessment Preparation for Transportation Projects – Advanced Training Manual*. Olympia, WA.

Wilson, O. B, M. S. Stewart, J. H. Wilson, and R. H. Bourke. 1997. Noise Source Level Density due to Surf – Monterey Bay, California. Oceanic Engineering. *Journal of IEEE* 22(3):425–433.

WSDOT. *See* Washington Department of Transportation.

Glossary

acoustical pulse – Integral over time of the initial positive acoustic pressure pulse. This metric has been used by researchers to evaluate the effects of blast signals on fish where the signal is typically characterized by a single positive peak pressure pulse.

acoustic energy flux – The work done per unit area and per unit time by a sound wave on the medium as it propagates. The units of acoustic energy flux are joules per square meter per second (J/m^2-s) or watts per square meter (W/m^2). The acoustic energy flux is also called acoustic intensity.

acoustic particle velocity – The time rate of change of the displacement of fluid particles created by the forces exerted on the fluid by acoustic pressure in the presence of a sound wave. The units of velocity are meters per second (m/s).

air bubble curtain – A device that infuses the area surrounding a pile with air bubbles, creating a bubble screen that reduces peak underwater sound pressure levels.

ambient sound – Normal background noise in the environment that has no distinguishable sources.

ambient sound level – The background sound level, which is a composite of sound from all sources near and far. The normal or existing level of environmental sound at a given location. Distribution of sound pressure versus frequency for a waveform, dimension in root mean square pressure, and defined frequency bandwidth.

amplitude – The maximum deviation between the sound pressure and the ambient pressure.

bandwidth – The range of frequencies over which a sound is produced or received.

characteristic impedance (ρc) – The product of the density (ρ)and speed of sound (c) of a material. The difference in the characteristic impedance values in air and water causes a sound transmission loss between air and water of about 30 dB.

cofferdam – A temporary structure used to isolate an area generally submerged underwater from the water column.

critical habitat – Some listed fish populations also have legally protected habitat designated for the species. The federal Endangered Species Act requires designation of critical habitat for listed populations. Critical habitat refers to areas that are considered necessary for the survival and recovery of a species federally listed as threatened or endangered.

cumulative sound exposure level ($SEL_{cumulative}$) – In an evaluation of pile driving impacts on fish, it may be necessary to estimate the cumulative SEL associated with a series of pile strike events. $SEL_{cumulative}$ can be estimated from the single-strike SEL and the number of strikes that likely would be required to place the pile at its final depth by using the following equation:

$$SEL_{cumulative} = SEL_{single\ strike} + 10 \log (\#\ of\ pile\ strikes)$$

cushion block – A block of material placed atop a piling during pile driving to minimize the noise generated during pile driving. Materials typically used for cushioning include wood, nylon, and blocks.

dead blow – An ineffective hammer strike on the pile when the pile is advancing through soft soil.

decibel (dB) – A customary scale most commonly used for reporting levels of sound. A difference of 10 dB corresponds to a factor of 10 in sound power. A unit describing the amplitude of sound, equal to 20 times the logarithm to the base 10 of the ratio of the pressure of the sound measured to the reference pressure. The reference pressure for water is 1 micro-Pascal (µPa), and for air is 20 micro-Pascals (the threshold of healthy human audibility).

effective pressure – A measure of the square root of mean square (RMS) pressure. For pulses, the average of the squared pressures over the time that comprises that portion of the wave form containing 90 percent of the sound energy of the impulse. This measure historically has been used to calculate the RMS pressure for marine mammals.

essential fish habitat (EFH) – Habitat protected under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act and designated as those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity.

evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) – A Pacific salmon population or group of populations that is substantially reproductively isolated from other conspecific populations and that represents an important component of the evolutionary legacy of the species.

frequency – The number of complete pressure fluctuations per second above and below atmospheric pressure. Normal human hearing is between 20 and 20,000 hertz (Hz). Infrasonic sounds are below 20 Hz and ultrasonic sounds are above 20,000 Hz. Measured in cycles per second (Hz).

frequency spectrum – The distribution of frequencies from low to high that comprise a sound. Frequency spectra are important because the frequency content of the sound may affect the way the fish responds to the sound (in terms of physical injury as well as hearing loss). From an engineering perspective, the frequency spectrum is important because it affects the expected sound propagation and the performance of a sound attenuation (i.e., reduction) system, both being frequency dependent.

hearing generalists – Fish that sense sound directly through their inner ear. Other fish use their inner ear but also sense additional energy from the swim bladder.

hearing specialists – Fish that have evolved any one of a number of different mechanisms to couple the swim bladder (or other gas-filled structure) to the ear. The swim bladder is stimulated by the pressure of sound waves and serves as a transducer that re-radiates energy in the form of particle motion that is detected by the inner ear. This increases hearing sensitivity compared with hearing generalists and, therefore, makes hearing specialists more susceptible to loud noises.

hertz (Hz) – The units of frequency where 1 hertz equals 1 cycle per second.

impulse level – Integral over time of the initial positive acoustic pressure pulse. A graphical plot illustrating the time history of positive and negative sound pressure of individual pile strikes shown as a plot of μPa versus time. Measured in Pascals milliseconds (Pa msec).

intensity (I) – The product of sound pressure and acoustic particle velocity divided by the acoustic impedance of the medium; also referred to as the acoustic energy flux density.

isolation casing – A hollow casing slightly larger in diameter than the piling to be driven that is inserted into the water column and bottom substrate. The casing is then dewatered, and the piling is driven within the dewatered isolation casing. Isolation casings are similar to cofferdams in that they isolate the work area from the water column; however, because isolation casings have a smaller footprint, they cannot be used to isolate large areas. In addition, because the air space is smaller between the pile and the casing, isolation casings do not have as great of an attenuation value as cofferdams have.

lateral line – A series of sensors along the body and head of fish that detects water motion.

otolith – A dense calcareous structure found in the otolithic end organs (i.e., the saccule, lagena, and utricle) of the ears of fishes. Otolithic organs overlie a tissue layer containing numerous sensory hair cells. Because the body of a fish contains mostly water, and otoliths are stiffer and denser than the rest of the body, sound will penetrate the otoliths more slowly than the rest of the fish.

peak sound pressure level (L_{PEAK}) – The largest absolute value of the instantaneous sound pressure. This pressure is expressed as a decibel (referenced to a pressure of 1 micro-Pascal [μPa] for water and 20 μPa for air or in units of pressure, such as μPa or pounds per square inch [psi]).

permanent threshold shift (PTS) – A permanent loss of hearing caused by some kind of acoustic or drug trauma that is generally accompanied by death of the sensory hair cells of the ear.

physoclists – Fishes in which the swim bladder is not connected to the esophagus. Gas is added to the swim bladder using a highly specialized gas-secreting system called the *rete mirabile* that lies in the wall of the swim bladder and extracts gas from the blood using a counter-current system, like that of a kidney, to remove wastes from the blood.

physostomes – Fish species in which the swim bladder is connected to the esophagus by a thin tube. Air to fill the swim bladder is swallowed by the fish and is directed to the swim bladder. Air removal from the swim bladder is by expulsion through this tube to the esophagus.

plane wave – A constant-frequency wave with wavefronts that are infinite parallel planes of constant amplitude normal to the velocity vector of the wave.

project action area – The area experiencing direct and indirect project-related effects.

resonance frequency – The frequency at which a system or structure will have maximum motion when excited by sound or an oscillatory force.

rise time – The time interval a signal takes to rise from 10 to 90 percent of its highest peak value (ANSI S12.7). Measured in milliseconds (msec).

root mean square (RMS) sound pressure level – Decibel measure of the square root of mean square (RMS) pressure. For impulses, the average of the squared pressures over the time that comprise that portion of the waveform containing 90 percent of the sound energy of the impulse.

sound – Small disturbances in a fluid from ambient conditions through which energy is transferred away from a source by progressive fluctuations of pressure (or sound waves).

sound exposure – The integral over all time of the square of the sound pressure of a transient waveform.

sound exposure level (SEL) – The time integral of frequency-weighted squared instantaneous sound pressures. Proportionally equivalent to the time integral of the pressure squared and can be described in terms of μPa^2 sec over the duration of the impulse. Measured in dB re: 1 μPa^2 sec. In this guidance manual, sound energy associated with a pile driving pulse, or series of pulses, is characterized by the SEL. SEL is the constant sound level in one second, which has the same amount of acoustic energy as the original time-varying sound (i.e., the total energy of an event). SEL is calculated by summing the cumulative pressure squared over the time of the event.

sound pressure level (SPL) – An expression of the sound pressure using the decibel (dB) scale and the standard reference pressures of 1 micro-Pascal (μPa) for water and biological tissues, and 20 μPa for air and other gases. Sound pressure is the sound force per unit area, usually expressed in micro-Pascals (or micro-Newtons per square meter), where 1 Pascal is the pressure resulting from a force of 1 Newton exerted over an area of 1 square meter. The SPL is expressed in decibels as 20 times the logarithm to the base 10 of the ratio between the pressure exerted by the sound to a reference sound pressure (e.g., 20 micro-Pascals). SPL is the quantity that is directly measured by a sound level meter. Measured in decibels (dB).

speed of sound (c) – The rate at which sound propagates through a medium. The speed of sound in sea water at a standard temperature of 21 ºC is equal to 4.4 times the speed of sound in air at standard temperature and pressure.

swim bladder – A gas filled chamber found in the abdominal cavity of many species of bony fishes but not in cartilaginous fishes. The swim bladder serves in buoyancy control and may serve as a radiating device for sound production.

teleost fishes – Fishes that maintain their buoyancy by inflating and deflating their swim bladder with air.

temporary threshold shift (TTS) – A temporary loss of hearing as a result of exposure to sound over time. The level and duration of exposure that cause auditory tissue damage and TTS varies widely and can be affected by factors such as repetition rate of the sound, pressure level, frequency, duration, size and life history stage of the organism, and many other factors. Both peak sound pressure level and sound exposure level can affect hearing through auditory tissue damage or TSS. TSS will occur at lower levels than auditory tissue damage.

threshold – The lowest signal level an animal will detect in some statistically predetermined percent of presentation of a signal. Auditory thresholds are the lowest sound levels detected by an animal at the 50-percent level.

waveform – A graph obtained by plotting the instantaneous values of a periodic quantity against time.

wave length (λ) – The length of one full cycle (i.e., the distance between peaks) of a periodic quantity. The wave length is equal to the speed of sound divided by the frequency (i.e., peaks per second expressed as Hertz).

Appendix I Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data

Appendix I Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Acronyms

BO	Biological Opinion
Caltrans	California Department of Transportation
cfm	cubic-foot-per-minute-
CIDH	cast-in-drilled hole
CISS	cast-in-steel-shell
db	decibels
DFG	Department of Fish and Game
DNAP	Double Walled Noise Attenuation Pile
East Span Project	East Span Seismic Safety Project
FEZ	fish exclusion zone
ft-lbs	foot-pounds
GS	Greeneridge Sciences, Inc.
Hz	hertz
I&R	Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc.
I-5	Interstate 5
mm	millimeter
MMSZ	marine mammal safety zone
msec	millisecond
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
PIDP	Pile Installation Demonstration Project
RMS	root mean square
RSRB	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge
SEL	sound exposure level
SFOBB	San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge
SR	State Route

This page intentionally left blank

I.1 Introduction

This appendix contains information on underwater sound pressure levels resulting from pile driving measured in California, Oregon, Washington, Nebraska, Idaho, Hawaii, and Alaska. The information provides an empirical database to assist in predicting underwater sound pressure levels for in-water pile driving projects and determining the effectiveness of noise-control measures. This compendium includes information on major and minor projects, which used a variety of different pile and hammer types that were completed within the last 14 years since work began on the pile installation demonstration project for the San Francisco–Oakland Bay Bridge in December 2000.

This document is organized in self-contained chapters with their own figure and table numbering and references. Chapters on additional pile types are expected as more projects are completed and data become available. The chapters herein include:

- (I.2) Summary – provides an overview of data contained within the compendium.
- (I.3) Steel Pipe or CISS Piles – provides the results of monitoring the installation of steel pipe or cast-in-steel shell (CISS) piles on numerous projects utilizing various construction methods throughout northern California.
- (I.4) Steel H-Piles – provides limited available data on the installation of steel H-piles.
- (I.5) Concrete Pile – provides data on the installation of concrete piles typically used for wharf construction, such as berth construction at ports.
- (I.6) Steel Sheet Piles – provides some information on steel sheet piles used to construct walls and cofferdams in river and marine environments.
- (I.7) Timber Piles – provides very limited data on timber piles; these piles are not commonly used in northern California.
- (I.8) New Benicia–Martinez Bridge Project – provides extensive data accumulated during the pile driving required for the Benicia–Martinez Bridge, including extensive work documenting the effectiveness of attenuation systems.
- (I.9) San Francisco–Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project – provides a comprehensive summary of the initiating project for concerns regarding these impacts in California. Data are presented for the Initial Pile Installation Demonstration Project, the restriking of these piles a year later, and numerous measurements conducted throughout the San Francisco Bay under different conditions during driving of production piles.
- (I.10) Richmond–San Rafael Bridge Project – provides data on a wide variety of steel pile sizes 12–150 inches in diameter, using several different types and methods of pile driving hammers.
- (I.11) Humboldt Bay Bridges Project – provides data for the driving of CISS piles as part of a seismic retrofit project. This also includes testing of attenuation systems for the project.
- (1.12) Plastic Piles – provides data for the driving of four 13-inch diameter plastic piles at the Napa River Bridge for Route 37, Solano County.
- (1.13) Ten Mile River Bridge Piles – provides data for driving of H-piles, steel sheet piles, and steel shell piles at the Ten Mile River Bridge located north of Fort Bragg, CA.

I.2 Summary

Generally, as one might intuitively expect, sound pressure levels from in-water pile driving depend on the size of the pile and the size of the hammer. Other factors, however, can cause large variations in measured sound pressure levels at a particular project site or between project sites. These factors include water depth, tidal conditions or currents if sound attenuation systems are used, and geotechnical conditions that determine how difficult it is to drive the pile.

Table 1.2-1 and Table 1.2-2 summarize data from many of the projects described in the subsequent chapters for continuous impact hammers and vibratory installation, respectively. These tables do not include sound pressure level data for projects that used attenuation systems or drop hammers because results from these projects were highly variable and cannot be summarized into one sound pressure level for a certain type of pile. Table I.2-3 summarizes all pile driving sounds reported in this compendium that did not use attenuation systems. These tables summarize results from unattenuated pile driving at positions close to the pile and include the pile type; pile size; location of the project; water depth; distance from the pile where the data were collected; measured peak, root mean square (RMS), and sound exposure level (SEL), when available; an approximation of the attenuation rate; and comments and photos when available. These data can be used as a ready reference and for comparative purposes when screening a project. Further acoustical information on specific pile types can be found in each chapter.

Table I.2-1. Summary of Near-Source (10-Meter) Unattenuated Sound Pressure Levels for In-Water Pile Driving Using an Impact Hammer

Approximate Pile Size and Pile Type	Relative Water Depth	Average Sound Pressure Level Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
0.30-meter (12-inch) steel H-type – thin	<5 meters	190	175	160
0.30-meter (12-inch) steel H-type – thick	~5 meters	200	183	170
0.36-meter (14-inch) steel H-type - thick	±6 meters	208	--	177
0.6-meter (24-inch) AZ steel sheet	~15 meters	205	190	180
0.33-meter (13-inch) plastic pile	10 meters	177	153	--
0.30-meter (12-inch) concrete pile	Land-based	176	--	146
0.46-meter (18-inch) concrete pile	<3 meters	185	166	155
0.61-meter (24-inch) concrete pile	~5 meters	185	170	160
0.61-meter (24-inch) concrete pile	~15 meters	188	176	166
0.30-meter (12-inch) steel pipe pile	<5 meters	192	177	--
0.36-meter (14-inch) steel pipe pile	~15 meters	200	184	174
0.41 meters (16-inch) steel pipe pile	3 meters	182	--	158
.051 meter (20-inch) steel pipe pile	± 3meters	204	161	--
0.61-meter (24-inch) steel pipe pile	~15 meters	207	194	178
0.61-meter (24-inch) steel pipe pile	~5 meters	203	190	177
0.76 -meter (30-inch) steel pipe pile	± 3 meters	210	190	177
1-meter (36-inch) steel pipe pile	<5 meters	208	190	180
1-meter (36-inch) steel pipe pile	~10 meters	210	193	183
1.5-meter (60-inch) steel CISS pile	<5 meters	210	195	185
1.7-meter (66-inch) steel pipe pile[1]	Land-based	197[1]	--	173[1]
1.8-meter (72-inch) steel pipe pile	Land-Based	204	--	175
2.2-meter (87-inch) steel pipe pile[2]	Land-based	194[2]	--	160[2]
2.4-meter (96-inch) steel CISS pile	~10 meters	220	205	195

[1] Measured 17 meters from pile
[2] Measured 35 meters from pile
dB = Decibels
CISS = Cast-in-steel shell
RMS = Root mean square
SEL = Sound exposure level
1 meter = approximately 3.3 feet

Table I.2-2. Summary of Near-Source (10-Meter) Unattenuated Sound Pressure Levels for In-Water Pile Installation Using a Vibratory Driver/Extractor

Pile Type and Approximate Size	Relative Water Depth	Average Sound Pressure Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS*	SEL**
0.30-meter (12-inch) steel H-type	<5 meters	165	150	150
0.30-meter (12-inch) steel pipe pile	<5 meters	171	155	155
1-meter (36-inch) steel pipe pile – typical	~5 meters	180	170	170
0.6-meter (24-inch) AZ steel sheet – typical	~15 meters	175	160	160
0.6-meter (24-inch) AZ steel sheet – loudest	~15 meters	182	165	165
1-meter (36-inch) steel pipe pile – loudest	~5 meters	185	175	175
1.8-meter (72-inch) steel pipe pile – typical	~5 meters	183	170	170
1.8-meter (72-inch) steel pipe pile – loudest	~5 meters	195	180	180

* Impulse level (35 millisecond average)
** Sound exposure level (SEL) for 1 second of continuous driving
dB = Decibels
RMS = Root mean square
SEL = Sound exposure level
5 meters = approximately 16.5 feet; 15 meters = approximately 49 feet

This page intentionally left blank

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving (Page 1 of 4)

Pile Type	Size or Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels: Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
Steel Pipe	12-inch	Sausalito Dock	Sausalito, CA - Richardson Bay	Drop	2m	10m	177	165	152		Piles driven using 3,000-pound drop hammer that included a cushion block. Cusion block consisted of wood. Drop heights ranged from 5 to 8 ft
				(3,000 lb)		20m	170	156	NA	>5dB at 20m	
Steel Pipe	12-inch	Point Isabel Foundation Repair	El Cerrito, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	1-2m	10m	192	177	NA		Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed in shallow water near land.
Steel Pipe	13-inch	Mad River Slough Pipeline	Mad River Sough, Arcata, CA	Drop Hammer	5m	10m	185	170	NA		Piles driven in tidal river sloough. Piles were first vibrated, then driven with a drop hammer.
				Vibratory Hammer	5m	10m	171	155	155		
Steel Pipe	14-inch	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, CALTRANS	San Rafael, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	>15m	20m	196	180	170		Piles driven in fairly deep waters as part of siesmic retrofit work for the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge. Very short driving periods in deep water next to bridge piers.
				(Delmag D19-42)		30m	190	180	NA		
						40m	191	178	165		
						50m	189	175	NA	~5 dB at 25-50m	
						195m	172	159	NA		
Steel Pipe	20-inch	Stockton WWTP Pipeline	Stockton, CA - San Joaquin River	Diesel Impact	3-4m	10m	208	187	176		Piles driven in San Joaquin River, where water depth was shallow. Piles were also driven on land next to the river.
				(Delmag D19-42)		20m	201	184	173	3-5 dB at 20m	
					Land-based	10m	198	183	171		
						20m	188	172	163	8-10 dB at 20m	
Steel Pipe	24-inch	Rodeo Dock Repair	Rodeo, CA - San Francisco Bay, CA	Diesel Impact	~5m	10m	203	189	178		Dock repair in San Francisco Bay.
				(Delmag D36-32)		50m	191	178	167	>10 dB at 10-50m	
Steel Pipe	24-inch Battered	Amorco Wharf Repair	Martinez, CA - Carquinez Straits	Diesel Impact	>12m	10m	205	190	175		Construction of new dolphins for oil tanker wharf in Benicia Straits.
	24-inch Vertical				>12m	10m	207	194	178		
Steel Pipe	24-inch	Russian River Geyserville Temprorary Trestle Piles CALTRANS	Geyserville - Russian River, CA	Diesel Impact	Land-based	15m	197	185	173		Emergency bridge repair for the Russian River during rainy season when river was near flood stage. These were temporary trestle piles driven on land adjacent to water through saturated soils.
				(Delmag D46-32)		35m	186	174	163	~10 dB 15-35m	
						70m	175	163	NA	~10 dB 35-70m	
Steel Pipe	30-inch	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, CALTRANS	San Rafael, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	4-5m	10m	205	190	NA		Temporary trestle piles driven in relatively shallow waters along the western portion of the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.
				(Delmag D62-22)		20m	200	185	NA	5 dB at 10-20m	
						30m	199	181	170		
						40m	194	178	NA	5-7 dB at 20-40m	
						60m	195	169	NA		
CISS Steel Pipe	36-inch	Humboldt Bay Bridges, CALTRANS	Eureka, CA - Humboldt bay	Diesel Impact	10m	10m	210	193	183		Permanent piles driven next to bridge piers. Measurements part of a test that involved short driving periods with pile well setup.
				(Delmag D36-32)		50m	198	182	NA		
Steel Pipe	40-inch	Alameda Bay Ship & Yacht	Alameda	Diesel Impact (Delmag D80)	13m	10m	208	195	180		Pile driven at Alameda Estuary at a ship and yacht dock.
CISS Steel Pipe	48-inch	Russian River Geyserville Temprorary Trestle Piles CALTRANS	Geyserville - Russian River, CA	Diesel Impact	Land-based	10m	198	185	175		Permanent 48-inch piles used to support new bridge over Russian River. Piles driven next to river during low-flow conditons in the narrow river. Water depth was 2 meters at the deepest channel of the river, which was only 15 meters wide. Levels varied considerably during driving event. The levels shown are representative of the louder driving periods.
				(Delmag D100-13)		20m	199	187	172	0 dB 10-20m	
						50m	190	177	164	10 dB 20-40m	

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving (Page 2 of 4)

Pile Type	Size or Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels				Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
						Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL		
CISS Steel Pipe	48-inch	Russian River Geyserville Permanent Piles	Geyserville - Russian River, CA	Diesel Impact	2m	10m	205	195	185		Permanent 48-inch piles used to support new bridge over Russian River. Piles driven in water during low flow conditons in the narrow river. Water depth was 2m at the deepest channel of the river, which was only 15 meters wide. Levels variede considerablly durign driving event. The levels shown are representative of the louder driving periods.
				(Delmag D100-13)		20m	202	190	180	3-5 dB at 10-20m	
						45m	195	185	175	~5 dB at 20 to 40m	
						65m	185	175	NA	~10 dB at 45-65m	
CIDH Steel Pipe	66-inch	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, CALTRANS	San Rafael, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	4m	4m	219	202	NA		CIDH piles driven through temporary trestle constructed using 30-inch piles. Piles driven in fairly shallow water along the western portion of the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.
				(Delmag D62 or D100)		10m	210	195	NA	5 dB at 10-20m	
						20m	205	189	NA		
						30m	203	185	173		
						40m	198	180	NA	>5 dB at 20-40m	
						60m	187	169	158		
						80m	187	170	NA	~10 dB at 20-40m	
CISS Steel Pipe	96-inch	Benicia-Martinez Bridge, CALTRANS	Benicia, CA - Carquinez Straits	Hydraulic Impact		5m	227	215	201		Numerous measurements made during unattenuated driving of permanent CISS piles for the new Benicia-Martinez Bridge foundations. The levels shown were interpolated from a graph of unattenuated levels that matched well with the extensive measurements by both I&R and Greeneridge Sciences.
				(Menck MHU500T)		10m	220	205	194		
						20m	214	203	190		
						50m	210	196	184		
						100m	204	192	180		
						500m	188	174	164	*16 Log (Dist)*	
						1000m	180	165	155		
Steel Pipe	96-inch	SFOBB 2000 PIDP, CALTRANS	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Hydraulic Impact	~10m	100m	207	195	183		Indicator piles driven as a test program for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project, known as the PIDP. Measurements made when the fourth or last portion of pile driving was conducted.
				(Menck MHU1700T)		200m	201	189	178	*20 Log (Dist)*	
						360m	191	179	168	*29 Log (Dist)*	
CISS Steel Pipe	96-inch	SFOBB 2002 PIDP Restrike, CALTRANS	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Hydraulic Impact	~10m	65m	210	195	NA		This was a restrike of the PIDP (indicator) piles for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project, as described above. Piles were restruck after 2 years.
				(Menck MHU1700T)		100m	198-208	184-195	NA	>12 dB at 50 - 100m	
						450m	190-198	175-185	NA	or *~20 Log(Dist)*	
CISS Steel Pipe	96-inch	SFOBB Skyway Construction, CALTRANS	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Hydraulic Impact	Dewatered Cofferdam	50m	185-190	165-180	NA		Production piles driven in a dewatered cofferdam, where surrounding waters were from 5 to 8 meters deep. Sound levels varied considerably with direction and distance. These measurements represent the loudest portion of the pile driving, when the last portion of the pile was driven.
				(Menck MHU1700T)	~5-8m	100m	185-205	175-190	NA		
						500m	170-185	160-175	NA	Variable	
						1000m	160-170	~155	NA	about *15 Log(Dist)*	
CISS Steel Pipe	96-inch	SFOBB Skyway Construction, CALTRANS	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Hydraulic Impact	8-12m	25m	213	197	188		Production piles driven in water when bubble curtain was not in use due to air bubble curtain testing for fish cage studies. Sound levels varied considerably with direction and distance. These measurements represent the loudest portion of the pile driving, when the last portion of the pile was driven.
				(Menck MHU1700T)		50m	213	200	187		
						100m	197-204	186-192	174-180	>12 dB at 50 - 100m	
						400m	186	175	165	or *~20 Log(Dist)*	

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving (Page 3 of 4)

Pile Type	Size or Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
						Measured Sound Levels					
CISS Steel Pipe	126-inch	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, CALTRANS	San Rafael, CA - San Francisco Bay	Hydraulic Impact Submersible IHC	>15m	10m	218-208	206-197			Piles driven below water to mud line using an IHC hydraulic hammer imparting energy up to 358 kJ. Piles were driven for siesmic upgrade work for the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.
						55m	200	190			
						100m	195	185	170	5 dB at 55-100m	
						230m	190	177	165		
CISS Steel Pipe	150 and 166-inch	Richmond-San Rafael Bridge, CALTRANS	San Rafael, CA - San Francisco Bay		>15m	20m	215-208	206-197	NA		Same as above, but for 150- and 166-inch piles for the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge
						50m	205	192	NA	5-10 dB at 20-50m	
						95m	194	181	NA		
						160m	191	175	NA		
						235m	192	178	NA	2-3 dB at 95-235m	
						~1000m	169	157	NA		
Steel H Pile	~12-inch	Noyo River Bridge	Fort Bragg, CA -	Diesel Impact	2m	30m	179	165	NA		Temporary trestle piles. Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed in shallow water.
						55m	178	164	NA	<5 dB at 30-56m	
						85m	165	150	NA	>5 dB at 56-90m	
					5m	70m	168	156	NA		Same as above, but these piles were driven in deeper water adjacent to the navigational channel.
						90m	170	158	NA		
					Land	25m	174	159	NA		Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed on land next to 2-meter-deep water.
						35m	169	158	NA		
						95m	157	145	NA		
Steel H Pile	10-inch	San Rafael Canal	San Rafeal, CA -	Diesel Impact	2m	10m	190	175	NA		Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed close to slough shore in very shallow water.
						20m	170	160	NA	>10 dB at 20m	
				Vibratory Hammer	2m	10m	161	147	NA		
						20m	152	137	NA	10 dB at 20m	
Steel H Pile	15-inch thin, battered	Ballena Isle Marina	Alameda, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	2-3m	10m	190	165	155		Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed close to slough shore. Piles were battered.
	15-inch thick vertical				2-3m	10m	195	180	170		Same as above, but thick-walled vertical piles.
Steel H Pile	15-inch thick vertical	Ballena Isle Marina	Platte River, Nebraska	Diesel Impact	Dewatered Cofferdam	10m	172	160	147		Piles driven in dewatered cofferdam adjacent to Platte River, which is very shallow - about 2 meters deep.
						25m	177	165	148		
Concrete	16-inch Square	Pier 2, Concord NWS	Concord, CA - Carquinez Straits	Drop Steam-powered	10m	10m	184	173	NA		Piles driven using steam-powered drop hammer that included a cushion block. Hammer energies were 48,000 to 60,000 ft-lbs.
Concrete	24-inch Square	Pier 40 Berth Construction	San Francisco, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	3-4m	10m	185	173	--		Piles driven using small diesel impact hammer. Piles installed in shallow water with dense sand layer. Water jetting and cushion block used. Lower hammer energy used to reduce sound pressures.
						20m	178	165	--		

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving (Page 4 of 4)

Pile Type	Size or Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels: Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
Concrete	24-inch Octagonal	Berth 22 Reconstruction, Port of Oakland	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact (Delmag D62-22)	10-15m	10m	188	176	166		Piles installed using D62-22 Delmag impact hammer with cushion block. Hammer energies up to 165,000 ft-lbs (224 kilo joules). Fish exposure study conducted during measurements.
						100m	174	163	152	*13Log(Dist)*	
Concrete	24-inch Octagonal	Berth 22 Reconstruction, Port of Oakland	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	Land	10m	192	181	174		Piles installed at edge of water for wharf construction, as described above.
						20m	187	176	168	5 dB at 10 to 20m	
						35m	184	171	--		
						85m	173	161	--	>5 dB at 35 to 85m	
Concrete	24-inch Octagonal	Berth 32 Reconstruction, Port of Oakland DUTRA	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact (Delmag D62-22)	~7-8m	10m	185	173	163		Piles installed in-water for wharf construction.
Concrete	24-inch Octagonal	Berth 32 Reconstruction, Port of Oakland MANSON	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact (Delmag D62-22)	8m	10m	184	174	165		Piles installed for wharf construction, similar to above. Unattenuated measurements made briefly at end of drive.
Concrete	24-inch Octagonal	Berth 23, Port of Oakland (Vortex)	Benicia, CA - Carquinez Straits	Diesel Impact (Delmag D62-22)	4m	10m	185	172	NA		Piles installed as part of wharf reconstruction, where moderate tidal currents were present. Levels briefly reached 192 dB peak and 172 dB RMS at 10 meters (unattenuated) for most driving events.
						20m	180	170	NA		
AZ Steel Sheet	24-inch AZ	Berth 23, Port of Oakland (Vortex)	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	15m	5m	209	195	NA		Sheet piles installed to construct underwater sea wall for deep port to accommodate large vessels. Piles first vibrated into place. A follower was attached to impact hammer that extended to sea bottom, so piles could be driven to tip elevation near mud line.
						10m	205	189	179		
						20m	205	186	175		
						40m	188	173	NA		
				Vibratory	15m	10m	177	163	162		
						20m	166	NA	NA		
AZ Steel Sheet	24-inch AZ	Berth 30, Port of Oakland	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Vibratory	15m	10m	175	162	162		Tested method to vibrate piles to tip elevation rather than use impact hammer. Follower used with vibratory driver/extractor.
AZ Steel Sheet	24-inch AZ	Berth 35/37, Port of Oakland (Dutra)	Oakland, CA - San Francisco Bay	Vibratory (APE 600B Super Kong)	15m	10m	177	163	163		Vibratory installation of sheet piles for deep-water berth, as described above. Sound levels of some driving events exceeded 185 dB peak and 165 dB SEL for very short periods.
Timber	12-14 inch	Ballena Bay	Alameda, CA - San Francisco Bay	Drop (3,000 lb)	2-4m	10m	180	170	160		Piles driven using 3,000-pound drop hammer that included a cushion block. Cusion block consisted of rubber matting, plastic, and wood. Drop heights ranged from 5 to 15 feet.
						20m	170	160	NA	>5dB at 20m	

[1] Attenuation rates applies to the range of measurements

Source: Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 2/6/2009)

Table I.2-3A Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving-Addendum 1 (Page 1 of 2)

						Measured Sound Levels					
Pile Type	**Size or Diameter**	**Project**	**Location**	**Hammer Type**	**Water Depth**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**	**Distance Attenuation Rate[1]**	**Comments**
Steel Pipe	12-inch	Sand Mound Test Pile Project	Oakley, CA - Sand Mound Slough	Drop (3,000 lb)	3m	10m	187	--	161		Piles driven using 3,000 pound drop hammer that included a plastic lined pile caps. Drop height 10 ft 22 blows pile were used to set the pile approximatley 15 ft.
Steel pipe	14-inch	Richmond/San Rafael Bridge Fender Repair	Richmond, CA San Francisco Bay	Diesel Impact	20m	10m 20m	199 195	-- --	169 165	*14Log(Dist)*	Fender piles measurements were made at three depths - 3 meters, 10 meters,and 15 meters.
Steel Pipe	16-inch	Sand Mound Test Pile Project	Oakley, CA - Sand Mound Slough	Drop (3,000 lb)	3m	10m	182	--	158		Piles driven using 3,000 pound drop hammer that included a plastic lined pile caps. Drop height 10 ft. 16 blows pile were used to set the pile approximatley 15 ft.
Steel Pipe	16-inch	Airport Road Bridge	Redding, CA Sacramento River	Diesel Impact D-19	< 1m	10m 20m	204 200	-- --	-- --	*14Log(Dist)*	Temporary trestle piles driven in shallow water near the bank using a small diesel impact hammer
Steel Pipe	20-inch	Bradshaw Bridge	Lathrop, CA San Joaquin River	Diesel Impact D-30	<1m	10m 20m	204 197	161 155	-- --	*19Log(Dist)*	Temporary trestle piles driven in relatively shallow water along the east bank of the San Joaquin River
Steel Pipe	24-inch	Tounge Point Pier Astoria, Or	Astoria, Oregon Columbia River	Diesel Impact D-46	±4m	10m 20m	205 198	188 180	173 162	*23Log(Dist)*	Permanent piles driven through holes in the existing pier. Measurements were part of a test of the effectiveness of a bubble ring system
Steel pipe	24-inch	Cleer Creek WWTP	Redding,CA Sacramento River	Diesel Impact D-42	<1m	10m 20m	182 174	-- 159	159 --	*25Log(Dist)*	Temporary trestle piles that were struck between 18 and 24 blows to verify their bearing.
Steel pipe	24-inch	SR 520 Test Pile Project	Seattle, WA Portage Bay	Disel Impact	3-7m	10m	195	176	164		Levels at the 200 meter and 500 meter location were not valid due to high background levels (waves slapping on the boat and raft)
Steel pipe	24-inch	Portland-Milwaukie Light Rail Project	Portland, OR Willamette River	Diesel Impact	4m	10m 158m	200 182	-- --	172 157	*15Log(Dist)*	Temporary trestle piles driven as part of a bubble on/off test.
Steel pipe	30-inch	Siuslaw River Bridge	Florence, OR Siuslaw River	Diesel Impact D-52	±3m	10m	210	190	177		Permanent 1-inch thick piles driven in three sections as part of a bubble on/off test.
Steel pipe	30-inch	SR 520 Test Pile Project	Seattle, WA Lake Washington	Disel Impact	3-7m	10m 200m 500m	196 177 160	185 161 145	172 146 135	*15Log(Dist) 10m to 200m 20 Log(Dist) 10m to 500m*	Test pile project, pile driven in soft substrate
Steel Pipe	60-inch	Noyo Bridge Replacement	Fort Bragg, CA - Noyo Harbor	Diesel Impact	Coffer dam- in water 1.5 m deep	10m 50m 80m 125m	207 190 187 175	192 175 171 160	-- -- -- --	*10m to 50m 25Log(Dist) 10m to 80m 22Log(Dist) 10m to 125m 29Log(Dist)*	Piles were driven in a coffer dam adjacent to the harbor

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 10/1/2012)

Table I.2-3A Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving-Addendum 1 (Page 2 of 2)

Pile Type	Size or Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels: Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
Steel pipe	66-inch	Russian River Bridge	Ukiah, CA State Route 222 Bridge	Diesel Impact D132	Land Based	17m	197	185	173	*17Log(Dist)*	Permanent piles drivren on land, the Russian River depth was less than 1 meter.
						110m	183	168	157		
Steel pipe	72-inch	Feather River Bridge	Sutter County, CA Feather River	Disel Impact	Land Based	10m	204	--	175		Piles were driven on land adjacent to the Feather River
Steel pipe	87-inch	Mad River Bridge Project	McKinleyville, CA Mad River	Diesel Impact D-225	Land Based	35m	194	--	160	35m top 50m 34Log(Dist) 35m to 150m 34Log(Dist)	These levels are from the driving of the second section of the piles. The first section of the piles had lower noise levels.
						50m	188	--	156		
						150m	172	--	<150		
Steel H-Piles	H-Piles	Hazel Bridge	Sacramento, CA American River	Diesel Impact	3-6m	10m	208	--	177	*25Log(Dist) Peak 15Log(Dist) SEL*	Driving through rip-rap rock very hard driving
						20m	199	--	172		
Steel H-Piles	H-Piles	Parson Slough	Montrery, CA Parson Slough	Diesel Impact APE19-42	4 meters	10m	200	178	166	*30Log(Dist) Peak 15Log(Dist) SEL*	Small Diesel hammer in deep water
						20m	190	174	162		
Concrete	12-inch Round	Willits Hydro	Willits, CA	Diesel Impact D-30	Land Based	10m	176	--	146		Three piles driven on land meauserements were made in creek behind a small diversion dam
Concrete	18-inch Octagonal	Marina Repair	Berkeley, CA San Francisco Bay	Diesel ICE-60	<3m	10m	181	159	155		Limited data set only one pile measured
Concrete	18-inch Octagonal	Berkeley Marina	Berkeley, CA San Francisco Bay	Diesel D-30	2-4m	10m	185	166	154		
Concrete	24-inch octagonal	Humboldt Aquatic Center - Floating Dock	Eureka, CA Humboldt Bay	Diesel D-30	3-4m	10m	179	158	151	*14Log(Dist)*	Piles were first jetted in and then driven for less than 5 minutes
						20m	175	154	148		
Plastic Piles	13-inch	SR 37 fender repair	Napa, CA - Napa River	Diesel Impact ICE - 60	10m	10m	177	153	--	*16Log(Dist)*	Piles were driven as part of fender repairs the the SR 37 bridge not bearing piles
						20m	172	151	--		

[1] Attenuation rates apply to range of measurements.

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 10/1/2012)

Table I.2-3B Summary of Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving-Addendum 2-2014 Data (Part 1 of 3)

Pile Type	Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels				Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
						Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Schuyler Heim Bridge	Long Beach, CA Cerritos Channel	Diesel Impact D-36	1.5-12m	13m	207	188	--	*20Log(Dist) for Peak* *26Log(Dist) for RMS*	At the distance locations on the final day of testing, monitoring was done at two depths: 1 meter from the bottom of the channel & at mid-depth; the data presented here represents mid-depth results only, but results at both depths are provided in the final report.
						30m	198	179	--		
						125m	194	171	--		
						190m	188	168	--		
						250m	179	158	--		
						356m	174	152	--		
						460m	176	147	--		
						500m	176	147	--		
Steel Shell	144-inch	Schuyler Heim Bridge	Long Beach, CA Cerritos Channel	Diesel Impact D-100	15m	10m	199	183	169	*12Log(Dist) for Peak* *13Log(Dist) for RMS*	The 312m and 430m locations were partially shielded by the existing bridge foundation.
						30m	191	174	--		
						312m	173	133	--		
						430m	175	134	--		
						500m	178	161	--		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Northern Rail Extension	Salcha, AK Tanana River	Diesel Impact D-46	<1m	10m	208	--	173	*49Log(Dist) for Peak* *43Log(Dist) for SEL*	Data was taken for impact and vibratory pile driving; the values here reflect the peak sound pressure level for both tests, but the rate was calculated for the impact results only.
						15m	198	--	166		
						25m	180	--	145		
						40m	178	--	147		
Steel Shell	72-inch	Northern Rail Extension	Salcha, AK Tanana River	Diesel Impact D-180	2-3m	11m	210	195	183	*32Log(Dist) for Peak* *32Log(Dist) for RMS* *32Log(Dist) for SEL*	
						15m	205	190	178		
						22m	199	184	173		
						26m	198	183	171		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Northern Rail Extension	Salcha, AK Tanana River	Vibratory APE 200	<1m	10m	184	--	159	*46Log(Dist) for Peak* *33Log(Dist) for SEL*	Data was taken for impact and vibratory pile driving; the values here reflect the peak sound pressure level for both tests, but the rate was calculated for the impact results only.
						20m	170	--	149		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Diesel Impact APE D-80 & APE D-100	Land based	350m	166	153	141	*17Log(Dist) for Peak at mid-depth,* *21Log(Dist) for RMS at mid-depth,* *28Log(Dist) for SEL at mid-depth*	Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report.
						1,053-1,241m	157	142	126		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Diesel Impact APE D-80 & APE D-100	0.9-9.1m	10-24m	208	184	173	*18Log(Dist) for Peak at mid-depth,* *19Log(Dist) for RMS at mid-depth,* *18Log(Dist) for SEL at mid-depth*	Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report.
						260-340m	179	159	147		
						853-1,530m	176	144	132		
						2,209-2,377m	164	144	133		
						2,820-2,922m	162	148	126		
Steel Shell	36-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Disel Impact APE D-80 & APE D-100	0.3-19.2m	10-26m	204	183	171	*15Log(Dist) for Peak at mid-depth,* *14Log(Dist) for RMS at mid-depth,* *13Log(Dist) for SEL at mid-depth*	Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report.
						92-230m	196	175	164		
						858-1,387m	179	157	146		
						2,253-2,296m	173	155	144		
						2,836-2,889m	175	150	141		

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 1/7/2015)

Table I.2-3B Summary of Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving-Addendum 2-2014 Data (Part 2 of 3)

							Measured Sound Levels				
Pile Type	**Diameter**	**Project**	**Location**	**Hammer Type**	**Water Depth**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**	**Distance Attenuation Rate[1]**	**Comments**
Steel Shell	48-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Disel Impact APE D-80 & APE D-100	24.7-27.4m	10m	213	190	177		Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report. Only one pile was driven, not enough data to provide attenuation rate.
						50m	203	185	179		
						1,737m	167	149	138		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Vibratory APE 200 & APE 600	1.8-17.4	10-19m	--	165	--	*15Log(Dist) for RMS at mid-depth 15Log(Dist) for RMS at deep-depth*	Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report.
						230-295m	--	143	--		
						1,087-2,284m	--	125	--		
Steel Shell	36-inch	Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf	Bangor, WA Naval Base Kitsap	Vibratory APE 200 & APE 600	4.6-21.9	6-29m	--	169	--	*16Log(Dist) for RMS at mid-depth 18Log(Dist) for RMS at deep-depth*	Monitoring was done at two depth, data presented here represents mid-depth only. Results for both depths are provided in final report.
						64-98m	--	152	--		
						100-315m	--	150	--		
						836-2,290m	--	135	--		
						2,200-2,281	--	132	--		
						2,800-2,937m	--	133	--		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Crescent City Inner Harbor Dock Repairs	Crescent City, CA Crescent Harbor	Internal Pneumatic 500 lb Drop Hammer	4.5m	10m	210	181	--	*21Log(Dist) for Peak 20Log(Dist) for RMS*	
						60m	185	167	--		
						140m	186	158	--		
						230m	185	160	--		
						320m	160	143	--		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Crescent City Inner Harbor Dock Repairs	Crescent City, CA Crescent Harbor	Diesel Impact D-	4.5m	10m	208	189	--	*33Log(Dist) for Peak 21Log(Dist) for RMS*	
						160m	164	148	--		
						170m	163	145	--		
						185m	166	150	--		
Steel Shell	24-inch	Willits Bypass Project	Willits, CA Little Lake Valley	Diesel Impact Delmag 46-32 & 30-32		35m	166	--	139		Piles were driven on land, ground-borne vibrations caused 50 meter location to be louder than the 35 meter location. No attenuation rate calculated.
						50m	168	--	140		
Steel Shell	14-inch	Willits Bypass Project	Willits, CA Little Lake Valley	Diesel Impact Delmag 30-32		35m	170	--	134		Piles were driven on land, ground-borne vibrations caused 50 meter location to be louder than the 35 meter location. No attenuation rate calculated.
						50m	175	--	137		
Steel Shell	36-inch	North Fork Payette River Bridge Project	Cascade, Idaho North Fork Payette River	Diesel Impact Delmag D62-22	Land Based	10m	202	185	171	*23Log(Dist) for Peak 21Log(Dist) for RMS 19Log(Dist) for SEL*	Piles were driven in a gravel causweway built out into the river
						20m	195	179	166		
						30m	191	175	162		
Steel Shell	36-inch	Coliseum Way Bridge Retrofit	Oakland, CA Damon Slough			10m	213	--	185	*24Log(Dist) for Peak 31Log(Dist) for SEL*	
						200m	182	--	145		
Concrete	24-inch Square	Shell Martinez Refinery Marine Terminal Fender Replacement Project	Martinez, CA	Diesel Impact	6m	17.5m	195	176	164	*43Log(Dist) Peak 40Log(Dist) SEL*	
						35m	182	--	152		
						70m	169	--	138		

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 1/7/2015)

Table I.2-3B Summary of Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving-Addendum 2-2014 Data (Part 3 of 3)

Pile Type	Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Distance Attenuation Rate[1]	Comments
Concrete	16.5-inch Octagonal	Kawaihae Small Boat Harbor	Kawaihae, HI Small Boat Harbor	Diesel Impact D19-32	2-4m	10m	192	172	160	*26Log(Dist) for Peak*	Peak levels at 210m were not detectable above ambient levels.
						46m	179	162	153	*29Log(Dist) for RMS*	
						120m	164	141	128	*29Log(Dist) for SEL*	
						210m	--	132	120		
Steel H-Piles	14 x 117 in	Weiser River Bridge	Weiser, Idaho Weiser River	Diesel Impact ICE I-30	Land Based	10m	174	162	145		Piles were driven on land, ground-borne vibrations caused 20 meter location to be louder than the 10 meter location. No attenuation rate calculated.
						20m	181	169	158		
Steel H-Piles	H-Piles	Petaluma River Bridge	Petaluma, CA US 101	Hydraulic Impact	Land based	10m	179	154	144		Piles were driven on land, ground-borne vibrations caused 23 meter location to be louder than the 10 meter location. No attenuation rate calculated.
						12m	160	149	138		
						16m	157	146	136		
						23m	187	161	152		
Steel H-Piles	H-Piles	Petaluma River Bridge	Petaluma, CA US 101	Hydraulic Impact	0.9-1.2m	10m	199	178	162	*33Log(Dist) for Peak*	
						12m	190	174	161	*47Log(Dist) for RMS*	
						23m	187	161	152	*27Log(Dist) for SEL*	
Sheet Piles		Northern Rail Extension	Salcha, AK Tanana River	Vibratory APE 200	<1m	10m	164	--	140		
Wood		Port of Benicia	Benicia, CA Port of Benicia	Impact	10.7m	10m	180	--	148		

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 1/7/2015)

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving - Addendum 3 - 2015 Data (Part 1 of 2)

Pile Type	Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Rate[1]	Comments
Steel Pipe	24-inch	Prichard Lake Pumping Station	Sacramento, CA Prichard Lake	Diesel Impact	0.25-3m	10m 18m	204 173	-- 158	168 147	*Not calculated*	Piles at 10 meters were unattenuated, the piles at 18 meters were attenuated
Steel pipe	24-inch	Prichard Lake Pumping Station	Sacramento, CA Prichard Lake	APE Vibratory	3m	10m	181	153	153	*No calculated only measured at one distance*	
Steel pipe	30-inch	Prichard Lake Pumping Station	Sacramento, CA Prichard Lake	APE Vibratory	1-3m	10m	196	159	159	*No calculated only measured at one distance*	
Steel pipe	18-inch	Prichard Lake Pumping Station	Sacramento, CA Prichard Lake	APE Vibratory	3m	10m	196	158	158	*No calculated only measured at one distance*	
Steel Pipe	24-inch	Port of Coeyman	Coeyman, NY	Diesel Impact	3-4m	10m ~50m	209 200	181 176	176 166	*16Log Peak 14Log SEL*	
Sheet Piles	24-inch	Napa River Flood Control Project	Napa, CA Napa River	Hydraulic Impact APE 7.5	2-6m	10m	209	175	166	*No calculated only measured at one distance*	One sheet pile the levels were as high as 211 dB Peak, Typically the peak levels were around 200 dB
Sheet Piles	24-inch	Norfolk Naval Station	Norfolk VA.	ICE Vibratory	varied	9 m 11m	189 187	161 159	-- --	*Not calculated only measured at one distance*	The typical or average Peak levels were around 172dB.
Concrete	30-inch Square	Choctawhatchee Bay Test Pile Program	Walton County, Florida	Diesel Impact	3m	10m 95m	192 172	168 151	158 142	*Type I Piles 16 Log Peak 15 Log RMS 13 Log SEL*	The difference between a Type I pile and a Type II pile is that the Type II piles are solid concrete with reinforcing steel and the Type I piles are reinforced hollow concrete piles, except 10 feet at the top or head of the piles and at the tip or foot of the piles are solid. Th epiles were driven in similar soil conditions and using the same diesel impact hammer.
						10m 150m	200 171	176 146	166 136	*Type II Piles 22 Log Peak 20 log RMS 20 Log SEL*	
Concrete Fender Piles	24-inch	Norfolk Naval Station	Norfolk VA.	Hydraulic Drop Hammer	3-4m	~10m ~35m	189 176	176 159	166 152	*22Log Peak 23Log RMS 22Log SEL*	Levels were measured at distances from 9 to 13 meters and 34 to 38 meters. The levels shown in this Table are nomalized at 10 meters and 35 meters
Concrete	14-inch Square	Noyo Harbor Mooring Basin Dock Project	Fort Bragg, CA Noyo Harbor	Diesel Impact	2-3m	10m 45m	183 163	157 139	146 127	*30Log Peak 27Log RMS 29Log SEL*	
Concrete	24-inch	Craney Island	Norfolk VA.	Diesel Impact	1-2m	10m 50m	183 159	164 153	154 144	*Not Calculated*	Piles were being proofed to verify the bearing capacity, they were only hit 39 stikes at two different times. The drop off rates were not calculated, there appears to be a problem with the levels measured at the 50 meter location.

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 4/29/2015)

Table I.2-3 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Measurements for Marine Pile Driving - Addendum 3 - 2015 Data (Part 2 of 2)

Pile Type	Diameter	Project	Location	Hammer Type	Water Depth	Measured Sound Levels Distance	Peak	RMS	SEL	Rate[1]	Comments
H-Piles		Norfolk Naval Station	Norfolk VA.	ICE Vibratory HPSI Vibratory	varied	10m	157	142	--	*No calculated measured at one location*	These piles were measured at various locations, both installing and removing piles. There were also two different vibratory hammers used
						21m	151	132	--		
Timber Piles		Norfolk Naval Station	Norfolk VA.	Vibratory	12m	10m	172	162	--	*Not Calculated*	Very short driving time the average was 40 seconds with a range of 19 to 84 seconds. Ther emay have been som excess attenuation between the 10 meter location and the 50 meter location
						50m	--	138	--		

Source: Illingworth Rodkin, Inc. (Ver. 4/29/2015)

I.3 Steel Pipe or CISS Piles

This chapter describes results for various projects that involved the installation of steel pipe piles or cast-in-steel-shell (CISS) piles. Most of these projects were small, and some involved only the measurements when one or two piles were driven. Some projects used various attenuation systems, while others did not. Where available, measurement results for vibratory pile installation are included.

I.3.1 12-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles in Shallow Water—El Cerrito, CA

Two steel shell piles were driven in the San Francisco Bay near El Cerrito, California in October 2002[1]. The purpose of the project was to repair a building foundation. The piles had a diameter of 0.3 meter (12 inches) and were driven using an impact pile driving hammer. Underwater sound levels were measured during the driving of two piles. The first pile (center pile) was located approximately 7meters from dry land in 2-meter-deep (6.5-foot-deep) water. The second pile (east pile) was near shore where the water depth was about 1 meter (3.3 feet). Underwater sound levels were measured at a depth of 2 meters (6.5 feet), where the water was 3 meters (10 feet) deep. The distance from the hydrophone to the pile being driven was approximately 10 meters (33 feet). The typical peak levels for the center pile were from 190 to 192 decibels (dB) peak, and the RMS-impulse sound pressure levels were typically from 175 to 177 dB RMS. The east pile, which was driven in very shallow water, resulted in peak sound pressure levels of about 185 to 188 dB and RMS sound pressure levels of 170 to 173 dB. The duration of continuous driving for each pile was approximately 5 minutes. The driving event was preceded by about 1 to 2 minutes of occasional pile strikes with sound pressure levels that were about 5 dB lower. An underwater noise attenuation system was not employed on this project. Measured sound pressure data are summarized in Table I.3-1.

Table I.3-1 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 12-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles– El Cerrito, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
Pile	**Conditions**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
Center	Unattenuated – diesel impact hammer	192	177	--
East	Unattenuated – diesel impact hammer	188	172	--

Analyses of signal recordings, not shown, indicate that the pulse durations were about 60 milliseconds (msec), with most energy contained within the first 30 msec. Acoustical energy was concentrated in the frequency region between 250 and 1,000 hertz (Hz). SELs were not measured or calculated for this project.

I.3.2 60-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles for Noyo River Bridge Replacement—Fort Bragg, CA

In October 2002, permanent 1.5-meter- (60-inch-) diameter CISS piles were driven as part of the Noyo River Bridge Replacement project in Fort Bragg, California[2]. Temporary H-piles were also driven for this project, but they are discussed in a different section. The CISS piles are part of the south pier supporting the new bridge. The piles were driven within a water-filled cofferdam, near shore in about 1.5-meter-deep water (see Figure I.3-1). Underwater sound monitoring was conducted for the sole purpose of identifying safety zones for marine mammals (seals) that inhabit the area. Measurements were made across the main channel of the harbor at positions ranging from 12 to 150 meters (39 to 492 feet) from the piles.

Figure I.3-1 CISS Piles Driven for the Noyo River Bridge Replacement Project

Results of the measurements on October 25, 2002, are summarized in Table I.3-2. Sound pressure levels dropped off at a rate of about 7 dB per doubling of distance out to 80 meters (262 feet) and then dropped off at a much greater rate out to 125 meters (410 feet). Water depth was generally very shallow, less than 2 meters (6.5 feet). The fairly narrow navigation channel depth was about 3 to 5 meters (10 to 16.5 feet) at the time of the measurements (depth varies with tide). Because measurements were conducted only to identify the extent of the marine mammal safety zone, which was based on RMS sound pressure level measurements, detailed analyses of acoustic signals were not performed. Therefore, SELs are not available.

Table I.3-2 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 60-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles – Noyo River Bridge Replacement, Fort Bragg, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Cofferdam – in water	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	207	192	--
	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 50 meters	190	175	--
	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 80 meters	187	171	--
	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 125 meters	175	160	--

I.3.3 12-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles in Shallow Water Using Drop Hammer at Galilee Marina—Sausalito, CA

Two small-diameter steel pipe piles were driven in March 2003 in Sausalito, California[3]. The purpose of the project was to secure marina docks at Galilee Marina. The pile driving hammer used was a 3,000-pound drop hammer. Measurements were made primarily at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile, with supplementary measurements at 20 meters (65 feet). Because the water depth was about 2 meters (6.5 feet), the hydrophones were positioned at 1meter water depth. Measured sound pressure data are summarized in Table I.3-3. At 10 meters (33 feet), the average peak pressure was 175 dB, and most strikes were 178 dB or lower. The 20-meter (65-foot) distance results were consistently 5 dB lower, and the highest level measured was 175 dB peak. Underwater sound level varied, as drop height was not precisely controlled. Hammer drops of 1.5 to 2.5 meters (5 to 8 feet) yielded peak pressures that ranged from 170 to 178 dB at the 10-meter (33-foot) position. For one particularly high drop (3 meters [10 feet]), the peak pressure level was 181 dB. The duration of driving for each pile was approximately 10 minutes, with sporadic hammer strikes. Each pile required about 30 strikes to install. Although not reported, measurements made at 20 meters (65 feet) were observed to be 5 dB lower. An underwater noise attenuation system was not employed on this project.

Table I.3-3 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 12-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Galilee Marina, Sausalito, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
	Conditions	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
1 and 2	Unattenuated – drop impact hammer	175	165	152

The representative signal analyses (see Figure I.3-2) describe the relatively high frequency content of the pulse. Most acoustical energy was contained within about 250 to 2000 Hz. The peak sound pressure occurred about 20 msec into the 75-msec event. As a result, the rate sound energy accumulated was relatively slow. The SEL for these typical strikes was 152 dB.

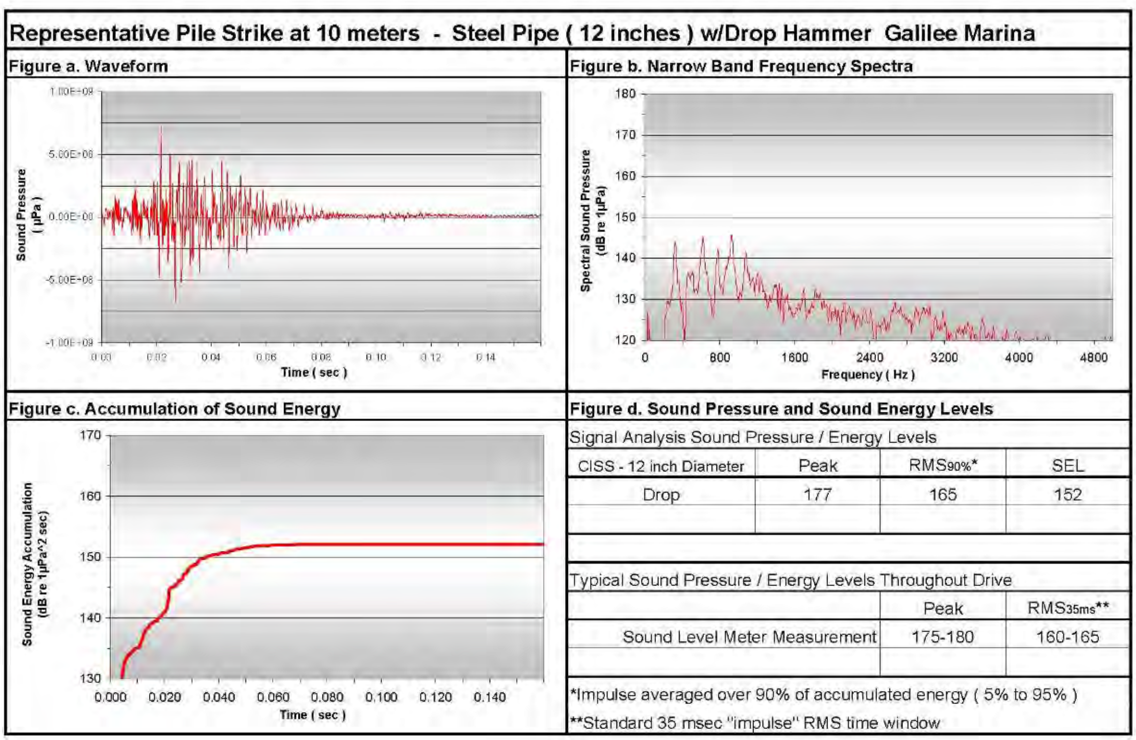


Figure I.3-2 Representative Signal Analyses for 12-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles at Galilee Marina

I.3.4 13-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles for Mad River Slough Pipeline Construction—Arcata, CA

Three steel pipe piles were driven in July 2003 at the Mad River Slough near Arcata, California[4]. The purpose of the project was to retrofit a water pipeline. Steel pipe piles with a diameter of 0.3 meter (actually 13 inches) were first installed with a vibratory driver/extractor. The installation was completed with a drop impact hammer. A confined air bubble curtain system was used to attenuate sounds during use of the drop hammer. The water depth was about 5.5 meters (18 feet) for the first pair of piles and about 4.5 meters (15 feet) for the second pair. Measurement depth was 3 meters (10 feet). Underwater sound measurements were made at 10 meters from the first pile pair and at 10 and 20 meters (33 to 65 feet) for the second pair. Measured sound pressure levels are summarized in Table I.3-4. Signal analyses of individual pile strikes were not performed; therefore, SEL data for this installation are not available.

Figure I.3-3 Installation of 13-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles with Confined Air Bubble Curtain System

Vibratory Installation

At 10 meters, average peak sound pressure levels were 171 dB for all three piles. However, peak pressures varied by 10 dB, and some peak pressures approached 180 dB. Average RMS-impulse sound pressure levels were 155 dB. At 20 meters, the average peak and RMS sound pressure levels were 168 and 150 dB, respectively (about 5 dB lower).

Drop Hammer Impacts

At 10 meters, the average peak sound pressure was about 185 dB. Maximum peak pressures for each drive were slightly higher, although one strike was 192 dB. The average and maximum RMS sound pressure was 167 and 174 dB, respectively. At 20 meters, the average peak and RMS sound pressure levels were 177 and 161 dB, respectively. The rate of attenuation from 10 to 20 meters was about 8 dB. Driving periods were about 1 minute, where only about 10 hammer strikes were required to drive a pile. Since the confined air bubble curtain system was used throughout the project, it was not possible to measure the reduction in sound pressure that resulted.

I.3.5 Vibratory Installation of 72-Inch-Diameter Steel Pile at the Richmond Inner Harbor—Richmond, CA

In November 2003, a 1.8-meter- (72-inch-) diameter steel pipe pile was installed in the Richmond Inner Harbor in Richmond, California[5]. The pile was installed at the Castrol Oil facility dock as a breasting dolphin for large ships. The pile was installed using a vibratory driver/extractor to avoid significant underwater noise impacts. Pile installation occurred on three separate days due to unanticipated construction problems. The first 2 days of pile installation involved the use of an APE Model 400B Vibratory Driver/Extractor (King Kong Driver). The pile could not be installed to the specified depth using the King Kong Driver, so the larger Super Kong Driver (Model 600) was used on the third day. Figures I.3-4a and I.3-4b show the APE King Kong Driver in use.

Table I.3-4 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 13-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Mad River Slough, Arcata, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
Pile	**Conditions**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
1	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 10 meters	171	155	NA
1	Attenuated – drop hammer at 10 meters	185	166	NA
2	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 10 meters	171	154	NA
2	Attenuated – drop hammer at 10 meters	183	167	NA
3	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 10 meters	171	156	NA
3	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 10 meters	168	150	NA
3	Attenuated – drop hammer at 10 meters	186	169	NA
3	Attenuated – drop hammer at 10 meters	177	161	NA

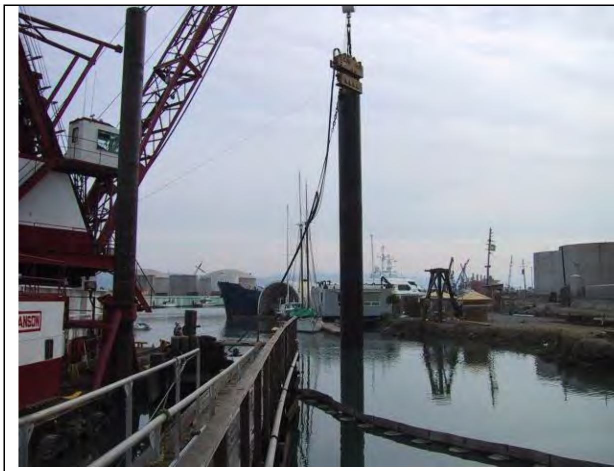


Figure I.3-4a Pile Installation Using the APE Model "King Kong" Vibratory Driver/Extractor

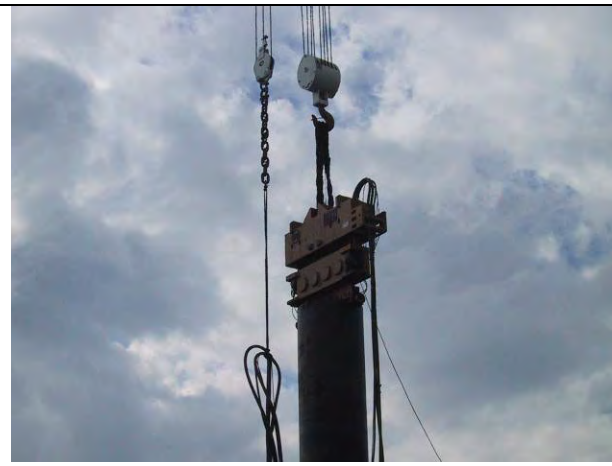


Figure I.3-4b Close-Up of Figure I.3-4a

The large pile did not move much after the initial installation using the King Kong vibratory driver. Several hours of data were captured using this driver. For the most part, peak sound pressure levels were about 175 to 185 dB the first day and 185 to 195 dB the second day, with an absolute maximum level of 205 dB. The large variation may have been associated with the coupling of the driver to the pile and whether the pile was being driven or extracted at that time. In an attempt to achieve further penetration, the pile would be slightly extracted and then driven again. The larger "Super Kong" driver was not much more successful installing the pile; it produced consistent peak sound pressure levels of about 180 to 182 dB, with an absolute maximum peak pressure of 184 dB. Measurements were also made at 20 meters (65 feet) and 30 meters (98 feet), which indicated that peak sound pressure levels dropped off at a rate of about 7 dB per doubling of distance. Results are summarized in Table I.3-5. The SEL is reported for a 1-second period, which is nearly equivalent to the RMS-impulse level because the sounds are nearly continuous. Keeping in mind that the SEL is an event descriptor, the selection of a 1-second period is somewhat arbitrary.

Table I.3-5 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Vibratory Installation of 72-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Richmond Inner Harbor, Richmond, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL (1sec)
Day 1	Vibratory hammer at 10 meters	183	170	170
Day 1	Vibratory hammer at 20 meters	176	164	164
Day 1	Vibratory hammer at 30 meters	172	160	160
Day 2 – loudest	Vibratory hammer at 10 meters	195	180	180
Day 2 – typical	Vibratory hammer at 10 meters	189	176	176
Day 3	Vibratory hammer at 10 meters	181	167	167
Day 3	Vibratory hammer at 20 meters	174	163	163

Signal analyses of sounds measured at 10 meters (33 feet) for the first day of vibratory installation are shown in Figure I.3-5. The RMS levels reported in Table I.3-5 are sound pressure levels measured using the impulse setting of the sound level meter (35-msec rise time). Analyses of the acoustical signals from this vibratory installation indicate that pulses of about 25 msec occurred every 50 to 60 msec; therefore, the RMS measured with the “impulse” setting may not properly measure the RMS over the pulse. However, the sound from this hammer was perceived as continuous.

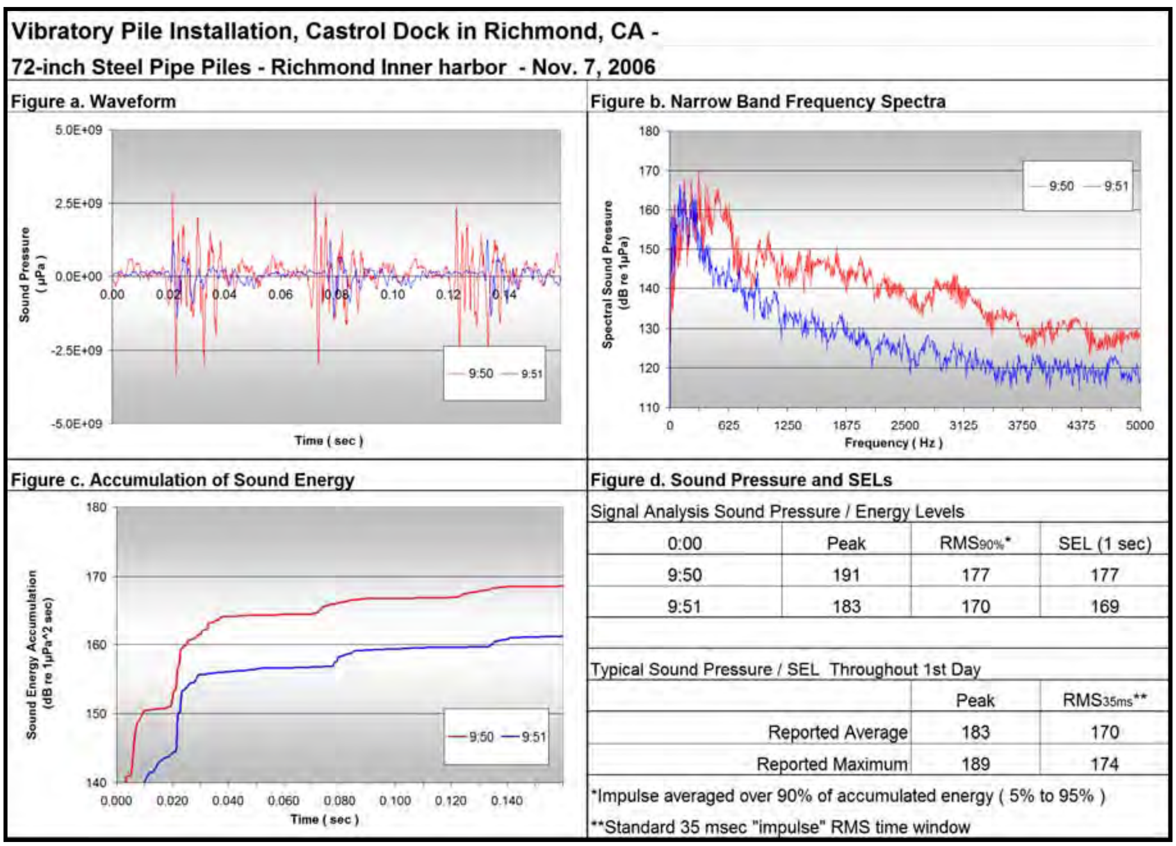


Figure I.3-5 Representative Signal Analyses for Vibratory Installation of 72-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles at Richmond Inner Harbor

Furthermore, the pulse from vibratory pile installation has not been defined. If the imbedded pulse (25 msec long) were used, then the RMS should be measured over about 20 to 25 msec. This would yield a higher level than the RMS measured with the impulse setting (as shown in Figure I.3-6 [in the following section]). Most of the acoustic content was below 600 Hz. The shape of the spectra changed considerably during the driving period. The SEL was computed for 1 second because the sounds are continuous and accumulate over the entire second when the event is occurring.

I.3.6 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Piles Installed at Conoco/Phillips Dock—Rodeo, CA

Measurements were made for two 0.6-meter- (24-inch-) diameter steel pipe piles driven in October 2004 at the Conoco/Phillips dock in Rodeo, California[6]. The Rodeo dock is located in northern San Francisco Bay. The purpose of the project was to reinforce the oil tanker docking pier. Piles were driven using a diesel-powered impact hammer. Measurements were made at distances of 10 and 50 meters (33 and 165 feet) from the pile and at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet). The water depth was greater than 5 meters (15 feet). Attenuation systems were not used.

Table I.3-6 summarizes the underwater sound measurements. At 10 meters, peak sound pressure levels were from 202 to 203 dB. The RMS sound pressure levels were from 188 to 189 dB. At 50 meters, peak sound pressure levels were 190 dB, and RMS sound pressure levels were 178 dB. The duration of the first pile drive was 25 minutes, and the second was 6 minutes.

Table I.3-6 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Conoco/Phillips Dock, Rodeo, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	202	188	177
2	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	203	189	178
1	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 50 meters	191	178	167
2	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 50 meters	189	178	166

Analyses of pulses recorded at 10 and 50 meters are shown in Figure I.3-6. The 10-meter (33-foot) pulse had considerable high frequency content that was effectively attenuated with distance. An attenuation rate of 5 dB per doubling of distance was measured. The typical SEL per strike was 177 dB at 10 meters and 167 dB at 50 meters.

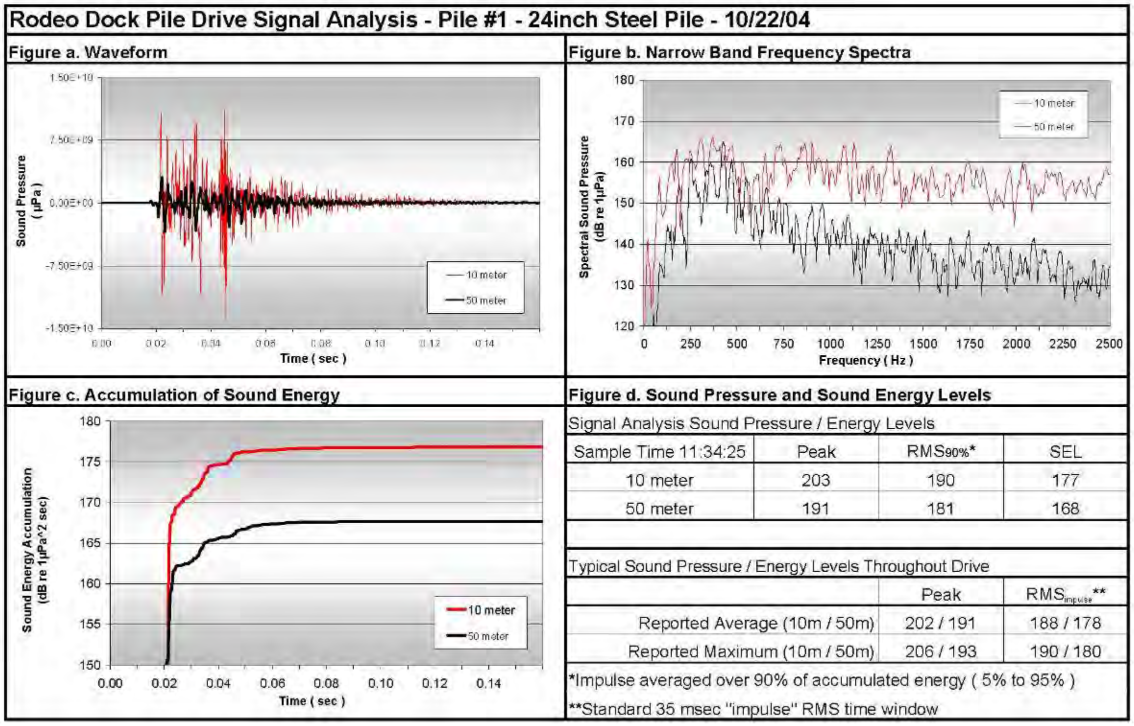


Figure I.3-6 Representative Signal Analyses for 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles at Conoco/Phillips Dock near San Pablo

I.3.7 20- and 36-Inch-Diameter Steel Piles for Wastewater Treatment Plant Utility Crossing—Stockton, CA

A utility river crossing project for the Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant required pile driving in the San Joaquin River, in Stockton, California[7]. The purpose of the project was to construct a pipeline utility crossing over the San Joaquin River. This project included two types of steel pipe piles: 0.5-meter- (20-inch-) diameter piles for a temporary trestle and 0.9-meter- (36-inch-) diameter CISS piles for the foundation of the utility bridge. The 20-inch piles were installed with a diesel impact hammer. The 36-inch piles were initially installed using a vibratory driver/extractor to set the piles, and a diesel impact hammer was used to drive the piles to final depth. Piles were driven both on the shore and in the water (see Figures I.3-7a and I.3-7b).

A confined air bubble curtain system was used on most of the piles driven in the water (see Figure I.3-8). The isolation casing used for this attenuation system consisted of a section of 1.5-meter- (60-inch-) diameter corrugated steel pipe that extended to the bottom of the river. A section of pipe formed into a ring was attached about 2 feet from the bottom of the casing. Measurements were made at both 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the piles and at 1 meter (3.3 feet) from the bottom of the channel because the depth of the channel was less than 4 meters (13 feet).

Figure I.3-7a Driving 20-Inch-Diameter Piles near Shore

Figure I.3-7b Driving 36-Inch-Diameter Pile with Attenuation

Figure I.3-8 Casing for the Confined Air Bubble Curtain System

20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles Driven in Water

Measurements were made on September 23, 2005 for two piles that were driven in the river with no attenuation systems. A Del-Mag Model D19-42 diesel impact hammer was used. This hammer has a maximum rated energy of 71 kilojoules (52,362 foot-pounds [ft-lbs]). Measurements were made at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) in the main river channel where water depth was from 3 to 4 meters (10 to 13 feet), respectively.

Results are summarized in Table I.3-7, and analyses of representative signals are shown in Figure I.3-9. Unattenuated peak pressures were 207 dB at 10 meters and 200 dB at 20 meters. RMS sound pressure levels were 17 to 20 dB lower than the peak sound pressure levels, while typical differences between

RMS and SEL levels of about 10 dB occurred. SELs were 176 dB at 10 meters and 172 dB at 20 meters. The waveform depicts a typical unattenuated pile strike for a steel shell pile. Interestingly, the maximum peak pressure occurred with the initial acoustic disturbance, resulting in a rapid accumulation of sound energy at 10 meters.

Table I.3-7 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles in Water, Unattenuated—Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant, Stockton, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Unattenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	208	187	176
1	Unattenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	201	184	173
2	Unattenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	206	186	175
2	Unattenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	199	182	169

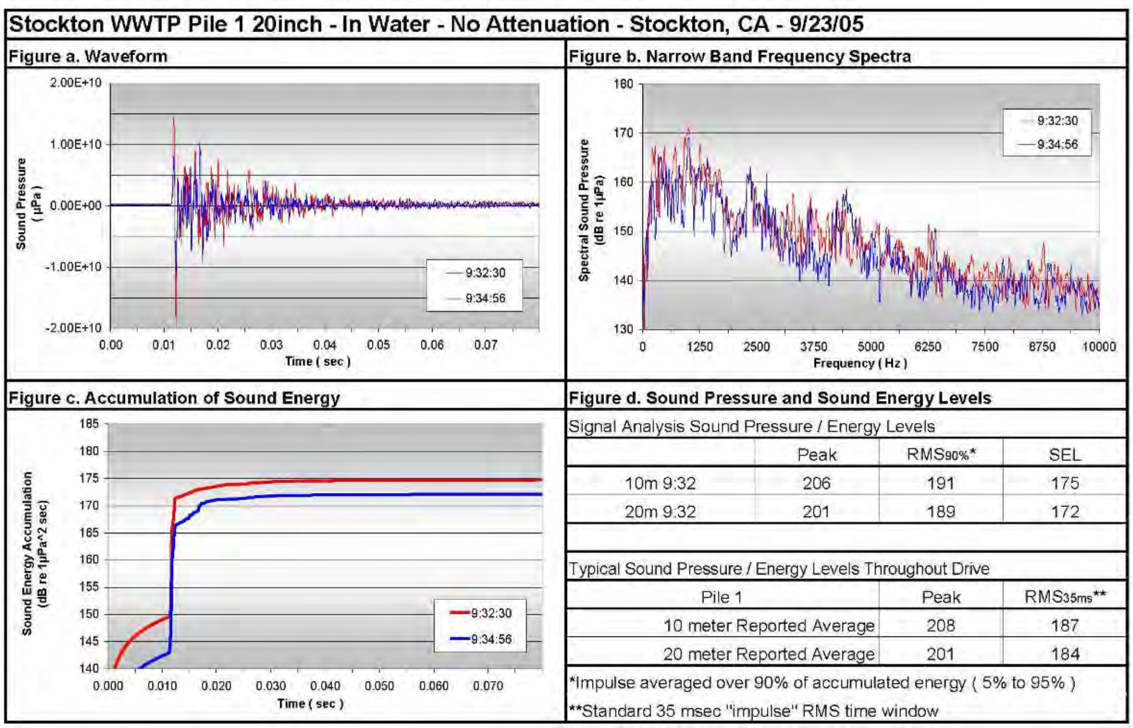


Figure I.3-9 Representative Signal Analyses for 20-Inch-Diameter Piles Unattenuated in Water at Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant

20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles Driven on Land next to Water

Measurements were made for five 20-inch piles driven into the levee next to the river (about 0 to 2 meters [6.5 feet] from the water). Measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) in the main river channel for all piles. One pile also was measured at a 20-meter (65-foot) distance. Water depth at the measurement positions was from 3 to 4 meters (10 to 13 feet). The measurements were conducted on October 19, 2005.

Results are summarized in Table I.3-8. The levels of the first three piles were very consistent at 198 dB peak, 182 dB RMS, and 171 dB SEL. The fourth and fifth piles were quieter, especially in terms of RMS and SEL. The one measurement made at 20 meters (65 feet) indicated a 10-dB attenuation rate.

Table I.3-8 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles on Land next to Water—Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant, Stockton, CA

Pile	Conditions	Avg. Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	198	183	171
2	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	198	182	171
3	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	198	182	NA
3	Land driven – impact hammer at 20 meters	188	172	163
4	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	196	179	167
5	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	197	179	168

The signal analyses for pulses generated by the third pile at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) are shown in Figure I.3-10. These were low-frequency pulses propagating through the sediment into the water, with much of the acoustical content contained below 1,500 Hz. The received pulses were highly attenuated because they propagated through the bottom sediments. These levels are probably the maximum attenuation that could be achieved from these piles driven in this environment. Additional 20-inch-diameter piles were driven in the water with attenuation systems; these are discussed in the next section.

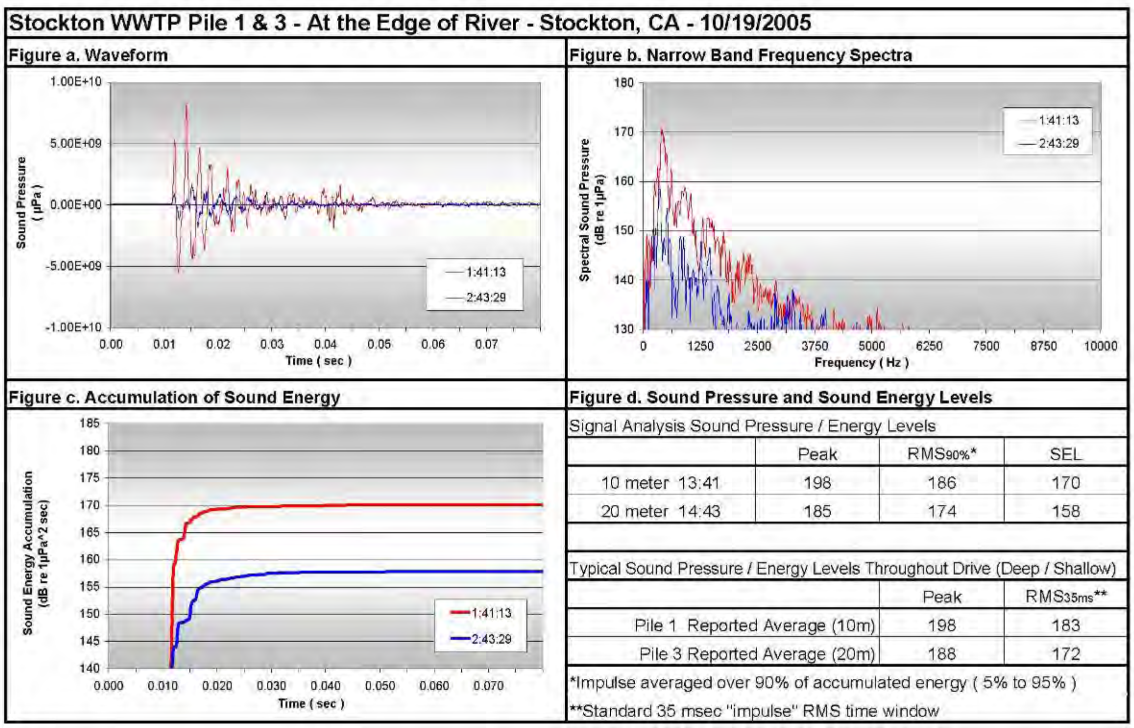


Figure I.3-10 Representative Signal Analyses for 20-Inch-Diameter Piles on Land at Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant

20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles Driven in Water with Attenuation System

Measurements were made for three piles driven in the water with the confined air bubble curtain system. The casing prevented the current from washing the bubbles away from the pile. Measurements were made on October 25, 2005. Measurements were made at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) in the main river channel where water depth exceeded 3 meters (10 feet). Results are summarized in Table I.3-9. The attenuation system appeared to reduce peak sound pressure levels by 7 to 10 dB at 10 meters and less at 20 meters. However, the reduction in RMS and SEL levels was less than 5 dB.

Table I.3-9 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 20-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles in Water with Attenuation—Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant, Stockton, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	201	186	175
1	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	196	182	171
2	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	198	183	175
2	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	193	178	169
3	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	197	182	171
3	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	--	--	--

The signal analyses for Piles 1 and 3 are shown in Figure I.3-11. Comparison to Figure I.3-9 (unattenuated conditions) shows how the attenuation system was effective at reducing higher frequency sound. This was evident in the reduction of the peak pressures; however, RMS levels and SELs were dominated by the low-frequency sound content of these pulses.

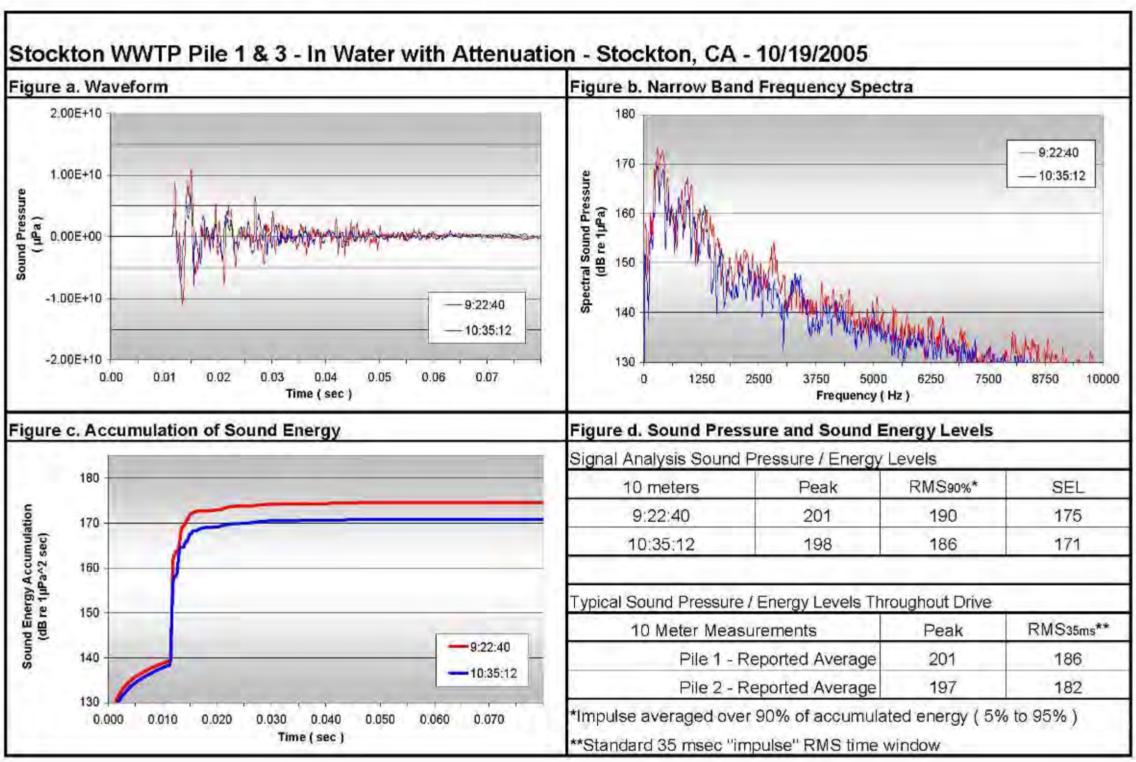


Figure I.3-11 Representative Signal Analyses for 20-Inch-Diameter Piles Attenuated in Water at Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant

36-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles Driven on Land

The 36-inch-diameter piles driven into the levee for Bent 4 were measured on November 8, 2005. The piles were first installed with an ICE-66 vibratory hammer and then driven using a Del-Mag D46-42 diesel impact hammer. The hammer has a maximum obtainable energy of 180 kilojoules (132,704 ft-lbs). Measurements were made in the river channel at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the pile. Results for both vibratory and impact installation are summarized in Table I.3-10. Signal analyses of vibratory pile installation sounds were not performed; therefore, corresponding SEL data are available only for impact hammering. The sound pressure levels associated with the vibratory installation were quite low and were not of interest to this project. The impact driving on land produced levels similar to, but slightly higher than, the 20-inch piles that were also driven on land. However, there was very little attenuation from 10 to 20 meters with the 36-inch piles. As discussed previously, there was nearly 10 dB of attenuation with the 20-inch piles.

Table I.3-10 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 36-Inch-Diameter Bent 4 Piles on Land—Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant, Stockton, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 10 meters	164	155	--
1	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 20 meters	158	150	--
1	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	201	186	173
1	Land driven – impact hammer at 20 meters	198	183	170
2	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 10 meters	165	157	--
2	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 20 meters	158	149	--
2	Land driven – impact hammer at 10 meters	199	184	174
2	Land driven – impact hammer at 20 meters	197	183	171

Figure I.3-12 shows the signal analyses for the 10- and 20-meter received pulses. Similar to the 20-inch piles, these pulses were highly attenuated, especially above 1,000 Hz. However, the 10- and 20-meter pulses were similar, indicating little additional attenuation with distance. This is indicative of the noise source being deep within the sediment.

36-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles Driven in Water with Attenuation

The 36-inch-diameter piles driven in water for Bent 3 were measured on November 8, 2005. A vibratory driver/extractor and a diesel impact hammer were used to install the piles. Measurements were made in the channel at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the pile.

Results for both vibratory and impact installation are summarized in Table I.3-11. Vibratory installation of the piles resulted in peak sound pressure levels that were about 15 to 20 dB lower. Because of the different nature of the sounds, one impulsive and the other continuous, it is difficult to compare in terms of RMS. The standard RMS-impulse level (averaged over 35 msec) was about 15 dB lower when the vibratory driver was used.

At Pile 4, the closest pile to the trestle, the isolation casing/air bubble curtain was lowered into the river channel—settling into the mud so that the bubble ring was near the mud line as designed. During the placement of the casing for Pile 3, the isolation casing rested on an obstruction at the bottom and did not settle into the mud. Consequently, the bubble ring was 1 to 2 feet above the channel bed, and sound levels with this pile were not effectively attenuated.

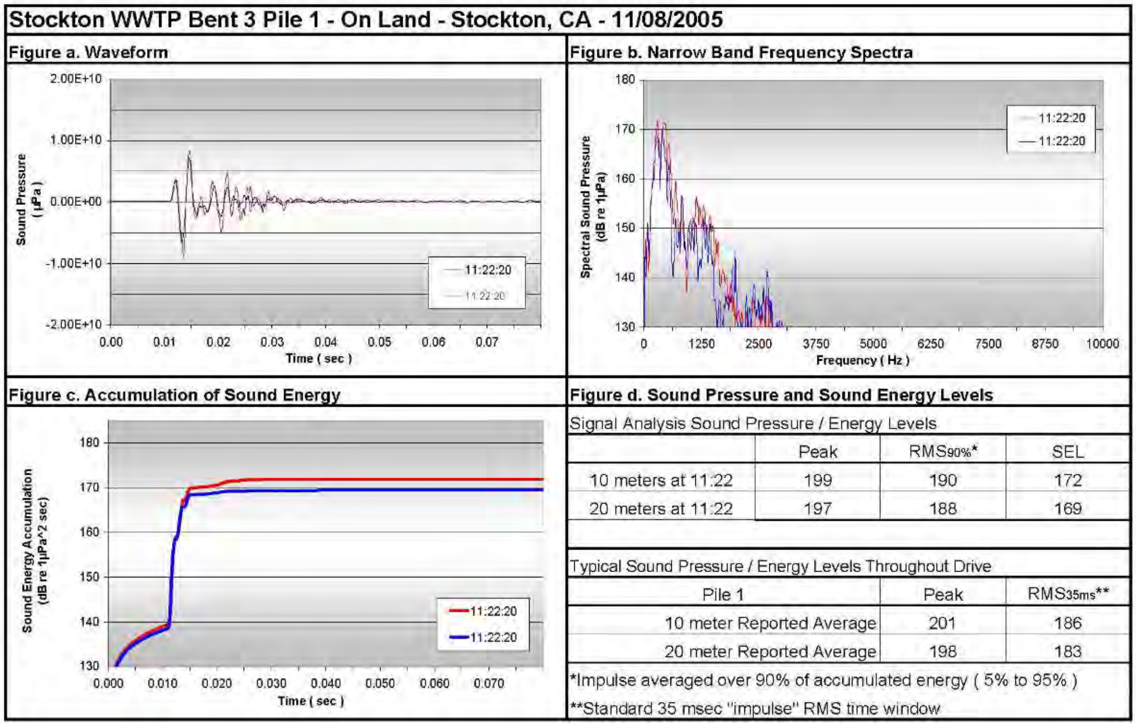


Figure I.3-12 Representative Signal Analyses for 36-Inch Bent 4 Piles on Land at Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant

Table I.3-11 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 36-Inch-Diameter Bent 3 Piles in Water with Attenuation—Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant, Stockton, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
Pile	**Conditions**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
3	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 10 meters	180	168	--
3	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 20 meters	178	166	--
3	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters*	199	186	175
3	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters*	196	182	173
4	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 10 meters	184	175	--
4	Vibratory installation – impact hammer at 20 meters	--	--	--
4	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 10 meters	197	185	175
4	Attenuated in water – impact hammer at 20 meters	197	183	171

* The sound from pile driving was only partially attenuated due to problems setting the isolation casing/air bubble curtain.

Signal analyses of vibratory pile installation sounds were not performed; therefore, corresponding SEL data are available only for impact hammering. The analyses for the in-water piles are shown in Figure I.3-13. These signals are similar to those for the 36-inch piles driven on land, indicating that the attenuation system was effective at reducing the waterborne sound coming off the piles. Similar to the results for the piles driven on land, there was little difference in sound pressure levels measured at 20 meters (65 feet).

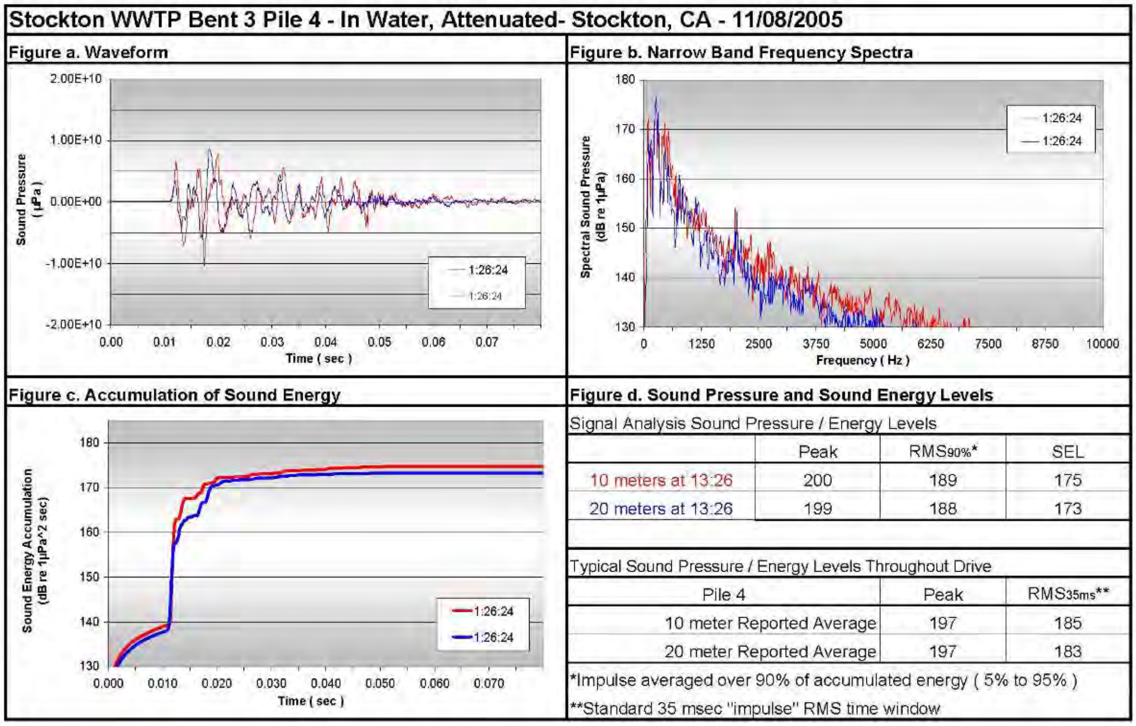


Figure I.3-13 Representative Signal Analyses for 36-Inch-Diameter Bent 3 Piles Attenuated in Water at Stockton Wastewater Treatment Plant

I.3.8 24-Inch-Diameter Breasting Dolphin Piles at Tesoro's Amorco Wharf—Martinez, CA

Pile driving was conducted to upgrade dock facilities at Tesoro's Amorco Wharf near Martinez, California, in September and October 2005[8]. Construction was performed to replace three breasting dolphins that are used to moor crude oil tankers. The project included installation of thirty-six 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles. A set of 12 piles was installed for each dolphin. Each breasting dolphin included six battered piles and six plumb or vertical piles.

Each pile was about 100 feet long. The driving durations were between about 10 and over 30 minutes. A diesel impact hammer was used to drive the piles; however, the type and size were not recorded. The hammer struck the pile about once every 1.5 seconds. The piles were driven to a specified tip elevation, unless a certain resistance was met, as determined by hammer blow counts during pile driving.

Sound measurements were conducted for all 36 piles that were driven. Water depth was about 10 to 15 meters (33 to 49 feet), and measurements were made at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet). An air bubble curtain was used during pile driving to reduce underwater sound pressure levels. This system was a fire hose with holes connected to an air compressor. Strong tidal currents were present at times, which may have reduced the effectiveness of the attenuation system. In addition, the piles were driven next to the existing concrete piles that support the wharf, complicating efforts to properly position the air bubble curtain system. Results are summarized in Table I.3-12. The levels reported are based on an average of levels measured for the 18 battered and 18 vertical (or plumb) piles that were driven for this project.

Table I.3-12 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Amorco Wharf Construction, Martinez, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Group 1 – battered	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	203	185	174
Group 1 – vertical	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	200	185	178
Group 2 – battered	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	202	185	175
Group 2 – vertical	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	200	185	173
Group 3 – battered	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	200	187	178
Group 3 – vertical	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	195	185	178

Pile Group 1—East Breasting Dolphin

The first group of piles was driven from September 25 to 27, 2005. Drive times were longer than expected due to a hard substrate, and were as long as 30 minutes for vertical piles and over 1 hour for some of the battered piles. Peak sound pressure levels at 10 meters (33 feet) ranged from less than 195 to a maximum of 209 dB. Average peak pressures for each driving event ranged from 194 to 206 dB, indicating a wide range of bubble curtain effectiveness. RMS levels were typically from 183 to 194 dB, and a sample of SELs ranged from 169 to 178 dB.

Representative signal analyses for two different pile strikes are shown in Figure I.3-14. The high sound pressure levels measured in the field were indicative of poor air bubble curtain performance. As a result, the contractor made adjustments that resulted in a reduction of peak pressures by about 10 dB and a reduction of 5 dB for RMS and SEL sound pressure levels. The analyses shown in Figure I.3-14 indicate that the unattenuated peak pressure was associated with high-frequency sounds. This peak occurred about 10 msec into the event and appears to be the result of the pile "ringing." These piles were driven in very resistant sediments, as evidenced by the increased driving times. The beginning of the first pile is considered an almost unattenuated condition ("ABC Raised"), while the second part of the drive is considered attenuated ("ABC Lowered"). Average sound peak pressures ranged from 194 to 203 dB, indicating about 10 dB of maximum attenuation provided by the air bubble curtain system for this group of piles.

Pile Group 2

The second group of piles was driven on October 10 and 11, 2005. Drive times were considerably shorter than the first pile group, about 25 to 35 minutes for each pile. All primary measurements were made at approximately 10 meters (33 feet) to the south, with some additional spot measurements made at 10 meters in different directions for selected piles to assess the directionality. For battered piles, average and maximum sound pressure levels were 202 and 206 dB peak and 185 and 189 dB RMS, respectively. Typical SELs were 175 dB. There were some directionality differences. At 10 meters to the west, average and maximum sound levels were 190 and 192 dB peak and 176 and 178 dB RMS, respectively. At 10 meters to the east, average and maximum sound levels were 189 and 190 dB peak and 177 and 179 dB RMS, respectively. For the vertical piles, average and maximum sound pressure levels were 200 and 205 dB peak and 185 and 190 dB RMS, respectively. Typical SEL was 173 dB. At the two alternate locations, 10 meters to the north and east, average and maximum sound levels were 200 and 203 dB peak and 185 and 190 dB RMS, respectively. Spot measurements at 10 meters show that the sound level may differ as much as 10 dB during the driving of battered piles, depending on direction from pile. The sound levels produced by the vertically driven piles were consistent spatially.

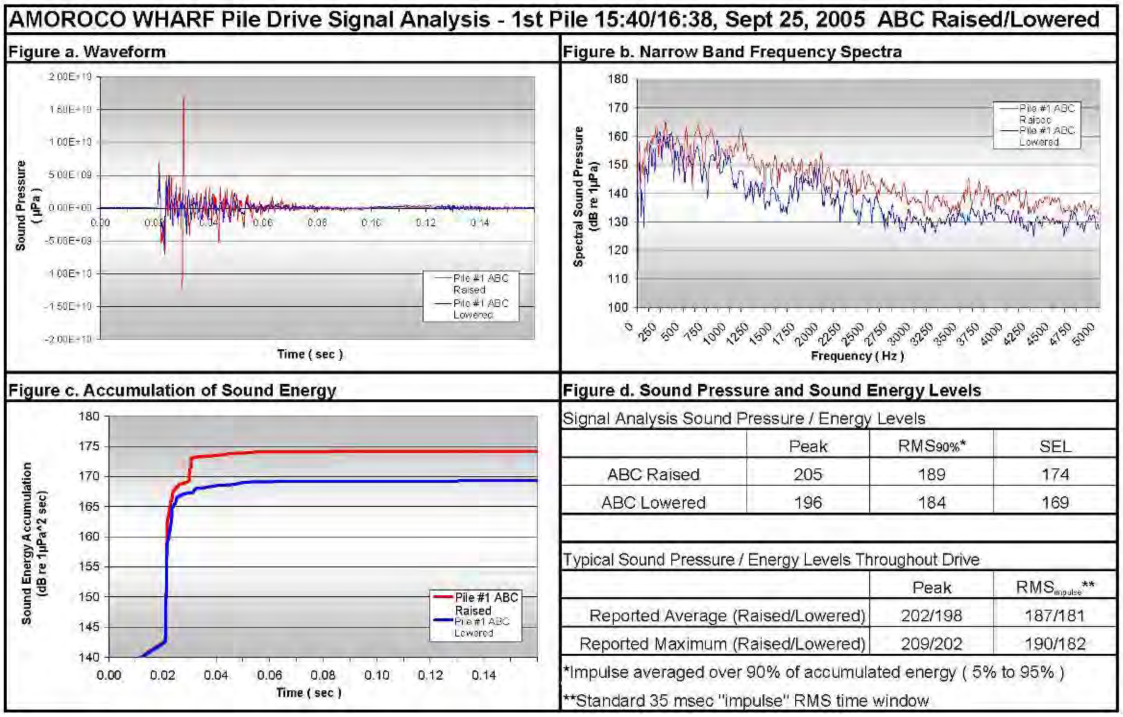


Figure I.3-14 Representative Signal Analyses for 24-Inch-Diameter Piles with and without Effective Air Bubble Curtain System at Amorco Wharf

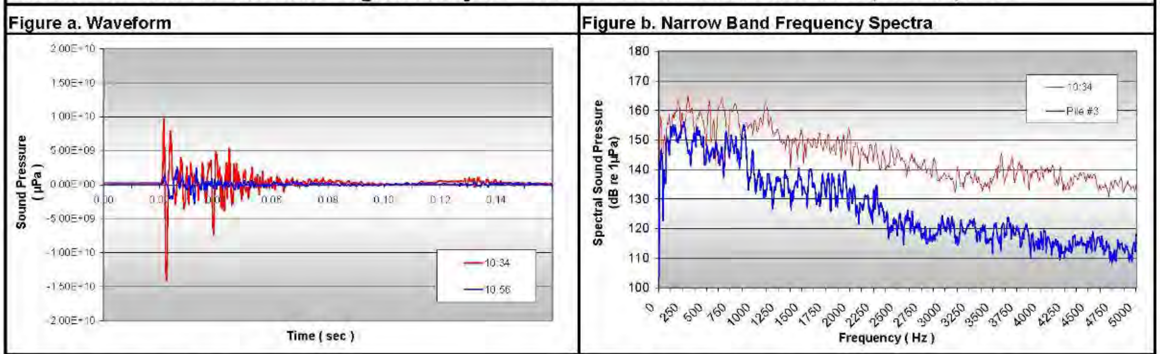
Figure I.3-15 shows the signals for measurements made south and west of the pile. The pulse measured to the west was much more attenuated than the pulse measured to the south. The 10- to 15-dB difference in sound pressure levels indicates substantial variation in air bubble curtain performance. Not only were the sound pressure levels lower to the west, but also sound energy accumulated at a slower rate.

Pile Group 3

The third group of piles was driven on October 29 and 30. Drive times were less than the first two groups, from about 10 to 15 minutes. For the driving of battered and vertical piles, average peak pressures ranged from 191 to 202 dB, and the maximum for each of those drives ranged from 197 dB to 203 dB. Average RMS sound pressure levels ranged from 177 to 190 dB. SELs ranged from 164 to 178 dB. For the most part, driving of vertical piles resulted in lower sound pressure levels. This was likely due to better air bubble curtain performance.

Figure I.3-16 shows the signals for measurements made for two different battered piles. The pulse for Pile 1 was effectively attenuated by the air bubble curtain system. However, the pulse for Pile 5 was not very well attenuated. As with other effectively attenuated pulses, sound energy accumulated at a slower rate.

AMOROCO WHARF Pile Drive Signal Analysis - 3rd Pile South-10:34 West 10:56, Oct 11, 2005



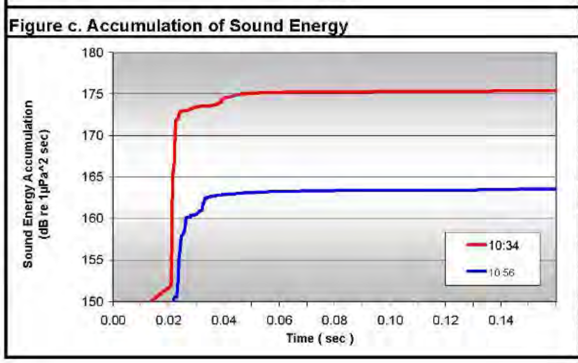


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

	Peak	$RMS_{90\%}$*	SEL
Pile#3 South	203	190	175
Pile#3 West	189	176	164

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	$RMS_{impulse}$**
Reported Average	203/191	188/177
Reported Maximum	204/192	188/178

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-15 Representative Signal Analyses for 24-Inch-Diameter Piles Directional Measurements with Air Bubble Curtain System at Amorco Wharf

Air Bubble Curtain System Performance

The existing wharf piers and strong currents compromised the air bubble curtain system performance at times. A large range of sound pressure levels was measured throughout this project, which involved the driving of 36 piles. The first pile was poorly attenuated, because the base of the attenuation system was found to be about 5 to 6 feet above the bottom, leaving a portion of the pile exposed. That pile resulted in peak pressures of 202 dB, with a maximum peak pressure of 209 dB (the highest level measured during the entire project). The RMS and SEL associated with these barely attenuated pulses were 189 and 174 dB, respectively. Most other pile driving events resulted in lower sound pressure levels, except for the sixth and seventh pile of the first group. Average peak pressures for some piles in the second and third groups were in the 191 to 195 dB range, 10 to 15 dB lower. The lowest RMS levels were 177 dB, and the lowest SELs were 164 dB—also indicating a 15-dB range. When measurements were made at different directions simultaneously, some differences occurred, which is unusual when only 10 meters from the pile. These were indicative of poor air bubble curtain performance in some directions. This may have been caused by the positioning of the system, complicated by the existing piers or the current. In any event, this air bubble curtain system was capable of providing up to 15 dB of attenuation but lower reductions were typical.

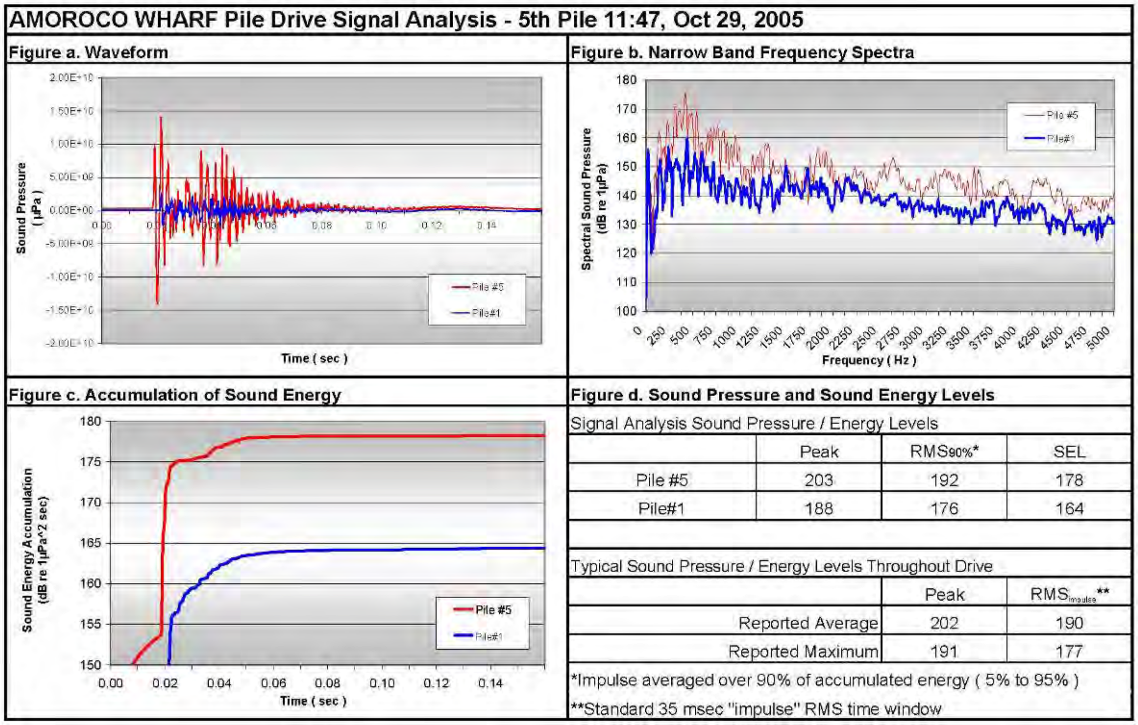


Figure I.3-16 Representative Signal Analyses for 24-Inch-Diameter Piles Showing Pulse for Two Different Battered Piles with Air Bubble Curtain System at Amorco Wharf

I.3.9 24- and 48-Inch-Diameter Piles to Construct New Bridge across the Russian River—Geyserville, CA

Emergency bridge replacement work was conducted in spring and early summer of 2006 to replace the storm-damaged Geyserville Bridge that crosses the Russian River in Geyserville, CA (State Route 128)[9&10]. The river banks are almost 300 meters (980 feet) apart at the project location, although the main river channel is quite narrow, about 30 meters or less. The Russian River experiences large fluctuations in water flow due to heavy rainfall that occurs in the mountainous region that the river drains. Two different pile driving operations occurred on this project. A large number of 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were driven into the land and wetted river channel using an impact hammer to construct a temporary trestle. This trestle was used to construct the new bridge. A series of bridge piers were constructed to support the new bridge. Each pier consisted of two 48-inch-diameter CISS piles. Only one pier was constructed in the wetted channel, and another was constructed next to the channel. Figure I.3-17a shows construction of the temporary trestle, and Figure I.3-17b shows construction of the permanent bridge piers.

Figure I.3-17a Construction of the Temporary Trestle across the Russian River

Figure I.3-17b CISS Piles Driven to Support New Geyserville Bridge across the Russian River

24-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles

The 24-inch-diameter trestle piles were driven both on land and in water during spring 2006[9]. Heavy rains occurred during the beginning of this construction phase when pile driving was on land. As a result, the river was running quite high. Water depths were over 3 meters (10 feet) in the main channel. In addition, the entire flood plain was saturated as the river approached the flood warning stage. Piles were driven on both sides of the river in an attempt to expedite this emergency construction project. The piles on the west side began in water, while piles driven on the east side were driven on land initially and then in the water. Figures I.3-18a and I.3-18b show the pile driving operation on both sides of the river.

Figure I.3-18a Trestle Pile Driven on East Bank. Note trestle piles extend back several hundred feet.

Figure I.3-18b Attempting to Stab Pile through Casing (Noise Control) on West Bank

To reduce noise, the west side pile driving was conducted through isolation casings that were dewatered, and an IHC SC75 hydraulic hammer was used. This technique did not work efficiently; therefore, a majority of the trestle piles were driven from the east side. Measurement positions during this phase of the project were determined by access to the water. The river was running quite high and swift, so hydrophones were positioned from the existing damaged bridge, using very heavy weights to fix the sensors in the water.

West Side Trestle Measurements

Table I.3-13 summarizes results of pile driving at the west side of the river where the dewatered casing was used to attenuate sound. Measurements of piles driven on the west side were infrequent. Measurements were taken during only one productive driving event on April 10, 2006. Because of heavy rain at the time, recordings were not possible for that event. That pile driving event lasted about 6 minutes, with the pile being struck about once every second (not recorded). Peak sound pressure levels at 24 meters (79 feet) ranged from 190 to 195 dB throughout much of the drive. Maximum peak pressures near the end of the drive were 198 dB (two strikes). RMS sound pressure levels were from 177 to 182 dB. Signal analyses could not be performed; therefore, SEL levels were not measured.

Table I.3-13 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—West Side of Geyserville Bridge, Russian River, CA

Pile No. and Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
Pile 1 – 4/5/2006	Attenuated – hydraulic hammer at 30 meters*	186	174	NA
Pile 1 – 4/5/2006	Attenuated – hydraulic hammer at 90 meters*	173	164	NA
Pile 1 – 4/10/2006	Attenuated – hydraulic hammer at 24 meters	195	180	NA
Pile 1 – 4/25/2006	Attenuated – hydraulic hammer at 55 meters	<175	<165	NA

* Pile strikes were intermittent due to hammer problems, which resulted in unproductive pile driving.

East Side Trestle Measurements

East side piles were driven both on land, although in saturated soils, and in the shallow river. When pile driving was conducted on land, the river was quite high because of the heavy rains that were occurring almost regularly. When pile driving reached the river channel, rains had ended and the river flow was reduced substantially. A Del Mag D46-32 impact hammer was used to drive these piles. The hammer has a maximum obtainable energy of about 180 kilojoules (132,704 ft-lbs). Table I.3-14 summarizes results of pile driving at the east side of the river where piles were driven on land and then in the shallow water.

Prior to April, piles were mostly vibrated in place. These sounds could not be measured above the background noise of the swift flowing river (i.e., 170 dB peak and 155 dB RMS).

On April 5, 2006, piles on land were driven with an impact hammer. Although the piles were on land, the river was high and the soils were saturated. The piles driven on land took about 10 to 15 minutes to drive (being struck about once every 1.4 seconds). Sound levels started low and climbed throughout the drive. Levels at 30 to 35 meters (98 to 115 feet) from the pile in the deep-water channel (10 meters [33 feet] from shore) averaged 186 dB peak, 172 dB RMS, and about 162 dB SEL. Maximum levels were about 5 dB higher. Figure I.3-19 illustrates the low-frequency characteristics of these sounds.

Table I.3-14 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—East Side of Geyserville Bridge, Russian River, CA

Pile No. and Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Pile 1, 3/17/2006	Land – vibratory driver at 65–70 meters*	<170	<155	NA
Piles 1–8, 4/5/2006	Land – impact hammer at 30–35 meters	186	172	~162
Piles 1–8, 4/5/2006	Land – impact hammer at 90–95 meters	178	164	NA
Piles 1–4, 4/10/2006	Land – impact hammer at 15 meters	197	185	173
Piles 1–4, 4/10/2006	Land – impact hammer at 35 meters	186	174	163
Piles 1–4, 4/10/2006	Land – impact hammer at 70 meters	175	163	NA
Pile 1, 4/25/2006	Attenuated – impact hammer at 27 meters	175	163	153
Piles 1–3, 4/26/2006	Attenuated – impact hammer at 18 meters	182	167	160
Piles 1–3, 4/26/2006	Attenuated – impact hammer at 34 meters	<173	<161	NA
Pile 1, 5/08/2006	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	187	175	160
Pile 1, 5/08/2006	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 40 meters	179	166	155

* These sounds could not be heard above the noise generated by the swift river.
10 meters = approximately 33 feet.

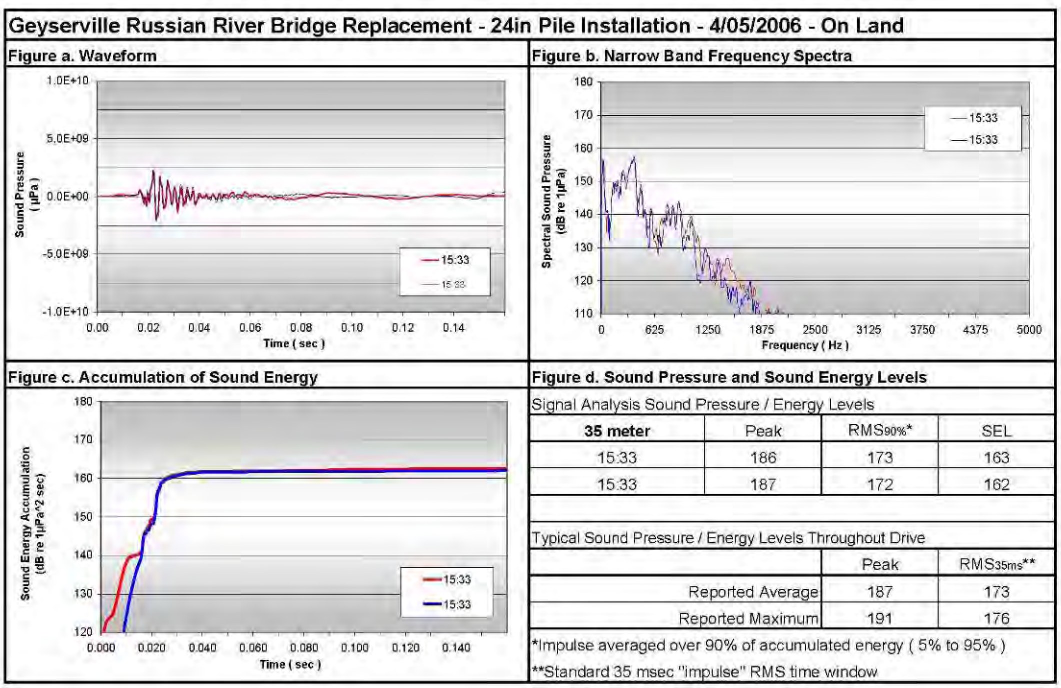
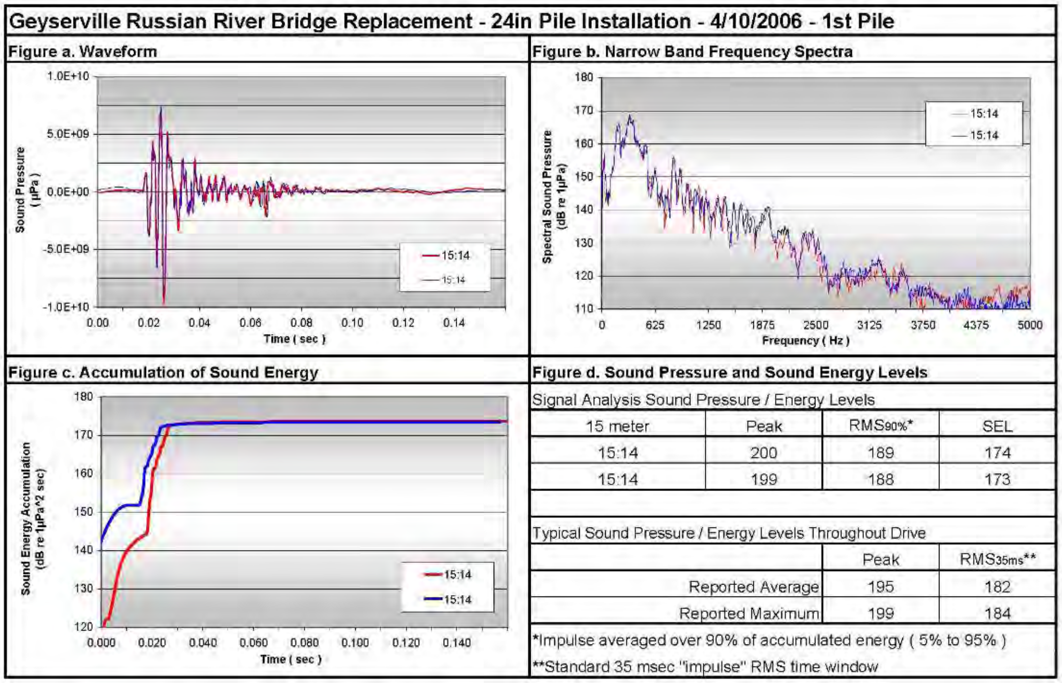


Figure I.3-19 Representative Signal Analyses for Temporary 24-Inch-Diameter Piles Driven 35 Meters (115 Feet) away on Land (at Shore) at the Russian River



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

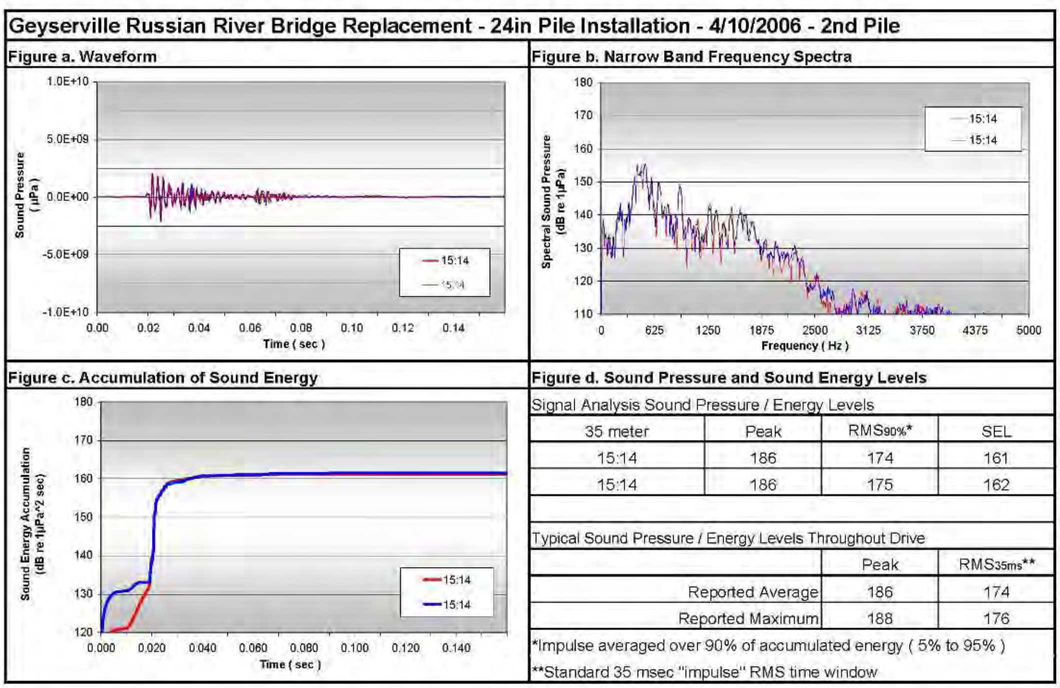
15 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
15:14	200	189	174
15:14	199	188	173

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	195	182
Reported Maximum	199	184

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-20 Representative Signal Analyses for Temporary 24-Inch Piles Driven 15 Meters (49 Feet) away on Land (at Shore) at the Russian River (1st Pile)



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

35 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
15:14	186	174	161
15:14	186	175	162

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	186	174
Reported Maximum	188	176

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-21 Representative Signal Analyses for Temporary 24-Inch-Diameter Piles Driven 35 Meters (115 Feet) away on Land (at Shore) at the Russian River (2nd Pile)

Sound pressure levels were similar when the piles were driven right at the shore (April 10), which was adjacent to the deeper river channel. However, closer measurements were possible (at 15 meters [49 feet]). At 15 meters, peak pressures were about 197 dB, with some strikes reaching 200 dB. RMS sound pressure levels were about 185 dB, and SEL levels were about 173 dB. The RMS sound pressure levels fluctuated much less than the peak levels throughout the drive. Measurements made at about 15, 30, and 70 meters (50, 100, and 230 feet) indicated a drop off of sound levels in excess of 10 dB per doubling of distance from the pile. Figure I.3-20 for 15-meter measurements and Figure I.3-21 for 35-meter measurements illustrate the somewhat higher frequency content of these sounds, when compared to those from driving on April 5.

By April 25 and 26, the spring rains had ceased and the river flow had fallen considerably. Piles were driven in the wetted channel, but the water was not as deep. An isolation casing with an air bubble system was used to control noise. As a result, sound pressure levels were much lower. An unattenuated pile driven on May 8 resulted in similar levels as the April 25 and 26 measurements. This indicated that the shallow water where measurements were made likely was the main cause for the lower levels. The swift shallow water created noise that interfered with the relatively low amplitude signal generated by pile driving on these days. Signal analyses were performed, but the analyses only indicated pulses with relatively low frequency content and peak sound pressure levels below 190 dB.

48-Inch-Diameter Trestle Piles

The permanent pier piles were stabbed using a vibratory driver/extractor and then driven using the Del Mag D100-13 with a 22,100-pound piston[10]. The hammer has a maximum obtainable energy of about 336 kilojoules (248,000 ft-lbs). The piles were driven to a depth at which there was sufficient skin friction to support the bridge (about 150 feet). Bridge construction included five bents, each of which included a pair of 48-inch CISS piles to support the bridge. Only one bent (i.e., Bent 5) was driven in the wetted channel. Bent 4 was driven in the dry portion of the riverbed adjacent to the wetted channel. Bents 2 and 3 also were driven in the dry riverbed but much further from the channel. Measurements were made for portions of pile driving activities at Bents 2 through 5. Much of the monitoring focused on Bents 4 and 5. Figures I.3-22a and I.3-22b show construction of the bridge bents with Bents 2 through 4 in the gravel portion of the river (a) and Bent 5 in the wetted channel (b).

Figure I.3-22a Vibratory Installation of a Bent 4 Pile with Bent 3 and Bent 2 in the Background

Figure I.3-22b Driving the Top Pile Section of Bent 5 Using a Dewatered Casing to Reduce Sound

Each pile had a top and bottom section. The bottom section was vibrated into the substrate and then driven with an impact pile driver. Only about 5 to 7 minutes of continuous driving were needed, but there were usually breaks in the driving to make adjustments. The top section was welded onto the bottom section and then driven with the impact hammer. Bottom sections required about 45 to 60 minutes of continuous driving, but there were several breaks during the driving.

Vibratory signals were audible on the recordings but could not be measured above the background of the river flow noise. Analyses of recorded sounds at 20 meters (65 feet) for Bent 4 vibratory installation indicate that peak sound pressure levels were below 150 dB. Table I.3-15 summarizes the measured sound pressure levels for impact driving of bottom pile sections at Bents 2 and 3 and top and bottom sections at Bent 4. All of these piles were driven through the dry portion of the riverbed. The closest Bent 4 pile measured was about 2 meters (6.5 feet) from the wetted channel.

Table I.3-15 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 48-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles on Land—Geyserville Bridge, Russian River, CA

Bent No. and Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Bottom Pile Sections				
Bent 2 bottom, 6/12/2006	Land – impact driver at 20 meters	183	172	NA
	Land – impact driver at 60 meters	165	155	NA
Bent 3 bottom 6/12/2006	Land – impact driver at 33 meters	180	168	157
	Land – impact driver at 43 meters	179	166	NA
Bent 4 bottom 6/12/2006	Land – impact driver at 20 meters	192	180	165
	Land – impact driver at 70 meters	166	155	NA
Top Pile Sections				
Bent 4 top – 1st part 6/25/2006	Land – impact driver at 10 meters	198	185	174
	Land – impact driver at 20 meters	199	187	172
	Land – impact driver at 50 meters	188	174	162
Bent 4 top – 2nd part 6/25/2006	Land – impact driver at 10 meters	189	178	167
	Land – impact driver at 20 meters	190	181	167
	Land – impact driver at 50 meters	190	177	164

Bent 2 was a considerable distance away from the main river channel, about 55 meters (180 feet). A small shallow pool of water was about 15 meters (50 feet) from the pile. Measurements were made in this pool at 20 meters (65 feet) and in the closest portion of the main river channel at 60 meters (197 feet). The sound pressure levels for the last 1 minute of driving were almost 10 dB higher than for the rest of the drive. At 20 meters, the peak sound pressure levels ranged from 180 dB to 190 dB for this last period. The RMS for that period was from 70 to 180 dB. At 60 meters, highest peak sound pressure levels were less than 170 dB. The signals captured for this event were not analyzed.

Bent 3 was closer to the main channel, about 25 to 30 meters (80 to 100 feet) from the water. Measurements also were made in a shallow pool, similar to Bent 2 measurements, but slightly further away. Sound pressure levels fluctuated by about 5 dB during the driving period. About three different driving periods, totaling 7 minutes, were needed over a 30-minute period to install the pile section. Typical peak sound pressure levels were around 180 dB, with the highest level being 183 dB. RMS levels were 168 dB (with a maximum of 171 dB). Signal analyses were performed to measure the SEL of 157 dB.

Bent 4 was next to the main river channel. Measurements were made during installation of the north pile that was adjacent to the river channel. Both bottom and top sections of this pile were measured. The bottom section was measured at 20 meters (65 feet) from the pile in the main channel. Peak pressures associated with driving of the bottom section ranged from 180 to 200 dB, while RMS levels ranged from 170 to 188 dB. The SEL representative of typical pile strikes was 165 dB.

More extensive monitoring was conducted when the top section of the pile was driven. For Bent 4, measurements were made at 10, 20, and about 50 meters (33, 65, and 165 feet) in the main river channel. Sound pressure levels varied considerably over the driving duration. About 55 to 60 minutes of pile driving were required to drive this pile over a 1.5-hour period. During the first 15 minutes of driving, levels at the 10- and 20-meter positions were highest, while levels at the 50-meter position were lowest. At 10 meters, the peak pressures increased to about 200 dB during the first few minutes of driving and remained at or just below those levels for another 10 minutes. RMS levels were about 185 to 187 dB, and the SEL was 174 dB.

During the second part of the driving event, sound pressure levels were lowest at the 10-meter position, slightly higher at the 20-meter position, and slightly higher at the 50-meter position. During one part of the drive, levels were about 5 dB higher at 20 meters than at 10 meters. At the end of the drive, levels at 50 meters were about 2 to 3 dB higher than the 10- and 20-meter levels. At 10 and 20 meters, peak sound pressure levels decreased from about 195 dB to 188 dB at the end of the drive. Conversely, peak pressures at 50 meters increased from 185 to 190 dB (a maximum of 195 dB). RMS levels fluctuated much less. At 10 and 20 meters, they were mostly between 178 and 182 dB, while at 50 meters they were about 177 to 180 dB.

The piles at Bent 5 were driven through dewatered casings in the narrow channel of the river. First, the isolation casings were installed using a vibratory driver, then the bottom and top sections were driven similar to those at Bent 4. The piles were installed in 1.5-meter- (5-foot-) deep water, where the main channel was about 2 meters (6.5 feet) deep. The bottom sections required about 7 minutes to drive over the course of 1 hour for the north pile and 15 minutes for the south pile. The bottom sections required about 45 minutes of driving that occurred over a 1.5-hour period. The hammer struck the pile about once every 1.4 seconds. All measurements made for Bent 5 were in the main channel. Measured sound pressure levels are summarized in Table I.3-16.

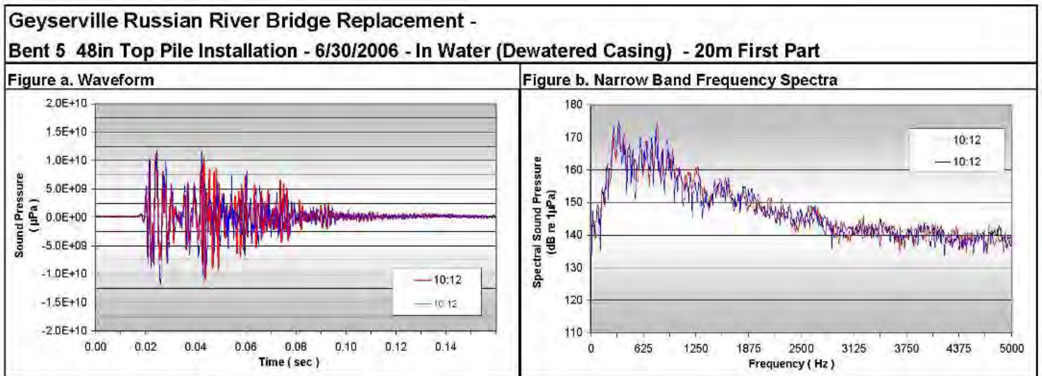
The sound levels at each position varied up to 15 dB over time, especially measurements closest to the pile. The variation of sound levels over time was similar to the Bent 4 pile. However, Bent 5 sound levels were higher. The rate of sound attenuation varied considerably over time. It is thought that, as the pile was driven deeper, more dampening occurred, resulting in lower noise levels close to the pile. Positions close to the pile became shielded from noise generated from ground vibration at the pile tip, which is deeper with each pile strike. Peak sound pressure levels were over 200 dB for the first part of pile driving at 10 meters for the first pile and at 10 and 20 meters for the south pile. The south pile resulted in louder sound pressure levels initially. Both piles had similar levels near the end of the drive. The sound drop off was essentially 0 dB from 10 to 20 meters and varied from about +5 to –5 dB from 20 to 40 meters (65 to 130 feet). The drop off measured for distances beyond 40 meters was considerable, about 10 dB from 40 to 75 meters (130 to 245 feet).

Both Bent 5 piles were driven through a dewatered casing. The north pile had lower levels than the south pile. Pile driving was stopped during the initial portion of driving the south pile due to high sound levels. The casing was further dewatered so that the water level was well below the river water bottom. When pile driving resumed, sound pressure levels were lower. Since levels were lower at all sites, including the 75-meter (245-foot) position, the decrease in sound levels cannot be solely attributable to the further dewatering of the casing. At the end of the pile driving event, sound levels were highest at 40 meters (135 feet), while levels at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) were similar. Sound pressure levels at 65 meters (213 feet) were more than 10 dB lower than 10- and 20-meter levels and 15 dB lower than the 40-meter levels. This project included extensive analyses of the recorded signals from each measurements position for most of the pile driving events. Only a few examples are shown in Figures I.3-23 through I.3-25. The examples show how the signal at 20 meters from the Bent 5 south pile became further dampened as the pile was driven further into the ground. Note the relatively high frequency content of the signal during the initial part of the drive. It is thought that the saturated gravel riverbed below the river aids in the more efficient propagation of the signal during the initial portion of the pile driving. As the pile is driven further into the ground below the river, the signal is attenuated.

Table I.3-16 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 48-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles in Water (Bent 5)—Geyserville Bridge, Russian River, CA

Bent No. and Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Bottom Pile Sections				
Bent 5 bottom north, 6/27/2006	Water – impact driver at 17 meters	193	181	172
Bent 5 bottom south, 6/27/2006	Water – impact driver at 19 meters	197	184	172
Top Pile Sections				
Bent 5 top north – 1st part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	199	186	175
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	196	183	173
	Water – impact driver at 45 meters	192	182	172
	Water – impact driver at 75 meters	181	168	NA
Bent 5 top north – 2nd part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	195	183	173
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	191	180	168
	Water – impact driver at 45 meters	194	182	171
	Water – impact driver at 75 meters	180	169	NA
Bent 5 top north – 3rd part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	188	177	165
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	189	176	164
	Water – impact driver at 45 meters	194	182	162
	Water – impact driver at 75 meters	179	166	NA
Bent 5 top south – 1st part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	205	193	183
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	202	189	180
	Water – impact driver at 40 meters	195	183	174
	Water – impact driver at 65 meters	186	174	NA
Bent 5 top south – 2nd part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	193	181	170
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	198	186	175
	Water – impact driver at 40 meters	194	182	170
	Water – impact driver at 65 meters	182	169	NA
Bent 5 top south – 3rd part, 6/30/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters	190	179	167
	Water – impact driver at 20 meters	191	180	167
	Water – impact driver at 40 meters	194	182	170
	Water – impact driver at 65 meters	182	170	NA

10 meters = 33 feet; 45 meters = 148 feet; 65 meters = 213 feet; 75 meters = 246 feet



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

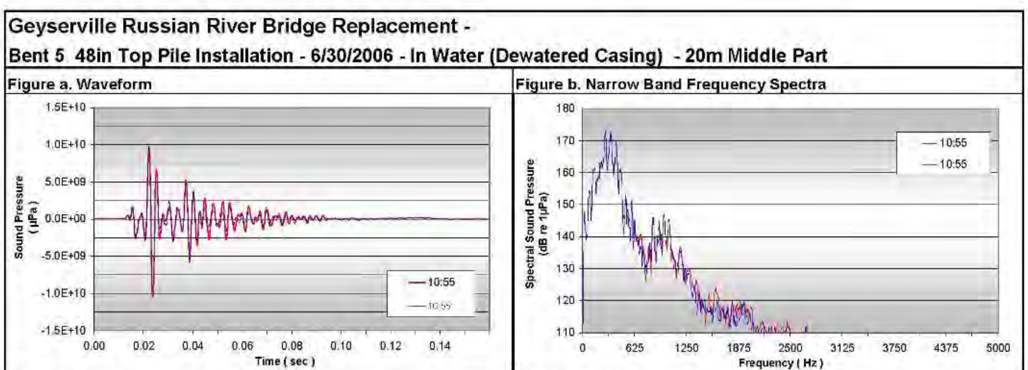
20 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
10:12	201	191	179
10:12	201	192	180

Typical Sound Pressure / SEL Throughout Drive/First Part

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	196 / 202	184 / 189
Reported Maximum	205 / 205	193 / --

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-23 Representative Signal Analyses for 48-Inch-Diameter Piles Driven 20 Meters (65 Feet) away through Dewatered Casing in 2 Meters of Water—Beginning Portion of Drive at Geyserville Bridge, Russian River



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

20 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
10:55	200	190	175
10:55	200	190	175

Typical Sound Pressure / SEL Throughout Drive/ Middle Part

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	196 / 198	184 / 186
Reported Maximum	205 / 202	193 / --

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-24 Same as Previous, Except Middle Portion of 48-Inch-Diameter Pile Drive at Geyserville Bridge, Russian River

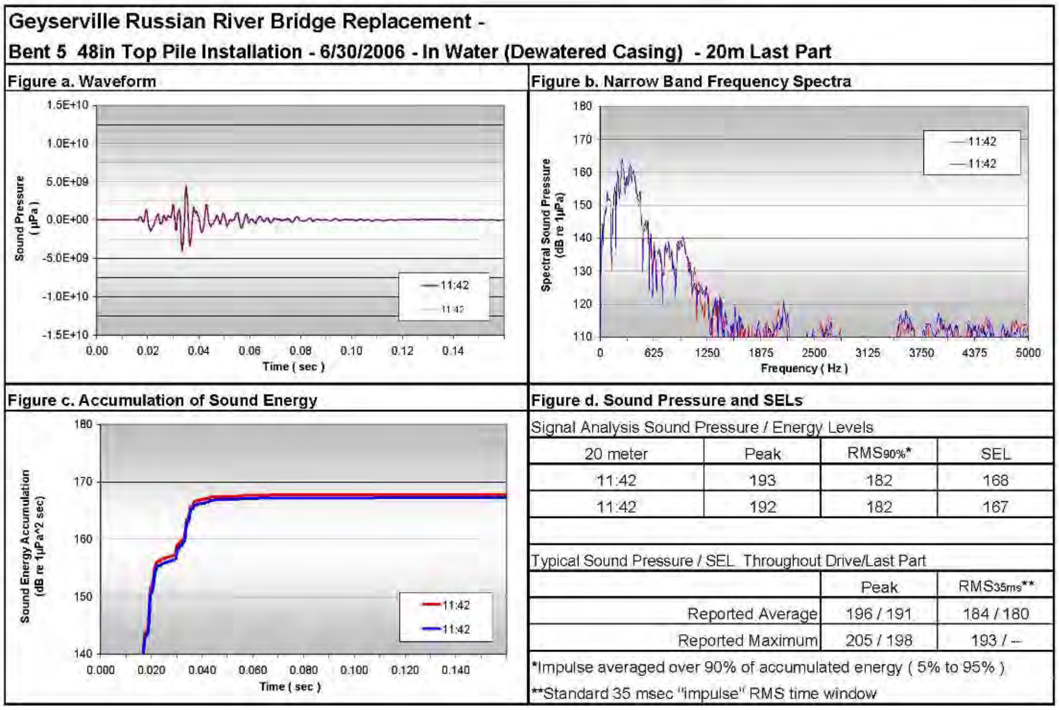


Figure I.3-25 Same as Previous, Except Last Portion of 48-Inch-Diameter Pile Drive at Geyserville Bridge, Russian River

I.3.10 40-Inch-Diameter Steel Piles at Bay Ship and Yacht Dock—Alameda, CA

Measurements were made for about twenty 140-inch-diameter steel shell piles driven at the Bay Ship and Yacht Co. dock in Alameda, California (San Francisco Bay)[11]. These piles were driven in June 2006. Bay Ship and Yacht Co. is in the estuarine waters of San Francisco Bay across from the Port of Oakland. These waters are routinely dredged to allow the passage of large ships. The piles were driven in 10- to 15-meter deep (about 40 feet) water using an air bubble curtain system. A Del Mag D-80 impact hammer was used to drive the piles. This hammer has a rated energy of about 300 kilojoules (221,269 ft-lbs). Figures I.3-26a and I.3-26b show the pile driving operation and air bubble curtain system used to attenuate underwater sound.

Table I.3-17 summarizes the sound levels measured for the 20 different 40-inch piles. Two 30-inch piles also were driven. All piles were driven with the air bubble curtain system. The effectiveness of the system at reducing underwater sound was tested briefly on two piles (i.e., Piles 5 and 14).

Figure I.3-26a Driving 40-Inch-Diameter Piles with Air Bubble Curtain in Alameda, CA

Figure I.3-26b Air Bubble Curtain Used at Bay Ship and Yacht, Alameda, CA

Table I.3-17 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 40-Inch-Diameter Steel Piles in Water—Bay Ship and Yacht Dock, Alameda, CA

Pile No. and Date	Conditions*	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Piles 1–4, 6/19/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters (33 feet) typical maximum levels	201 205	186 188	175 NA
Pile 5, 6/19/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters attenuated (air bubble curtain) unattenuated	 194 208	 180 195	 170 180
Pile 6, 6/20/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	193 200	178 182	NA NA
Piles 7 and 8,** 6/20/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	198 202	185 187	175 NA
Piles 9–12, 6/21/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	195 205	182 188	NA NA
Piles 13, 15, and 16, 6/22/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	200 207	185 190	NA NA
Pile 14, 6/19/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters air bubble curtain lowered air bubble curtain raised	 198 208	 187 195	 170 180
Pile 17 + re-strikes, 6/28/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	199 204	184 189	NA NA
Piles 18–22, 6/29/2006	Water – impact driver at 10 meters typical maximum levels	200 207	187 190	NA NA

* All piles were attenuated with the air bubble curtain system except for a brief test during Pile 5

** 30-inch-diameter piles

The data presented are a combination of unattenuated, partially attenuated, and fully attenuated conditions. Complications with the air bubble curtain were caused by mechanical connections with the frame connected to the hammer. Pile driving usually began with the air bubble curtain system slightly raised above the bottom. The system would be slowly lowered as the pile was driven further into the ground. As a result, sound pressure levels were usually loudest at the beginning of the pile driving period. Figure I.3-27 shows a typical variation in peak and RMS levels over a driving period (for Pile 13).

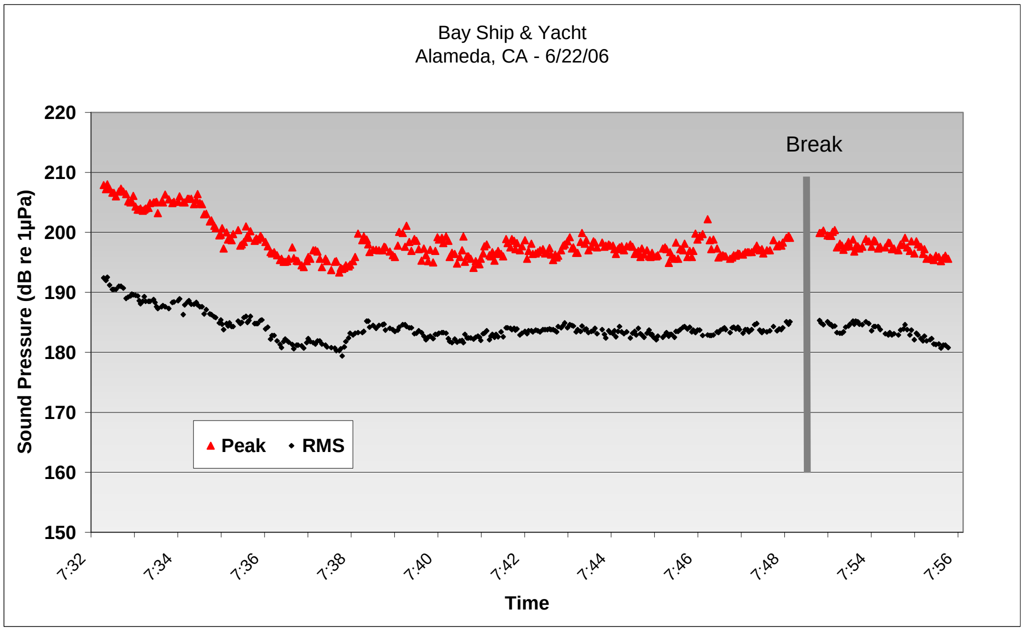


Figure I.3-27 Time History of Pile Driving Event for Pile 13 Where Levels Are Highest When Air Bubble Curtain System Is Raised Slightly above the Bottom—Alameda, CA

When the air bubble curtain system was operating properly (or properly situated), peak sound pressure levels were about 195 to 200 dB, and RMS sound pressure levels were about 180 to 185 dB. SEL levels were about 170 to 173 dB. Tests on the air bubble curtain system indicate that unattenuated peak pressures were up to 210 dB, RMS sound pressure levels about 195 dB, and SEL levels around 180 dB. On and off tests of the air bubble curtain system indicated that about 10 to 15 dB of attenuation was provided.

Signal analyses were performed on some of the pulses recorded. Figure I.3-28 shows signals analyzed during the air bubble curtain on/off tests for Pile 5. The signal analyses illustrate the benefits of the air bubble curtain system; they show not only lower sound levels across much of the frequency spectra, but also a lower rate of accumulated sound energy.

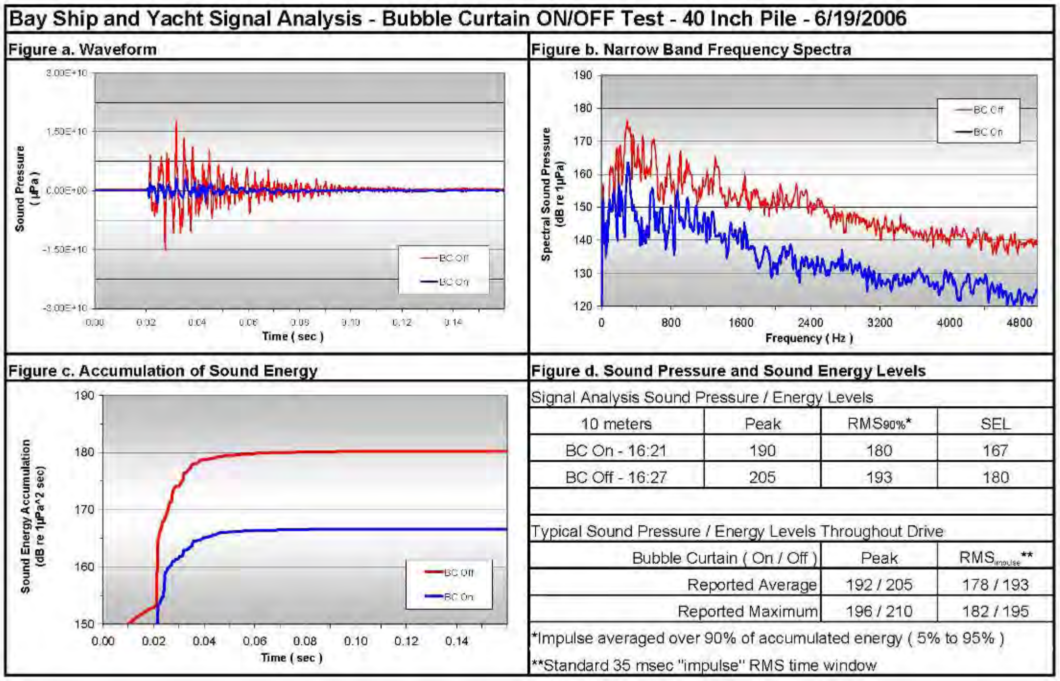


Figure I.3-28 Representative Signal Analyses for 40-Inch-Diameter Piles during Test of Air Bubble Curtain System (On and Off) at Bay Ship and Yacht—Alameda, CA

I.3.11 16-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles in Shallow Water, County of Shasta Airport Road Bridge Replacement Project—Anderson, CA

Five 16-inch steel pipe piles were driven for a temporary trestle for the County of Shasta's Airport Road Bridge Replacement Project on the Sacramento River in Anderson, California. The purpose of the project was to replace the existing Airport Road Bridge over the Sacramento River with a new structure. The five 16-inch diameter steel shell pipe piles were installed using a Delmag D19-42 diesel impact hammer. The piles were driven until a specified resistance was met, as determined by hammer blow counts during the pile driving event. Sound pressure measurements were performed to conform to resource agency (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration [NOAA] Marine Fisheries Service) requirements.

Measurements for this project were conducted during two days, January 29 and 30, 2008. The first pile measured (Pile 2) was driven on the afternoon of January 29, 2008. The weather conditions were windy and overcast with heavy rain on and off during the pile driving. There were two systems deployed for the measurement. The first system was placed 14 meters (46 feet) upstream from the pile in approximately 1.2-meter- (4-foot-) deep water with the hydrophone set at mid-depth. Due to the weather conditions, it was not safe to set the hydrophone at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile. The second system was placed 10 meters downstream from the pile in approximately 0.6-meter-deep (2-foot-deep) water with the hydrophone set mid-depth. The location of the two downstream hydrophones was 12 and 13 meters (39 and 42.6 feet) from the pile in approximately 0.6-meter-deep water, with the hydrophones set mid-depth. The pile installation took 18 minutes with about 11 minutes of actual driving time. Results are summarized in Table I.3-18. Only peak sound pressure levels were measured.

Figure I.3-29 Steel Pipe Piles in Shallow Water, County of Shasta Airport Road Bridge Replacement

Table I.3-18 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving of 16-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Airport Road Bridge Replacement Project, Anderson, CA (January 29, 2008)

Pile	Position	Sound Pressure Level in dB	
		Average Peak	Maximum Peak
Pile 2	12 meters (39 feet)	196	200
	14 meters (46 feet)	200	205
	13 meters (42.6 feet)	194	199

On January 30, 2008, four piles were driven. Also, Pile 2 was again hit several times to confirm bearing. The re-strike of Pile 2 lasted approximately 1 minute, and the pile was only struck 7 times. Each pile was measured at three different locations 10 meters and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) upstream. The driving time for each pile ranged from 10 to 17 minutes. The impact hammer power was at the full settings for Piles 2 and 3 and was reduced one level for Piles 1 and 4. Measurements results are summarized in Table I.3-19.

Table I.3-19 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving of 16-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Airport Road Bridge Replacement Project, Anderson, CA (January 30, 2008)

Pile	Position	Sound Pressure Levels in dB	
		Average Peak	**Maximum Peak**
Pile 2	10m Upstream	195	200
	10m Downstream	197	200
Pile 1	10m Upstream	194	199
	20m Upstream	193	200
	10m Downstream	199	203
Pile 3	10m Upstream	200	204
	20m Upstream	196	200
	10m Downstream	201	206
Pile 4	10m Upstream	200	204
	20m Upstream	194	199
	10m Downstream	200	202

I.3.12 22-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Bradshaw Bridge Project, Lathrop, CA

This project installed a temporary equipment trestle to facilitate the construction of the Bradshaw's Crossing Project near the town of Lathrop, California. The project involved the installation of one hundred and thirty-two - 20-inch diameter steel shell piles, including 87 piles driven in the river channel. The monitoring followed the guidelines as shown in the Hydroacoustic Monitoring Plan[12] for the project. The plan called for work to cease if the sound pressure levels exceed the dual criteria[13] of 206 dB $_{Peak}$ re: 1μPa and/ or187 dB $_{Accumulated\ SEL}$ re: 1μPa^2-sec. Measurements were made at two locations, 10 meters and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet), from August 22 through September 16, 2011.

Figure I.3-30 22-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles, Bradshaw Bridge Project

Underwater sound measurements were made on 17 days beginning on August 22, 2011 and ending on September 28, 2011. Typically, pile driving during the day was stopped due to sound levels exceeding the cumulative SEL criteria before the contractor had completed the planned driving for the day. The driving of the piles from August 22 through August 28 was completed using a Delmag D30-32 diesel impact hammer. Beginning on August 29, an APE hydraulic impact hammer was used for the remainder of the project. The contractor made various attempts to stay within the criteria. The contractor finally settled on the combination of vibrating the piles in as far as possible and then installing a bubble ring to proof the piles, minimizing the number of strikes used per day. Table I.3.20 shows the daily levels at 10 meters and 20 meters.

Table I.3-20 Summary of Daily Peak Sound Pressure Levels and SEL at 10 Meters for Driving 22-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—Bradshaw Bridge Project, Lathrop, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
		Peak		SEL per Strike	
Distance	Condition	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average
10 meters (33 feet)	Unattenuated – diesel Impact Hammer	204	188	172	161
20 meters (65 feet)	Unattenuated – diesel Impact Hammer	194	183	167	155

I.3.13 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles in Deep Water-Tongue Point Facility Pier Repairs—Astoria, OR

Ten piles were monitored over a two-day period at the Point Pier in Astoria, Oregon under the terms of the Underwater Noise Monitoring Plan[14]. The hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted for pile driving with a D-46-42 diesel impact hammer installing 24-inch steel shell piles through the existing pier. A multi-level bubble ring was used to reduce the sound pressure from the pile driving. Monitoring was conducted with the bubble rings on and off.

All piles were measured at 10 meters at the mid water depth, and three of the piles were also measured at 20 meters, also at the mid water depth. The underwater sound was measured continuously throughout the duration of the drive. The effectiveness of the bubble ring was tested by turning the bubble rings off for short intervals at the beginning of the drive, part way through the drive, and near the end of the drive. Table I.3.21 summarizes measured sound pressure level data for the 10-meter measurements, and Table I.3-22 summarized the data for the 20-meter measurements.

With the bubble rings turned off, the average Peak SPL was 197 dB and ranged from 189 dB to 207 dB. The average single-strike SEL was 168 dB, and the levels ranged from 160 dB to 175 dB. The average RMS_{imp} was 182, and the levels ranged from 178 dB to 189 dB. With the bubble rings turned on the average Peak SPL was 183 dB and ranged from 172 dB to 189 dB. The average single-strike SEL was 156 dB, and the levels ranged from 151 dB to 160 dB. The average RMS_{imp} was 167 dB re: 1µPa, and the levels ranged from 159 db to 172 dB.

Figure I.3-31 One Level of the Multi-Stage Bubble Ring—Tongue Point Facility Pier

Figure I.3-32 Deployment of the Bubble Rings—Tongue Point Facility Pier

Table I.3-21 Summary of Sound pressure levels Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet) for the Driving of 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Tongue Point Facility Pier, Astoria, OR

Pile	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	Peak		RMS		SEL	
	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average
Attenuated—With Bubble Rings						
1	197	196	183	181	171	169
2	206	202	186	183	175	171
3	193	193	178	178	168	168
4	196	195	186	184	167	167
5	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
6	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
7	190	190	ND	ND	161	161
8	205	204	189	188	174	173
9	199	196	ND	ND	171	170
10	199	197	182	181	170	169
Unattenuated—Without the Bubble Rings						
1	188	182	172	166	161	155
2	183	180	175	164	159	155
3	190	186	170	168	160	157
4	189	189	174	168	160	158
5	187	184	169	167	157	156
6	185	181	168	165	157	153
7	178	175	165	161	153	151
8	190	187	174	169	161	159
9	187	185	171	169	159	156
10	188	186	171	172	159	157

ND = no data

During driving time when the bubble rings were turned off, the impulses were characterized by higher peak levels and faster rise times that translated into higher frequency sound energy content. When the bubble ring was used, the average reduction in peak SPL was 14 dB, and the reductions ranged from 5 dB to 22 dB. While the levels were reduced throughout the frequency range, the 100 to 500 Hz range is where the greatest reduction occurred with the use of the bubble rings.

Table I.3-22 Summary of Sound pressure levels Measured at 20 Meters (65 Feet) for the Driving of 24-Inch Steel Shell Piles—Tongue Point Facility Pier, Astoria, OR

Pile	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	Peak		RMS		SEL	
	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average
Attenuated—With Bubble Rings						
6	171	167	ND	ND	147	145
7	173	167	ND	ND	144	141
10	172	171	155	154	142	141
Unattenuated—Without the Bubble Rings						
6	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
7	191	188	ND	ND	163	161
10	192	182	170	166	157	153

ND= no data

Analyses of pulses recorded at 10 meters with the bubble rings on and off are shown in Figure I.3-33. The pulses when the bubble rings were off had considerable high frequency content that was effectively attenuated when the bubble ring was on. The bubble ring provided 19 dB of attenuation. The typical SEL per strike was 176 dB without the bubble ring and 160 with the bubble ring.

A test of the effect of the power settings for the hammer was conducted on Pile 5 with the bubble ring system on. The power setting was started out at 1 and was increased by one every couple of minutes until it reached the highest setting of 4. The average peak noise levels went up by 4 dB from power setting one to power setting two. After the initial increase the average peak noise levels did not go up with the increase in power. Table 1.3-23 shows the results of this test. Figure I.3-33 provides a representative signal analyses.

Table I.3-23 Average Sound Pressure Levels with Different Impact Hammer Power Settings bubble rings on- Tongue Point Facility Pier, Astoria, OR

Pile	Power Setting/ Energy Rating	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
5	1st / 55,932 ft-lbs	180	164	152
5	2nd / 75,646 ft-lbs	185	168	155
5	3rd / 95,130 ft-lbs	186	169	156
5	4th / 114,615 ft-lbs	185	168	156

Tongue Point Dock Repair - Comparison of Bubble Rings Off and ON - @ Pile 8 11/18/08

Figure a. Waveform

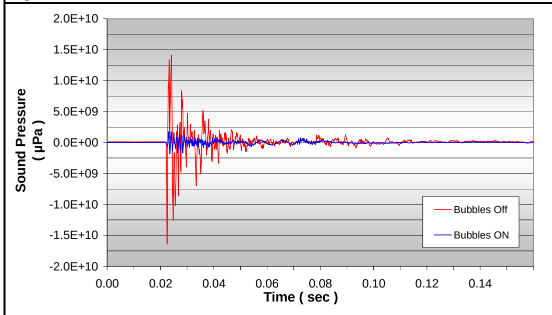


Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra

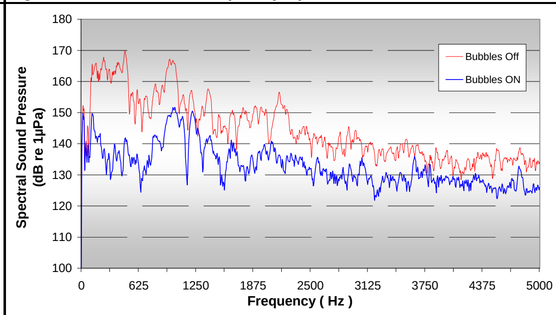


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

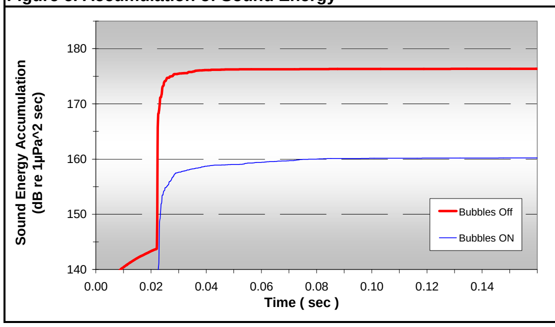


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Bubbles Off	204	193	176
Bubbles On	185	172	160

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	SEL
	Off / On	Off / On
Reported Average	205 / 187	174 / 159
Reported Maximum	207 / 190	177 / 162

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

Figure I.3-33 Representative Signal Analyses for Tongue Point Facility Pier Astoria, OR (Unattenuated and Attenuated)

I.3.14 24- and 36-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles in Shallow Water—Shasta County, CA

A 24-inch and 36-inch diameter steel shell pile were driven in and near the Sacramento River in Shasta County, California for the construction of a temporary trestle. These piles were first vibrated in using an APE vibratory hammer and then proofed using a Delmag D42 diesel impact hammer.

Underwater sound measurements were made on three different days. The first measurements were made on October 28 and 29, 2008 when two temporary 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed at the edge of the Sacramento River. A vibratory driver/extractor was first used to install the piles, and then a diesel impact hammer was used to drive the piles to their final depth.

Underwater sound levels were measured at 10 meters (33 feet) from both of the pile positions. The first pile was partially on shore and in water 3 to 4 inches deep, and the second pile was in water 8 to 12 inches deep. The pile location was below a riffle in the river where the currents were fairly strong. The hydrophones were in water approximately 3 feet deep and were deployed by wading into the water and setting the hydrophones in the water channel. In these currents, keeping the hydrophones in place was complicated. In addition, the swift moving water created noise that interfered with the hydrophone measurements.

Measurements of the vibratory installation at 10 meters were not clear due to current-induced noise. The peak sound pressure levels from the vibratory hammer could not be measured due to noise from the current; any noise from the vibratory hammer was lost in the ambient background level that ranged from 165 to 174dB, which was above much of the vibratory pile sounds. The 1-second sound pressure levels also could not be measured due to the noise on the hydrophone.

Impact pile driving produced higher sound levels that were not affected by the ambient background noise from the river current. Measurements were made at 10 meters from the both piles. The first pile was driven for a very short period of approximately 35 seconds with approximately 18 blows. The second pile was driven slightly longer for approximately 45 seconds with 25 blows. The levels for the second pile were higher than the fist pile because the entire pile was in water, and the depth of the water was slightly deeper.

Figure I.3-34 Swift Moving Sacramento River

On November 3, two temporary 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed. A vibratory driver/extractor was used to install the piles to their final depth. There was no impact driving required for these piles. Sound levels were measured at 10 meters from the first pile location and approximately 6 meters (20 feet) from the second pile location. Both of the piles were in 1.2 to1.7 meters (4 to 5.5 feet) of water, and the hydrophone was placed downstream in water approximately 1.7 meters deep. When a pile would hit a hard material in the river, vibration was paused and then restarted, and the highest sound levels would occur.

Table I.3-24 summarizes pile driving results measured on October 28 and 29, and Table I.3-25 summarizes pile driving results measured on November 3, 2008.

Table I.3-24 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Impact Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Pile on October 28 and 29, 2008—Sacramento River, Shasta County

Pile	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Typical Peak	**Typical SEL**	**Typical RMS**
1	175	148	Not Measured
2	182	159	Not Measured

Table I.3-25 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Vibratory Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Pile on November 3, 2008- Sacramento River, Shasta County

Pile	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Typical Peak	Typical SEL	Typical RMS
1	172	Not Measured	157
2	174	Not Measured	159

I.3.15 30-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles-Siuslaw River Bridge, State Route 126—Florence, OR

Figure I.3-35 Isolation Casing with Bubble Rings Near Bottom

In November 2008, measurements were conducted over a 5-day period to monitor the installation of five 30-inch-diameter, 1-inch thick steel shell piles. Pile installation was performed primarily using a Delmag Model D-52 diesel powered impact hammer. The project is located on State Route 126 Bridge over the Siuslaw River near Florence, Oregon. The purpose of the project is to replace the existing State Route 126 Bridge. Measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) from five piles and at the mid-water depth or 1 meter below the water surface. Measurements were made from the temporary construction pier. During the testing period, there was little or no current from the Siuslaw River, however the project area was influenced by the tide. The water depth and current direction varied depending on whether it was a flood, ebb, or slack tide.

For each of the five piles monitored, there were three separate driving events. The first event drove a 45-foot section of the pile; the second drove a 48-foot section welded to the first section, and finally the last 75 foot-section of the pile was driven to final depth. The underwater sound was measured continuously throughout the duration of the drive. The attenuation system consisted of an isolation casing with a bubble ring attached to the inside of the casing 1-foot from the bottom (Figure I.3-35). The effectiveness of the bubble ring was tested by turning the bubble rings off for short intervals at the beginning of the drive, part way through the drive, and near the end of the drive. Table I.3-26 shows a summary of the data collected for the average peak SPL, RMS and the single-strike SEL. During driving time when the bubble rings were turned off, the impulses were characterized by higher peak levels.

Figure I.3-36 Bubble Ring In Operation

The rise time of the attenuated wave was slightly slower than the rise time of the unattenuated wave. The lower frequency sound energy was not attenuated as well as the higher frequency content. When the bubble rings were on, the sound levels were reduced throughout the frequency range, but the 2,500 to 5,000 Hz range is where the greatest reduction occurred The average reduction in peak SPL was 6 dB, and the reductions ranged from 1 dB to 12 dB. The variations in sound level reduction could be due to several reasons, the first and most likely being that the bubble rings were not centered on the pile, allowing for a direct transmission of noise from the pile into the water. (Note in Figure I.3-36, there is more bubble action on the right side of the pile then on the left side.) The second reason is the head on the water column in the casing was not sufficient to allow for proper bubble size. Typically, there should be 2 to 3 feet of casing above the water to allow the bubble room to form.

The peak pressure levels were below the NOAA criteria of 206 dB with the bubble rings on. With the bubble rings off, the 206 dB was reached several times with levels as high as 212 dB. The accumulated SEL criteria level of 187 dB was exceeded on all the piles whether or not the bubble rings were turned on or off. The isolation casing and bubble ring were not effective in reducing the noise levels to below the NOAA criteria.

Table I.3-26 summarizes measured sound pressure levels. Figures I.3-37 and I.3-38 provide representative signal analyses.

Table I.3-26 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet) for Driving 30-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Pile - Siuslaw River Bridge, State Route 126, Florence, OR

BUBBLE RINGS ON						
	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	Peak		RMS		SEL	
Pile	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum
1	199	207	183	189	173	182
2	199	205	187	191	174	179
3	200	203	188	193	175	181
4	198	201	185	188	173	176
5	200	206	187	193	174	179
6	203	206	190	192	177	179
BUBBLE RINGS OFF						
	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	Peak		RMS		SEL	
Pile	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum
1	207	212	188	191	178	184
2	206	208	189	191	176	178
3	204	209	189	192	176	178
4	202	206	188	193	175	180
5	203	204	187	189	174	177
6	207	209	192	193	180	182

Siuslaw River Bridge Replacement - Comparisson of Bubble Rings Off and ON - @ Pile 4 11/6/08

Figure a. Waveform

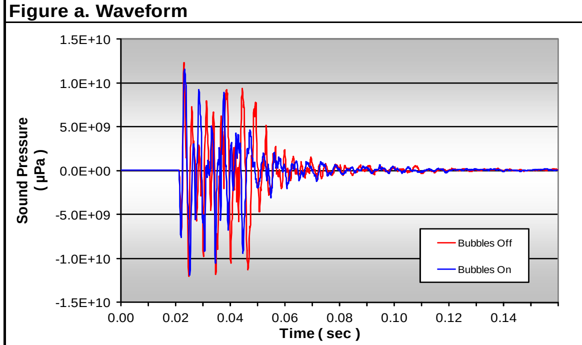


Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra

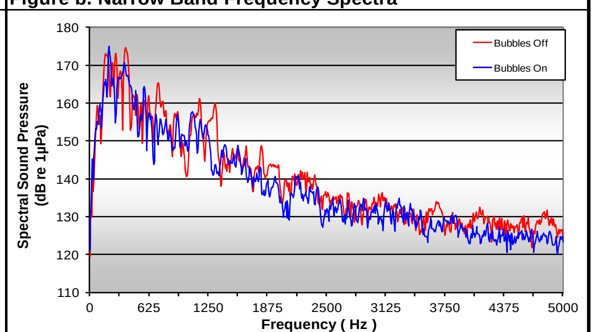


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

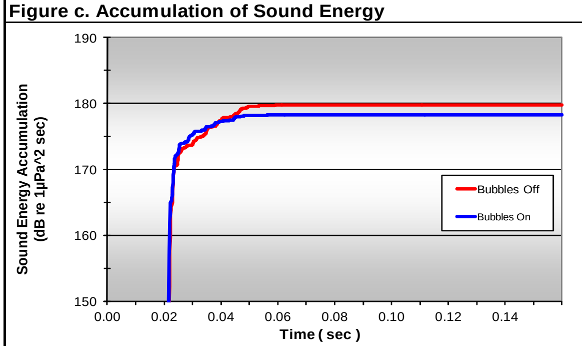


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

10 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Bubbles Off	202	195	180
Bubbles On	201	194	178
Difference	0	1	1

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS35ms**	SEL
Reported Average	203 / 201	192 / 190	179 / 178
Reported maximum	204 / 203	192 / 192	180 / 180

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-37 Signal Analyses Showing No Reduction with the Bubble Curtain, Suislaw River Bridge

Siuslaw River Bridge Replacement - Comparisson of Bubble Rings Off and ON - @ Pile 5 11/6/08

Figure a. Waveform

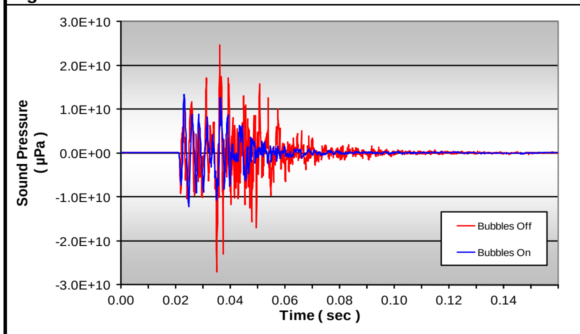


Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra

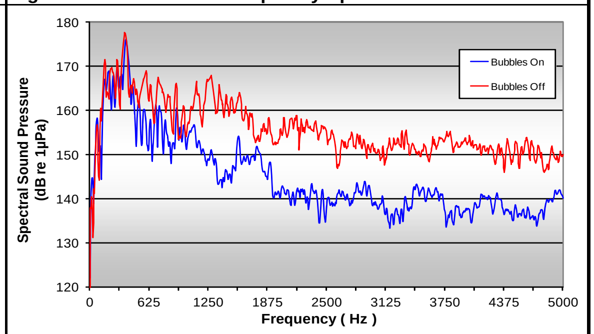


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

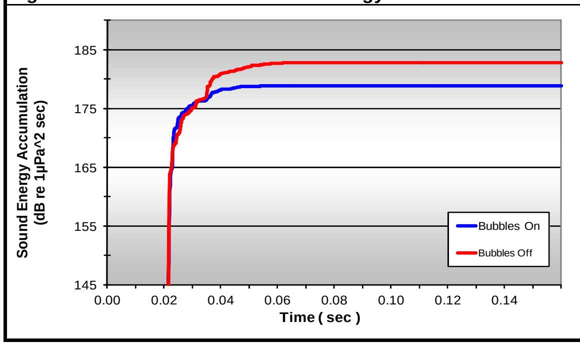


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

10 meter	Peak	$RMS_{90\%}$*	SEL
Bubbles Off	209	197	183
Bubbles On	203	195	179
Reduction	6	2	4

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RM_{S35ms}**	SEL
Reported Average	209 / 202	193 / 190	181 / 178
Reported maximum	211 / 205	195 / 192	183 / 180

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-38 Signal Analyses Showing Average Reduction with the Bubble Curtain, Suislaw River Bridge

I.3.16 16- and 20-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Stockton Marina, Stockton, CA

Underwater sound measurements were performed during the vibratory installation of four steel piles (16- and 20-inches in diameter) at the Stockton Marina in the City of Stockton. No attenuation system was used. Two sites were utilized to take the measurements on November 12, 2008.

According to NOAA Fisheries recommendations, the underwater sound measurements were to be made at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles at a depth of about 3 meters (10 feet). Since the water depth was only 5 to 6 meters (16.5 to 19.7 feet), measurements were made at mid depth, about 2 to 3 meters (6.5 to 9.8 feet). A second measurement position was added that placed the hydrophone about 2 to 5 meters (6.5 to 16.5 feet) from the pile.

The peak sound pressure levels and the 1-second energy equivalent sound level (L_{eq} 1-sec) were measured continuously during the driving event. The L_{eq} 1-sec is equivalent to the RMS for one second. The piles were driven with an ICE-66 vibratory driver (see Figure I.3-39). Table I.3.27 shows the average and maximum sound levels at 10 meters and at 2 to 5 meters.

Figure I.3-39 Pile Installation Using the ICE 66 Vibratory Driver

Table I.3-27 Summary of Sound pressure levels Measured for the Driving of 16- and 20-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Stockton Marina 10 Meter and 2 to 5 Meter Positions

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB							
		10 meters (33 feet)				2 to 5 meters (6.5 to 16.5 feet)			
		Peak		RMS		Peak		RMS	
Pile	**Pile Size**	**Average**	**Max**	**Average**	**Max**	**Average**	**Max**	**Average**	**Max**
1	20 inch	191	202	169	180	194	203	174	183
2	16 inch	167	184	153	164	186	193	163	175
3	20 inch	169	196	156	173	186	200	162	179
4	16 inch	181	197	163	174	185	195	164	177

I.3.17 14-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Richmond–San Rafael Bridge Pile Removal/Installation Project, Marin County, CA

Underwater sound measurements were performed during the removal of one 14-inch diameter steel shell pile and the installation of four 14-inch diameter steel shell piles at the Richmond–San Rafael Bridge on State Route 580, Marin County, California. Measurements were conducted on February 19, 2008 and March 11, 2008 at the request of Caltrans District 4.

For both the removal and installation of the piles, the underwater sound measurements were made at distances of 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the pile and at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet). When the measurements were made for pile removal, a second depth of 10 meters was measured. For the impact driving during the pile installation, a second depth of 15 meters (49 feet) was measured. Water depth was about 20 meters. The peak sound pressure levels and the sound exposure levels were measured continuously during the driving event, and the RMS was derived from the analysis of the recorded levels. The piles driven were 14-inch cylindrical steel shell piles that were approximately 125 feet long. The piles were removed with a vibratory hammer and driven with a diesel-powered impact hammer.

Pile Removal

During the removal of the pile, measurements were taken at a distance of 10 meters and a depth of 3 meters. The data from the 20-meter location was contaminated by a high pitch noise from the equipment and was not valid. Table 1.3-28 summarizes the measurement results.

Table I.3-28 Summary of Sound Pressure Level Results for Vibratory Pile Removal of One 14-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Pile- Richmond–San Rafael Bridge Pile Removal/Installation Project, Marin County, CA

Measurement Type	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	10-Meter (33-Foot) Location				20-Meter (65-Foot) Location	
	3 meters (10 feet) deep		10 meters deep		10 meters deep	
	Peak	SEL	Peak	SEL	Peak	SEL
Maximum	171	154	170	159	ND	ND
Average	161	148	161	149	ND	ND

ND = no data

Pile Installation

The piles had been set in place for a few days prior to driving them, allowing the mud to bind to the piles. This created more resistance when the first few strikes occurred and resulted in higher than normal sound levels. As the piles broke free from the mud, the sound levels dropped significantly. The driving time for the four piles was relatively short—between 57 seconds and 1 minute, 15 seconds. Measurements were made at two distances—10 meters and 20 meters. At the 10-meter distance, measurements were taken at depths of 3 meters and 15 meters below the water's surface. At the10 meter location, the sound pressure level at 15 meters deep was typically 5 dB higher than at the 3 meter depth, and the maximum peak sound pressure level was 7 dB higher than at the 3 meter depth.

At the 20-meter location, measurements were only taken at a depth of 15 meters. The peak level was about 3 dB lower at the 20-meter location than at the 10-meter location's 15-meter-deep position and was about 4 dB higher than the 10-meter location at the 3-meter-deep position. Table 1.3-29 summarizes the measurement results. Figure I.3-40 shows an example of the signal analysis from March 11, 2008.

Table I.3-29 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Impact Driving of Four 14-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles - Richmond–San Rafael Bridge Pile Removal/Installation Project, Marin County, CA

Measurement Type	Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	10-Meter (33-Foot) Location				20-Meter (65-Foot) Location	
	3 meters (10 feet) deep		15 meters (49 feet) deep		15m deep	
	Peak	SEL	Peak	SEL	Peak	SEL
Maximum	184	155	194	164	ND	ND
Average	171	143	178	152	ND	ND
Maximum	187	157	196	166	194	162
Average	172	144	178	152	177	149
Maximum	192	161	199	169	195	165
Average	174	147	181	155	178	151
Maximum	186	159	197	167	196	164
Average	177	149	183	157	182	154

ND = No Data

Richmond Bridge-San Rafael Bridge - Pile 1 10m from pile and 3m deep - 3/11/08

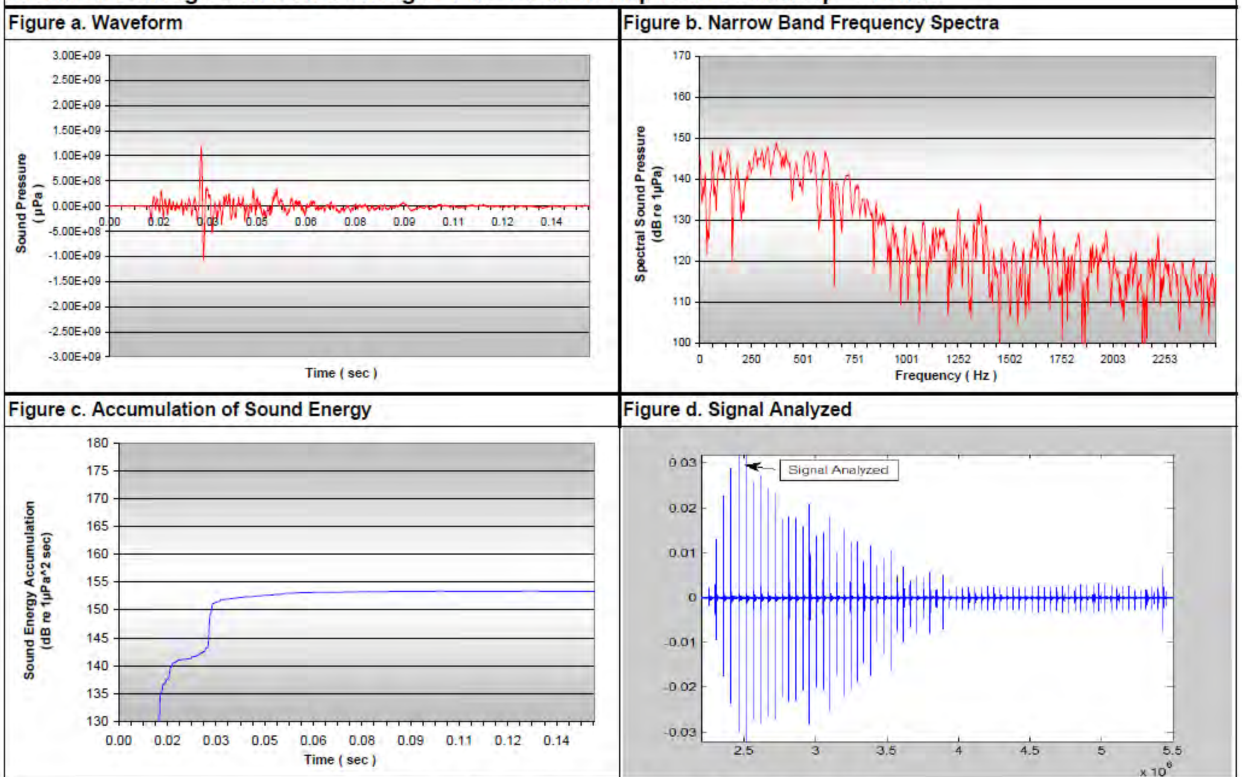


Figure e. Sound Pressure and Sound Exposure Levels						
Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels				Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive		
11:15:14	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL		Peak	SEL
10m	182	168	153	Reported 10m	183	150
*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)						

Figure I.3-40 Signal Analyses of a Pile Driving Underwater Sound Pulse, Richmond–San Rafael Bridge

I.3.18 72-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Feather River Bridge Project, Sutter County, CA

Construction of the new northbound State Route (SR) 99 Bridge over the Feather River in Sutter County, California began in 2011. The new bridge is the last section of SR 99 to be widened from two lanes to four lanes between Sacramento and Yuba City. The project included driving thirty 72-inch-diameter steel shell piles into the levees of the Feather River over two construction seasons. Monitoring has been scheduled for Bents 3 through 8. These bents are either in the wetted channel or adjacent to the channel. At this time, only the first construction season measurements have been completed (Bent 8 measurements).

The requirements of the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) required work to stop if the peak underwater sound pressure exceeded 206 dB. For the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), the requirement was that work would be stopped if the peak levels exceeded 206 dB for five or more strikes in a given day.

Measurements were made at Bent 8, on land adjacent to the river, for three separate pile driving occasions on August 15, 2011, October 3, 2011, and December 19, 201. A cross channel site and a near site were utilized for making the measurements. The near site was located 16 meters (52.5 feet) from the piles and 4 meters (13 feet) from the shore in a small channel approximately 3 meters (10 feet) deep. The cross channel site was located 58 meters (190 feet) from the piles in approximately 1.5 meters (5 feet) of water. The hydrophones were placed at mid-channel depth at both locations. Both sites were used on August 15. On October 3 and December 19, only the near site was used.

The peak sound pressure and single-strike SEL values are shown in Table I.3-30. Figure I.3-41 shows typical steel shell pile installation on land and Figure I.3-42 shows the near measurement location in the river.

Figure I.3-41 Impact Driving of On-Land Steel Pipe piles

Figure I.3-42 Near Measurement Location in Feather River

Table I.3-30 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving of 72-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles - Feather River Bridge Project, Sutter County, CA

Date/Location	Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
	Maximum Peak Level	**Typical Peak Level**	**Maximum Single-strike SEL**	**Typical Single-strike SEL**
August 15, 2011 Near site (16m)	205.9	200	182.1	174
August 15, 2011 Cross channel site (58m)	177.5	174	155.6	150
October 3, 2011 Near site (16 m)	202.9	198	176.3	172
December 19, 2011 Near Site (16m)	202.5	201	178.1	175

I.3.19 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles/H-Pile Combinations, South Umpqua River Douglas County, OR

On August 26, 2011 four 24-inch steel shell piles placed over H piles were driven in the South Umpqua River in Douglas County, Oregon. The purpose of the project was to construct a temporary work trestle for the construction of the new Weaver Road Bridge. Underwater sound monitoring was completed during construction according to the terms of the project's Hydroacoustic Monitoring Plan[15] (plan) and the monitoring requirements of the project Biological Opinion[16] (BO) issued by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). The plan requires the underwater sound monitoring to be conducted during the impact pile driving of steel piles to assess the underwater noise levels during the pile driving effort. The hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted for pile driving with a diesel impact hammer during installation of four 24-inch diameter hollow steel piles placed over steel H piles in the South Umpqua River's wetted channel.

Figure I.3-43 Pile in Shallow River

Figure I.3-44 Example of Bubble Flux

The hollow steel piles were first driven with a vibratory hammer then driven to final depth with a diesel impact hammer. The Biological Opinion did not require monitoring for vibratory driving. There were two hydrophones set up to monitor the pile driving. The near measurement position was 34 feet from the pile driving; the far measurement site ranged from 84 feet to 112 feet from the pile driving. The water depth at the measurement locations ranged from 3 feet to 6 feet deep. The water depth at the pile locations was relatively shallow, ranging from 12 inches to 30 inches deep (see Figure I.3-43 The bubble curtain that was used did not produce bubbles around the entire pile, resulting in little or no attenuation (see Figure I.3-44). As can be seen in the figure, the bubbles were concentrated on the right side of the pile with very little on the front and left side of the pile.

Table 1.3-31 summarizes the measurement results.

Table I.3-31 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving of 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles Place Over Steel H Piles - South Umpqua River Douglas County, OR

Pile	Near (34 feet)			Distant (94 to 112 feet)		
	Distance (feet)	Peak Sound Pressure Level in dB		Distance (feet)	Single-strike SEL in dB	
		Maximum	Average		Maximum	Average
Pile 1	34	171	171	112	148	148
Pile 2	34	174	173	94	152	151
Pile 3	34	185	183	105	159	156
Pile 4	34	182	179	84	158	156

I.3.20 12-and 1-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles— Test Piles, Sand Mound Slough, Oakley, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made on September 16, 2011 during the impact driving of two temporary dock test piles (one 12-inch steel pipe pile and one 16-inch steel pipe pile) in the Sand Mound Slough in Oakley, California. Measurements were made at one location in the river at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles in water approximately 9 feet deep. Figure I.3-45 shows the test pile installation.

Figure I.3-45 Test Pile Driving in Mound Slough, Oakley, CA

Each temporary pile was driven approximately 15 feet simulate the placement of a pile for a dock using a 3,000-lb free-fall drop hammer at maximum capacity (i.e., the hammer was dropped from 10 feet above the top of the pile). The 12-inch pile was driven with an older plastic cap on the driving shoe. There were 22 pile strikes on the 12-inch pile. The 16-inch pile was driven with a new plastic cap on the driving shoe. There were 16 strikes on the 16-inch pile.

Table I.3-32 summarizes the daily maximum and average peak and single-strike SELs for this project. The NMFS guidelines state that single-strike SELs that are below 150 dB re: 1μPa do not accumulate to cause injury to fish. These data points were excluded from the dataset and from the calculation of the accumulated SEL.

After a review of the data, it appears that the condition of the plastic lining on the pile cap affects the noise levels produced from pile driving. The new pile cap resulted in lower noise levels.

Table I.3-32 Summary of Daily Maximum and Average Peak and Single-Strike SEL

Pile Size	Typical Peak Sound Pressure Level (dB)	Single-strike SEL (dB)	Number of Pile Strikes	SEL $_{Cumulative}$ (dB)
12-inch	187	161	22	176
16-inch	182	158	16	171

I.3.21 24- and 30-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles—State Route 520 Bridge Replacement and HOV Project, WA

Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted over a three-day period in October 2009 for the State Route 520 Bridge Replacement and HOV Project–Pile Installation Test Program in Washington State. A total of nine steel shell test piles were driven at three locations identified as Locations A, B, and C:

- Location A - north of SR 520 between Foster Island and Edgewater Park (one 30-inch pile),
- Location B - north of SR 520 in the area of Foster Island (four 30-inch piles), and
- Location C Portage Bay(four 24-inch piles),

Three different attenuation devices were tested during the pile driving: unconfined bubble rings, confined bubble ring, and Double Walled Noise Attenuation Pile (DNAP). The bubble rings were tested with on/off cycles during each pile driving event. Bubble rings were not used when the DNAP was tested.

Measurements from the impact driving were made at 10, 200, and 500 meters (33, 650 and 1,640 feet) for each location. The sound level from vibratory installation of one pile (PB-3) was measured at Location C.

Vibratory Driving—October 26, 2009 (Portage Bay, PB-3 only)

Underwater sound measurements were made on October 26, 2009 when four 24-inch diameter steel pipe piles were installed just north of SR 520 in Portage Bay (Location C). An APE 200 vibratory driver/extractor was used to install the piles. Only one pile, PB-3, was measured, and no attenuation devices were used.

Underwater sound levels were measured from two positions: (1) a fixed position from a raft that was 10 meters from the pile, and (2) a dock that was 200 meters from the pile. The hydrophone at each position was set at mid depth, the water depth at the raft was 3 meters (10 feet), and the water depth at the dock was 4 meters (13 feet). At the time of pile installation, there were no currents, and no wind. Table I.3-33 shows the levels measured.

Impact Driving—October 27, 2009 (Portage Bay, Location C)

Four 24-inch piles were driven with an unconfined bubble ring attenuation system. A summary of the underwater measurements taken at location C is shown in Table I.3-33. Figures I.3-46 a, b, and c show the difference between the attenuated and unattenuated waveform and frequency distribution of PB-4.

Table I.3-33 Summary of Underwater Sound Levels for Location C, Portage Bay.

Pile	Date	Hammer Type	Distance (meters/feet)	Mitigation	Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
					Peak		Single-strike SEL[2]	RMS[2]
					Maximum	Average		
Location C - 24-inch Steel Shell Piles With Unconfined Bubble Rings								
PB3	10/26	Vibratory	10/33	None	170	157	144	144
PB1	10/27	Impact	12/39	On[1]	190	187	159	170
				Off	199	198	171	183
PB2[1]	10/27	Impact	12/39	Off	183	178	153	165
				On[1]	181	181	153	165
PB3	10/27	Impact	10/33	On	165	161	137	148
				Off	193	192	165	177
				On	164	161	136	146
				Off	186	182	155	167
PB4	10/27	Impact	10/33	Off	194	190	164	176
				On	161	160	136	147
				Off	188	183	157	169

[1] The Bubble Rings were never fully in use due to problems controlling the airflow
[2] Average levels

Impact Driving—October 29, 2009 (Near Foster Island, Location A and B)

On October 29, the barges were moved to a new location where the three mitigation methods mentioned earlier were tested during the driving of five 30-inch steel shell piles. The piles were driven in shallow water (3 to 7 meters [10 to 23 feet]) and the hydrophones were placed at mid depth. Three positions were used to measure the levels. Two were manned, one at approximately 10 meters and one at 200 meters. The third was unmanned and anchored at 500 meters. For Pile WAB3, only the DNAP mitigation method was tested. Table I-3.34 shows a summary of the measured levels.

Table I.3-34 Summary of Underwater Sound Pressure Levels for Location A and B near Foster Island

Pile	Date	Hammer Type	Distance (meters)	Mitigation	Sound Pressure Levels in dB – Peak Range	Peak Average	Single-strike SEL[4]	RMS[4]
Location B—30-Inch Steel Shell Piles with Three Different Mitigation Systems								
WAB1	10/29	Impact	10	Off[2]	191 - 196	194	169	182
				On[2]	156 - 162	157	135	150
				Off[2]	195 - 196	196	169	182
WAB2	10/29	Impact	13	Off[1]	191 - 196	193	169	181
				On[1]	158 - 166	161	137	152
				Off[1]	190 - 196	192	165	179
WAB3	10/29	Impact	10	DNAP[3]	181 - 192	186	163	177
WAB4	10/29	Impact	13	Off[2]	189 - 191	188	160	174
				On[2]	158 - 165	161	138	151
				Off[2]	194 - 196	196	172	185
Location A—30-Inch Steel Pile with Unconfined Bubble Ring								
WAB5	10/29	Impact	10	Off[1]	196 - 197	196	176	185
				On[1]	173 - 179	176	153	167
				Off[1]	196 - 197	196	174	185
				On[1]	177 - 180	178	153	167
				Off[1]	194 - 196	195	170	182
				Off[1]	195 - 196	196	174	181
				On[1]	175 - 180	177	153	167
				Off[1]	192 - 197	196	173	185

[1] Unconfined Bubble Rings
[2] Confined Bubble Ring
[3] DNAP (Double Walled Noise Attenuation Pile)
[4] Average Levels
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 13 meters = approximately 42.5 feet

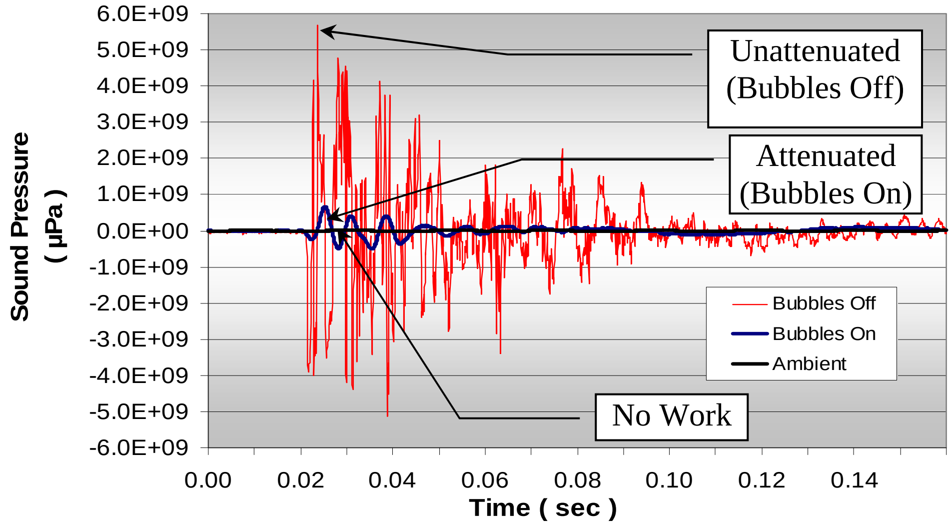


Figure I.3-46a Attenuated vs. Unattenuated Waveforms, State Route 520 Bridge Replacement and HOV Project

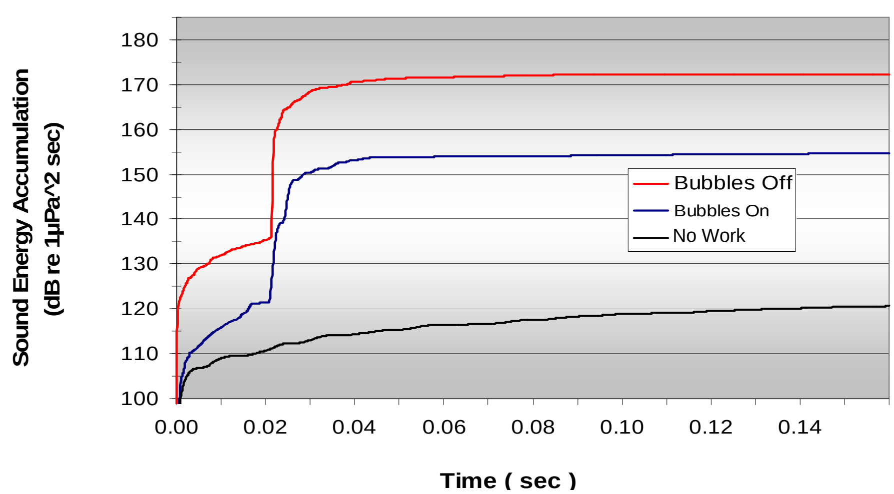


Figure I.3-46b Attenuated vs. Unattenuated Accumulation of Sound Energy, State Route 520 Bridge Replacement and HOV Project

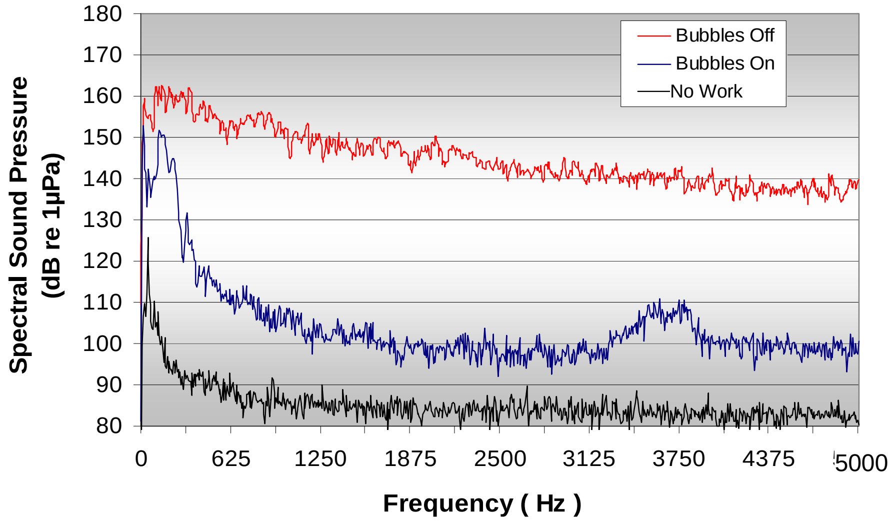


Figure I.3-46c Attenuated vs. Unattenuated Narrow Band Frequency Spectra, State Route 520 Bridge Replacement and HOV Project

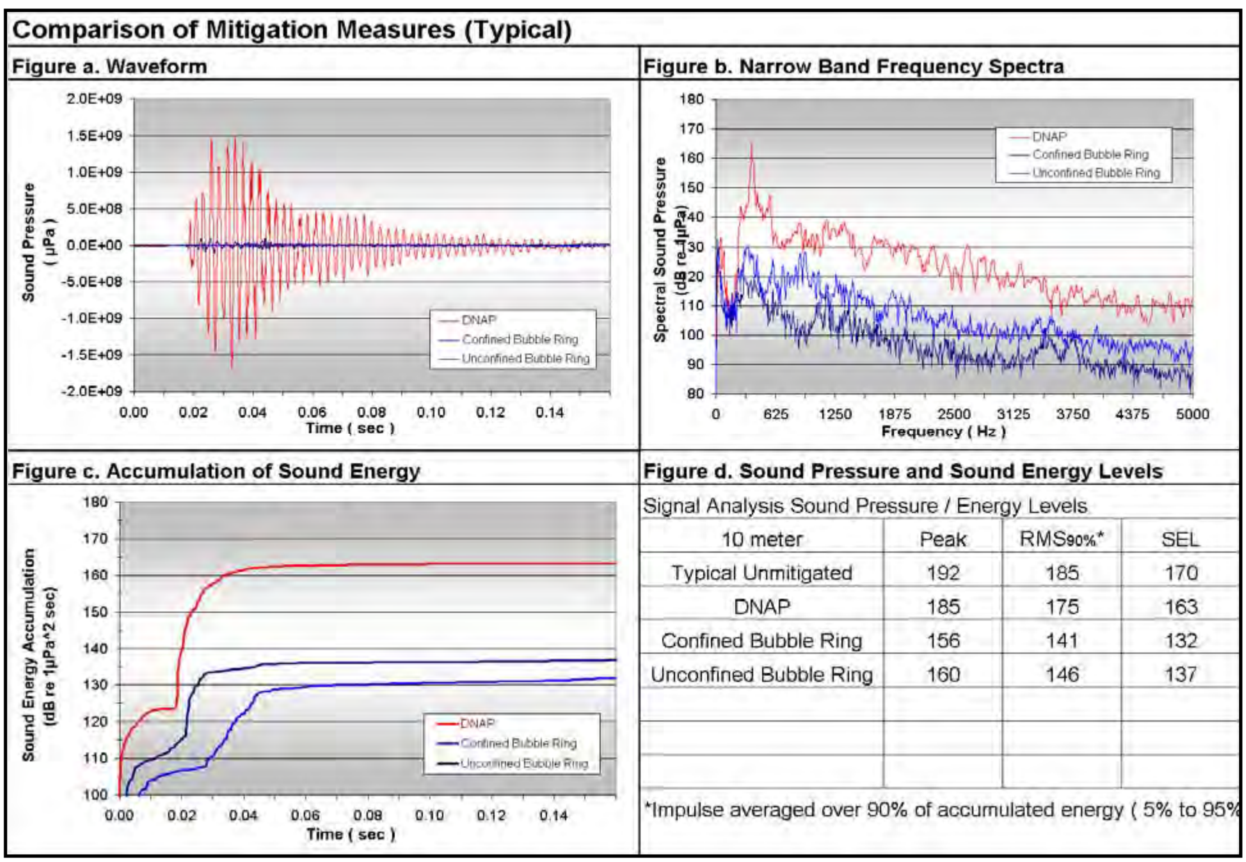


Figure I.3-47 Comparison of DNAP, Confined Bubble Ring and Unconfined Bubble Rings

I.3.22 66-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles, Russian River Bridge Replacement—Ukiah, CA

The purpose of this project was to replace the existing State Route 222 Bridge over the Russian River near Ukiah, California. The project was monitored in two phases. The first phase was in June and July 2010. This phase included monitoring piles driven to replace the existing east bound bridge. The second phase was in June and July 2011. This phase included monitoring piles driven to replace the west bound bridge. A variety of steel shell piles were driven as a part of the project. There were a total of eight 66-inch steel shell piles. All piles were driven on land. The distance between the piles and the edge of the water ranged from 17 meters (56 feet) to 94 meters (308 feet). PA vibratory hammer was used to set the piles and either a D62 or D132-33 diesel powered impact hammer drove the piles to final depth.

In 2010, four permanent 66-inch steel shell piles were monitored over a two-month period. There were three sites where measurements were taken:

- Site A was approximately 79 meters (260 feet) upstream of Site B in a deep pool (1.5 meters [5 feet]) in a slow current,
- Site B was approximately 15 meters (50 feet) upstream of the existing bridge in an area with a strong current that was slightly less than 1 meter deep, and
- Site C was approximately 6 meters (19 feet) downstream of the existing bridge in a side pool of calm water 1 meter (3.3 feet) deep.

Figure I.3-48 66-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles, Russian River Bridge Replacement Project

Site B was used in the beginning because it was in line with the work being done at the test pile location. However, there were problems with the river current noise masking the pile driving noise, so this site was abandoned and Site C was used for the remainder of the measurements for the test site and all the permanent piles. Table 1.3-35 summarizes the underwater sound levels at the near locations (Site B and C). Table 1.3-36 summarizes the levels at the upstream location (Site A).

In 2011, four permanent 66-inch steel shell piles were monitored over a two-month period. There were two measurement sites in the river for all four piles. Site A was approximately 47 meters (155 feet) upstream of the bridge in a pool about 1 meter (3.3 feet) of water at the head of a small rapid in the current. Site B was approximately in the center of the existing bridge in the channel in swift running water. Both systems used a shield to help reduce the noise from the water flowing past the hydrophones.

Table I.3-35 2010 Summary of Measures Sound Pressure Levels in dB Near Location (Site B and C)

Pier and Distance	1st Section Sound Pressure Level in dB			2nd Section Sound Pressure Level in dB		
	Peak	RMS	Single-Strike SEL	Peak	RMS	Single-Strike SEL
2 – 94m	179	167	155	179	165	155
3 – 58m	192	177	165	187	170	159
4 – 23m	195	181	169	192	175	163
5 – 17m	197	185	173	196	181	169

Table I.3-36 2010 Summary of Sound Levels in dB at Upstream Location (Site A)

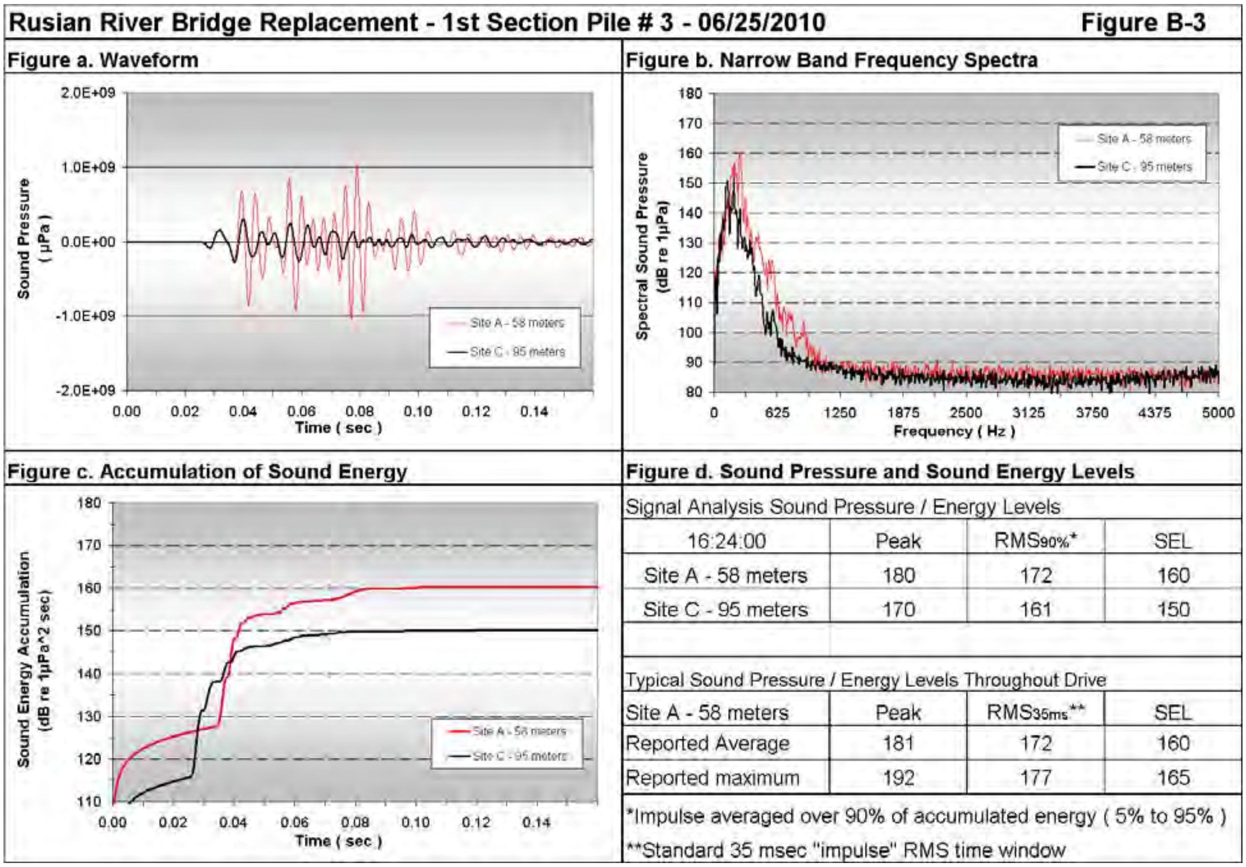
Pier and Distance	1st Section Sound Pressure Level in dB			2nd Section Sound Pressure Level in dB		
	Peak	RMS	Single-strike SEL	Peak	RMS	Single-strike SEL
2 – 105m	174	161	150	178	163	152
3 – 95m	178	166	154	179	163	152
4 – 97m	178	167	156	176	164	153
5 – 110m	183	168	157	177	163	153

Table I-3-37 2011 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at Upstream Location (Site B)

Pier # and Distance	1st Section Sound Pressure Level in dB			2nd Section Sound Pressure Level in dB		
	Peak	RMS	Single-strike SEL	Peak	RMS	Single-strike SEL
2 – 95m	167	ND	144	171	ND	148
3 – 55m	178	ND	152	176	ND	153
4 – 24m	190	ND	165	188	ND	164
5 – 21m	178	ND	154	188	ND	163

Table I.3-38 2011 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels in dB at Center Location (Site A)

Pier # and Distance	1st Section			2nd Section		
	Peak	RMS	Single-Strike SEL	Peak	RMS	Single-strike SEL
2 – 85m	172	ND	148	169	ND	143
3 – 59m	185	ND	160	174	ND	148
4 – 49m	185	ND	160	180	ND	155
5 – 63m	164	ND	142	180	ND	162



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

16:24:00	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Site A - 58 meters	180	172	160
Site C - 95 meters	170	161	150

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

Site A - 58 meters	Peak	RMS35ms**	SEL
Reported Average	181	172	160
Reported maximum	192	177	165

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I-3.49 Attenuated vs. Unattenuated Narrow Band Frequency Spectra, Russian River Bridge Replacement

I.3.23 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—Portland–Milwaukie Light Rail Project, Portland, OR

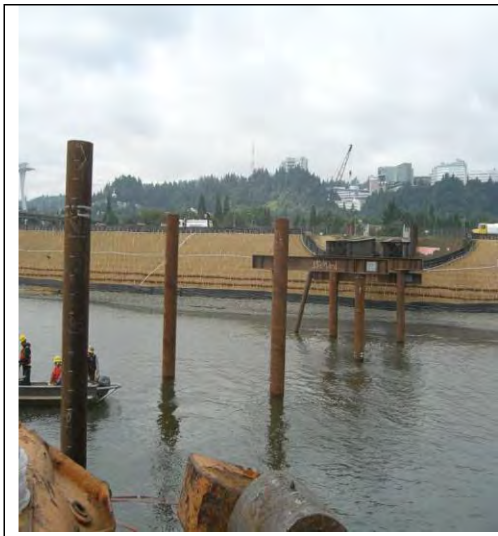


Figure I.3-50 Temporary Piles on the West Side of the Willamette River

Underwater sound levels were measured while ten 24-inch-diameter steel shell piles were installed during the construction of temporary work trestles in the Willamette River in Portland, Oregon in July and September 2011. A vibratory hammer was used to set the piles and a hydraulic impact hammer was used to drive the piles to final load-bearing depth. This project was subject to the conditions outlined in the Portland–Milwaukie Light Rail BO which restricted the number of hammer strikes in any given day to 800.

The purpose of the project is to construct a new transit bridge over the Willamette River in Portland, Oregon for the Portland–Milwaukie Light Rail Project. Two temporary work structures were built, one from the east bank and one from the west bank, to facilitate bridge construction.

Measurements on July 15, 2011, were made on the east side of the river when four 24-inch-diameter steel shell piles were installed with a hydraulic impact hammer for the temporary work trestle. Two measurement locations were used. The close location ranged from 33 feet to 49 feet from the piles, water depth was 12 feet, and the hydrophone was set at 8 feet deep. The far location was approximately 521 feet from the piles, water depth was 37 feet, and the hydrophone was set at 20 feet deep. On September 1, 2011, measurements were taken on the west side of the river when six 24-inch-diameter steel shell piles were installed, also using a hydraulic impact hammer, for the west side work trestle. Two different measurement locations were used. The near location ranged from 25 feet to 75 feet from the piles, and the far location was approximately 300 feet from the piles. At both locations, the water depth was 15 feet and the hydrophones were set at 7 feet deep.

Figure I.3-51 Bubble Ring Deployment

A two-stage, unconfined bubble curtain was used to attenuate the sound levels and was tested for its effectiveness during the pile driving. On July 15, 2011, when the bubble curtain was not in use, the hydrophones overloaded. The signal was clipped and did not fully measure the peak noise level. An approximate peak level was estimated for the signal that was clipped. Results in Table I.3-39 show the underwater sound levels measured for the four piles and the approximated peak levels for each pile driven. Because of the problem of overloading the hydrophones during the July 15 monitoring effort, the monitoring systems were modified for the September 1 monitoring effort to accommodate the higher anticipated pressure levels. There was no overloading of the systems; however, when the bubble curtain was turned on, some of the lower peak levels were not measured. The sound level meters were set to capture the higher levels, which did not allow them to measure a peak level below approximately 165 dB re: 1µPa. Table I.3-39 shows the levels measured for the six piles monitored. The bubble curtain provided an average of 8 to 17 dB of attenuation on July 15 and an average of 13 to 27 dB on September 1.

Table I.3-39 Average Levels Measured (in dB) and per Pile

July 15, 2011							
		Near Manned Location			**Distant Unmanned Location**		
			Sound Pressure Level in dB			**Sound Pressure Level in dB**	
Pile	**Bubble Ring**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**
Pile 1	Off	36 feet	200[1]	172	521 feet	182	157
	On		192	159		169	141
Pile 2	Off	49 feet	196[1]	172	505 feet	179	153
	On		186	161		173	146
Pile 3	On	33 feet	189	160	521 feet	158	132
Pile 4	Off	49 feet	199[1]	173	505 feet	178	150
	On		181	154		157	133
September 1, 2011							
	Near Manned Location				**Distant Unmanned Location**		
			Sound Pressure Level in dB			**Sound Pressure Level in dB**	
Pile	**Distance**		**Peak**	**SEL**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**
Pile 5	25 feet		207	180	320 feet	170	144
			194	161		164	137
Pile 6	35 feet		194	169	310 feet	<164	136
			166	133		<164	122
Pile 7	40 feet		171	136	300 feet	<164	122
Pile 8	50 feet		172	141	310 feet	<164	121
Pile 9	70 feet		170	142	300 feet	<164	122
Pile 10	80 feet		176	152	310 feet	<164	123

[1] Adjusted peak levels
[2] dB re 1μPa^2-sec

I.3.24 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Piles—Trinidad Pier Reconstruction, Humboldt County, CA

The purpose of this project is to reconstruct the Trinidad Pier located on Trinidad Bay in Humboldt County, California. Underwater sound monitoring was conducted to identify safety zones for marine mammals. Measurements were made on October 20, 2011, during the vibratory driving of two 24-inch-diameter, polyurea-coated steel pipe piles. An APE vibratory hammer was used to drive the piles. The vibratory hammer operated at 50% power for the first 1 minute of each pile drive. The maximum sound pressure levels were at the beginning of each drive; as the driving continued, the levels decreased and stayed more consistent for the remainder of the drive.

Measurements were made from a boat at different locations for each pile driven and at a fixed location of 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles. The measurements taken in the boat were at 840 meters (2,755 feet) from the first pile and 290 meters (950 feet) from the second pile. The depth at the boat monitoring locations was approximately 50 feet; the hydrophones at all locations were placed at a mid-water depth. Figure I.3-52 depicts sound pressure levels measured at the 10, 290, and 840 meter positions. Table I.3-41 summaries the measurement results.

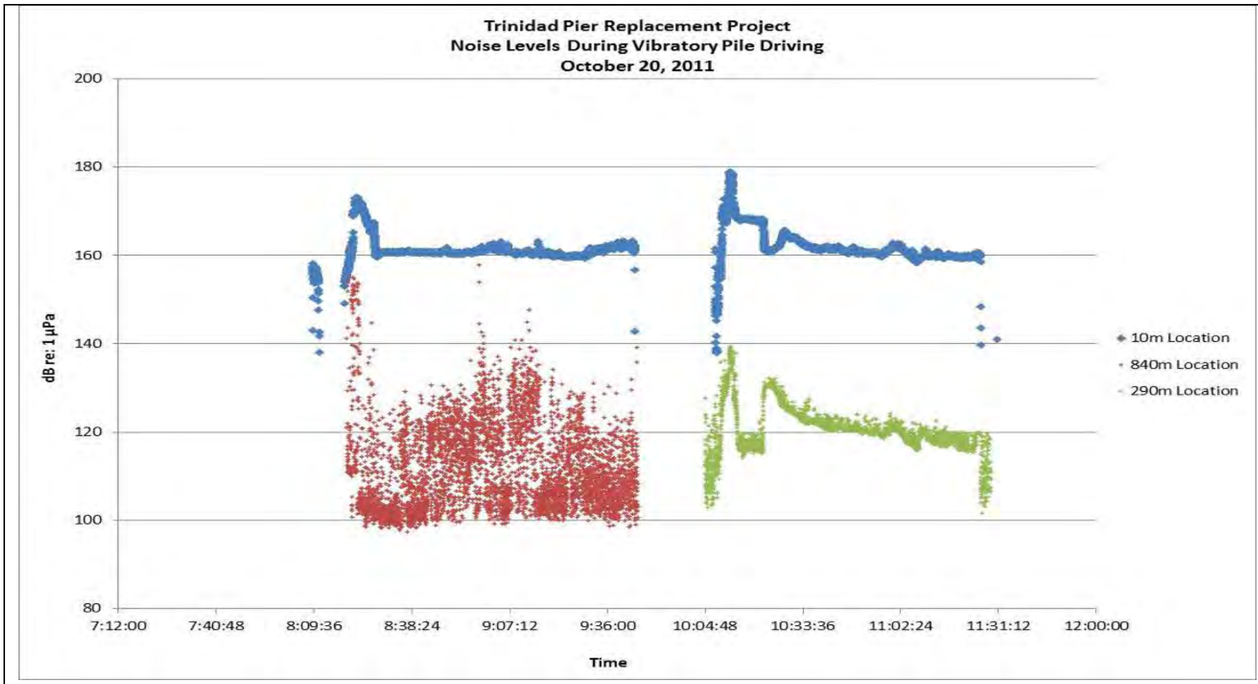


Figure I.3-52 Trinidad Pier Replacement Project Measured Noise Levels

Table I.3-40 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Vibratory Driving of 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles. - Trinidad Pier Reconstruction, Humboldt County, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)			
		Maximum Peak	Typical Peak	RMS Range	Typical RMS
1	Unattenuated –Vibratory Hammer	193	177	160-173	160
2	Unattenuated –Vibratory Hammer	201	183	158-178	160

I.3.25 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles—I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project, Eugene/Springfield, OR

The project area is centered on Interstate 5 (I-5) and the existing I-5 bridges over the Willamette River (mile post 192.7) and Patterson Slough (mile post 193.3). I-5 runs generally in a north-south direction in the Willamette River Bridge project area, with Eugene on the west side of the interstate and Springfield to the east. The I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project consisted of monitoring pile driving for the construction of the temporary work trestle. An APE 9.5 hydraulic impact hammer was used to install 24-inch-diameter steel shell piles. Most piles were driving inside a DNAP without the bubble ring active. The water was shallow and swift moving over exposed bedrock. The monitoring took place over a three-year period. RMS levels were not monitored.

2009

On September 3, 2009, eight 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 1 to 3 feet deep. Six of the piles driven were associated with the project's temporary western demolition platform, and the remaining two piles were for the temporary eastern work bridge. Underwater sound levels were measured at approximately 10 meters and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the piles. All eight piles had the bubbles turned off in the bubble curtains because the shallow water depth prevented the bottom bubble attenuator ring from getting deep enough. Two demolition platform piles were driven with the bubble attenuator lifted completely out of the water in order to determine noise levels in open water with no attenuation device present.

On September 4, 2009, two 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 2 feet deep, thus the bottom bubble ring in the bubble curtain was not submerged. Underwater sound levels were measured at 10 meters and 20 meters from the piles.

Table I.3-42 shows the maximum peak and maximum 1-second SEL levels reached during the pile driving activities on September 3 and September 4, 2009.

Table I.3-41 Summary Of Daily Maximum Sound Pressure Levels for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles - I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project, Eugene/Springfield, Oregon OR (September, 2009)

September 3, 2009					
		10-Meter (33-Foot) Location		**20-Meter (65-Foot) Location**	
		Sound Pressure Levels in dB		**Sound Pressure Levels in dB**	
Pile	**Conditions**	**Peak**	**SEL**	**Peak**	**SEL**
24 inches	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	194	167	181	155
September 4, 2009					
24 inches	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	199	173	179	156

2010

In 2010, eight temporary 24-inch-diameter steel shell piles associated with the temporary work bridge were monitored over a two-day period, October 11 and 12. The underwater sound was measured continuously throughout the duration of the drive. There were two measurement sites for all piles driven; the first site was approximately 10 to 16 meters (33 to 52.5 feet) from the piles, and the second site was 20 to 26 meters (65 to 85 feet) from the piles.

On October 11, four 24-inch steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 1 foot deep using an APE 9.5 hydraulic impact hammer. Underwater sound levels were measured at approximately 10 to 16 meters and 20 to 26 meters from the piles (see Table I.3-43 for actual distances). All piles driven this day had the bubbles turned off in the bubble curtains because the shallow water depth prevented the bottom bubble attenuator ring from getting deep enough.

On October 12, four 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 1 foot deep using an APE 9.5 hydraulic impact hammer. Underwater sound levels were measured at approximately 10 to 16 meters and 20 to 26 meters from the piles (see Table I.3-43 for actual distances). Two of the piles were driven in the attenuation device with the bubbles turned off in the bubble curtains because the shallow water depth prevented the bottom bubble attenuator ring from getting deep enough. Two of the piles were driven outside the attenuation device because of the close proximity of the temporary I-5 Bridge piers. The water depth where the hydrophones were located was approximately 1 foot deep, and there was a strong current.

Table I.3-43 shows the maximum peak and maximum 1-second SEL levels reached during the pile driving activities on October 11 and 12, 2010.

Table I.3-42 Summary of Daily Maximum Sound Pressure Levels for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles - I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project, Eugene/Springfield, Oregon OR (October 2010)

October 11, 2010							
		10 meter Location			**20 meter Location**		
			Sound Pressure Levels in dB			**Sound Pressure Levels in dB**	
Pile ID	**Condition**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**
Pile 1	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	10 meters	196	170	20 meters	ND	ND
Pile 2	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	12 meters	195	167	22 meters	185	156
Pile 3	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	14 meters	188	163	24 meters	175	153
Pile 4	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	16 meters	188	160	26 meters	176	154
October 12, 2010							
Pile 1	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	10 meters	191	165	20 meters	182	157
Pile 2	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	12 meters	195	167	22 meters	180	158
Pile 3	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	14 meters	189	165	24 meters	178	157
Pile 4	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	16 meters	186	161	26 meters	181	157

ND = No Data
10 meters = 33 feet; 20 meters = 65 feet; 26 meters = 85 feet

2011

In 2011, there were eleven 24-inch-diamater steel piles monitored on two separate days, April 13 and April 20. There were two measurement sites, both on the east (upstream) side of the temporary work bridge north of the pile driving. The first site was as close as was feasible (8 to 17 meters [26 to 56 feet]) from the piles measured each day, and the second site was at a fixed position on the trestle 15 to 35 meters (49 to 115 feet) from the piles. At the measurement sites, the water was approximately 1 meter (3.3 feet) deep and in the middle of a large riffle. The ambient noise level was high due to the water rushing past the hydrophones, masking the pile driving noise.

On April 13, eight 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 1 meter deep. The piles driven were associated with the temporary work bridge that was being extended to underneath the existing I-5 detour bridge. Underwater sound levels were measured at approximately 10 to 17 meters (33 to 56 feet) and 16 to 35 meters (52.5 to 115 feet) from the piles (see Table I.3-44 for actual distances). The piles were installed within a partially confined bubble curtain. The bubbles were turned off and on to test the efficiency of the system. Due to the design of the bubble curtain, there was less than 1 dB of reduction attributed to its use. The design of the attenuation device was such that the piles were not completely surrounded by the bubble flux and the bubble rings were not at the bottom of the water table; rather they were fixed 1 to 2 feet from the bottom of the casing.

On April 20, three 24-inch-diameter steel pipe piles were installed in water approximately 1 meter deep. The underwater sound levels were measured at approximately 8 to 12 meters (26 to 39 feet) and 15 to 30 meters (49 to 100 feet) from the piles (see Table I-3.44 for actual distances). The piles were driven in the attenuation device. The bubbles were turned off and on to test the efficiency of the system. The water depth where the hydrophones were located was approximately 1 meter deep with a strong current. Again, due to the design of the bubble curtain, there was less than 1 dB of reduction attributed to its use.

Table I-3.44 shows the maximum peak and maximum one second SEL levels reached during the pile driving activities on April 13 and April 20, 2011.

Table I.3-43 Summary of Daily Maximum Sound Pressure Levels for Driving 24-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles - I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project, Eugene/Springfield, Oregon OR (April 2011)

April 13, 2011							
		10-Meter (33-Foot) Location			**20-Meter (65-Foot) Location**		
			Sound Pressure Levels in dB			**Sound Pressure Levels in dB**	
Pile	**Condition**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**	**Distance**	**Peak**	**SEL**
Pile 1	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	10 meters	191	166	35 meters	170	--
Pile 2	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	11 meters	189	164	34 meters	169	146
Pile 3	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	13 meters	185	160	32 meters	168	145
Pile 4	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	17 meters	185	162	30 meters	173	150
Pile 5	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	10 meters	186	166	25 meters	179	152
Pile 6	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	11 meters	187	165	24 meters	174	149
Pile 7	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	13 meters	194	169	20 meters	184	159
Pile 8	Attenuated-Hydraulic Impact Hammer	16 meters	187	161	16 meters	188	162
April 20, 2011							
Pile 1	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	9 meters	200	174	30 meters	168	145
Pile 3	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	8 meters	207	178	15 meters	180	154
Pile 4	Attenuated- Hydraulic Impact Hammer	12 meters	198	174	17 meters	180	156

Figure I.3-53 provides a representative signal analyses.

I-5 Willamette River Bridge Replacement Project April 13, 2011 Pile 1 - 10 meters

Figure a. Waveform / **Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra**

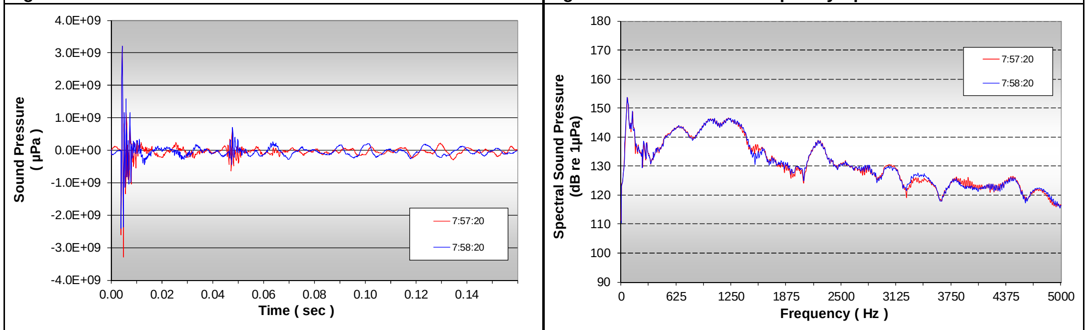


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

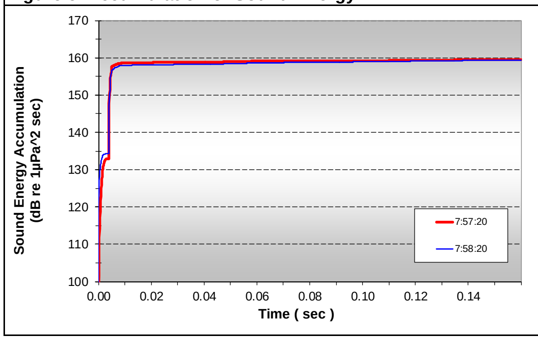


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

Pile 1	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
7:57:20	190	168	160
7:58:20	190	168	159

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak		SEL
Reported Average	186		162
Reported maximum	191		166

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.3-53 Typical Signal Analyses for Pile Strike, Willamette River Bridge Project

Because of the driving time for each pile, the test of the attenuating system as proposed could not be implemented. Typically, it takes about 1 minute for a bubble ring to become fully effective and approximately 2 minutes to deactivate it. The actual driving time for most of the piles installed was less than 3 minutes. When driving most of the piles, the air was not turned on until after 20 to 30 strikes. The attenuation system was not very effective in reducing the underwater sound; it was difficult to see a difference between the bubble ring on and off.

The attenuation system in itself consisted of two means to reduce the sound levels (See Figure I.3-54). First, a double wall isolation vessel was designed which would have the ability to reduce the underwater sound pressure through its construction; and secondly, there was a tube at each end that had holes drilled in it where air was pumped through to produce a bubble flux which would also reduce the levels further. However, there were two basic flaws in the design of the system; first the bubble rings did not fully enclose the piles being driven; and second, the bubble ring was attached to the casing approximately 1.5 feet from the bottom of the casing, which kept the bubble ring from being at the ground line of the channel. To be effective, the pile needs to be fully incased in a bubble flux from the top of the water to the mud/rock bottom of the water channel.

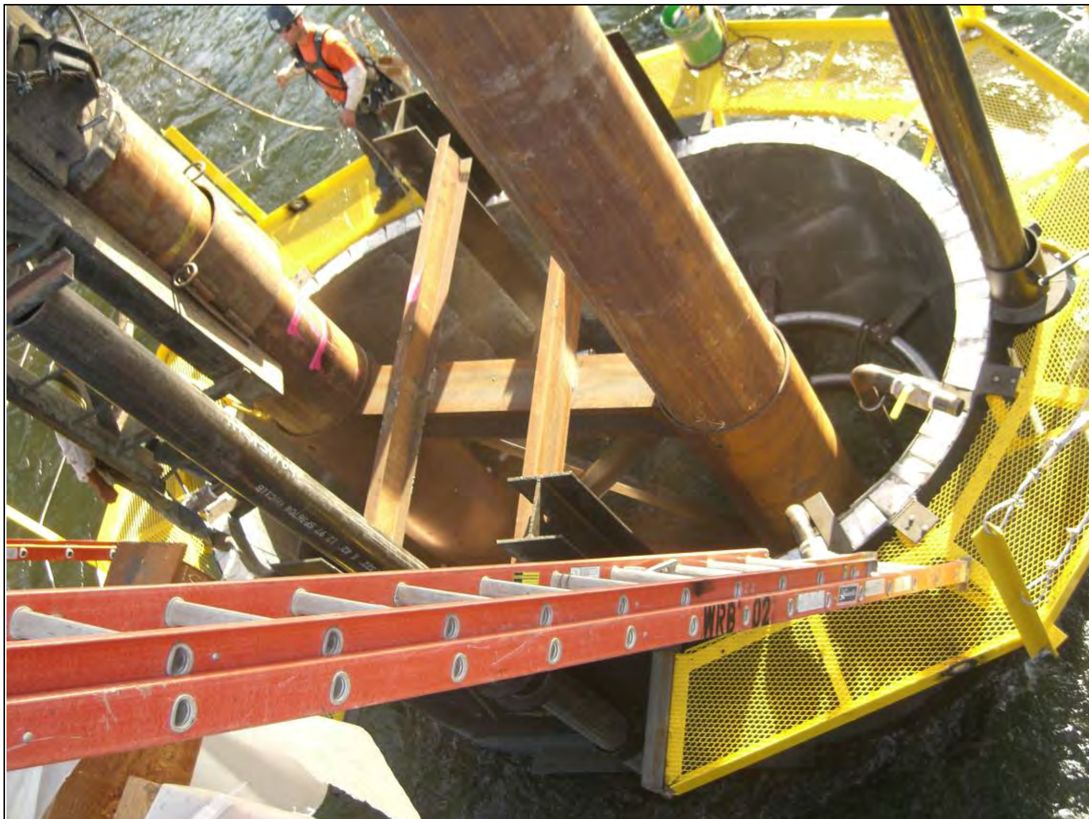


Figure I.3-54 Attenuation System for the I-5 Willamette River Bridge Project, Eugene/Springfield, OR

I.3.26 87-Inch and 48-Inch-Diameter Steel Shell Piles Driven on Land—Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Caltrans replaced the existing Highway 101 bridges over the Mad River (between Arcata and McKinleyville, California) to correct scour and seismic deficiencies. As part of the project, the contractor drove a total of thirteen 87-inch- (2.2 meter-) diameter steel shell piles (four piles at Piers 2 and 3; and five were driven at Pier 4) to support the new bridge structures (See Figure I.3-55). An additional four 48-inch- (1.2 meter-) diameter anchor piles were also driven at Pier 2 as part of the pile testing process.
As part of the permitting conditions, underwater sound generated from driving the piles was monitored consistent with the revised Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program Work Plan (June 16, 2008) and the Coastal Development Permit. Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted as compliance monitoring (to document compliance with underwater noise thresholds) and to support a caged fish study to evaluate the effects of pile driving sound on fish (conducted during the driving of piles at Pier 3 only).

The project also includes the demolition of the existing bridges and removal of the existing piers. The project took a little over 4 years to complete with pile driving being conducted during the summers of 2009 and 2011.

The piles were driven adjacent to the river (not in water) within dewatered cofferdams. None of the piles directly connected with the water, so all the acoustic energy was from groundborne vibration releasing into the water column. The piles were driven n two 80-foot sections. After the first section of pile was installed, the second section was welded on and then driven to the final tip elevation.

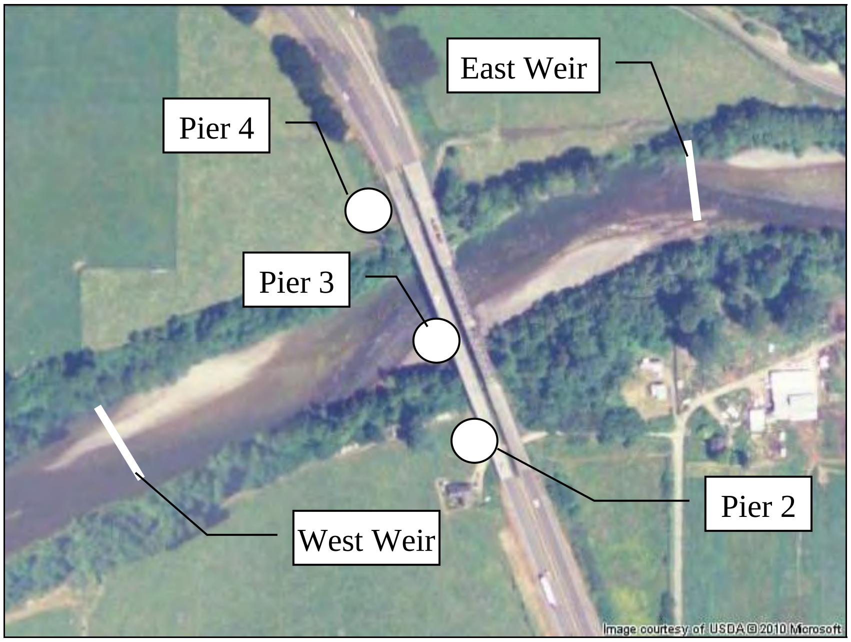


Figure I.3-55 Mad River Bridge Project Location

Based on preliminary evaluation of pile driving activities using monitoring data from similar sites and the standard NMFS approach for sound attenuation, it was estimated that the underwater sound generated by a full day of pile driving would exceed the interim cumulative SEL threshold of 187 dB out to approximately 150 meters (490 feet) from the piles. To prevent listed salmon and steelhead from being exposed to cumulative sound above the threshold, the permits required that weirs be installed and fish be excluded from this fish exclusion zone (FEZ) during the summer months (when piles were driven for Pier 3 and Pier 4). Due to river conditions, the actual weirs were built approximately 180 meters (590 feet) downriver and approximately 240 meters (790 feet) upriver from the piles driven[a].

Pier 2 piles were driven in March and April 2009 before the FEZ was installed. Pile driving for Pier 2 was approximately 60 meters (200 feet) from the Mad River channel on the south bank. Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted at a minimum of two locations during the pile driving at Pier 2. The two primary monitoring positions were on the north side and along the south shore of the river in the river reach adjacent to the Pier 2 site (see Figure I.3-56).

[a] Distances vary slightly depending on which pile was driven

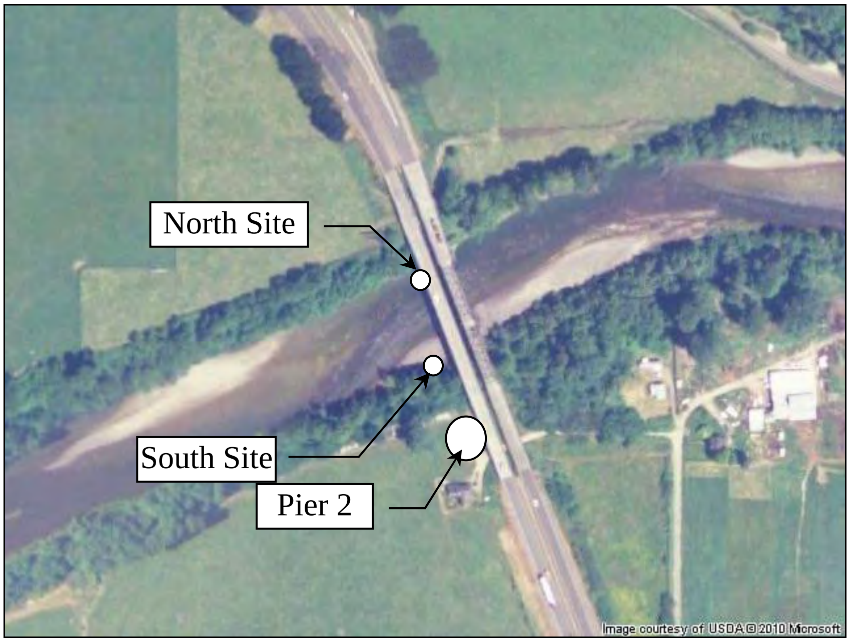


Figure I.3-56 Pier 2 Anchor Pile Hydrophone Locations

Pier 3 was located in the channel but approximately 10 meters (33 feet) from the water. Three of the four piles at Pier 3 were driven between July 1 and July 14, 2009. The site where the Pier 3 piles were driven was behind a water bladder in dewatered cofferdams on a gravel bed constructed for this purpose (Figure I.3-57). For the pile driving at Pier 3, there were seven fixed monitoring positions and one moving monitoring position (Figure I.3-58). These locations were monitored to provide compliance data (one upriver and one down river position at the fish exclusion weirs), and to provide data for the caged fish study that was conducted during the driving of Pier 3 piles (5 locations). The distances for the fixed positions ranged from 35 meters (115 feet; the closest caged fish location) to 325 meters (1,065 feet; the caged fish control station). Measurements for compliance monitoring were collected at the two weir locations (180 meters downriver and approximately 240 meters upriver from the piles driven). Measurements for the caged fish studies included placement of hydrophones in one of two paired cages (one cage with hydrophone and one cage containing fish) located at distances of 35, 50, 75, 100[b], 150 and 325 meters from the Pier 3 piles.

[b] The 100-meter (330-foot) location was replaced with the 35-meter (115-foot) location after the first pile section was driven to provide a closer location for monitoring

Figure I.3-57 Pier 3 Location and Water Bladder

Four of the five piles for Pier 4 were driven between July 21 and August 3, 2009 and were driven in cofferdams located approximately 30 meters (100 feet) from the water, on the north bank (Figure I.3-58). At Pier 4 there were three fixed positions ranging in distance from about 35 meters (115 feet) to approximately 240 meters (780 feet) from the piles. The two more distant positions (at the upriver and downriver weirs) were used to measure underwater sound for compliance with permits (Figure I.3-58).

Monitoring of underwater sound during the caged fish study was collected to provide data on the exposure of fish to underwater sound, and to provide data to evaluate if injury to fish occurred during pile driving. The monitoring of four pile driving events (on July 1, 6, 8, and 10, 2009) was successful. The findings of the caged fish study are reported separately in the Caged Fish Study report[17].

For the caged fish studies during the driving of the Pier 3 piles, hydrophones were mounted in cages identical to cages that held fish during the experiments. Each cage with hydrophone was mounted immediately adjacent to the cages containing fish.

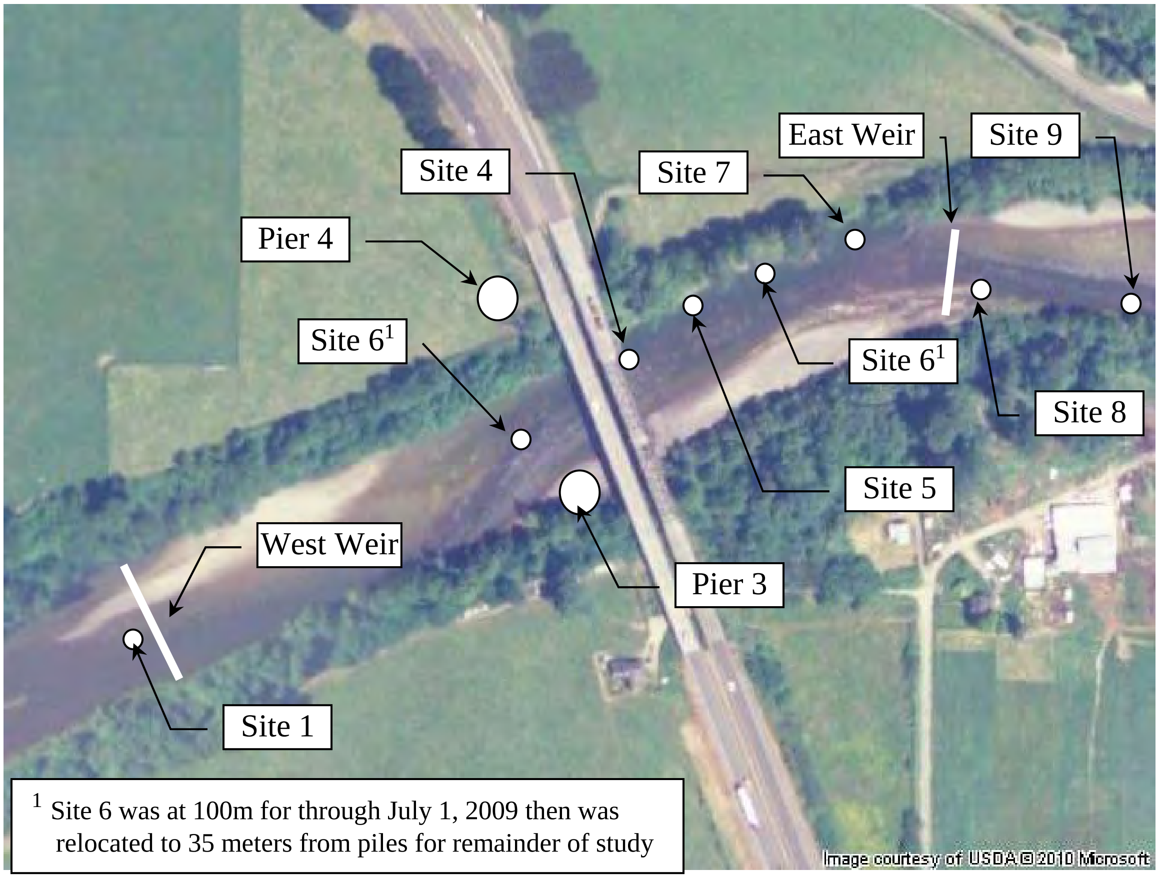


Figure I.3-58 Pier 3 and 4 Production Piles Hydrophone Locations

Four 48-inch temporary test anchor piles were installed at Pier 2 between March 4, 2009, and March 12, 2009. A Pileco D-100-13 diesel impact hammer was used to install the first sections of all four of the anchor piles. A Pileco D-225 diesel impact hammer was used to install the second sections of the Anchor piles. The data are summarized in Table I.3-45.

Table I.3-44 Summary of Measured Sound Pressure Levels for Impact Driving for 1.2-Meter (48-Inch) Anchor Piles at Pier 2 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1μPa		Single-strike SELs dB re: $1\mu Pa^2$ - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section	84m	--	--	146	159
	140m	168	179	147	160
2nd Section	75m	177	184	154	160
	125m	174	176	149	153

The production piles were driven over two construction seasons beginning in 2009 and ending in 2011 Tables I.3-46 through I-3.48 show the results of monitoring during the 2009 construction season. Tables I.3-47a through I.3-47c show the results of the measurements in the 2011 construction season.

Table I.3-45a Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 2 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1μPa		Single-strike SELs dB re: 1μPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section	North - 115m	161	178	138	153
	South - 65m	176	188	147	166
	Upstream - 130m	169	176	141	153
2nd Section	North - 115m	174	177	151	154
	South - 65m	178	182	153	156
	Downstream - 120m	168	183	146	156

Table I.3-45b Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 3 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1μPa		Single-Strike SELs dB re: 1μPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section	Site 1 - 180m	160	164	138	142
	Site 4 - 50m	177	183	153	158
	Site 5 - 75m	161	164	137	140
	Site 6 - 100m	163	165	140	143
	Site 7 - 150m	166	171	143	148
	Site 8 - 240 m	156	161	133	136
	Site 9 - 325m	152	156	131	134
2nd Section	Site 1(180m)	161	164	140	144
	Site 4 (50m)	181	188	155	161
	Site 5 (75m)	165	169	140	144
	Site 6 (35m)	185	194	159	166
	Site 7 (150m)	166	172	142	148
	Site 8 (240m)	159	162	136	141
	Site 9 (325m)	150	154	129	133

Table I.3-45c Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 4 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1μPa		Single-Strike SELs dB re: 1μPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section pile	East (240m)	147	154	125	131
	West (180m)	147	155	127	134
	Site 5 (35m)	179	188	155	164
2nd Section of pile	East (240m)	154	161	132	139
	West (180m)	163	166	142	145
	Site 5 (35m)	185	194	160	167

Table I.3-46a Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 2 in 2011 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1µPa		Single-Strike SELs dB re: 1µPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section pile	North (115m)	162	167	140	146
	South (66m)	161	166	137	143
2nd Section of pile	North (115m)	169	180	152	158
	South (66m)	174	178	149	154

Table I.3-46b Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 3 in 2011 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1µPa		Single-Strike SELs dB re: 1µPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section pile	Cross (27m)	187	189	159	163
	Upstream (50m)	180	185	155	161
	Downstream (90m)	153	163	132	137
2nd Section of pile	Cross (27m)	189	186	160	163
	Upstream (50m)	--	--	--	--
	Downstream (90m	184	180	153	158

Table I.3-46c Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 4 in 2011 - Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

Pile	Location	Peak dB re: 1µPa		Single-Strike SELs dB re: 1µPa^2 - sec	
		Typical	Maximum	Typical	Maximum
1st Section pile	Cross (20m)	180	180	155	158
	Upstream (30m)	170	170	151	154
	Downstream (30m)	--	--	--	--
2nd Section of pile	Cross (20m)	188	192	162	167
	Upstream (30m)	180	194	158	170
	Downstream (30m)	181	192	156	165

Construction had to be halted on numerous days due to the cumulative SEL reaching the 187 dB threshold at Piers 3 and 4. For the completion of the pile driving, a FEZ, similar to the one used during the caged fish study, was set up. Measurements on July 1, 2011 were made at both ends of the FEZ and at 27 meters (88 feet). Table I.3-47d summarizes the measured levels and the distances to the FEZ.

Table I.3-46d Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Impact Driving for 2.2-Meter (87-Inch) Production Piles at Pier 3 and Pier 4 with the Fish Exclusion Zone in 2011- Mad River Bridge Project, McKinleyville, CA

		Peak		Single-Strike SELs	
		dB re: 1μPa		dB re: 1μPa^2 - sec	
Pile	**Location**	**Typical**	**Maximum**	**Typical**	**Maximum**
2nd Section of pile Pier 3	Cross (27m)	186	189	161	163
	Upstream (240m)	160	165	138	142
	Downstream (180m)	164	166	141	143
2nd Section of pile Pier 4	Cross (27m)	185	188	159	163
	Upstream (240m)	166	170	143	147
	Downstream (180m)	162	166	139	143

I.3.27 24-Inch Steel Pipe Piles in 1.5 to 3 Meters of Water—Schuyler Heim Bridge, Long Beach, CA

The purpose of this project was to replace the existing Schuyler Heim Bridge in the Cerritos Channel in Long Beach, California (Figure I.3-59). Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted during the installation of twenty 24-inch steel shell piles and two 12-foot steel shell piles driven at the project site. A bubble curtain was used during the installation of all piles.

The first portion of the project consisted of constructing a temporary trestle by driving 24-inch steel shell piles using a D-36 diesel impact hammer. Measurements for this portion of the project were conducted on three days: December 8 and 13, 2011, and January 18, 2012. The second portion of the project consisted of driving 12-foot steel shell piles using a D-100 diesel impact hammer, and measurements were conducted on two days: July 6 and July 10, 2012.

Figure I.3-59 Schuyler Heim Bridge

On December 8, 2011, six piles were driven. Measurements were taken at one fixed location and one floating location. The fixed location for the first pile driven (Pile 2) was not established due to limited time allowed for set-up. For the driving of the remaining five piles, the fixed measurement location was positioned east of the bridge and approximately 30 meters (100 feet) from the pile driving events. The floating measurement was positioned east of the bridge for three of the piles, at distances ranging from 265 to 500 meters (870 to 1,640 feet) from the impact events, and west of the bridge for the other three piles, at distances ranging from 193 to 458 meters (630 to 1,500 feet) from the impact events. All hydrophones were placed at mid-water depth, which was approximately 3 meters (10 feet) deep. Peak and RMS levels were measured and are summarized in Tables I.3-47a and I.3-47b, respectively.

Table I.3-47a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for December 8, 2011

Pile	Position	Average Peak (dB)	Minimum Peak (dB)	Maximum Peak (dB)
Pile 1	30m east	191	182	195
	193m east	177	170	181
Pile 2	30m east	No Data Available		
	356m east	166	156	174
	458m east	161	154	175
Pile 3	30m east	192	182	198
	277m east	172	166	178
Pile 4	30m east	192	183	196
	500m west	160	153	176
Pile 5	30m east	191	183	197
	390m west	163	158	176
Pile 6	30m east	191	182	196
	265m west	165	156	174

Table I.3-47b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for December 8, 2011

Pile	Position	Average RMS (dB)	Minimum RMS (dB)	Maximum RMS (dB)
Pile 1	30m east	176	164	179
	193m east	163	146	167
Pile 2	30m east	No Data Available		
	356m east	152	150	153
	458m east	147	140	151
Pile 3	30m east	176	166	178
	277m east	156	144	158
Pile 4	30m east	175	171	177
	500m west	147	140	150
Pile 5	30m east	176	171	178
	390m west	149	141	152
Pile 6	30m east	175	168	178
	265m west	152	141	154

Six additional piles were driven on December 13, 2011. The near measurement site was located on the trestle 11 to 16 meters (36 to 52.5 feet) from the piles being driven. The distant measurement location ranged from 150 to 460 meters (49 to 1,500 feet) from the pile driving event. All near measurements were taken east of the bridge. Distant measurements taken at piles 4 and 5 were west of the bridge; measurements for the other four piles were east of the bridge. The water depth ranged from 1.5 meters (5 feet) at low tide to 3 meters (10 feet) at high tide. The peak and RMS level measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-48a and I.3-48b, respectively.

Table I.3-48a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for December 13, 2011

Pile	Position	Average Peak (dB)	Minimum Peak (dB)	Maximum Peak (dB)
Pile 1	11m east	197	190	201
	250m east	174[a]	170[a]	179[a]
Pile 2	12m east	196	190	201
	250m east	172[a]	170[a]	176[a]
Pile 3	13m east	196	190	200
	190m east	184[a]	180[a]	188[a]
Pile 4	14m east	196	190	200
	220m west	166[a]	161[a]	170[a]
Pile 5	15m east	196	190	200
	150m west	166[a]	161[a]	172[a]
Pile 6	16m east	193	190	196
	460m east	169[a]	161[a]	176[a]

[a] Levels are an average of deep and shallow measurements.

Table I.3-48b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for December 13, 2011

Pile	Position	Average RMS (dB)	Minimum RMS (dB)	Maximum RMS (dB)
Pile 1	11m east	182	175	185
	250m east	158[a]	150[a]	161[a]
Pile 2	12m east	181	172	187
	250m east	157[a]	155[a]	161[a]
Pile 3	13m east	181	178	184
	190m east	168[a]	161[a]	171[a]
Pile 4	14m east	181	177	183
	220m west	154[a]	151[a]	156[a]
Pile 5	15m east	180	172	183
	150m west	153[a]	147[a]	155[a]
Pile 6	16m east	178	171	181
	460m east	154[a]	143[a]	158[a]

[a] Levels are an average of deep and shallow measurements.

On January 18, 2012, eight piles were driven—two piles on the north trestle and six on the south trestle. Piles were driven in deeper water (approximately 12 meters [39 feet] deep) than during the previous measurements, resulting in higher average levels. For each pile measured there were two measurement locations: one fixed (at either the north or south trestle) and one at a floating vessel. On the floating vessel, there were two measurement depths: the deep hydrophone was positioned approximately 1 meter from the bottom of the channel (about 11 meters [36 feet]), and the shallow hydrophone was positioned at mid-channel depth (about 6 meters [20 feet]).

For the two piles driven from the north trestle, measurements were taken east of the bridge. The fixed measurement location was 125 meters (410 feet) from the pile driving; the floating measurement location was approximately 300 to 470 meters (1,000 to 1,540 feet) from the pile driving.

For the three piles driven from the south trestle, measurements were taken from east of the bridge at distances ranging from 12.5 to 16 meters (41 to 52.5 feet) for the fixed location and from 295 to 465 meters (970 to 1,525 feet) for the floating location.

For the remaining three piles, measurements were taken from west of the bridge at distances ranging from 13.5 to 15 meters (44 to 49 feet) for the fixed location and from 275 to 460 meters (900 to 1,500 feet) for the floating location. Tables I.3-49a and I.3-49b provide a summary of the January 18, 2012 peak and RMS level measurement results, respectively.

Table I.3-49a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for January 18, 2012

Pile	Position (meters)	Depth	Average Peak (dB)	Minimum Peak (dB)	Maximum Peak (dB)
North Trestle Pile 1	125m east	Shallow	192	191	194
	300m east	Shallow	188	184	190
		Deep	183	180	186
North Trestle Pile 2	125m east	Shallow	188	185	189
	470m east	Shallow	168	163	182
		Deep	172	162	175
South Trestle Pile 1	12.5m east	Shallow	206	203	207
	295m east	Shallow	177	171	179
		Deep	175	172	178
South Trestle Pile 2	13m east	Shallow	205	203	207
	360m east	Shallow	175	173	177
		Deep	175	172	177
South Trestle Pile 3	13.5m west	Shallow	205	200	207
	275m west	Shallow	169	163	171
		Deep	168	164	170
South Trestle Pile 4	14m west	Shallow	204	200	207
	275m west	Shallow	167	163	179
		Deep	168	163	172
South Trestle Pile 5	15m west	Shallow	205	200	207
	460m west	Shallow	169	163	175
		Deep	169	167	174
South Trestle Pile 6	16m east	Shallow	206	202	207
	465m east	Shallow	168	163	171
		Deep	166	163	170

Table I.3-49b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for January 18, 2012

Pile	Position (meters)	Depth	Average RMS (dB)	Minimum RMS (dB)	Maximum RMS (dB)
North Trestle Pile 1	125m east	Shallow	171.0	166.8	173.9
	300m east	Shallow	168.9	164.7	171.4
		Deep	165.6	162.9	167.2
North Trestle Pile 2	125m east	Shallow	170.1	167.7	172.6
	470m east	Shallow	153.2	149.2	163.6
		Deep	157.8	151.1	159.5
South Trestle Pile 1	12.5m east	Shallow	187.9	185.9	189.4
	295m east	Shallow	162.7	061.7	164.1
		Deep	161.4	159.2	163.4
South Trestle Pile 2	13m east	Shallow	187.2	185.7	189.1
	360m east	Shallow	160.9	159.4	162.5
		Deep	159.2	148.9	161.3
South Trestle Pile 3	13.5m west	Shallow	187.2	181.6	189.6
	275m west	Shallow	155.6	154.4	156.8
		Deep	153.9	151.9	156.4
South Trestle Pile 4	14m west	Shallow	186.2	182.1	188.1
	275m west	Shallow	153.9	123.8	167.4
		Deep	154.5	149.7	156.9
South Trestle Pile 5	15m west	Shallow	185.1	182.0	186.9
	460m west	Shallow	155.0	143.9	156.6
		Deep	154.5	152.2	156.4
South Trestle Pile 6	16m east	Shallow	186.0	181.6	187.7
	465m east	Shallow	154.9	152.9	157.5
		Deep	153.7	150.9	156.4

On July 6th, 2012, one pile was driven. Measurements were made at three fixed locations and one floating position. At all the positions, hydrophones were placed at a mid-water depth. One fixed location was located on the trestle, 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile. The water depth was approximately 48 feet and the hydrophone was placed at 24 feet. A second system was placed 30 meters (100 feet) from the pile where the water depth was 50 feet, and the hydrophone was placed at 25 feet. The third system was approximately 430 meters (1,400 feet) east of the pile near the Cerritos Marina, and this position was partially shielded by the existing bridge structure. The water depth was 45 feet, and the hydrophone was placed at 23 feet. The floating position was approximately 500 meters (1,640 feet) west of the pile in the middle of the channel, the water depth was 58 feet, and the hydrophone was placed at approximately 29 feet. Pile driving began at ±16:35 with a series of dry blows or dead blows; the actual driving began at 16:54:24. There were 20 dead blows, and the total strike count was 1,640 blows. Tables I.3-50a, I.3-50b and I.3-50c provide a summary of all results taken on July 6, 2012.

Table I.3-50a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for July 6, 2012

Pile	Position	Average Peak (dB)	Minimum Peak (dB)	Maximum Peak (dB)
Pile 1	10 meters (33 feet)	193	184	198
	30 meters (100 feet)	189	181	191
	430 meters (1,400 feet)	162	158	175
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	167	159	174

Table I.3-50b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for July 6, 2012

Pile	Position	Average RMS (dB)	Minimum RMS (dB)	Maximum RMS (dB)
Pile 1	10 meters (33 feet)	175	137	182
	30 meters (100 feet)	170	135	176
	430 meters (1,400 feet)	134	113	148
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	152	126	159

Table I.3-50c Summary of the Single Strike SEL Measurement Results for July 6, 2012

Pile	Position	Average SEL (dB)	Minimum SEL (dB)	Maximum SEL (dB)
Pile 1	10 meters (33 feet)	162	133	171
	30 meters (100 feet)	No Data Available		
	430 meters (1,400 feet)	No Data Available		
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	No Data Available		

On July 10th, 2012, one pile was driven. Measurements were made at three fixed locations and one floating position. At all the positions hydrophones were placed at a mid-water depth. One fixed location was located on the trestle, 11 meters (36 feet) from the pile. The water depth was approximately 48 feet and the hydrophone was placed at 24-feet. A second system was placed 30 meters (100 feet) from the pile where the water depth was 46 feet and the hydrophone was placed at 23 feet. The third system was approximately 312 meters (1,023 feet) east of the pile near the Cerritos Marina this position was partially shielded by the existing bridge structure. The water depth was 50 feet and the hydrophone was placed at 25 feet. The floating position was approximately 500 meters (1,640 feet) west of the pile in the middle of the channel, the water depth was 30 feet, and the hydrophone was placed at approximately 15 feet. Pile driving began at ±16:35 with a series of dry blows or dead blows the actual driving began at 16:54:24. There were 8 dead blows and the pile was struck 283 blows prior to stopping. Tables I.3-51a, I.3-51b, and I.3-51c provide a summary of all results taken on July 10, 2012.

Table I.3-51a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for July 10, 2012

Pile	Position	Average Peak (dB)	Minimum Peak (dB)	Maximum Peak (dB)
Pile 1	11 meters (36 feet)	197	186	199
	30 meters (100 feet)	186	176	190
	312 meters (1,023 feet)	160	158	173
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	175	172	178

Table I.3-51b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for July 10, 2012

Pile	Position	Average RMS (dB)	Minimum RMS (dB)	Maximum RMS (dB)
Pile 1	11 meters (36 feet)	183	142	186
	30 meters (100 feet)	174	132	178
	312 meters (1,023 feet)	133	115	141
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	161	126	164

Table I.3-51c Summary of the Single Strike SEL Measurement Results for July 10, 2012

Pile	Position	Average SEL (dB)	Minimum SEL (dB)	Maximum SEL (dB)
Pile 1	11 meters (36 feet)	169	140	176
	30 meters (100 feet)	No Data Available		
	312 meters (1,023 feet)	No Data Available		
	500 meters (1,640 feet)	No Data Available		

I.3.28 24- and 72-Inch Steel Shell Piles—Northern Rail Extension, near Salcha, AK

As part of Phase I construction, seven 24-inch steel shell piles, four 72-inch steel shell piles, and nine sheet piles were driven for the Northern Rail extension project near Salcha, Alaska (Figure I.3-60). A bubble ring was used during the installation of the 72-inch piles. During pile driving, a bubble on/off test was performed to test the effectiveness of the bubble ring. These piles were part of the new bridge and temporary trestle construction. Piles were installed using both impact and vibratory hammers. A D-46 diesel impact hammer was used for the 24-inch piles, and a D180 diesel impact hammer was used for the 72-inch piles. An APE 200 vibratory hammer was used to drive the sheet piles and start the 24-inch piles.

For the purpose of the project, only peak sound pressure levels and SELs were reported for the 24-inch piles. Peak sound pressure levels, RMS, and single strike SELs were reported for the 72-inch piles. Testing and data measurement took place on six days: July 28, July 30, July 31, and August 1, 2012; and February 11 and February 13, 2013. Monitoring conducted in February was performed in winter conditions, so monitoring locations were limited.

Figure I.3-60 Driving of 24-inch Steel Shell Pile near Salcha, Alaska

On July 28, 2012, impact pile driving was performed on two piles. Underwater noise measurements were taken at two locations for each pile: at 10 and 35 meters (33 feet and 115 feet) for the first pile, and at 15 and 40 meters (49 and 130 feet) for the second pile. The total driving time was 47 minutes and 29 seconds for the first pile and 1 minute and 22 seconds for the second pile. The total strike count for both piles was approximately 1,963. The peak and SEL measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-52a and I.3-52b, respectively.

Table I.3-52a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for July 28, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	Peak (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Impact	47:29	10/33	202	197	207
			35/115	181	178	188
Pile 2	Impact	01:22	15/50	195	191	198
			40/130	176	173	178

Table I.3-52b Summary of the SEL Measurement Results for July 28, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	SEL (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Impact	47:29	10/33	171	151	176
			35/115	154	144	171
Pile 2	Impact	01:22	15/50	166	157	169
			40/130	147	140	149

On July 30, 2012, five sheet piles were driven using a vibratory hammer. Four additional sheet piles were vibrated the morning of July 31, 2012. Results for these sheet piles can be found in Section I.6.3.

In the afternoon of July 31, 2012, two 24-inch steel shell piles were installed adjacent to the piles for the temporary trestle. The piles were first vibrated and then driven with the D-46 diesel impact hammer. For the first pile, measurement locations were at 10 and 40 meters (33 and 130 feet) from the pile, the hydrophones were positioned at a depth of approximately 0.6 meter (2 feet). The total time duration for the vibratory driving was approximately 18 minutes and 51 seconds, with numerous starts and stops. The impact pile driving took approximately 12 minutes and 11 seconds. The strike count for the first pile was about 493. Measurements for the second pile were taken at distances of 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) at a depth of approximately 0.6 meter. The total time duration for the vibratory driving was 11 minutes and 33 seconds, with numerous starts and stops. The impact pile driving took approximately 13 minutes and 44 seconds. The strike count for the second pile was 612. The peak and SEL measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-53a and I.3-53b, respectively.

Table I.3-53a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for July 31, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	Peak (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Vibratory	18:51	10/33	172	161	184
			40/130	--[a]	--[a]	--[a]
	Impact	12:11	10/33	200	194	207
			40/130	170	169	176
Pile 2	Vibratory	11:33	10/33	171	163	179
			20/65	166	164	170
	Impact	13:44	10/33	200	193	208
			20/65	190	176	200

[a] Levels were below the sound level meter peak detector.

Table I.3-53b Summary of the SEL Measurement Results for July 31, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	SEL (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Vibratory	18:51	10/33	159	145	166
			40/130	--[a]	--[a]	--[a]
	Impact	12:11	10/33	173	163	177
			40/130	142	135	146
Pile 2	Vibratory	11:33	10/33	155	145	161
			20/65	149	135	153
	Impact	13:44	10/33	170	160	175
			20/65	162	148	169

[a] Levels were below the sound level meter peak detector.

The last day of pile driving was August 1, 2012. Three 24-inch steel shell piles were driven to their final tip elevation (driven 1.5 to 2.4 meters) using a diesel impact hammer. Measurements were taken at two measurement positions for each pile: measurements were taken at distances of 16 and 26 meters from the first pile, 15 and 25 meters for the second pile, and 10 and 20 meters for the third pile. Time durations of 2 minutes and 39 seconds, 7 minutes and 49 seconds, and 10 minutes and 38 seconds were recorded for each pile, respectively. The strike count for these piles was not provided. The peak and SEL measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-54a and I.3-54b, respectively.

Table I.3-54a: Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for August 1, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	Peak (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Impact	02:39	16/52.5	185	180	191
			26/85	174	170	181
Pile 2	Impact	07:49	15/50	187	179	192
			25/82	174	169	180
Pile 3	Impact	10:38	10/33	199	193	207
			20/65	183	179	188

Table I.3-54b: Summary of the SEL Measurement Results for August 1, 2012

Pile	Hammer Type	Time Duration (MM:SS)	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	SEL (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile 1	Impact	02:39	16/52.5	156	150	161
			26/85	145	139	149
Pile 2	Impact	07:49	15/50	158	151	163
			25/82	145	140	151
Pile 3	Impact	10:38	10/33	167	159	171
			20/65	155	146	159

On February 11, 2013, four 72-inch steel shell piles were driven. Hydrophones were placed in two separate holes drilled through 42 inches of ice (Figure I.3-61). The water under the ice was approximately 8 feet deep and the hydrophones were installed approximately 1 meter (3.3 feet) from the bottom. It was not possible to move the hydrophones to different positions due to the difficulty of drilling holes in the ice and keeping the holes open and ice free. Underwater sound measurements were collected at two locations: 11 to 17 meters (36 to 56 feet) and 22 to 27 meters (72 to 88 feet) from the steel shell piles. During the driving of Piles C and D, bubble rings were used. During the drives, the bubble rings were turned off twice to determine their effectiveness. There was too much ice surrounding Piles A and B to fully deploy the bubble rings. When the bubble ring surrounded a pile, such as with Piles C and D, it typically reduced the peak pressure by 13 to 16 dB at the close location and 6 to 8 dB at the farther locations. When the piles were not fully surrounded, such as with Piles A and B, the peak pressures were typically reduced by 7 to 8 dB at the close location and 3 to 7 dB at the farther locations. The peak, RMS, and SEL measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-55a, I.3-55b, and I.3-55c, respectively.

Figure I.3-61 Crew Drilling Through Ice to Place Hydrophone

Table I.3-55a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for February 11 2013

Pile	Time	Bubble On/Off	Distance to Pile (meters)	Peak (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	On	11	199	191	204
			22	192	186	196
		Off	11	208	205	209
			22	198	197	199
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	On	13	200	192	206
			23	192	189	196
		Off	13	209	204	210
			23	195	191	196
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	On	15	190	186	195
			26	188	182	192
		Off	15	203	188	205
			26	195	184	198
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	On	17	195	190	201
			27	190	187	195
		Off	17	205	201	207
			27	195	193	196

[a] Levels were below the sound level meter peak detector.

Table I.3-55b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for February 11 2013

Pile	Time	Bubble On/Off	Distance to Pile (m)	RMS (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	On	11	188	180	191
			22	177	169	180
		Off	11	195	193	196
			22	181	180	182
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	On	13	187	182	193
			23	180	175	185
		Off	13	194	190	196
			23	184	181	186
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	On	15	179	172	186
			26	176	170	185
		Off	15	190	186	192
			26	183	177	185
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	On	17	184	180	187
			27	180	177	183
		Off	17	194	191	195
			27	184	181	185

[a] Levels were below the sound level meter peak detector.
11 meters = approximately 36 feet; 13 meters = approximately 43 feet; 15 meters = approximately 49 feet;
17 meters = approximately 56 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet; 26 meters = approximately 85 feet

Table I.3-55c Summary of the Single Strike SEL Measurement Results for February 11 2013

Pile	Time	Bubble On/Off	Distance to Pile (meters)	Single Strike SEL (dB)		
				Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	On	11	175	164	181
			22	169	155	173
		Off	11	183	179	184
			22	173	169	174
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	On	13	176	163	186
			23	169	163	173
		Off	13	182	178	184
			23	173	168	174
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	On	15	167	159	176
			26	164	156	168
		Off	15	178	161	180
			26	171	161	172
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	On	17	171	161	175
			27	168	162	170
		Off	17	181	174	183
			27	172	169	173

[a] Levels were below the sound level meter peak detector.
11 meters = approximately 36 feet; 13 meters = approximately 43 feet; 15 meters = approximately 49 feet;
17 meters = approximately 56 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet; 26 meters = approximately 85 feet

On February 13, 2013, the same four 72-inch piles that were driven on February 11, 2013, were driven to final depth. The monitoring location and conditions were the same as the previous day. No bubble on/off test was performed. The bubble ring was fully deployed on Piles A, C, and D, but there was too much ice surrounding Pile B to fully deploy the bubble ring. The peak, RMS, and SEL measurement results are shown in Tables I.3-56a, I.3-56b, and I.3-56c, respectively.

Table I.3-56a Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for February 13, 2013

Pile	Time	Distance to Pile (meters)	Peak (dB)		
			Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	11	193	186	198
		22	187	184	191
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	13	206	199	210
		23	196	193	199
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	15	190	188	194
		26	185	184	188
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	17	187	185	189
		27	192	191	193

11 meters = approximately 36 feet; 13 meters = approximately 43 feet; 15 meters = approximately 49 feet;
17 meters = approximately 56 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet; 26 meters = approximately 85 feet;
27 meters = approximately 88 feet

Table I.3-56b Summary of the RMS Measurement Results for February 13, 2013

Pile	Time	Distance to Pile (meters)	RMS (dB)		
			Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	11	181	179	187
		22	174	171	178
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	13	190	186	194
		23	182	180	184
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	15	180	177	182
		26	176	174	178
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	17	178	177	181
		27	182	179	183

Table I.3-56c Summary of the Single Strike SEL Measurement Results for February 13, 2013

Pile	Time	Distance to Pile (m)	Single Strike SEL (dB)		
			Average	Minimum	Maximum
Pile A	15:21:02-16:30:39	11	169	161	172
		22	164	158	167
Pile B	17:47:55-18:47:13	13	177	171	180
		23	169	167	172
Pile C	11:41:11-12:50:04	15	168	159	169
		26	165	157	166
Pile D	13:43:50-14:44:36	17	166	159	168
		27	169	162	171

11 meters = approximately 36 feet; 13 meters = approximately 43 feet; 15 meters = approximately 49 feet;
17 meters = approximately 56 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet; 26 meters = approximately 85 feet;
27 meters = approximately 88 feet

I.3.29 24-, 36-, and 48-Inch Steel Shell Piles—Naval Base Kitsap Explosive Handling Wharf-2, Bangor, WA

Between September 29, 2012, and January 19, 2013, hydroacoustic measurements were recorded as part of the Explosive Handling Wharf-2 (EHW-2) project located at the Naval Base Kitsap in Bangor, Washington. The main objective of the EHW-2 acoustical monitoring plan was to help determine zones for pile driving where underwater and airborne sound pressure levels could potentially result in physiological injury or exceed behavioral disturbance thresholds for protected species. The results of this project were to be used to confirm or adjust the modeled injury and/or behavioral disturbance zones for EHW-2 construction. During EHW-2, a total of 257 piles, including steel shell piles with diameter sizes of 24, 36, and 48 inches, were installed using both vibratory and impact hammers. APE 200 and APE 600 hammers were used for vibratory driving; APE D-80 and APE D-100 hammers were used for impact driving. A bubble curtain was used during the installation of all impact piles.

There were restrictions on the duration of work allowed per day. Up to three vibratory rigs could operate concurrently. Only one impact rig was permitted to operate at a time, though it operated at the same time as the vibratory rig. On a typical day, a single impact hammer would be used to proof up to five piles. Permit requirements limited the number of strikes per day to 200. Approximately 1,000 strikes per day occurred under this scenario. Another less-frequent scenario was to (1) drive three piles with an impact driver the full length of the pile, which could yield up to 2,000 strikes per pile, and (2) proof two additional piles at 200 strikes per pile. This scenario would result in as many as 6,400 impact strikes per day. One to 19 piles were driven in a single day, with an average of five piles per day for the entire project.

Due to the volume of piles driven over the duration of this project, Tables I.3.57 and I.3.58a, b, and c provide the averages for each pile size. Figures I.3.62 through I.3.64 show sound pressure levels for all impact driving events and their corresponding distances. For the majority of the pile driving events, measurements were made at up to two depths and at up to six distances. Typically, the mid-level depth was 10 meters (33 feet), while the deep depth ranged from 20 to 30 meters (65 to 100 feet). If the water depth was shallower than 20 to 30 meters, the deep hydrophone was set 2 to 3 meters (6.5 to 10 feet) above the bottom channel. Up to three measurement positions within the Wharf Restricted Area (WRA) were used during pile driving. The nearest measurement location was on the barge; at this location, the distances ranged from 10 to 170 meters (33 to 557 feet). The second position within the WRA ranged from 90 to 300 meters (295 to 980 feet), typically being between 200 and 300 meters (650 to 980 feet). The third position was also used when two or more rigs were operating concurrently, and distances from the pile at ranged from 10 to 100 meters. Typically when this third position was used for underwater measurements, the water depth was too shallow for two hydrophones; so, only one depth was measured. Three additional measurement locations outside the WRA were used. These distances were typically beyond 800 meters (2,625 feet) from the pile.

Vibratory Pile Driving

For vibratory pile driving during the EHW-2 project, total of 185 vibratory pile installation events were monitored; 112 were production piles, and 73 were temporary trestle/template piles. Vibratory driving resulted in sound levels that varied considerably through the driving periods. The underwater measurements were characterized by RMS sound pressure levels only. Table I.3-57 summarizes all the average RMS sound pressure level results and distances at each measurement location for all vibratory pile driving events for 24- and 36-inch piles. Usable data was not collected at each position for all piles, most often due to rough water conditions.

Table I.3-57 Summary of Average RMS Measurement Results for All Vibratory Pile Driving

Pile Size	Water Depth at Pile (m)	Measurement Position	Distance from Piles (meters)	RMS at Mid-depth (dB)		RMS at Deep Depth (dB)	
				Average	Range	Average	Range
24-inch	1.8-17.4	Primary Barge	10-19	165	150-173	165	144-176
		Secondary Barge	10-15	No Data Available[a]		157	149-163
		WRA Boat	230-295	143	133-150	144	138-151
		Mid-Channel	1,087-2,284	125	120-132	129	126-134
		North Raft	No Data Available				
		South Raft	No Data Available				
36-inch	4.6-21.9	Primary Barge	6-29	169	157-175	168	158-178
		Secondary Barge	64-98	152	144-160	155	146-172
		WRA Boat	100-315	150	137-160	152	139-158
		Mid-Channel	836-2,290	135	124-140	135	122-141
		North Raft	2,800-2,937	133	128-138	132	125-140
		South Raft	2,200-2,281	132	124-137	132	126-138
48-inch	27.4	Primary Barge	10	171	N/A[b]	176	N/A[b]
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	No Data Available				
		Mid-Channel	1,431	135	N/A[b]	137	N/A[b]
		North Raft	No Data Available				
		South Raft	No Data Available				

[a] Data was collected at only one depth due to the shallow water at the measurement location.
[b] There was only one 48-inch pile so there was no range recorded.

Impact Pile Driving

There were a total of 72 impact pile driving events: one 48-inch pile (5 different events); 27 36-inch piles; and 40 24-inch piles. Of these, 66 were production piles, and only one was a temporary trestle pile. Impact pile driving occurred over a course of approximately a 2-month period and totaled approximately 11,272 strikes. The number of strikes per event ranged from 22 to 708. The durations of the impact driving were short, typically ranging from less than 1 minute to about 16 minutes. Measurement positions were recorded and related to the coordinates for each pile to obtain distances from the piles to the hydrophone measurement locations. This was performed separately for each different location. Tables I.3-58a through I.3-58c summarize the average measurement results for all pile sizes for peak, RMS, and SEL, respectively.

Table I.3-58a Summary of Average Peak Measurement Results for All Impact Pile Driving

Pile Size	Water Depth at Pile (m)	Measurement Position	Distance from Piles (m)	Peak at Mid-Depth (dB)		Peak at Deep Depth (dB)	
				Average	Range	Average	Range
24-inch	Land-9.1	Primary Barge	10-167	187	174-203	187	174-206
		Secondary Barge	10-32	202	195-208	193	162-209
		WRA Boat	260-350	173	163-179	174	164-181
		Mid-Channel	853-1,530	159	151-176	160	149-171
		North Raft	2,820-2,922	158	154-162	144	128-156
		South Raft	2,209-2,377	158	147-164	156	150-162
36-inch	0.3-19.2	Primary Barge	10-26	200	195-204	204	191-214
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	92-230	190	185-196	190	184-194
		Mid-Channel	858-1,387	172	163-179	174	165-182
		North Raft	2,836-2,889	168	159-175	166	156-172
		South Raft	2,253-2,296	169	161-173	169	160-173
48-inch	24.7-27.4	Primary Barge	10	207	200-213	202	198-205
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	50	203	N/A[a]	No Data Available[b]	
		Mid-Channel	1,737	167	N/A[a]	174	N/A[a]
		North Raft	No Data Available				
		South Raft	No Data Available				

[a] There was only one 48-inch pile at this distance so there was no range recorded.
[b] Data was collected at only one depth due to equipment complications.

Table I.3-58b Summary of Average RMS Measurement Results for All Impact Pile Driving

Pile Size	Water Depth at Pile (m)	Measurement Position	Distance from Piles (m)	RMS at Mid-Depth (dB)		RMS at Deep Depth (dB)	
				Average	Range	Average	Range
24-inch	Land-9.1	Primary Barge	10-167	171	163-187	170	162-187
		Secondary Barge	10-32	184	179-189	176	150-189
		WRA Boat	260-350	158	151-165	161	153-167
		Mid-Channel	853-1,530	143	137-151	146	138-152
		North Raft	2,820-2,922	148	146-151	128	108-133
		South Raft	2,209-2,377	155	148-162	156	147-162
36-inch	0.3-19.2	Primary Barge	10-26	183	175-189	188	174-197
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	92-230	175	171-182	175	171-180
		Mid-Channel	858-1,387	157	145-162	158	149-165
		North Raft	2,836-2,889	150	145-156	152	140-162
		South Raft	2,253-2,296	155	148-162	156	147-162
48-inch	24.7-27.4	Primary Barge	10	190	184-192	186	184-186
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	50	185	N/A[a]	No Data Available[b]	
		Mid-Channel	1,737	149	N/A[a]	156	N/A[a]
		North Raft	No Data Available				
		South Raft	No Data Available				

[a] There was only one 48-inch pile at this distance so there was no range recorded.
[b] Data was collected at only one depth due to equipment complications.

Table I.3-58c Summary of Average SEL Measurement Results for All Impact Pile Driving

Pile Size	Water Depth at Pile (m)	Measurement Position	Distance from Piles (m)	SEL at Mid-Depth (dB)		SEL at Deep Depth (dB)	
				Average	Range	Average	Range
24-inch	Land-9.1	Primary Barge	10-167	159	151-175	158	149-176
		Secondary Barge	10-32	172	167-178	165	143-178
		WRA Boat	260-350	146	139-153	149	140-155
		Mid-Channel	853-1,530	131	121-139	135	127-143
		North Raft	2,820-2,922	126	125-128	121	108-125
		South Raft	2,209-2,377	133	126-140	132	129-136
36-inch	0.3-19.2	Primary Barge	10-26	171	163-178	176	163-184
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	92-230	164	160-170	164	159-169
		Mid-Channel	858-1,387	146	134-152	147	137-153
		North Raft	2,836-2,889	141	131-149	142	131-151
		South Raft	2,253-2,296	144	137-151	145	136-151
48-inch	24.7-27.4	Primary Barge	10	177	172-180	175	174-177
		Secondary Barge	No Data Available				
		WRA Boat	50	179	N/A[a]	No Data Available[b]	
		Mid-Channel	1,737	138	N/A[a]	145	N/A[a]
		North Raft	No Data Available				
		South Raft	No Data Available				

[a] There was only one 48-inch pile at this distance so there was no range recorded.
[b] Data was collected at only one depth due to equipment complications.

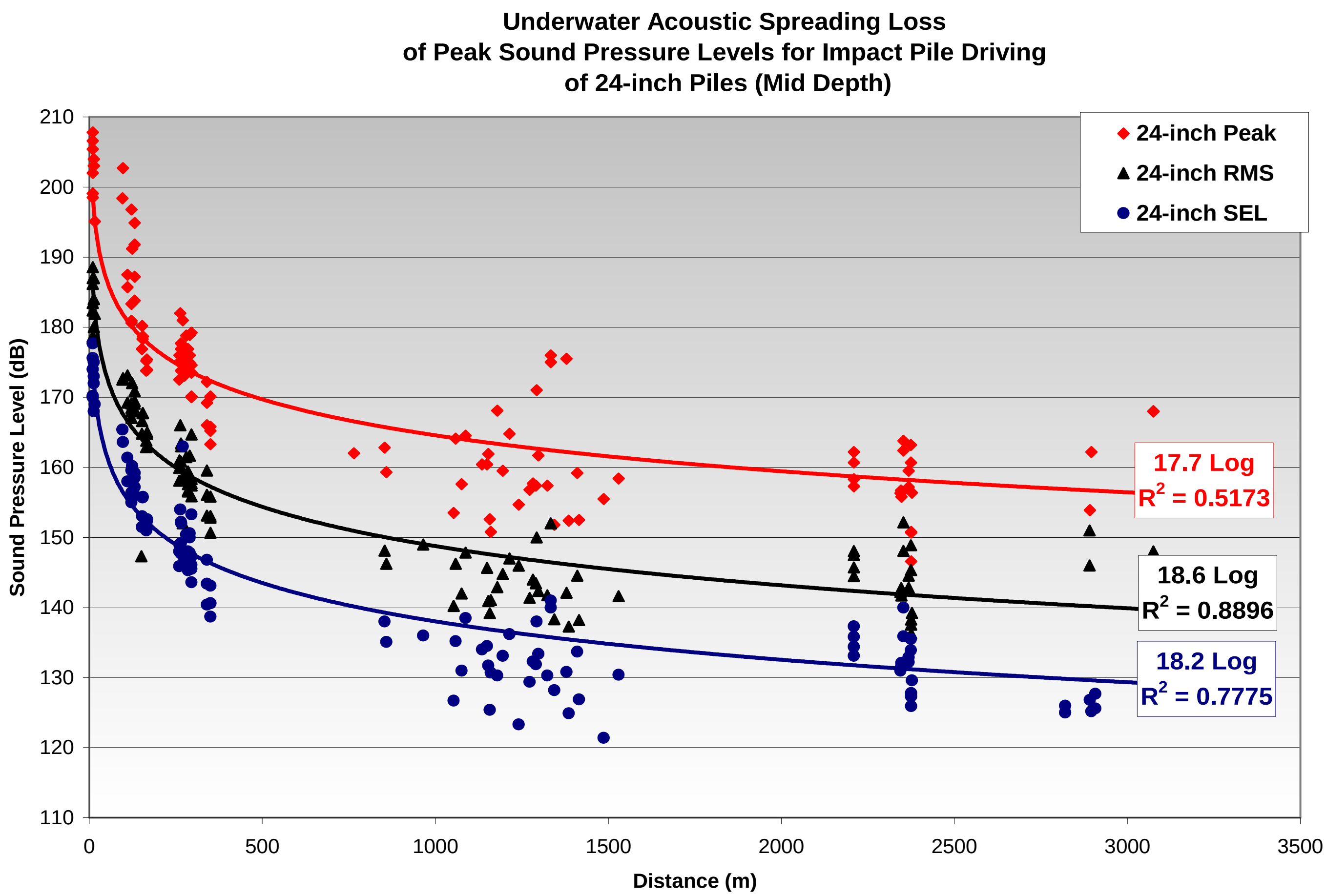


Figure I.3-62 Underwater Acoustic Spreading Loss of Sound Pressure Levels for Impact Driving of 24-inch Piles

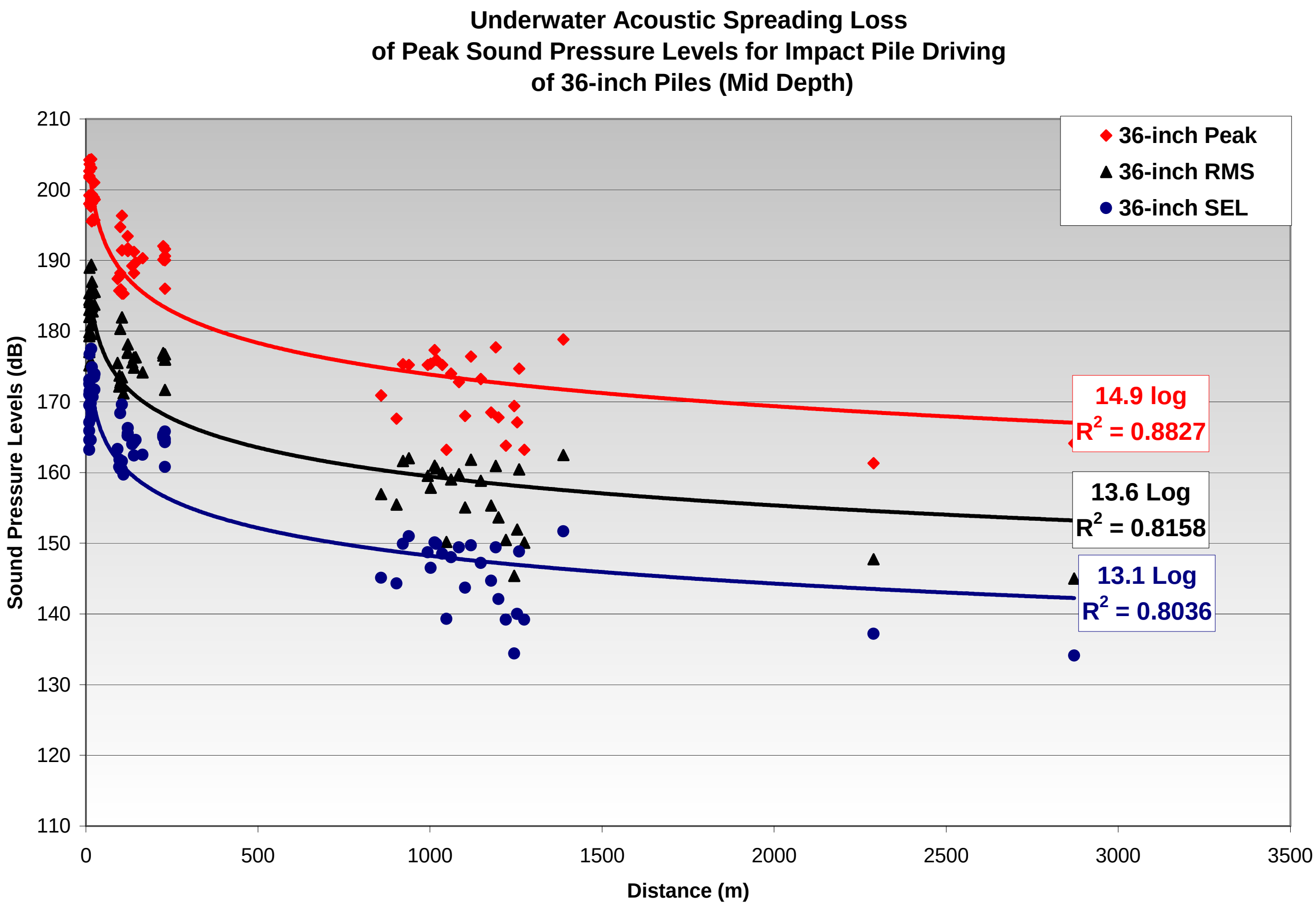


Figure I.3-63 Underwater Acoustic Spreading Loss of Sound Pressure Levels for Impact Driving of 36-inch Piles

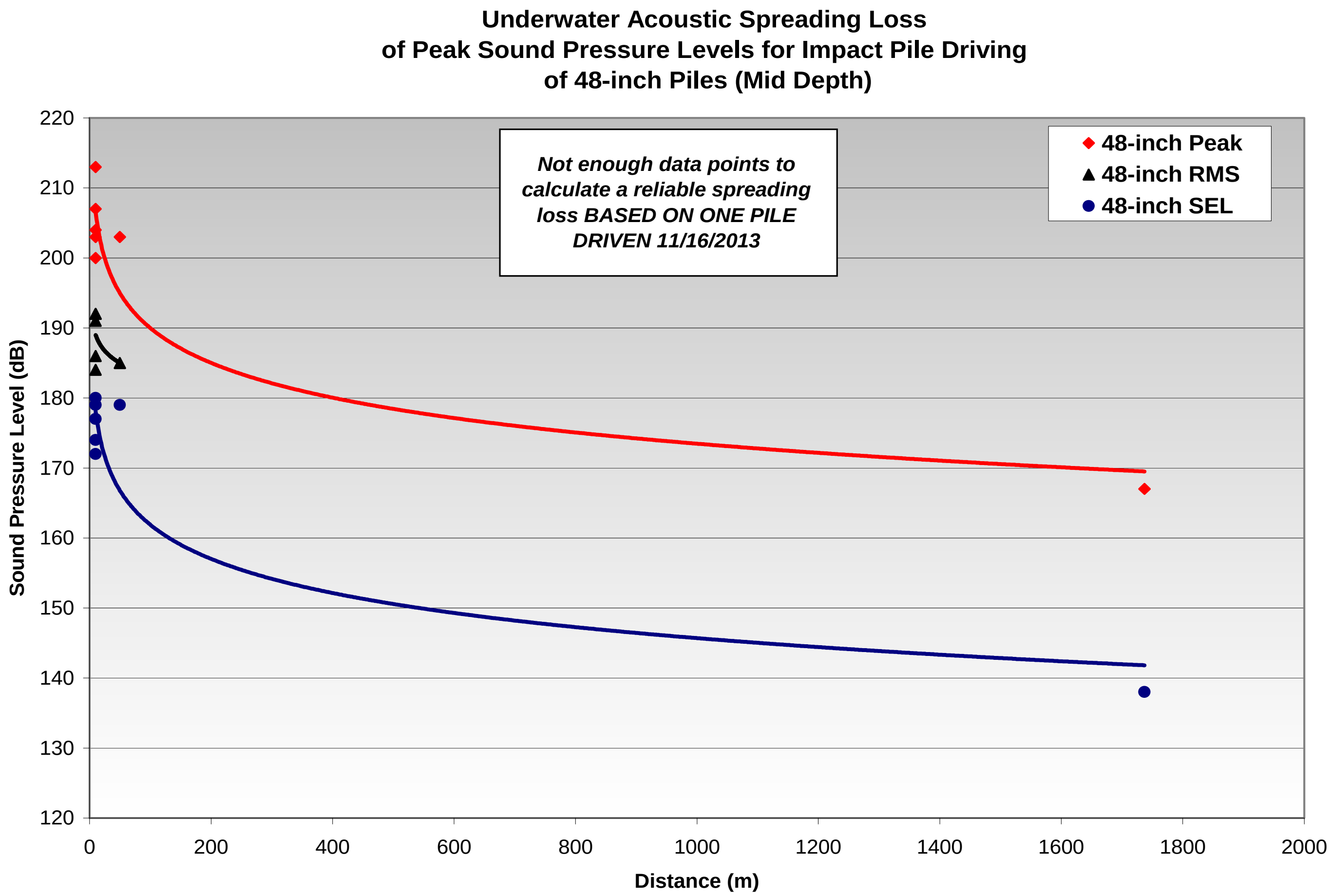


Figure I.3-64 Underwater Acoustic Spreading Loss of Sound Pressure Levels for Impact Driving of 48-inch Piles

I.3.30 24-Inch Steel Shell Piles in 4.5 Meters of Water—Crescent City Inner Harbor Dock, Crescent City, CA

Nine 24-inch steel shell piles were installed as part of dock repairs for the Inner Harbor in Crescent City, California (Figure I.3-65). The Crescent City Harbor District was constructing new docks in the Inner Harbor to replace the docks damaged by the tsunami that hit on March 11, 2011. To install piles, material was drilled and removed prior to the pile being advanced with impact strikes. Hydroacoustic measurements were made to determine the sound pressure levels from the drilling/impact of the pile installation. Measurements were collected over a span of 3 days in November, 2012, and over a span of 2 days in July, 2013. During the 2012 testing period, the piles were drilled and driven with an internal pneumatic 500lb drop hammer; in 2013, a diesel impact hammer was used. A bubble curtain was used during the installation of all piles. For this project, hydroacoustic data was reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure levels and RMS levels.

Figure I.3-65 Placement of 24-inch Steel Shell Pile at the Crescent City Inner Harbor Dock

In November 2012, four steel shell piles were installed over a span of 3 days. Attempts were made to measure the drilling process; however, the measured levels from the drilling were not above the existing background levels. Thus, all reported levels were from the impact driving. On November 1, 2012, underwater measurements were taken at two locations: one approximately 10 meters (33 feet) and the second approximately 140 meters (460 feet) from the pile driving operation. The water depth was approximately 4.5 meters (15 feet), and the hydrophones were set at approximately 3 meters (10 feet) deep. One pile was partially installed during the collection of underwater data. During the driving, system overloads occurred in the sound level meter at the 10-meter location; as a result, this position was moved to 20 meters (65 feet). The sound levels at this distance still exceeded the system's ability to operate accurately. Usable data was recorded at 140 meters. After the initial pile was partially installed, the drill stopped operating properly, and drilling was suspended.

Pile installation resumed on November 5, 2012 and one pile was installed. To correct the overloading issue from the first day, an attenuator was added to the line at the 10-meter location. This allowed the measurement of higher sound pressure levels. The water and hydrophone depths were the same as on the first day of testing. The second hydrophone location was initially set at 140 meters, but after approximately 1 hour, this location was moved to the public pier outside the mouth of the inner harbor at approximately 340 meters (1,115 feet). At this distance, pile driving was undetectable, so the system was moved closer to the beginning of the pier (320 meters [1,050 feet]) where there was a more direct line-of-sight to the pile driving. At this distance, pile driving was detectable.

On November 6, 2012, two piles were also installed. The water depth was approximately 4.5 meters (15 feet), and the hydrophones were set at approximately 3 meters (10 feet) deep. On this day of testing, the distant measurements were taken at several locations rather than a single, fixed location. All measurements taken on all three days are summarized in Table I.3-59.

Table I.3-59 Summary of the Measurements Results for the November 2012 Testing Period

Date	Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		RMS (dB)	
		Average	**Maximum**	**Average**	**Maximum**
November 1, 2012	140	153	162	136	143
November 5, 2012	10	198	210	174	195
	140	175	186	158	168
	320	155	160	143	148
November 6, 2012	10	197	210	181	191
	60	182	185	167	170
	140	175	186	158	168
	230	174	185	160	169
	240[a] (position 1)	158	165	146	150
	240[a] (position 2)	154	159	141	146
	270	158	176	146	161
	300	165	171	152	158

[a] Measurements were made behind breakwater.
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 60 meters = approximately 200 feet; 240 meters = approximately 790 feet;
270 meters = approximately 885 feet; 320 meters = approximately 1,050 feet

Testing took place on two additional days in July 2013. During these measurements, a diesel impact hammer was used to install five more piles. For each of the five piles, measurements were taken at two locations: one approximately 10 meters and the second 160 meters or more from the pile driving operation. The water and hydrophone depths for this testing period were the same as during the November 2012 testing period. The peak sound pressure levels and RMS results for this testing period are shown in Table I.3-60.

Table I.3-60 Summary of the Measurement Results for the July 2013 Testing Period

Pile	Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		RMS (dB)	
		Average	Range	Average	Range
Pile D2	10	205	200–208	189	186–192
	185	160	158–166	150	148–156
Pile G39	10	197	186–203	184	172–188
	175	164	151–170	154	143–159
Pile F5	10	198	195–200	183	179–185
	160	160	156–164	148	145–150
Pile F7	10	195	193–197	181	179–183
	170	154	145–163	145	143–149
Pile D19	10	205	199–206	189	183–190
	>185	151	142–154	138	129–141

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 170 meters = approximately 560 feet; 175 meters = approximately 575 feet; 185 meters = approximately 605 feet

I.3.31 14- and 24-Inch Steel Shell Piles—Willits Bypass, Willits, CA

The Willits Bypass Project was designed to re-route Highway 101 around the City of Willits, California. There will be approximately 739 piles, of different types and sizes, installed for the completion of this project, including steel shell piles, H-piles, and sheet piles. Figure I.3-66 shows the pile driving site for the project. As of this writing, pile driving has been conducted on three days, and only steel shell piles have been installed. For this project, hydroacoustic data were collected for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels.

Figure I.3-66 Pile Driving Site for Willits Bypass Project

On May 21, 2013, one 24-inch steel shell test pile was driven in Bent 23 using a Delmag 46-32 diesel impact hammer. The pile was installed on dry land approximately 20 meters (65 feet) from the wetted channel. There were approximately 758 pile strikes used to drive the pile 27.4 meters (90 feet). The driving began at 9:04:38 and concluded at 10:06:04, with two breaks during the drive. Underwater measurements were made at two locations, the first at 35 meters (115 feet) and the second at 50 meters (165 feet) from the pile driving operations. Peak and single-strike SEL was measured, and results are summarized in Table I.3-61.

Table I.3-61 Summary of the Measurement Results from May 21, 2013

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
				Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum
Pile 1	00:24:53	758	35	159	166	139	144
			50	163	168	140	145

On September 13, 2013, five 24-inch steel shell piles were monitored in Bent 4. The piles were driven with a Delmag 30-32 diesel impact hammer. At the time of testing, stream bed conditions only presented one “pool” downstream that was suitable for underwater monitoring. The creek was completely dry upstream of the pile driving installation. The measurement location was positioned 50 meters downstream of the pile driving. Table I.3-62 shows the peak sound pressure level and single-strike SEL results.

Table I.3-62 Summary of the Measurement Results from September 13, 2013

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
			Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum
Pile 1	00:12:29	50	153	158	132	147
Pile 2	00:15:40	50	154	156	132	143
Pile 3	00:11:44	50	155	159	133	144
Pile 4	00:25:18	50	154	159	132	148
Pile 5	00:13:24	50	154	158	132	148
Average for the Full Day	**01:18:3**	**50**	**154**	**159**	**132**	**148**

50 meters = approximately 165 feet

On September 18, 2013, six 14-inch steel shell piles were monitored. The piles were driven with a Delmag 30-32 diesel impact hammer. Underwater measurements were made at two locations—the first approximately 35 to 38 meters (115 to 125 feet) upstream of the pile and the second approximately 57 to 60 meters (187 to 197 feet) downstream of the pile. The strike count on this day was unavailable. Table I.3-63 provides a summary of the peak and single-strike SEL results.

Table I.3-63 Summary of the Measurement Results from September 18, 2013

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
			Average	Maximum	Average	Maximum
Pile 1	00:09:36	35–38	163	170	135	139
		57–60	165	173	136	142
Pile 2	00:11:01	35–38	162	169	135	138
		57–60	164	172	134	140
Pile 3	00:32:47	35–38	160	167	134	137
		57–60	168	174	137	141
Pile 4	00:11:02	35–38	162	168	134	137
		57–60	169	174	138	142
Pile 5	00:10:11	35–38	162	170	133	139
		57–60	168	175	137	144
Pile 6	00:11:22	35–38	163	169	134	138
		57–60	167	174	137	144
Average for the Full Day	**01:25:59**	**35–38**	**162**	**170**	**134**	**139**
		57–60	**167**	**175**	**137**	**144**

35 meters = approximately 115 feet; 38 meters = approximately 125 feet; 57 meters = approximately 187 feet; 60 meters = approximately 197 feet

I.3.32 36-Inch Steel Shell Piles—North Fork Payette River Bridge, near Cascade, ID

Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted on July 2, 2013, for the North Fork Payette River Bridge replacement project near Cascade, Idaho. For this project, two 36-inch diameter close-ended steel shell piles were driven through a gravel pad and into approximately 9 to 10.7 meters (30 to 35 feet) of saturated, medium-dense to dense sand (SPT N-value in the range of 20 to 45). This project was one of several contracted by the Idaho Transportation Department to assist in identifying potential impacts of pile driving on threatened and endangered species in the Idaho waterways.

The second project conducted as part of these efforts was at the Weiser River Bridge in Weiser, Idaho, on August 27, 2013. For the Weiser River Bridge project, four H-piles were installed; discussion of the H-pile installation can be found in Section I.4-10.

The two steel shell piles installed at the North Fork Payette River Bridge were capped at the bottom of the pile, and a guide was welded to the base to assist in keeping the piles from drifting out of the proper location during the start of the drive. The guide was required because capped steel shell piles can compress and displace the soil, unlike non-displacement piles, such as H-piles. Because the end of the pile was capped, an extremely high number of pile strikes or blows per foot were required to place the pile. The impact pile driving was conducted with a diesel impact hammer Delmag D62-22. Hydroacoustic data were reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, RMS, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels.

Figure I.3-67 Placement of 36-inch Diameter Steel Shell Pile at North Payette River

On July 2, 2013, two 36-inch diameter close-ended steel shell piles were driven. Measurements were made at fixed locations in the river, ranging from 10 to 30 meters (33 to 100 feet) from the pile driving operations. As shown in Figure I.3-67, both piles were driven from dry land. For the first pile driven, three hydrophone locations were used: one was positioned at approximately 10 meters, a second at 20 meters (65 feet), and the third was approximately 30 meters away from the pile driving. All three hydrophones were set at a water depth of 1 meter (3.3 feet). The pile driving started at 6:38:49 and ended at 11:24:56, accumulating 4,198 strikes. For the second pile installation, only the 10-meter and 30-meter hydrophone positions were used. Both hydrophones were set at a depth of 1 meter. The second event started at 13:17:06, ended at 16:22:31, and accumulated 3,227 strikes. Table I.3-64 shows the peak sound pressure level, RMS and SEL, respectively.

Table I.3-64 Summary of the Measurement Levels from July 2, 2013

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (m)	Peak (dB)		RMS (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
				Max	Average	Average	Range	Average	Range
1	04:46:07	4,198	10	199	195	185	172–187	171	158–174
			20	195	189	179	171–181	166	158–168
			30	190	187	175	170–176	162	151–163
2	03:05:25	3,227	10	202	196	184	168–187	171	157–173
			30	191	188	174	165–177	162	153–164

10 meters = 33 feet

I.3.33 36-Inch Steel Shell Piles—Seismic Retrofit of Coliseum Way Bridge, Oakland, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made on July 10, 2013, as part of the seismic retrofit of the Coliseum Way Bridge in Oakland, California. The retrofit work was required to upgrade the bridge to better withstand future earthquakes. For this project, one 36-inch steel shell pile was driven, and underwater measurements were made at two locations (Figure I.3-68). The nearest measurement location was approximately 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile driving operation, and the water was approximately 1.2 meters (4 feet) deep. The second measurement location was approximately 200 meters (650 feet) from the pile driving operation, and the water was approximately 1.8 meters (6 feet) deep. The driving started at 16:19:00 and concluded at 16:45:10. During the drive, there was one hiatus from 16:31:50 to 16:35:15. Total drive time was 22 minutes and 45 seconds. Hydroacoustic data were primarily reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, single-strike SEL, and accumulated SEL. Table I.3.65 summarizes the peak and single-strike SEL results.

Figure I.3-68 Placement of 36-inch Diameter Steel Shell Pile at Coliseum Way Bridge

Table I.3-65 Summary of the Measurement Results July 10, 2013

Pile	Total Time of Drive (MM:SS)	Measurement Position (m)	Peak (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
			Average	Range	Average	Range
1	22:45	10	212	209–213	185	180–187
		200	174	166–182	145	140–167

I.3.34 24-Inch Diameter Steel Shell Piles - Port of Coeymans, New York

In November 2014, underwater sound monitoring was performed during the impact driving of ten 24-inch steel shell piles as part of the construction for a bridge section assembly facility as part of the New York/Tappan Zee Bridge. As part of the project, two trestles were constructed in Hudson River. The first trestle is for the offloading of supply barges and the second trestle is for loading completed bridge sections onto barges for delivery down the river to the new bridge site. (Figure I.3-69) Ten percent of the piles that were to be installed for the two trestles were monitored. Measurements were made at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile and between 35 and 50 meters (115 and 165 feet), depending on access. The driving was completed using an American Pile Driving hydraulic impact hammer (APE 62-22).

Figure I.3-69 Pile Installation at the Straddle Crane Trestle

On November 11 and 12, 2014, underwater sound monitoring was performed during the impact driving of 24-inch steel pipe piles associated with the Straddle Crane Trestle (Bent 4 and 5). Measurements were made at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from all piles and at 47 meters (154 feet) from B4-N, 46 meters from B4-S, 35 meters (115 feet) from B5-N, and 35 meters from B5-S in 7–8 meters (23–26 feet) of water.

On November 24, 2014, underwater sound monitoring was performed during the impact driving of six (6) 24-inch steel pipe piles associated with the Assembly Sled Trestle (Figure I.3-70). Measurements were made at a distance of 10 meters from each pile in 3–4 meters (10–13 feet) of water and at approximately 50 meters (165 feet) from each pile in 10–12 meters (33–39 feet) of water. All pile driving was completed using an American Piledriving Equipment impact hammer (APE 62-22). Levels measured are summarized in Table I.3.66.

Figure I.3-70 Pile Installation at the Assembly Sled Trestle

Table I.3-66: Measured Sound Levels

Pile	Blows	Date and Time	Distance from Pile (Meters/Feet)	Peak dB re: 1µPa Maximum	SEL dB re: 1µPa Mean	SEL dB re: 1µPa Range	Cumulative SEL Per Pile dB re: 1µPa2-sec
November 12, 2014							
B4-N	57	15:41:17-15:42:54	10/33	210	181	174-182	198
			47/154	201	167	160-169	186
B4-S	62	15:47:37-15:49:22	10/33	210	181	175-182	199
			46/151	203	168	161-170	187
B5-N	308	15:58:13-16:05:44	10/33	210	178	175-183	204
			35/115	200	167	161-171	192
Daily Cumulative SEL 206 dB re: 1µPa2-							
November 12, 2014							
B5-S	427	08:12:04–08:22:39	10/33	213	181	178-183	207
			35/115	202	171	166-172	197
Daily Cumulative SEL 207 dB re: 1µPa2-							
November 24, 2014							
2N	166	09:49:29-09:57:41	10/33	207	177	166-178	200
			52/170	200	170	169-171	193
2S	58	10:08:38-1-:11:12	10/33	208	177	166-179	195
			49/161	195	166	165-168	184
3N	112	10:20:00-10:27:16	10/33	206	175	168-177	196
			50/165	193	164	161-166	185
3S	92	10:32:45-10:36:14	10/33	206	174	166-177	195
			47/154	198	166	162-168	187
1S	258	14:16:37-14:35:05	10/33	206	174	167-178	199
			52/170	194	164	159-168	189
1N	283	14:40:40-14:53:32	10/33	205	176	170-177	201
			54/177	197	166	164-168	191
Daily Cumulative SEL – 206 dB re: 1µPa2-							

I.3.35 18- to 30-Inch Steel Pipe Piles, Prichard Lake Pumping Plant, Sacramento, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made over a period of approximately 3 weeks starting on July 30, 2014 as part of the Prichard Lake Pumping Plant construction project near Sacramento, California (Figure I.3-71). From July 30 to August 20, 2014, 18-, 24-, and 30-inch steel pipe piles were driven and underwater monitoring was conducted at a distance of 10 to 18 meters (33 to 59 feet) from each pile. From July 30 through August 11, 2014, the piles were installed to their final tip elevation using an APE vibratory pile driver. Starting on August 12 and for the remaining days of pile driving, the piles were completed using a diesel impact hammer.

Figure I.3-71 Prichart Lake Pumping Plant Site

On July 30, three 30-inch diameter piles were installed; the monitoring position was approximately 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles. The water depth at the monitoring position was approximately 3 meters (10 feet) and the water at the piles being driven ranged from 1 to 3 meters deep. On August 5, one 30-inch and three 18-inch piles were driven; monitoring was conducted 10 meters from each pile in water 3 meters deep. The water depth at the piles was approximately 3 meters deep. On August 11, one 24-inch pile was installed; the monitoring was conducted 10 meters from the pile. At both the monitoring location and the pile, the water depth was approximately 3 meters deep. All vibratory pile driving data are summarized in Table I.3.67.

For the installation on August 12, 2014 of one 24-inch pile, the pile was first installed using an APE vibratory pile driver before a diesel impact hammer was used. Underwater data was measured 10 meters from the pile in water approximately 3 meters deep. At the pile, the water depth was approximately 2.5 meters (8 feet).

On August 14, 2014, one 24-inch steel shell pile was driven using a diesel impact hammer. This was the same pile installed on August 11, 2014 using a vibratory pile driver. The pile was installed in water approximately 2.5 meters deep, and monitoring was conducted 10 meters away in water approximately 3 meters deep. Monitoring was conducted on August 15, 2014, when the pile from the previous day, a 24-inch steel shell pile, was re-struck to verify bearing capacity of the pile. The monitoring was conducted 10 meters away. The water depth at the monitoring location was 3 meters deep, while the water at the pile was 2.5 meters deep. One 24-inch pile was proofed on August 19, 2014, and measurements were collected 11 meters (36 feet) from the pile in water approximately 3 meters deep. At the pile, the water was 2.5 meters deep.

On August 20, five 24-inch piles were re-struck to verify bearing capacity of the piles. Monitoring was conducted at a distance of 10 to 18 meters from the piles in water depth of 3 meters. The depth of the water at the piles ranged from 0.25 to 2.5 meters (0.8 to 8 feet). An isolation casing with a bubble ring in it was used when the piles were driven. Tables I.3-67 through I.3.69 summarize the impact pile driving results from each day of testing.

Table I.3-67 Summary of Vibratory Pile Driving of Unattenuated 18-, 24-, and 30-inch Steel Pipe Piles – Prichard Lake Pumping Plant

Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB	
		Peak	RMS
July 30	Unattenuated – Three 30-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	163 Typ. 196 Max.	150 Typ. 176 Max.
August 5	Unattenuated – One 30-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	173 Typ. 196 Max.	159 Typ. 183 Max.
August 5	Unattenuated – Three 18-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	174 Typ. 196 Max.	158 Typ. 176 Max.
August 11	Unattenuated – One 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	156 Typ. 181 Max.	143 Typ. 163 Max.
August 12	Unattenuated – One 24-inch pile @ 10 meters (33 feet)	159 Typ. 171 Max.	146 Typ. 158 Max.

Table I.3-68 Summary of Impact Pile Driving of Unattenuated 24-inch Steel Pipe Piles – Prichard Lake Pumping Plant

Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
August 12	Unattenuated – One 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	200 Typ. 202 Max.	184 Typ. 187 Max.	173 Typ. 175 Max.
August 14	Unattenuated – One 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	200 Typ. 204 Max.	186 Typ. 188 Max.	173 Typ. 175 Max.
August 15	Unattenuated – One 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	201 Typ. 204 Max.	185 Typ. 188 Max.	173 Typ. 176 Max.
August 19	Unattenuated – One 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	183 Typ. 185 Max.	168 Typ. 169 Max.	155 Typ. 158 Max.

Table I.3-69 Summary of Impact Pile Driving of Attenuated 24-inch Steel Pipe Piles – Prichard Lake Pumping Plant

Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
August 20	Attenuated – Three 24-inch piles @ 10 meters (33 feet)	190 Typ. 199 Max.	175 Typ. 182 Max.	163 Typ. 171 Max.
August 20	Attenuated – Two 24-inch piles @ 17 to 18 meters (52.5 to 55.5 feet)	172 Typ. 173 Max.	158 Typ. 160 Max.	147 Typ. 148 Max.

I.3.36 References

1. California Department of Transportation. 2010. *Mad River Bridges Replacement Project: Effects of Pile Driving Sound on Juvenile Steelhead*. March 24.

2. Coast Guard Civil Engineering Unit. 2008. *Tongue Point Facility Pier Repairs, Astoria, Oregon – Underwater Noise Monitoring Plan*. Oakland, California. June.

3. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2002. *Point Isabel Foundation Repair El Cerrito, California – Report of Underwater Sound Level Measurements Resulting from Pile Driving*. October 24.

4. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Pile Driving Activities Associated with Construction of the Noyo Bridge*. Report to Caltrans dated March 18 and revised April 9, 2003.

5. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Letter to Les Shorter reporting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Sausalito Dock Construction Pile Driving*. Revised April 30, 2003.

6. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Letter to Gary Lester (Winzler & Kelly Consulting Engineers) reporting Underwater Sound Measurement Results (7/21/2003) for Mad River Slough Construction Pile Driving*. August 25.

7. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Letter to Michael Cheney reporting results of underwater sound measurements – Castrol Pile Installation at Richmond Inner harbor*. November 9.

8. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2004. *Letter to Roy Neal of Conoco/Phillips from Clayton R. Anderson, reporting the results of underwater sound measurements*. November 9.

9. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Results of Underwater Sound Measurements for the Construction of Utility Crossing at Stockton Regional Wastewater Control Facility*. Report to CH2M Hill dated April 17.

10. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2005. *Letter to Sharon Lim (Tesoro) reporting results of underwater sound measurements –Amorco Wharf 24-Inch Steel Pipe Pile Installation*. December 21.

11. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Russian River at Geyserville – Underwater Sound Measurements Data, Driving of Steel Pipe Piles for Construction of a Temporary Trestle*. Report to Caltrans District 4 (Chuck Morton), dated June 7.

12. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Russian River Replacement Bridge at Geyserville – Underwater Sound Measurements Data for Driving Permanent 48-Inch CISS Piles*. Report to Caltrans District 4 (Chuck Morton), dated August 3.

13. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Letter to Bill Cooke (Manson Construction Co.) reporting results of underwater sound measurements – Impact Driving of 40- and 30-Inch Steel Piles*. August 14.

14. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2011. *Bradshaw's Crossing Project Hydroacoustic Monitoring Plan*. July.

15. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2014. *Memo to Elena Barnett (HDR, Inc.) transmitting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Port of Coeymans Pile Driving*. November 21 and December 2.

16. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2014. *Series of Memos to Jerimy Borchardt (CH2M Hill) transmitting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Prichard Lake Pumping Station Construction Pile Driving*. July 31 through August 21.

17. Mason, Bruce & Girard, Inc. 2011. *Weaver Road Interchange and Bridge Project – Hydroacoustic Monitoring Plan*. Portland, Oregon. July.

18. National Marine Fisheries Service. 2010. *Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Conservation Recommendations for the Weaver Road Interchange and Bridge, South Umpqua River*. (6th field HUC: 171003021001-Judd Creek), Douglas County, Oregon [(Federal ID # C019 (32)] (Key Number #14085). June 11.

19. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Fisheries, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, California Department of Fish and Game, U.S. Federal Highway Administration, and the California/Washington/Oregon Departments of Transportation. 2008. *Memorandum of Understanding from the Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group*. June 12.

I.4 Steel H-Piles

This chapter describes results for projects that involved the installation of steel H-piles. Typically, little information is known about the hammer or driving energies used to install these piles. Most of these projects were small, and some involved the measurements only when one or two piles were driven. One project used an air bubble curtain attenuation system, two projects involved piles driven on shore next to the water. Where available, measurement results for vibratory pile installation are included.

I.4.1 12-Inch-Diameter Steel H-Piles for Noyo River Bridge Replacement—Fort Bragg, CA

Temporary H-piles were driven on shore adjacent to water and in water to support a temporary construction trestle. This trestle was constructed as part of the Noyo River Bridge Replacement Project in Fort Bragg, California[1]. The bridge lies along the Pacific Coast at the mouth of the river. Fishing fleets and recreational boats frequently use the narrow channel under the bridge. Water depths vary based on tides, but are usually from 1 to 2 meters (3 to 6 feet) outside the channel and from 3 to 5 meters (10 to 15 feet) within the navigational channel. Underwater sound monitoring was conducted for the sole purpose of identifying safety zones for marine mammals (seals) that inhabit the area. Figures I.4-1a and I.4-1b show typical H- pile installation in water and on land during construction of the temporary trestle.

Figure I.4-1a Impact Driving of On-Shore H-Piles

Figure I.4-1b Impact Driving of In-Water H-Piles

Measurements were made across the main channel of the harbor at positions ranging from 23 to 85 meters (82 to 279 feet) from the piles driven in very shallow water or on land. The piles driven in the deepest water were battered (i.e., driven at an angle) and driven adjacent to the navigation channel. Consequently, close-in measurements were not possible due to boat traffic and safety concerns. Measurements for in-water pile driving near the navigation channel were made at positions of 70 and 90 meters (230 and 295 feet) from the piles. The piles were driven with a small diesel-powered impact hammer. Sound measurement results are summarized in Table I.4-1.

Table I.4-1 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving Steel H-Piles – Noyo River Bridge Replacement, Fort Bragg, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Land	Next to water – 23 meters (82 feet)	174	159	--
	Next to water – 37 meters (121 feet)	169	158	--
	Next to water – 94 meters (308 feet)	157	145	--
Water	Shallow water – 30 meters (98 feet)	179	165	--
	Shallow water – 56 meters (184 feet)	178	164	--
	Shallow water – 85 meters (279 feet)	165	149	--
Water	Deeper water (channel) – 70 meters (230 feet)	168	156	--
	Deeper water (channel) – 90 meters (295 feet)	170	158	--

Underwater levels varied with distance and direction. Sound levels were from 0 to 10 dB higher for piles driven in the water, compared to those driven on shore near the water. The acoustical signals were not analyzed as part of this project; therefore, SELs are not available. Pile-driving durations varied from 4 to 7 minutes. These piles were driven with a diesel impact hammer that struck the piles about once every 1.5 seconds.

I.4.2 10-Inch-Diameter H-Piles for Sea Wall Construction—San Rafael, CA

Six 10-inch- wide H-piles were driven on two separate days in April 2003 at the Seagate Property project site in San Rafael[2,3]. The purpose of the project was to construct a new sea wall. The first H- pile was driven using an impact hammer. Since peak sound pressure levels exceeded 180 dB, a vibratory hammer was used to install the remainder of the piles. Piles were installed into mud next to the existing sea wall. The water depth was about 2 meters (6.5 feet) where the piles were installed during measurements. The hydrophone was positioned at about 1 meter (3.3 feet) depth. Measurements were made primarily at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile, with supplementary measurements at 20 meters (65 feet).

Underwater sound measurements results are summarized in Table I.4-2. At 10 meters during impact hammering, the average peak sound pressure level was 185 dB, but most strikes were about 190 dB and some were light taps at around 180 dB. The typical RMS levels were 175 dB. Underwater sound pressure levels at 20 meters were over 10 dB lower, indicating that the signals at 10 meters were comprised of relatively high-frequency sound (i.e., above 500 Hz). Analyses of the acoustic signals were not performed, so frequency spectra and SEL data were not available. The duration of driving for each pile was short, approximately 30 seconds. An underwater noise attenuation system was not employed on this project.

Table I.4-2 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 10-Inch-Diameter H- Piles – Seawall Construction, San Rafael, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	190	175	
	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 20 meters	170	160	
2–6	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 10 meters	161	147	--
	Unattenuated – vibratory hammer at 20 meters	152	137	--

I.4.3 15-Inch-Diameter Steel H-Piles in Breakwater Construction at Ballena Isle Marina—Alameda, CA

Several steel H-piles were driven in open water at the Ballena Isle Marina in Alameda, California[4]. Eight field trips were made from February through early April 2005 to measure the underwater sound from these piles. Extensive measurements were conducted because peak sound pressure levels could not be maintained below 180 dB. The purpose of the project was to construct a sea wall to replace the existing sea wall. Pile installation was performed using a diesel-powered impact hammer. Two types of piles were driven: ~15-inch thin-walled H-piles that were battered and ~15-inch thick-walled H-piles that were driven vertically. Water depth was about 2 to 3 meters (6.5 to 10 feet). Measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) and 1 meter (3.3 feet) or above the bottom for water deeper than 2 meters (6.5 feet). An attenuation system was used to reduce underwater sound pressure levels. The attenuation system consisted of a thick plastic tube with air bubbles between the tube and pile. The tube usually settled into the bottom mud, making a good seal that contained the bubbles. Pictures of the pile driving and attenuation system are shown in Figures I.4-2a and I.4-2b.

Figure I.4-2a Impact Driving of Battered H-Type Pile with Attenuation System, with Vertical Thin-Walled H-Piles in Foreground

Figure I.4-2b Close-View of Confined Air Bubble Attenuation System next to Vertical H-Pile

Results of underwater sound measurements are summarized in Table I.4-3. Measurements varied. The effectiveness of the system to reduce sound pressure levels was tested for a brief period by turning the air delivery off during the driving of a vertical pile. Supplemental measurements for short periods were made at 20 and 40 meters (65 and 130 feet) to provide an indication of the sound attenuation with distance.

Table I.4-3 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 15-Inch-Diameter Steel H-Piles – Ballena Isle Marina, Alameda, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
Battered – air bubble curtain OFF	Unattenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	187	164	154
Battered – air bubble curtain ON	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	174	160	151
Battered – typical	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	180	165	155
Vertical – typical	Attenuated – impact hammer at 10 meters	194	177	170
Vertical – spot	Attenuated – impact hammer at 20 meters	190	175	N/A
Vertical – spot	Attenuated – impact hammer at 40 meters	180	166	N/A
Vertical – spot	Attenuated – impact hammer at 40 meters	175	160	N/A

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 20 meters = approximately 65 feet; 40 meters = approximately 130 feet

Battered Thin-Walled H-Piles

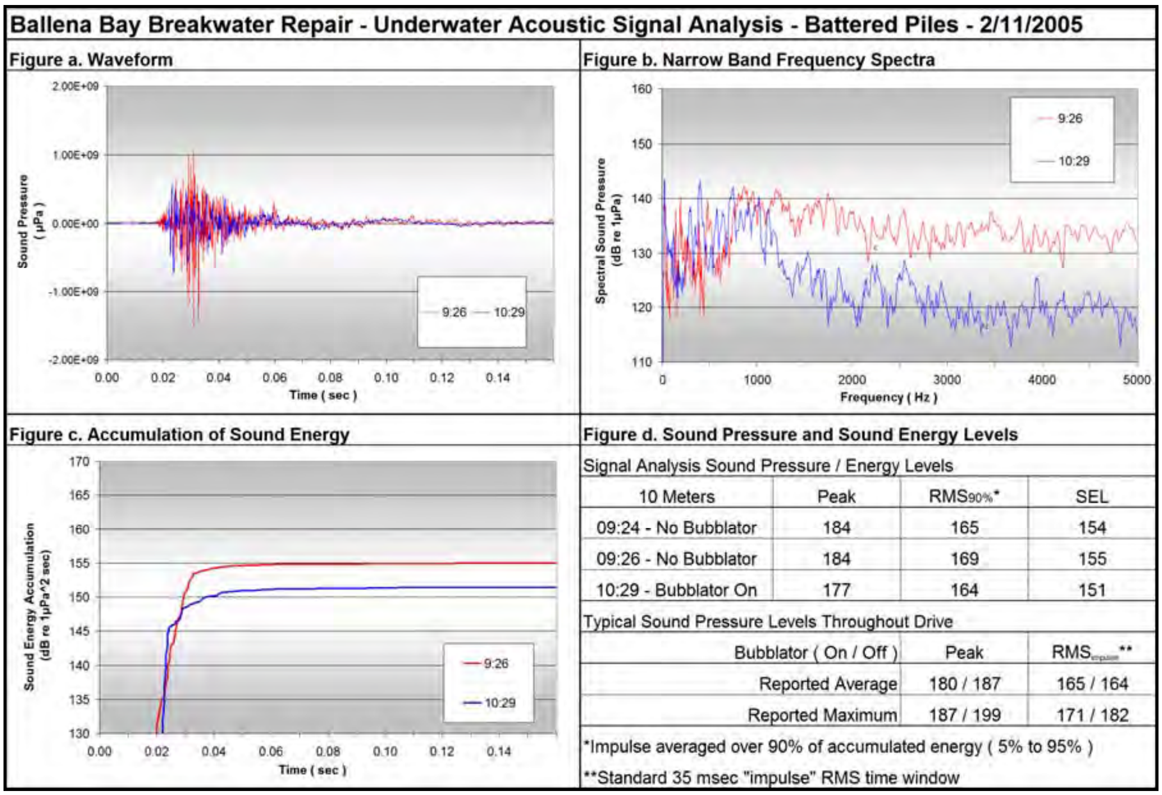
At 10 meters (33 feet), and with no attenuation system, average peak sound pressure levels were 187 dB, with a maximum peak of 199 dB. Average RMS sound pressure levels were 164 dB, with a maximum of 182 dB. The typical SEL was 154 dB. The attenuation system was tested on the first day for a short period. The system appeared to reduce peak sound pressure levels by over 10 dB; however, RMS or SEL levels were not affected much with the system (about 2 to 3 dB of attenuation). Twenty different battered thin-walled H-piles were measured with the attenuation system working. The levels reported in Table I.4-4 are the typical highest levels measured. Average peak, RMS, and SEL levels for each driving event varied by about 5 dB. It appears that the peak pressure level was caused by high-frequency sound emanating off of the pile that was effectively reduced by the attenuation system. However, much of the sound energy that comprises the RMS and SEL was lower frequency sound that was not really affected by the attenuation system. The duration of driving for each pile varied considerably, from 3 to 20 minutes. The piles were driven with a diesel impact hammer that struck the piles about once every 1.5 seconds.

Vertical Thick-Walled H-Piles

At 10 meters, typical peak sound pressure levels were 195 dB for the thick-walled vertical H-piles. Maximum levels for each drive ranged from 198 to 202 dB. Typical RMS sound pressure levels were 180 dB, with maximum levels for each drive ranging from 180 to 183 dB. Typical SEL levels were 168 dB, with a maximum of 174 dB on the very first drive. The attenuation system was turned off temporarily during one drive, but sound levels remained consistent. Otherwise, no vertical piles were driven without the attenuation system in place. Lower hammer energy was used during two piles and was found to reduce sound pressure levels by about 5 dB; however, little progress was made installing the pile. The duration of driving for each pile was about 10 minutes, with the pile struck once every 1.4 to 1.5 seconds.

Signal Analysis

Sounds from pile driving were analyzed to measure the frequency content and SEL. The analyses of sounds from representative pile strikes are shown in Figure I.4-3 for a battered thin-walled pile and in Figure I.4-4 for a vertical thick-walled pile. Note that H-piles have higher frequency content than steel pipe or steel shell piles. The thin-walled piles had higher frequency content than the thick-walled piles, with substantial energy above 1,000 Hz. The attenuation system reduced much of the sound above 1,000 Hz for the thin-walled piles, but did not have much effect for the thick-walled piles. The piles were driven in shallow water (mostly 2-meter [6.5-foot] depth) that likely compromised the effectiveness of the attenuation system.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
10 Meters	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
09:24 - No Bubblator	184	165	154
09:26 - No Bubblator	184	169	155
10:29 - Bubblator On	177	164	151
Typical Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive			
	Bubblator (On / Off)	Peak	RMS impulse**
	Reported Average	180 / 187	165 / 164
	Reported Maximum	187 / 199	171 / 182

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.4-3 Representative Signal Analyses for Battered H-Piles with and without Air Bubble Curtain Attenuation System at Ballena Bay in Alameda, CA

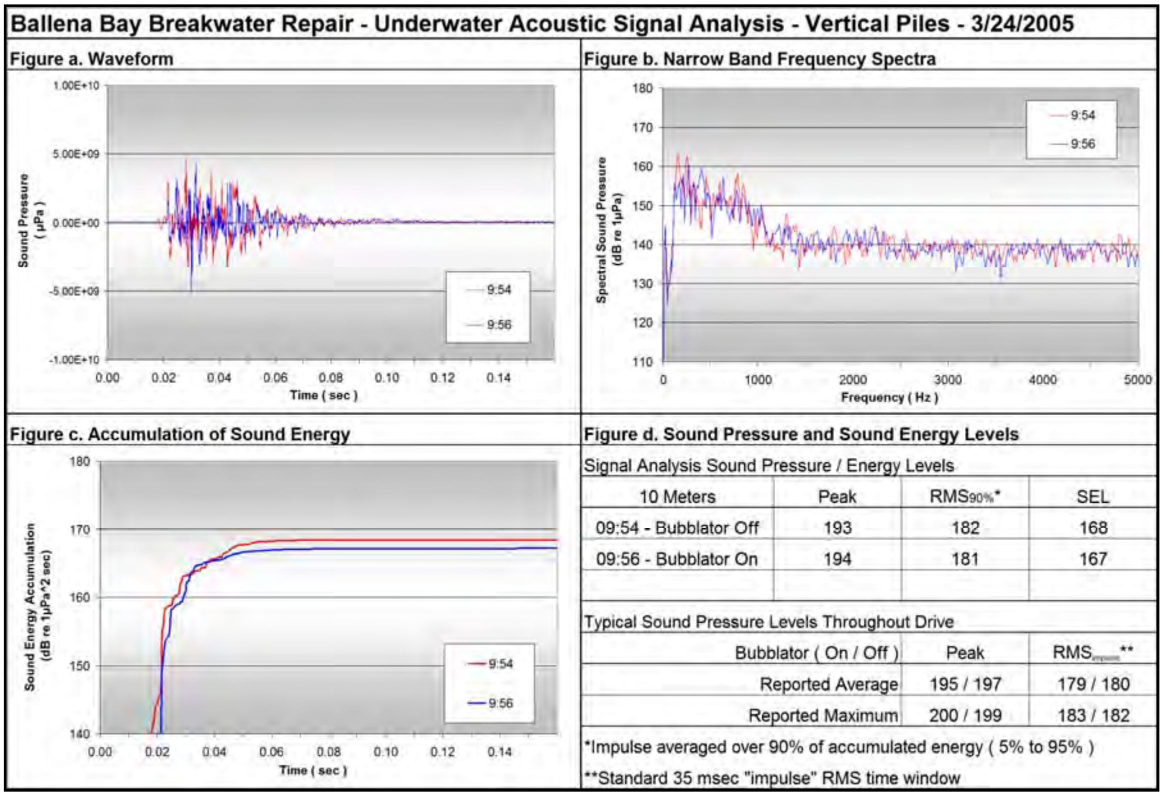


Figure I.4-4 Representative Signal Analyses for Vertical H- Piles with and without the Air Bubble Curtain Attenuation System at Ballena Bay in Alameda, CA

I.4.4 Thick-Walled Steel H-Piles for Interstate 80 Platte River Bridge Pile Driving—Platte River, NB

The driving of three permanent steel thick-walled H-piles was measured in December 2005 as part of the Platte River Bridges construction project at Interstate 80 in Nebraska[5]. Piles were driven with a diesel-powered impact hammer in a dewatered cofferdam adjacent to a river channel. Water depth in the area was very shallow, ranging from less than 0.5 to 2 meters (1.6 to 6.5 feet). The Platte River is wide but shallow. The cofferdam next to the river was excavated to a depth of about 3 meters (10 feet) below the river bottom. In other words, piles were driven below the river. Figures I.4-5a and I.4-5b show the cofferdam and pile driving operation.

Figure I.4-5a H-Pile Driving at the Platte River in Nebraska

Figure I.4-5b Dewatered Cofferdam Excavated below Water Level

Underwater sound measurements were made at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) during driving of the three different piles (see Table I.4-4). The average peak pressure level at 10 meters was 172 dB, and the highest was 180 dB. Average and maximum RMS levels were 160 and 168 dB, respectively. The representative SEL was 147 dB. Higher sound pressure levels were measured farther from the pile at about 20 to 25 meters (65 and 85 feet), where the average peak sound pressure levels were 177 dB with a maximum of about 185 dB. Average and maximum RMS levels were 163 and 174 dB, respectively. The representative SEL was 148 dB. Pile driving durations were from 7 to 9 minutes, and the hammer struck each pile about once every 1.4 seconds.

Table I.4-4 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving Steel H-Piles – Platte River Bridge, Platte River, NB

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1–3	Dewatered cofferdam – impact hammer at 10 meters	172	160	147
2 and 3	Dewatered cofferdam – impact hammer at 25 meters	177	164	148

The probable cause for measured levels to be higher at 25 meters from the pile than at 10 meters is shielding from the excavated cofferdam. The 10-meter position was much closer to the excavated cofferdam than the 25-meter position. The cofferdam was excavated to a level several meters below the river bottom. Therefore, direct transmission to the 10-meter position was somewhat shielded by that air space in the cofferdam.

Signal analyses of the representative pulses (see Figure I.4-6) indicate highly attenuated signals that contain primarily low-frequency energy (i.e., below 1,200 Hz). This was expected since the piles were driven through a dewatered cofferdam with no direct contact with the water.

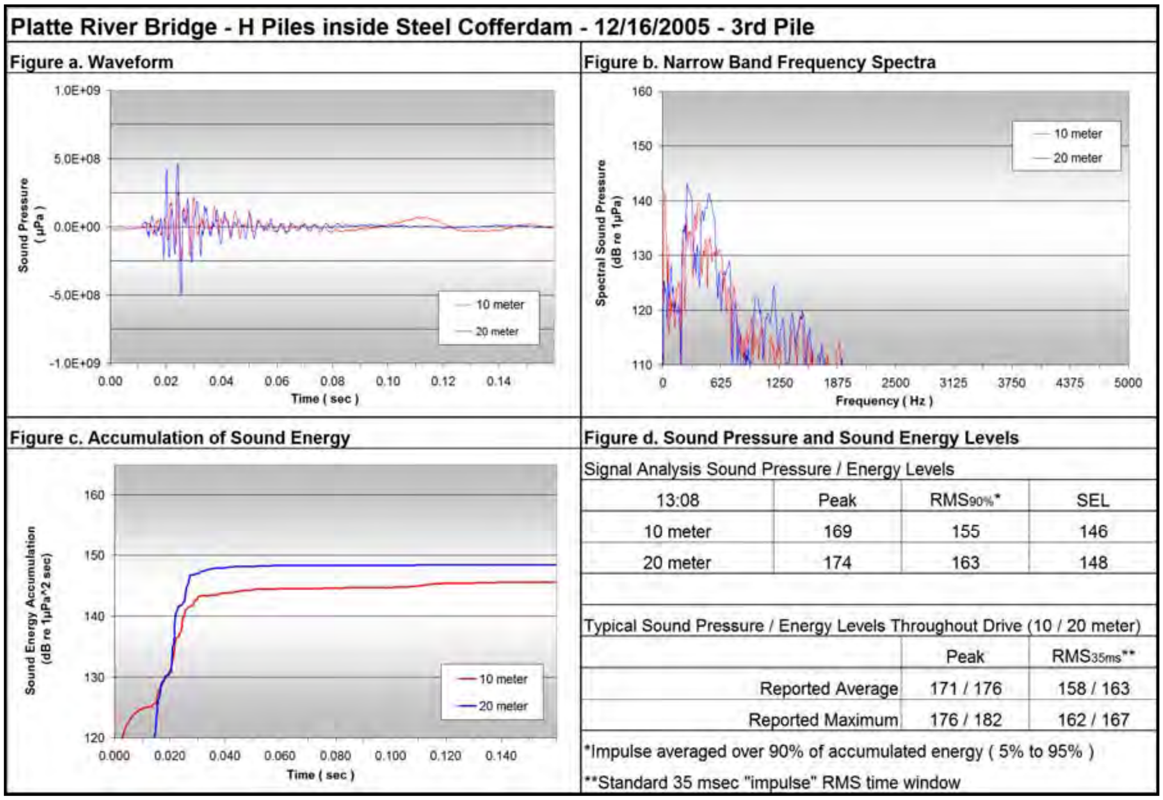


Figure I.4-6 Representative Signal Analyses for H-Piles Driven in the Platte River, Nebraska

I.4.5 14-Inch-Diameter Steel H-Piles—Hazel Avenue Bridge Replacement, Sacramento County, CA

Temporary H piles were driven on shore adjacent to water and in water to support a temporary construction trestle. This trestle was constructed as part of the Hazel Avenue Bridge Replacement project, in Sacramento County, California. Water depths vary based on location on the river, but are usually 1 to 2 meters (3 to 6 feet) at the edges of the river and 3 to 5 meters (10 to 15 feet) in the middle of the river. Figures I.4-7a and I.4-7b show typical H-pile installation in water during construction of the temporary trestle. The area where the piles were driven was covered with large rocks to prevent erosion. The piles had a driving shoe installed, and the drive was started using a hydraulic vibratory hammer and completed with a Berminghammer model B-32 diesel impact hammer. There were 15 days of pile driving and 48 14x117 H-Piles installed over a three-month period.

	
Figure I.4-7a Impact Driving of In-Water H-Piles	**Figure I.4-7b Impact Driving of In-Water H-Piles**

Underwater sound levels were measured at positions ranging from 13 meters (43 feet) to 215 meters (705 feet) from the H-piles (see TableI.4-5 for actual distances). Maximum sound measurement results are summarized in Table I.4-5.

Table I.4-5 Maximum Sound Pressure Levels Measured for the Driving of Steel H-Piles for the Hazel Avenue Bridge – Sacramento County, CA

	Close Location				Distant Location			
	Distance	Sound Pressure Levels in dB			Distance	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
Date	(meters)	Peak	RMS	SEL	(meters)	Peak	RMS	SEL
6/3-5	10	205	--	174	20	196	--	168
6/8	10	206	--	172	20-22	194	--	168
6/9	10	206	--	174	22	190	--	167
6/15	10	210	--	180	20-26	202	--	172
6/16	10	212	--	182	20-26	202	--	178
6/18	10	210	--	179	20-26	204	--	174
6/22	10	212	--	180	20-22	208	--	175
6/25	12-14	213	--	181	22-24	204	--	176
6/30	13-14	207	--	178	22-23	203	--	172
7/2	10	205	--	180	215	167	--	144
7/13	10	207	--	177	20	206	--	173
8/12	10-15	204	--	176	20-25	200	--	172
8/19	9-17	201	--	174	18-22	198	----	174

20 meters = approximately 65 feet; 215 meters = approximately 705 feet

I.4.6 12-Inch-Diameter Steel H Piles—Parson Slough Sill Project, Elkhorn Slough near Moss Landing, CA

In January 2011, monitoring was performed during the installation of four 12x84-90 permanent H-piles driven for the Parson Slough Sill Project on the southeast side of Elkhorn Slough in Monterey County, California. Sheet piles were also driven for this project but are discussed a Chapter I.6. The purpose of the project was to construct a partially submerged tidal barrier across the mouth of the Parsons Slough Channel to slow the water flow during tide changes in order to help prevent erosion in the channel. The monitoring was performed to confirm the adequacy of the 10-meter (33-foot) preliminary marine mammal safety zone.

A HPSI-100 vibratory hammer was used to set the piles, and then an APE D-19-42 diesel powered impact hammer was used to drive the piles to their final depth. Underwater sound measurements were made at two positions on the construction barge—10 meters (33 feet) and 20 meters (65 feet) from the piles. The tidal current was either slack or a very gentle incoming tide during most of the driving. The water depth ranged from approximately 5 to 6 meters (16.5 to 20 feet). Table I.4.6 and I.4.7 show the maximum levels measured for both the vibratory and impact driving of the H-piles. The first four piles installed with the vibratory hammer were monitored. There were only three piles monitored for impact driving. Soft starts and dead blows were used at the beginning the driving events.

Table I.4-6 Measured Sound Pressure Levels from Vibratory Driving of H-Piles Levels

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB							
Pile	Measure-ment Type	10-meter RMS	10-meter Peak Shallow	20-meter RMS	20-meter Peak Shallow	10-meter SEL	10-meter Peak Deep	20-meter SEL	20-meter Peak Deep
Pile 15	Max	149	155	150	155	151	160	149	159
	Average	143	152	144	152	145	155	145	156
Pile 16	Max	148	160	147	155	147	159	146	159
	Average	141	151	143	153	142	154	144	140
Pile 13	Max	148	160	147	155	151	160	149	199
	Average	141	151	144	153	145	155	147	158
Pile 14	Max	145	160	149	155	148	159	149	159
	Average	141	151	144	153	142	154	145	157

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 20 meters == approximately 65 feet

Table I.4-7 Measured Sound Pressure Levels from Impact Driving of H-Piles Levels

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB							
Pile	Measure-ment Type	10-meter RMS	10-meter Peak Shallow	20-meter RMS	20-meter Peak Shallow	10-meter SEL	10-meter Peak Deep	20-meter SEL	20-meter Peak Deep
Pile 15	Max	178	200	174	190	166	195	164	196
	Average	176	193	171	185	163	191	160	191
Pile 13	Max	184	199	176	195	170	195	168	198
	Average	178	194	173	189	165	193	164	193
Pile 16	Max	184	201	174	187	169	195	166	198
	Average	178	194	173	185	163	190	162	191

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 20 meters = approximately 65 feet

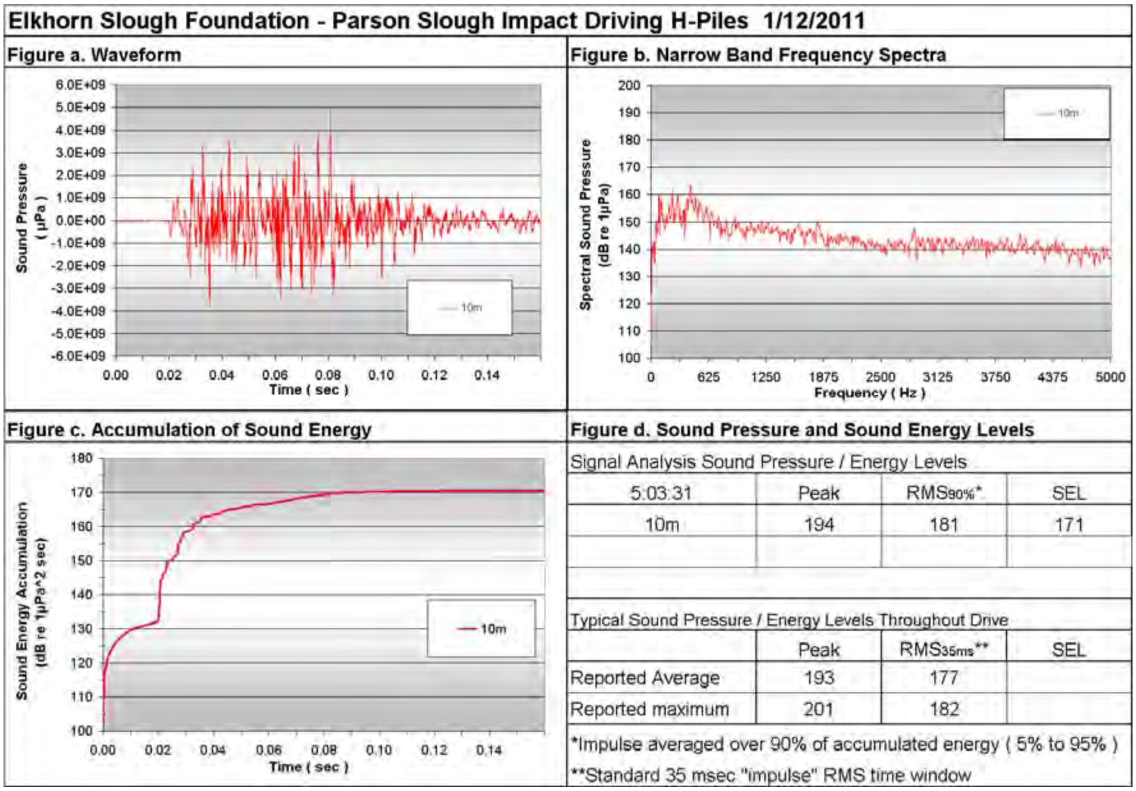


Figure I.4-8 Representative Signal Analysis for Impact Driving H-Piles at Parson Slough, CA

I.4.7 H-Piles—South Umpqua River, Douglas County, OR

On August 26, 2011, four H-piles were driven in the South Umpqua River in Douglas County, Oregon. The purpose of the project was to assess the underwater noise levels while driving piles for a temporary work trestle for the construction of the new Weaver Road Bridge. The H-piles were driven into exposed bedrock with a diesel impact hammer, and then 24-inch-diamater hollow steel piles were placed over the H-piles. There were two hydrophones set up to monitor the pile driving. The near measurement site was 34 feet from the pile driving, and the far site ranged from 84 feet to 112 feet from the pile driving. The water depth at the measurement locations ranged between 3 feet and 6 feet. The water depth at the piles ranged between 12 inches and 30 inches. The maximum underwater sound pressure levels and average sound pressure levels are shown in Table 1.4-8. The bubble curtain that was used did not produce bubbles around the entire pile, resulting in little or no attenuation.

Table I.4-8 Summary of Daily Maximum and Average Peak and Single-Strike SEL Sound Pressure Levels

Pile	Near (34 feet)			Distant (84-112 feet)		
	Distance (feet)	Peak (dB)		Distance (feet)	Single Strike SEL(dB)	
		Maximum	Average		Maximum	Average
H-Pile 1	34	175	173	112	153	150
H-Pile 2	34	178	174	94	155	152
H-Pile 3	34	192	189	105	164	161
H-Pile 4	34	188	182	84	160	157

I.4.8 14-Inch-Diamater H Piles—Port of Anchorage, Anchorage, AK

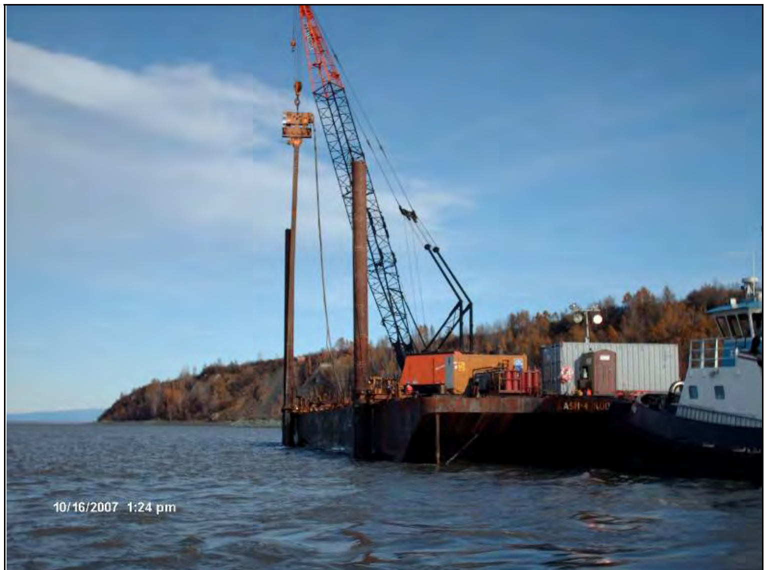


Figure I.4-9 Vibrating in a H-Pile South of the Barge

A test pile driving program was conducted by the Port of Anchorage (POA), Anchorage, Alaska, October 15 through 19, 2007. The test program included driving 14-inch by 90-foot long steel H-piles installed using both vibratory and impact hammers, and one sheet pile using a vibratory hammer. Vibratory piles were driven using an APE 200 vibratory hammer. Impact piles were initially driven about 10 feet using the vibratory hammer and then driven with an APE DelMag Model D30-42 diesel impact hammer to point of refusal or 60 feet below mean lower low water (MLLW).

The survey consisted of measuring underwater sounds of impact and vibratory driving of steel H-piles, vibratory driving of one sheet pile, existing ambient background conditions, dredging operations, the pile driving barge, and a tug boat pulling the barge. A total of 25 measurements were taken over the three-day period: 11 H-piles with the vibratory hammer, 3 H-piles with the impact hammer, 1 sheet pile with the vibratory, 3 ambient measurements, and 7 measurements of various Port activities. Tables I.4-9 and I.4-10 summarize the measurement results. All recordings were made from a 27-foot aluminum hull boat. The motors were left on for the first two days of measurements to hold position in the current. On the third day, the motors were turned off, and the boat drifted with the current. No stationary measurements from an anchored vessel were conducted for this study.

Two hydrophones were suspended directly from the vessel so that measurements were conducted at two depths (mid-column and deep). Due to the strong currents, 10-pound weights were added near the hydrophone so that the hydrophones would be suspended vertically in the water. In addition to the current itself, another potential source of extraneous noise for hydrophones was cable strumming. Strumming is a source of noise caused by vibration of a cable being drawn through water, and it can cause serious noise interference with input into a hydrophone. The sound measurements that were taken while drifting instead of anchoring likely had less strumming interference.

Noise from the monitoring boat also affected the measurements at times. This mostly occurred on the first two days when the captain was reluctant to cut the engines to drift to maintain position because of the strong currents.

Table I.4-9 Measured Sound Pressure Levels (dB) from Vibratory Pile Driving

Pile ID	Description	Water Depth (meters)	Measured Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
			Deep Sensor		Mid-Depth Sensor	
			Peak	RMS	Peak	RMS
Pile 20	15 m West	10-17	175	163	--	162
Pile 20	33 m West	10-17	170	160	--	158
Pile 19	14 m East	10	165	152	--	152
Pile 19	14 m East	10	178	168	--	167
Pile 8	15 m West	12	172	157	--	159
Pile 8	20 m West	12	170	158	--	157
Pile 8	45 m West	12	--	153	--	151
Pile 15	20 m West	11-15	170	162	--	--
Pile 15	55 m West	11-15	163	147	--	--
Pile 15	100 m West	11-15	160	≤145	--	--
Pile 13	45 m North	9	156	145	--	--
Pile 13	45 m North	9	162	152	--	--
Pile 13	40 m North	9	--	138	--	--
Pile 12 Down	160 m North	9	--	132	--	132
Pile 12 Down	220 m North	9	--	130	--	130
Pile 12 Up	250 m North	9	--	135	--	135
Pile 12 Up	280 m North	9	--	130	--	130
Pile 3	260 m North	11	--	130	--	130
Pile 3	325 m North	11	--	138	--	138
Pile 2	550 m North	11	--	122	--	122
Pile 2	600 m North	11	--	<120	--	<120
Pile 1	40 m North	9	--	142	--	142
Pile 1	50 m North	9	--	140	--	140
Pile 1	80 m North	9	--	138	--	138
Pile #1 short part	90 m North	9	158	148	--	148
Pile 4	730 m Southwest	11	--	<120	--	<120
Pile 6	45 m North	20	--	140	--	141
Pile 6	85 m North	20	--	138	--	138
Pile 6	100 m North	20	--	134	--	134

m = meters
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 15 = approximately 49 feet; 17 meters = approximately 56 feet;
250 meters = approximately 820 feet; 730 meters – approximately 2,400 feet

Table I.4-10 Measured Sound Pressure Levels from Impact Pile Driving

Pile ID	Description	Water Depth (meters)	Measured Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
			Deep Sensor			Mid-Depth Sensor		
			Peak	RMS	SEL	Peak	RMS	SEL
Impact 1	19 m West	15-20	194	177	163	--	--	--
Impact 2	45 m West	14	185	173	--	--	173	--
Impact 2	55 m West	14	184	168	156	--	169	--
Impact 3	120 m North	14	183	170	158	--	171	--
Impact 3	145 m North	14	181	168	157	183	167	157
Impact 3	195 m North	14	178	165	154	178	165	154
Impact 3	230 m North	14	176	162	151	175	161	151
Impact 3	275 m North	14	173	158	--	--	161	--
Impact 3	300 m North	14	173	160	--	--	161	--

m = meters
14 meters = approximately 46 feet; 19 meters = approximately 62 feet; 145 meters = approximately 475 feet;
300 meters = approximately 980 feet

I.4.9 14-Inch-Diameter H Piles—Clear Creek Waste Water Plant, Sacramento River, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made on November 20, 2008 when two temporary 14-inch-diameter H-piles were installed in the Sacramento River at the Clear Creek Waste Water Treatment Plant. An APE 200 vibratory driver/extractor was used to install the piles to their final depth.

Sound levels were measured at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile locations. Both of the piles were in 4 to 5 feet of water and the hydrophone was placed downstream in water approximately 5 feet deep. The pile locations were below a riffle in the river where the currents were fairly strong, making it difficult to measure at various positions. Conditions at Pile 1 and Pile 2 were not the same. Pile 1 was in the direct current of the river whereas Pile 2 was in a backwater eddy.

Received RMS SPLs during vibratory pile driving are summarized in Table I.4-11. Peak SPLs during impact pile driving in this study are summarized in Table I.4-9. Most of the energy during the impact driving was between 100 and 1500 Hz. Blackwell (2005) reported higher levels for impact pile driving (206 dB peak at 62 meters [203 feet], 189 dB RMS at 62 meters) at Port MacKenzie[6]. However, the piles for that study were 150-feet-tall, 36-inch-diameter steel piles that were driven 40 to 50 feet into the bottom. This study measured 90-feet-tall, 14-inch-diameter H-piles that were driven to 60 feet below MLLW; these are significantly smaller piles that produce less noise in the water column.

Table I.4-11 Summary of Average Sound Pressure Levels Measured from Driving of 14-Inch H-Piles – Sacramento River, CA

Pile	Conditions	Measured Sound Pressure Levels in dB				
		Peak		RMS	SEL	
		Maximum	Average		Maximum	Average
1	Unattenuated – Vibratory Hammer	197	189	--	184	172
2		169	177	--	164	152

I.4.10 14 x 117 Inch H-Piles—Weiser River Bridge Replacement, US 95, Weiser, ID

Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted on August 27, 2013, for the Weiser River Bridge replacement project. For this project, four 14 x 117-inch H-piles were driven in a de-watered coffer dam. These piles were driven about 114 centimeters (45 inches) into saturated, very stiff-to-hard clay (SPT N-value ranging from 45 to 60). This project was the second of several contracted by the Idaho Transportation Department to assist in identifying potential impacts of pile driving on threatened and endangered species in the Idaho waterways. The first project conducted as part of these efforts was at the North Fork Payette River Bridge near Cascade, Idaho, on July 2, 2013. For the North Fork Payette River Bridge project, two steel shell piles were installed; discussion for this project can be found in Section I.3.32 under steel shell piles. During the pile driving operations at the Weiser River Bridge, the river was diverted by a coffer dam around the pile driving area. The presence of the coffer dam in the river channel reduced the channel cross section, which resulted in the speed of the current being greater than originally anticipated. All piles were driven inside the de-watered coffer dam (mostly dry riverbed). The piles were driven with an ICE I-30 diesel impact hammer. Hydroacoustic data were reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, RMS, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels.

Figure I.4-10 H-Pile Installation at Weiser River Bridge

Measurements were made at two fixed locations in the river, as shown in the pictures above: 10 meters (33 feet) and 20 to 23 meters (65 to 75 feet). The hydrophone was outfitted with a shield to reduce the flow noise from the river. At first location, the hydrophone was set at a water depth of 0.75 meter (2.4 feet). The 20- to 23-meter location was located upstream from the pile driving in a calmer backwater area. The hydrophone depth at this location was approximately 1.3 meters (4.3 feet). Driving for the first H-pile began at 13:17:01, and the pile driving for the fourth H-pile concluded at 16:40:42. The total blow count for all four piles was 4,037. The total time of each drive, blow count, and measurement results are summarized in Tables I.4-12a to I.4-12c. Table I.4-12a shows the peak sound pressure level results, while Tables I.4-12b and I.4-12c show results for RMS and single-strike SEL levels, respectively.

Table I.4-12a Summary of the Measurement Peak Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Peak (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:28:31	1,050	10	172	164–177
			20	177	161–181
2	00:28:01	959	10	170	162–177
			20	175	162–180
3	00:28:06	1,016	10	170	159–174
			20	178	177–180
4	00:28:00	1,012	10	170	159–174
			20-23	164	150–173

Table I.4-12b Summary of the Measurement RMS Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	RMS (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:28:31	1,050	10	162	154–164
			20	169	159–173
2	00:28:01	959	10	160	149–163
			20	169	157–172
3	00:28:06	1,016	10	157	141–160
			20	168	148–172
4	00:28:00	1,012	10	159	146–162
			20-23	157	143–165

Table I.4-12c Summary of the Measurement Single-Strike SEL Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:28:31	1,050	10	145	121–153
			20	158	151–160
2	00:28:01	959	10	143	120–151
			20	157	143–160
3	00:28:06	1,016	10	142	120–149
			20	158	157–160
4	00:28:00	1,012	10	143	121–150
			20-23	144	122–52

I.4.11 H-Piles—Petaluma River Bridge, US 101, Petaluma, CA

Underwater sound measurements were conducted between August 1 and August 7, 2013, for the construction of the US 101 Bridge over Petaluma River in Petaluma, California. The Marin Sonoma Narrows HOV Widening Contract B2 Project was proposed to upgrade the existing US 101 four-lane expressway into a full-access 6-lane freeway. Thirty-one H-piles were driven both on land (in the mud flats during low tide) and in water. A hydraulic impact hammer was used to drive the piles, and hydroacoustic data were primarily reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, RMS, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL. Measurements were made at fixed locations in a boat, ranging from 10 to 23 meters (33 to 75 feet) from the pile driving operation. When the distance between the hydrophone and the piles exceeded 10 meters, it was under low tide conditions and the piles were driven on land. One hydrophone was deployed at depths ranging from 1.2 to 2 meters (4 to 6.5 feet) below the water surface.

On August 1, 2013, eight piles were driven. Pile driving began at 7:01:38, and concluded at 11:11:58. The first four H-piles were driven during low tide, so the piles were driven on land. The final four piles were driven in water approximately 0.9 meter (3 feet) deep.

On August 2, 2013, five additional H-piles were driven, starting at 1:43:38 and ending at 13:59:06. Piles 1 through 4 were driven on land, while the fifth pile was driven in water approximately 0.9 meter (3 feet) deep.

On August 3, 2013, thirteen H-piles were driven. The first pile driving event started at 7:56:11 and ended at 16:13:43. All piles driven in water were inside a de-watered attenuation casing, except the last pile of the day, which was driven within a coffer dam.

On August 5, 2013, one H-pile was driven. Pile driving started at 14:49:33 and ended at 16:23:56. This pile was driven inside a de-watered attenuation casing within a coffer dam.

On August 6 2013, two piles were driven. Pile driving started at 11:20:32, and ended at 15:18:05. Both piles were driven inside a de-watered attenuation casing within a coffer dam.

On August 7, 2013, two piles were driven. Pile driving started at 11:47:29 and ended at 14:09:44. Both piles were driven inside a de-watered attenuation casing within a coffer dam. Hydroacoustic data were reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, RMS, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels.

All peak sound pressure level data is summarized in Table I.7-13, while Tables I.7-13 and I.7-13 summarize RMS and single-strike SEL data, respectively.

Table I.4-13a Summary of the Measurement Peak Sound Pressure Level Results

Date	Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Peak (dB)	
					Average	Range
8/1/2013	1	00:05:02	425	23	171	168–187
	2	00:03:30	288	19	172	160–186
	3	00:03:43	285	13	172	166–177
	4	00:03:54	331	13	176	164–182
	5	00:09:50	436	12	176	168–188
	6	00:02:30	221	12	183	168–186
	7	00:00:43	64	12	183	168–187
	8	00:00:09	15	12	187	172–190
8/2/2013	1	00:05:29	192	16	155	151–157
	2	00:03:55	199	12	158	157–160
	3	00:15:58	782	10	165	161–70
	4	00:18:19	1,100	10	169	165–179
	5	00:05:19	232	10	185	172–199
8/3/2013	1	00:01:02	28	22	159	150–175
	2	00:08:48	32	20	150	150–152
	3	00:07:10	36	17	150	150–151
	4	00:05:51	334	15	153	150–156
	5	00:05:00	300	13	155	152–158
	6	00:06:29	390	10	157	155–159
	7	00:05:22	622	10	158	153–169
	8	00:23:50	1,296	11	159	51–168
	9	01:03:51	948	10	162	150–190
	10	00:09:31	572	10	165	162–171
	11	00:30:44	1,407	10	165	150–173
	12	00:22:04	1,189	10	170	150–176
	13	00:04:35	133	10	187	154–192
8/5/2013	1	01:34:23	731	10	173	160–178
8/6/2013	1	00:47:14	736	10	169	163–174
	2	01:17:36	621	10	176	160–180
8/7/2013	1	01:12:00	586	10	169	160–183
	2	00:26:15	716	10	178	163–183

Table I.4-13b Summary of the Measurement RMS Sound Pressure Level Results

Date	Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	RMS (dB)	
					Average	Range
8/1/2013	1	00:05:02	425	23	161	156–181
	2	00:03:30	288	19	162	151–179
	3	00:03:43	285	13	164	158–172
	4	00:03:54	331	13	168	158–180
	5	00:09:50	436	12	168	157–183
	6	00:02:30	221	12	169	164–176
	7	00:00:43	64	12	169	160–177
	8	00:00:09	15	12	174	159–176
8/2/2013	1	00:05:29	192	16	146	143–147
	2	00:03:55	199	12	149	148–150
	3	00:15:58	782	10	151	148–154
	4	00:18:19	1,100	10	154	151–160
	5	00:05:19	232	10	170	158–181
8/3/2013	1	00:01:02	28	22	145	137–159
	2	00:08:48	32	20	138	137–140
	3	00:07:10	36	17	139	138–139
	4	00:05:51	334	15	142	139–144
	5	00:05:00	300	13	144	143–146
	6	00:06:29	390	10	147	147–149
	7	00:05:22	622	10	147	141–151
	8	00:23:50	1,296	11	147	133–152
	9	01:03:51	948	10	150	133–177
	10	00:09:31	572	10	153	150–156
	11	00:30:44	1,407	10	151	132–156
	12	00:22:04	1,189	10	156	131–159
	13	00:04:35	133	10	172	139–176
8/5/2013	1	01:34:23	731	10	161	145–164
8/6/2013	1	00:47:14	736	10	155	144–159
	2	01:17:36	621	10	163	145–167
8/7/2013	1	01:12:00	586	10	178	163–183
	2	00:26:15	716	10	165	147–170

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet

Table I.4-13c Summary of the Measurement Single-Strike SEL Sound Pressure Level Results

Date	Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
					Average	Range
8/1/2013	1	00:05:02	425	23	152	148–172
	2	00:03:30	288	19	153	143–169
	3	00:03:43	285	13	155	149–163
	4	00:03:54	331	13	157	149–171
	5	00:09:50	436	12	156	148–173
	6	00:02:30	221	12	159	154–168
	7	00:00:43	64	12	158	152–168
	8	00:00:09	15	12	161	151–162
8/2/2013	1	00:05:29	192	16	136	131–139
	2	00:03:55	199	12	138	137–141
	3	00:15:58	782	10	142	139–146
	4	00:18:19	1,100	10	144	138–150
	5	00:05:19	232	10	159	147–171
8/3/2013	1	00:01:02	28	22	134	127–147
	2	00:08:48	32	20	129	126–131
	3	00:07:10	36	17	130	127–131
	4	00:05:51	334	15	132	128–135
	5	00:05:00	300	13	134	132–137
	6	00:06:29	390	10	136	135–139
	7	00:05:22	622	10	136	131–139
	8	00:23:50	1,296	11	137	122–143
	9	01:03:51	948	10	143	121–164
	10	00:09:31	572	10	142	139–146
	11	00:30:44	1,407	10	142	119–147
	12	00:22:04	1,189	10	146	119–150
	13	00:04:35	133	10	162	127–166
8/5/2013	1	01:34:23	731	10	150	131–155
8/6/2013	1	00:47:14	736	10	145	133–149
	2	01:17:36	621	10	152	132–159
8/7/2013	1	01:12:00	586	10	145	129–160
	2	00:26:15	716	10	154	136–160

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 23 meters = approximately 75 feet

I.4.12 References

1. Blackwell, Susanna B. *Underwater measurements of pile-driving sounds during the Port MacKenzie dock modifications, 13-16 August 2004*. Rep. from Greeneridge Sciences, Inc., Goleta, CA, and LGL Alaska Research Associates, Inc., Anchorage, AK, in association with HDR Alaska, Inc., Anchorage, AK, for Knik Arm Bridge and Toll Authority, Anchorage, AK, Department of Transportation and Public Facilities, Anchorage, AK, and Federal Highway Administration, Juneau, AK. 33 p.

2. Blackwell, S.B. 2004. *Underwater Measurements of Pile Driving Sound during the Port MacKenzie Dock Modifications, 13-16 August 2004*. Rep. from Greeneridge Sciences, Inc., Goleta, CA, and LGL Alaska Research Associates, Inc., Anchorage, AK, in association with HDR Alaska, Inc., Anchorage, AK, for Knik Arm Bridge and Toll Authority, Anchorage, AK, Department of Transportation and Public Facilities, Anchorage, AK, and Federal Highway Administration, Juneau, AK. 33 p.

3. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Pile Driving Activities Associated with Construction of the Noyo Bridge*. Report to Caltrans dated March 18 and revised April 9, 2003.

4. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Letter to Justin Baxter (Jeff Luchetti Construction) reporting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Seagate Property, San Rafael Canal Construction Pile Driving*. April 4, 2003.

5. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Letter to Justin Baxter (Jeff Luchetti Construction) reporting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Seagate Property, San Rafael Canal Construction Pile Driving*. April 9, 2003.

6. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2005. *Letter to Bill Chase (Ballena Isle Marina) reporting Results of Underwater Sound Measurements for H-Type Piles at Ballena Isle Marina Breakwater Repair*. May 13, 2005.

7. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Results of Underwater Sound Measurements for the Driving of "H" Piles – Interstate 80 Platte River Bridges*. Prepared for the Nebraska Department of Roads. March 24.

I.5 Concrete Piles

This chapter describes results for projects that involved the installation of concrete piles. All concrete pile installation is conducted using diesel impact hammers with wood cushion blocks that prevent damage to the pile caused by contact with the hammer. These cushions, which fit into the "helmet" of the pile driver assembly, substantially reduce the amount of energy delivered to the pile. Concrete piles have blunt tips and are usually about 0.3 to 0.6 meter (12 to 24 inches) in cross-sectional width. Most common are the 0.6-meter (24-inch) octagonal piles used for wharf construction at port faculties. Some projects used pile jetting during a short portion of the drive, where high-pressure water is sprayed out of the bottom of the pile to help penetrate dense sand layers. Sound pressures associated with concrete piles are much lower than comparably sized steel piles. Most of the projects described in this section involved measurements made 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile. Many projects used an air bubble curtain attenuation system, and one project involved pile driving at the shoreline that resulted in the highest measured sound levels.

I.5.1 16-Inch-Square Concrete Piles at Concord Naval Weapons Station—Concord, CA

Underwater sound levels associated with impact pile driving of concrete piles at the Concord Naval Weapons Station Pier 2 were measured in December 2002. This project involved driving 16-inch square, 25-meter- (80-foot-) long concrete piles. A Vulcan 016 (65 kiloJoule [48,000 ft.-lb.]) steam-powered drop hammer was used to drive the first two piles (Piles 108 and 107). A Conmaco 200 (80 kiloJoule [60,000 ft.-lb.]) steam drop hammer was used to drive the last three piles (Piles 103, 105, and 106). The piles were driven vertically in approximately 7 meters (23 feet) of water immediately adjacent to the existing pier. The piles were driven to a depth of 10 meters (depth varied) below mud line. Underwater sound measurements for each pile were made at approximately 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile, at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet) below the water line. The water depth was approximately 7 meters (24 feet). Only peak pressures and RMS sound pressure levels were measured. Analysis of the signals was performed to acquire narrow band sound frequency information (12-Hz bandwidth). Figure I.5-1a shows the pile driving operation while Figure I.5-1b shows the simple air bubble curtain used for the project.

Figure I.5-1a Driving of 16-Inch-Square Piles

Figure I.5-1b Simple Air Bubble Curtain System Used to Attenuate Noise

Underwater sound measurement results are summarized in Table I.5-1. Measurements made during the driving of Piles 108, 107, and 103 yielded peak pressure levels of 176 to 186 dB and RMS sound pressure levels of 165 to 173 dB. The driving using the Vulcan 016 generated slightly lower sound levels, but the driving periods were longer.

Table I.5-1 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Square Concrete Piles – Concord Naval Weapons Station, Concord, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
108	Unattenuated – Vulcan 016	182	167	--
107	Unattenuated – Vulcan 016	182	168	--
103	Unattenuated – Conmaco 200	184	172	--
105	Unconfined air bubble curtain – Conmaco 200	178	168	--
105	Unattenuated curtain OFF – Conmaco 200	184	173	--
106	Unconfined air bubble curtain – Conmaco 200	182	170	--
106	Unattenuated curtain OFF – Conmaco 200	182	170	--

Permit conditions for the project required the use of an air bubble curtain system since peak unattenuated sound pressures exceeded 170 dB. A simple air bubble curtain system was employed for the fourth and fifth piles (see Figure I.5-1b). This air bubble curtain system attenuated sound pressures by approximately 5 to 8 dB during the driving of Pile 105 at 10:00 a.m. when the tide was slack and currents were light. Sound pressures varied considerably with each strike when the air bubble curtain system was operating. The reduction associated with the air bubble curtain was less for Pile 106, about 0 to 4 dB. Observations at the surface confirm that tidal current was affecting the bubble curtain so that bubbles were not completely enveloping the pile. This was probably the cause for the reduced attenuation on Pile 106.

Pressure over time analysis of the signals revealed complex characteristics of the pulses that were recorded (Figure I.5-2). The waveform indicated that the pulse lasted about 80 to 100 msec. The initial portion of the waveform was represented by low-frequency sound, followed by a higher frequency sound during the second half of the pulse duration. This was evident in the frequency spectra that showed low-frequency sound at about 200 Hz and then increased sound amplitude between 1,000 and 3,000 Hz (Figure I.5-3). The air bubble curtain effectiveness, which was variable, attenuated the signal for frequencies mainly above 500 Hz.

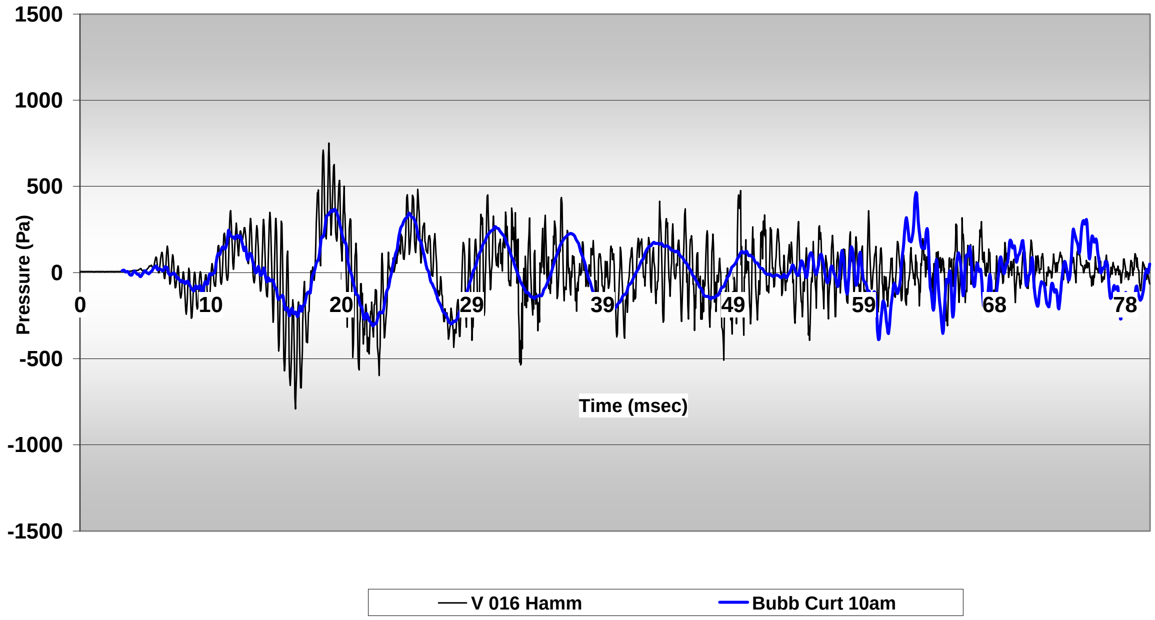


Figure I.5-2 Time History Analysis of Unattenuated and Attenuated Pile Strikes over an 8-Millisecond Period. Note initial low-frequency sounds followed by lower amplitude but higher frequency sounds. An air bubble curtain reduced the high-frequency content of these pulses.

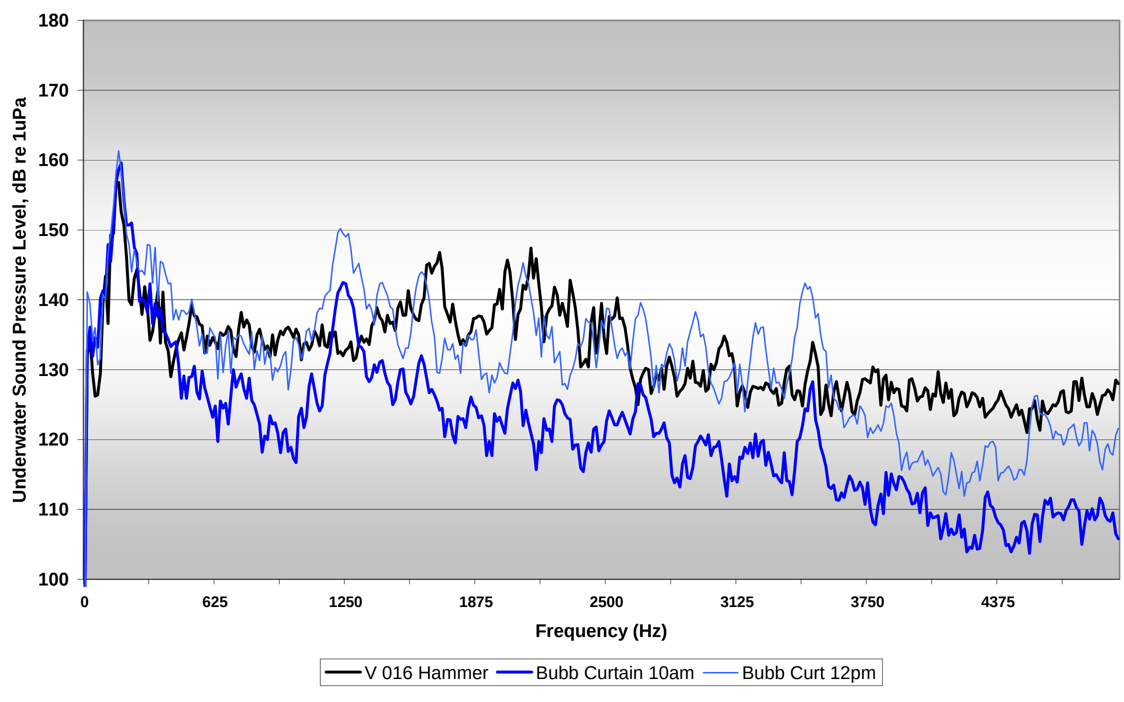


Figure I.5-3 Narrow Band Frequency Spectra for Pile Driving with Different Hammers and Bubble Curtain Conditions. Note that the bubble curtain at 10:00 a.m. was most effective when there was no effect from swift currents due to a slack tide condition.

I.5.2 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles for Amports Pier 95—Benicia, CA

Underwater sound levels were measured at Benicia, California on February 27, March 12, and March 19, 2003. The project involved driving 24-inch, octagonal, 125-foot-long concrete piles. The piles were driven vertically using a Del-Mag D66-22 diesel. Set on a maximum fuel setting, the hammer delivered a maximum impact energy of 220 kilojoules (165,000 ft-lbs). During the March 12 sound tests, the hammer was set on a lower fuel setting and delivered an impact energy of about 50 percent of maximum energy. The piles are located in rows parallel to the shore and are designated A–H. Monitoring was completed for piles in rows B and C. The piles located in row C were generally in shallower water than those in row B due to the slope of the bottom. Water depth at the piles was typically from 3 to 7 meters (10 to 23 feet), and water depth at measurement locations ranged from 4 to 13 meters (13 to 43 feet). Piles were driven to a depth of approximately 25 to 30 meters (90 feet), below mud line. Measurements were made at approximately 3 meters below the water line and at a distance of 10 meters from the pile. Additional measurements at 20 meters were made for selected piles. Tidal currents could be quite strong at times, exceeding 1 meter per second (2 knots). Most of the piles were driven using a confined air bubble curtain, or "Bubbleator." The confined air bubble curtain consisted of a long plastic tube with air supplied to the bottom of the column with PVC pipe. Figure I.5-4a shows a typical pile driven while Figure I.5-4b shows the confined air bubble curtain system (Bubbleator) used for the project.

Figure I.5-4a 24-Inch Octagonal Piles Driven at Amports in Benicia, CA

Figure I.5-4b "Bubbleator" Used to Attenuate Underwater Sound

Table I.5-2 summarizes the measurements made during the testing of the air bubble attenuation system for this project. Measurements were made at 10 meters for all piles, with supplemental measurements at 20 meters for some piles. Typical driving periods were from 15 to 20 minutes, where the pile was struck about once every 1.4 seconds.

Table I.5-2 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles – Amports Pier, Benicia, CA

Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Feb 27	Unattenuated – Row C no confined air bubble curtain – 10 meters	183 typ. 192 max	170 typ. 172 max	--
Feb 28	Attenuated – Row C with short confined air bubble curtain ON – 10 meters	165 typ. 175 max	152 typ. 162 max	--
Feb 28	Unattenuated – same as above, but confined air bubble curtain OFF	185	170	--
Mar 12	Attenuated – Row C with short confined air bubble curtain ON – 10 meters	~185	~172	--
Mar 12	Attenuated – Row C with short confined air bubble curtain ON – 20 meters	~179	~168	--
Mar 12	Unattenuated – Row C with short confined air bubble curtain ON – 10 meters	~192	~176	--
Mar 12	Unattenuated – Row C with short confined air bubble curtain ON – 20 meters	~186	~171	--
Mar 19	Attenuated – Row B with long confined air bubble curtain ON – 10 meters	172 typ. 181 max	157 typ. 167 max	--
Mar 19	Attenuated – Row B with long confined air bubble curtain ON – 20 meters	170 typ. 178 max	155 typ. 162 max	--
Mar 19	Attenuated – Row C with long confined air bubble curtain ON – 10 meters	162 typ. 167 max	145 typ. 150 max	--
Mar 19	Attenuated – Row C with long confined air bubble curtain ON – 20 meters	157 typ. 159 max	145 typ. 148 max	--

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 20 meters = approximately 65 feet

Unattenuated Pile Strikes

Concrete piles driven unattenuated were measured at two 10-meter locations on February 27 to establish unattenuated conditions. Levels were similar at each of the positions. Peak sound pressures were typically from 180 to 183 dB. During a brief period of the drive (about 1 minute), peak pressures were 192 dB. RMS levels typically ranged from 168 to 170 dB but rose to 172 dB during that short louder period of the drive. Additional unattenuated data were collected for short periods of subsequent drives where the attenuation system was turned on and off for testing. Measurements also were taken at 20 meters from the pile, which indicated about 5 dB lower levels than at 10 meters for both peak and RMS levels.

Attenuated Pile Strikes

Extensive testing of a confined air bubble curtain system was conducted on three different days. Measurements were taken at 10 meters, with supplemental measurements at 20 meters. The system was turned off near the end of some drives to test the effectiveness. Original designs were found to be adequate for the piles driven in shallower waters. In these cases, the attenuation system was found to reduce sound pressures by 15 to 20 dB. Piles driven in the deeper water were not attenuated adequately because the attenuation system was too short. Improvements that included lengthening the system and providing resilient pile guides to the inside were found to be adequate in reducing noise for both the deeper and shallower piles. This study did find that the top of the attenuator had to be extended 1.5 meters (5 feet) above the water surface. The attenuator performance was substantially compromised when water could be drawn through the system. Lower hammer energies were tested but were not found to have much effect on the sound levels.

Sound pressures were attenuated by 20 to 30 dB when the system was operating as planned and the top of the attenuator was at least 1.5 meters above the water surface. Peak sound pressures were reduced below 170 dB at 10 and 20 meters, while RMS levels were reduced below 150 dB. The system was not as effective in deeper water, where water infiltration into the system could not be adequately controlled. Under these conditions, peak and RMS sound levels could be reduced only by 10 to 15 dB. The drop-off rate for attenuated pile strikes from 10 to 20 meters was about 2 to 5 dB for both peak and RMS sound pressures.

I.5.3 ~24-Inch Diameter Concrete Piles at Pier 40 Marina Construction—San Francisco, CA

In July 2004, eight square concrete piles, about 24 inches wide, were driven at Pier 40 in San Francisco, California. The purpose of the project was to expand the existing marina. Piles were driven with a diesel impact hammer. The hammer setting was varied in order to meet regulatory criteria. Water jetting also was used to ease driving through dense sand layers and to allow pile driving with lower hammer impact energies. Figure I.5-5 shows a driven square concrete pile.

Figure I.5-5 24-Inch-Square Piles at Pier 40 – San Francisco, CA

Primary measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile, and some supplementary measurements were made at 20 meters (65 feet) for selected piles. Measurements are summarized in Table I.5-3. The water depth at the project site ranged from 2.5 to 4 meters (8 to 13 feet), and hydrophone depth ranged from 1.5 to 3 meters (5 to 10 feet) accordingly. Drive durations varied from a few minutes to about 40 minutes. A difference in the substrate and hammer energy used was the cause for the variation in drive time. With the hammer set on a higher fuel setting, average and maximum sound levels at 10 meters were 185 and 190 dB peak and 172 and 177 dB RMS, respectively. At 20 meters, sound pressure levels were about 3 to 5 dB lower. On the lowest fuel setting, average and maximum sound levels at 10 meters were 175 and 178 dB peak and 162 and 165 dB RMS, respectively. At 20 meters, sound levels were about 10 dB lower. During the driving of the last pile, jetting was turned off to assess the effect on underwater noise. At 10 meters, with no jetting, average and maximum sound levels were 185 and 192 dB peak and 172 and 180 dB RMS, respectively. Analysis of the signals was not conducted to obtain frequency spectra, waveforms, and sound exposure levels (SELs).

These measurements found that peak sound pressures were generally about 185 dB with the hammer fuel setting at “high” and with no pile jetting. Highest peak sound pressures were almost 190 dB. Lowering the fuel setting and continuously using jetting resulted in lower sound pressures. Measurements made at 10 meters from the pile in different directions were quite similar, indicating little variation in the radiation pattern near the pile. Sound pressures measured at 20 meters from the pile ranged from about 5 to over 10 dB lower than the 10-meter measurements. The least amount of attenuation occurred when the piles were driven at the highest fuel setting without any jetting.

Table I.5-3 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Square Concrete Piles – Pier 40, San Francisco, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
P-SS-30	Unattenuated – hammer on high fuel setting	184	171	--
P-SS-26	Unattenuated – hammer on high fuel setting	183	170	--
P-SS-28	Unattenuated – hammer on high fuel setting	186	174	--
P-SS-29	Unattenuated – measured 10 meters (33 feet) west	180	167	--
P-SS-29	Unattenuated – measured 10 meters (33 feet) east	180	167	--
P-SS-31	Unattenuated – hammer on unknown fuel setting	183	170	--
P-NS-25	Unattenuated – hammer on unknown fuel setting	183	169	--
P-NS-24	Unattenuated – hammer on lowest fuel setting with jetting	172	158	--
P-NS-25	Unattenuated – hammer on lowest fuel setting with jetting	175	162	--
P-NS-25	Unattenuated – hammer on lowest fuel setting no jetting	186	173	--

I.5.4 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles at Berth 22—Port of Oakland, CA

Several 24-inch octagonal concrete piles were driven at the Port of Oakland in August 2004 and December 2004[1]. The purpose of the project was to reconstruct Berth 22 at the Port of Oakland. Piles were driven with a Del Mag D-62-22, which has a maximum energy per blow of about 224 kilojoules. Indicator piles were driven unattenuated during August 2004, when a fish in cage study was performed[2]. Results of the measured sound levels are presented in Table I.5-4. Figure I.5-6 shows pile driving of indicator piles at Berth 22. An attenuation system was used for production pile driving. Initially, this system was turned off many times to assess the acoustical performance. Measurements were mostly made at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile and at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet). More distant measurements were made for selected piles. Water depth varied from 0 to 15 meters (49 feet), based on the pile location. Piles were driven in five rows, where the first row was onshore and the outer row was in about 15 meters of water. Row A was in the deepest water, and Row E was at the shore. The typical duration of driving time per pile was about 15 to 30 minutes.

Figure I.5-6 Driving of 24-Inch Octagonal Indicator Piles at Port of Oakland Berth 22. Pile being driven is in Row A, while Row E is at the shoreline.

The August 2004 measurements were made during installation of indicator piles. The measurements were taken as part of a fish in cage study. Results of that study are reported separately[2]. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. reported sound pressure measurements from that study along with other Berth 22 measurements.

An air bubble curtain system was used to reduce sound pressures. This system seemed to be the most effective in the deep water and not very effective in shallow water. In fact, a pile driven on shore next to the water resulted in the highest sound pressure levels. This was obviously an effect of the substrates that the pile was driven through. Measurements are summarized in Table I.5-4.

Table I.5-4 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles – Berth 22, Port of Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Row A	Unattenuated	187	176	166
Row A	Attenuated	181	168	160
Row B	Unattenuated	185	174	162
Row B	Attenuated	179	168	158
Row C	Unattenuated	183	171	162
Row C	Attenuated	181	169	158
Row D	Unattenuated	191	179	167
Row D	Attenuated	189	177	168
Row E	On land adjacent to water (i.e., attenuated)	190	178	172

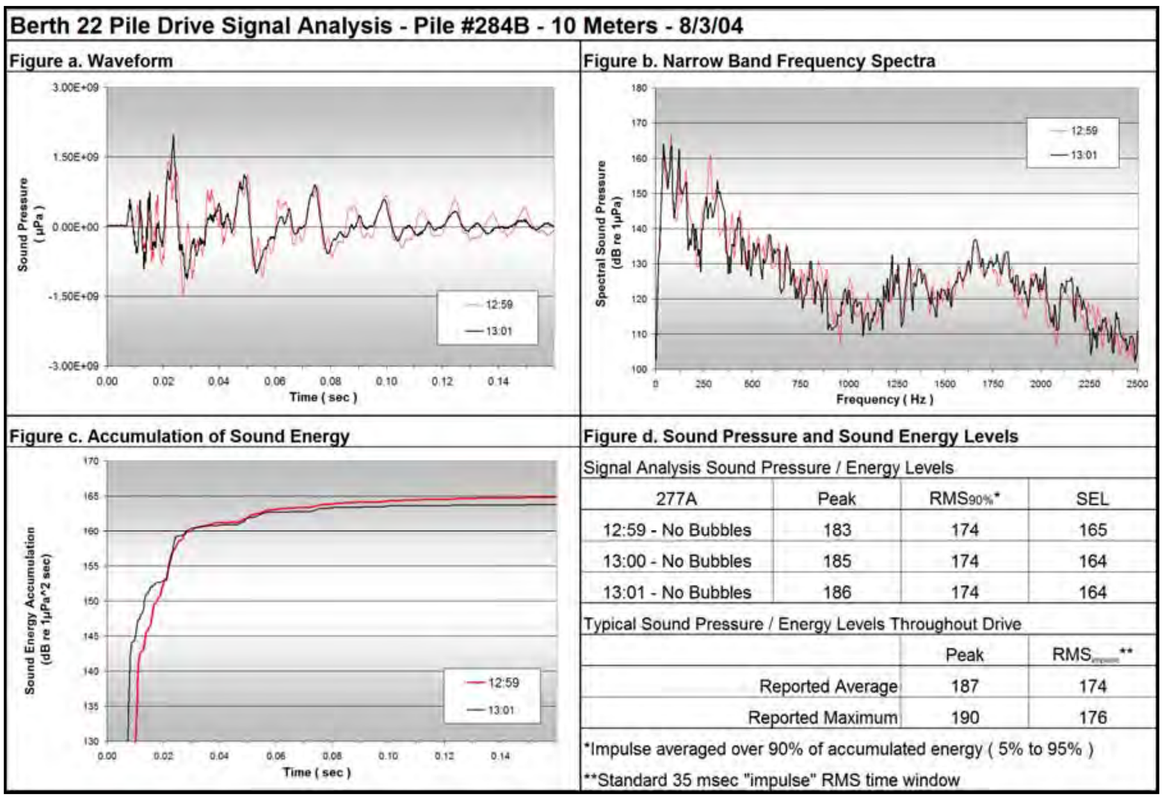
Unattenuated Pile Driving

In Row A, the average sound levels at 10 meters (33 feet) were 187 dB peak, 176 dB RMS, and 166 dB SEL. Peak sound levels reached 189 to 191 dB for a short period of the driving events. In Row B, sound levels were generally slightly lower than Row A levels. In Row C, the average and maximum sound levels were even lower than levels for Row A or B. In Row D, which was closest, the average and maximum sound levels were 191 and 193 dB peak and 179 and 181 dB RMS, respectively. In Row E, the average and maximum sound levels were 190 and 196 dB peak and 178 and 186 dB RMS, respectively.

Attenuated Pile Driving

In Row A at 10 meters the average and maximum sound levels were 181 and 186 dB peak and 168 and 173 dB RMS, respectively. In Row B, the average and maximum sound levels were 179 and 184 dB peak and 168 and 173 dB RMS, respectively. In Row C, the average and maximum sound levels were 181 and 185 dB peak and 169 and 171 dB RMS, respectively. In Row D, the average and maximum sound levels were 189 and 195 dB peak and 177 and 182 dB RMS, respectively. Row E piles were driven on land a few feet from the water's edge; thus, no attenuation system was used and no attenuated data for these piles exist.

Figure I.5-7 shows the signal analysis for two unattenuated pile strikes measured at 10 meters from the pile. These were typical of signals measured at 10 meters, although some higher frequency sounds occasionally resulted in higher peak sound pressures.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

277A	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
12:59 - No Bubbles	183	174	165
13:00 - No Bubbles	185	174	164
13:01 - No Bubbles	186	174	164

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMSimpulse**
Reported Average	187	174
Reported Maximum	190	176

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.5-7 Representative Signal Analyses for Two Pulses Associated with a 24-Inch Concrete Pile. Piles driven without attenuation system at Berth 22, Port of Oakland, CA during fish exposure study.

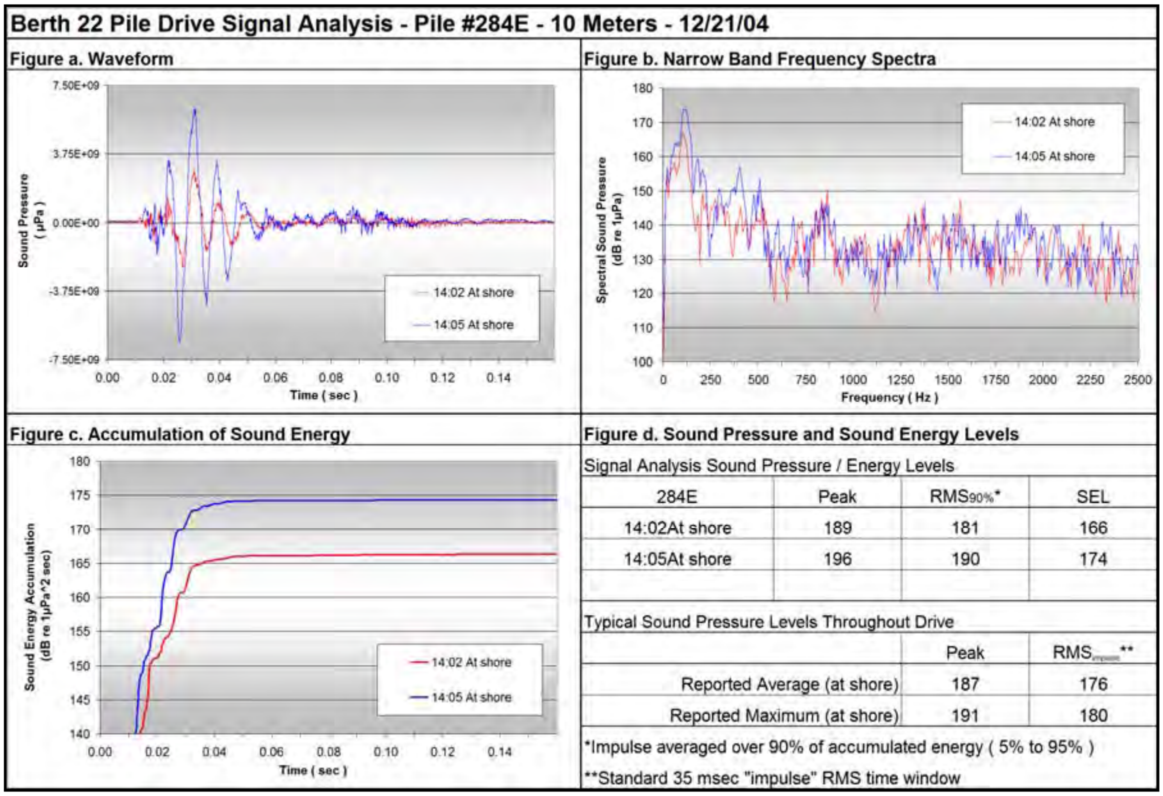
I.5.5 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles Driven on Land Adjacent to Water at Berth 22—Port of Oakland, CA

Pile driving at Row E resulted in the highest sound levels measured for concrete pile driving. Interestingly, these piles were driven at the shoreline, mostly on land. However, an engineered steep bank was along the shore. In addition, these piles were driven through dense sandy layers without the use of jetting. A land-based pile driver was used to drive these shorter piles. Although these levels were higher, the driving times were about 10 minutes, as opposed to 30 to almost 40 minutes for the in-water piles. Sounds from this activity were measured at varying distances during the driving of four piles. Measurements for Row E piles are summarized in Table I.5-5.

Table I.5-5 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles on Land Adjacent to Water – Berth 22, Port of Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Row E	First pile – 15 meters (49 feet)	190	180	NA
Row E	First pile – 25 meters (82 feet)	190	180	NA
Row E	First pile – 55 meters (180 feet)	176	165	NA
Row E	Second pile – 10 meters (33 feet)	192	180	170
Row E	Second pile – 25 meters (82 feet)	190	180	NA
Row E	Second pile – 35 meters (115 feet)	184	171	NA
Row E	Third pile – 10 meters (33 feet)	195	185	174
Row E	Third pile – 20 meters (65 feet)	189	178	NA
Row E	Third pile – 55 meters (180 feet)	180	170	NA
Row E	Fourth pile – 15 meters (49 feet)	188	178	NA
Row E	Fourth pile – 25 meters (82 feet)	187	175	NA
Row E	Fourth pile – 85 meters (279 feet)	175	164	NA

At 10 meters, peak pressures ranged from about 185 to 195 dB, while RMS levels ranged from 175 to 185 dB. SEL levels were about 165 to 174 dB. Sound levels dropped off at about 5 dB from 10 to 20 meters. At 50 meters, levels were about 180 dB peak and 170 dB RMS. The signal analysis presented in Figure I.5-8 shows the relatively low-frequency sound associated with this pulse. One pulse represents the lower amplitude sounds at the beginning of the drive, and the other represents the loudest measured pulses near the end of the driving. Much of the substantial sound content was within the frequency range of 20 to 250 Hz.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

284E	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
14:02At shore	189	181	166
14:05At shore	196	190	174

Typical Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMSimpulse**
Reported Average (at shore)	187	176
Reported Maximum (at shore)	191	180

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.5-8 Representative Signal Analyses for Two Pulses Associated with a 24-Inch Concrete Pile Driven at the Shoreline at Berth 22, Port of Oakland, CA

I.5.6 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles during Underwater Noise Monitoring for Fish Cage Study at Berth 22—Port of Oakland, CA

As discussed previously, a fish cage study was conducted during the unattenuated driving of concrete indicator piles at Berth 22 at the Port of Oakland. Hydrophones were placed inside and outside of each fish cage. In addition, measurements were made at 100 meters (33 feet) from the pile in two different directions. Figure I.5-9 shows the deployment of a fish cage at 10 meters from the pile during driving of a Row A pile. The photograph was taken near the 100-meter hydrophone position. Piles for this study were driven at Row A (13 meters deep [43 feet]) and Row B (10 meters deep). Hydrophones and fish cages were placed at a depth of 8 meters (23 feet). Fish were not exposed for the entire driving period, since exposure periods were held constant for each driving event tested.

Figure I.5-9 Pile Driving during Fish Exposure Study at Berth 22, Port of Oakland. Picture was taken 100 meters (330 feet) west of pile driving activity, while fish were being exposed at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile.

Results of the measured sound levels are presented in Table I.5-6. These are the average levels measured during the loudest part of each pile driving event. Usually, pile driving began with lower levels and increased during the first minute of the driving event. Maxi-mum peak sound pressures were about 190 dB, while maximum RMS levels were 178 dB and SEL levels were 168 dB.

Table I.5-6 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles – Berth 22, Port of Oakland, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
Pile	Conditions	Peak	RMS	SEL
277B	Unattenuated fish cage – 10 meters	188	176	--
277B	Unattenuated – 100 meters SW	170	158	--
277B	Unattenuated – 100 meters NW	175	162	--
277A	Unattenuated fish cage – 10 meters	187	174	165
277A	Unattenuated – 100 meters SW	167	156	146
284B	Unattenuated fish cage – 10 meters	186	175	164
284B	Unattenuated – 100 meters SW	174	163	152
284A	Unattenuated fish cage – 10 meters	188	176	166
284A	Unattenuated – 100 meters SW	174	162	152

10 meters –= approximately 33 feet; 100 meters = approximately 330 feet

I.5.7 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles during Underwater Noise Monitoring at Berth 32—Port of Oakland, CA

In September 2004, five 24-inch octagonal concrete piles were driven at Berth 32 at the Port of Oakland in 1 day. The purpose of the project was to strengthen the existing berth. A Del Mag D-62 diesel impact hammer was used to drive the octagonal reinforced concrete piles (see Figure I.5-10). The hammer energy was approximately 224 kilojoules of energy on each blow. Attenuation systems were not used during these measurements.

Figure I.5-10 Driving of 24-Inch Octagonal Piles at Berth 32, Port of Oakland, CA

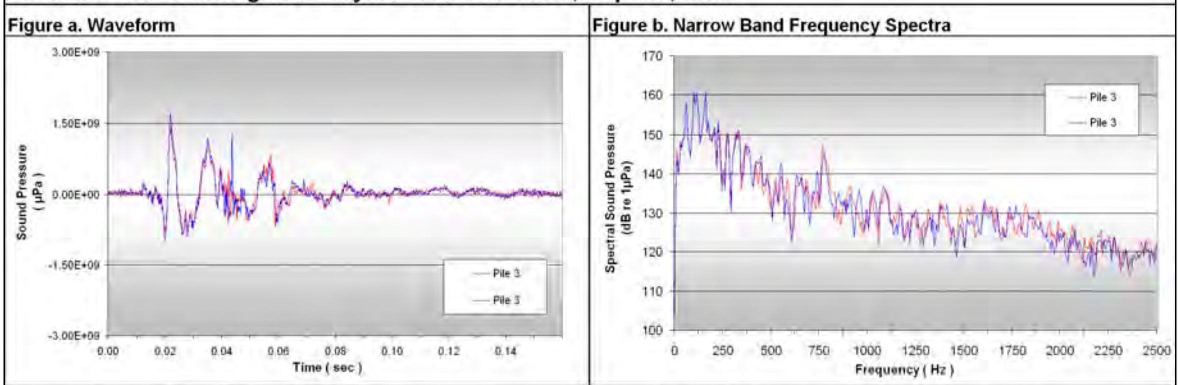
The piles were driven in water that was over 10 meters (33 feet) deep, and measurements were taken at a distance of 10 meters at 3 meters (10 feet) deep. The sound pressure data summarized in Table I.5-7 indicate generally consistent sound pressure levels for the five different piles measured. For typical pile strikes, peak sound pressures were 185 dB, with a range of 181 to 189 dB. RMS sound pressure levels were about 173 dB, with a range of about 170 to 180 dB. Analyses of pile strike pulses indicate SELs of about 161 to 163 dB. The typical range in sound pressures over the course of a pile driving event was 3 to 5 dB. The results of these measurements were consistent with data collected for other unattenuated 24-inch concrete piles.

Table I.5-7 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles – Berth 32, Port of Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Diesel hammer – unattenuated	185	173	162
2	Diesel hammer – unattenuated	185	173	163
3	Diesel hammer – unattenuated	184	174	161
4	Diesel hammer – unattenuated	185	173	163
5	Diesel hammer – unattenuated	185	173	161

Signal analyses for two pile strikes during driving of the third pile are shown in Figure I.5-11. These sounds are typically characterized by low-frequency sound content of about 20 to 500 Hz.

Berth 32 Pile Drive Signal Analysis - 3rd Pile 14:26, Sept 27, 2004



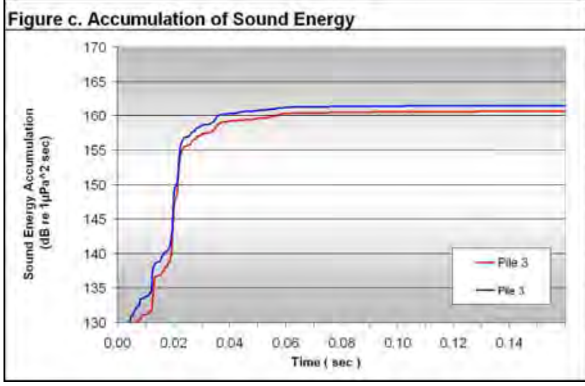


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

- 14:26:00	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Pulse #1	183	173	161
Pulse #2	185	175	161

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS impulse**
Reported Average	184	174
Reported Maximum	189	181

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.5-11 Representative Signal Analyses for Two Pulses Associated with a 24-Inch Concrete Pile. Piles driven without attenuation system at Berth 32, Port of Oakland, CA

I.5.8 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles at Berth 32—Port of Oakland, CA

Additional underwater sound measurements for five octagonal reinforced concrete piles were conducted at Pier 32 at the Port of Oakland in April 2005. The Del Mag D-62 diesel impact hammer also was used to drive these five piles. Measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile, at a depth of 3 meters (10 feet) from the water surface. An air bubble curtain system was deployed for the driving events but was turned off for brief periods to assess its performance in reducing underwater sound pressures. Pile driving activities with the air bubble curtain system operating are shown in Figure I.5-12.

Figure I.5-12 Driving of 24-Inch Octagonal Piles at Berth 32, Port of Oakland with an Air Bubble Curtain System to Attenuate Sounds

Results from the driving of five piles are summarized in Table I.5-8. Testing of the air bubble curtain systems occurred during driving of the first and fourth piles. In general, the peak sound pressure levels with the sound attenuation system in operation ranged from 177 to 180 dB. The associated RMS sound pressure levels ranged from 166 to 170 dB, and the SEL levels ranged from 154 to 160 dB. Unattenuated levels varied with peak pressures of about 185 to 187 dB, RMS levels of 163 to 172 dB, and SEL levels of 158 to 165 dB. These unattenuated levels were consistent with previous measurements made at Berth 32 and other similar projects. It appears from these measurements that the air bubble curtain system reduced peak pressures by 5 to 10 dB and RMS levels by about 5 dB. SEL levels were reduced by 1 to 5 dB. The performance of the system appeared to vary somewhat, where consistent levels occurred for Piles 1, 2, 3 and 4, but much lower levels for Pile 5. Analysis of the data indicates that the variation may have been attributable to the air bubble curtain performance.

Table I.5-8 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for Driving Octagonal Concrete Piles – Berth 32, Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Attenuated – diesel hammer	178	168	157
1	Unattenuated – diesel hammer	187	172	158
2	Attenuated – diesel hammer	180	167	157
3	Attenuated – diesel hammer	180	167	158
4	Attenuated – diesel hammer	180	167	158
4	Unattenuated – diesel hammer	185	176	165
5	Attenuated – diesel hammer	173	163	153

Signals analyzed for a bubble curtain test are shown in Figure I.5-13. Review of the narrow band frequency spectra indicates that bubble curtain performance varied. The attenuated pulse shown for 11:22 (prior to the air bubble curtain being turned off) indicates substantial attenuation at most frequencies. The greatest reduction was at frequencies above 250 Hz, where up to 20 dB of attenuation occurred. The attenuated pulse at 11:47 showed much less attenuation; however, about 10 dB of attenuation occurred at the low frequencies that contain much of the sound content. This analysis indicates that a problem may have occurred with the air bubble curtain system after the system was turned off. Usually air bubble curtains are effective at reducing the higher frequency sounds.

Berth 32 Pile Drive Signal Analysis - Pile #4 - 10 Meters - Bubble Curtain On/Off Test - 4/21/2005

Figure a. Waveform

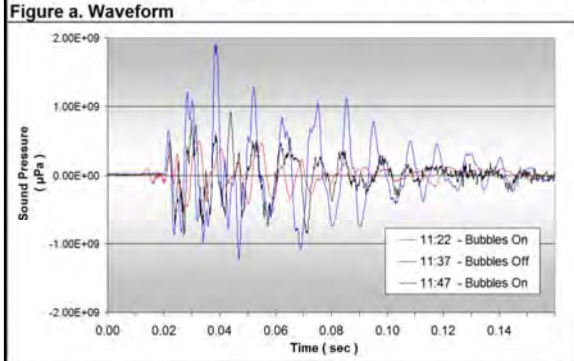


Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra

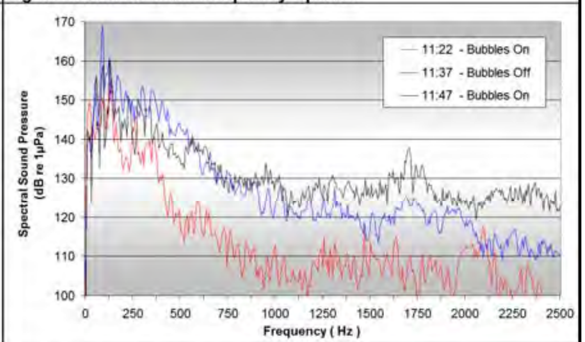


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

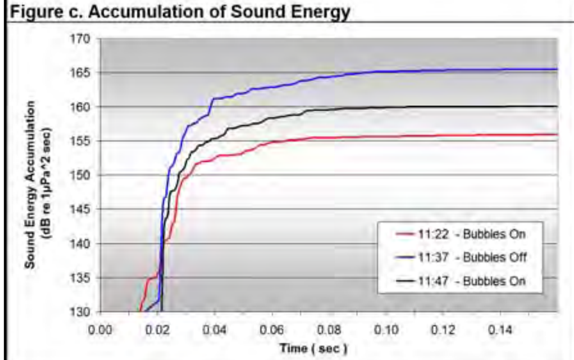


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
11:22 - Bubbles On	175	166	156
11:37 - Bubbles Off	186	176	165
11:47 - Bubbles On	179	171	160

Typical Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive	Peak	RMSimpulse**
Reported Average (Bubbles On / Off)	178 / 184	167 / 174
Reported Maximum (Bubbles On / Off)	183 / 187	173 / 176

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.5-13 Representative Signal Analyses for Three Different Pulses Associated with a 24-Inch Concrete Pile. Air bubble curtain system was evaluated through on and off settings. Piles driven at Berth 32, Port of Oakland, CA.

I.5.9 18-Inch Octagonal Concrete Pile—Berkeley Marina, Berkeley, CA

Underwater sound measurements were performed on April 10, 2007, during the installation of one concrete pile at the Berkeley Marina to support new or rehabilitated wharfs.

The piles driven were 18-inch octagonal concrete piles that were 60 feet long. They were driven with an ICE-60 diesel-powered hammer about 10 feet from the east shore in water that was about 3 meters (10 feet) deep. Measurements were made at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile. The tide was quite low. The water depth was only 2.8 meters (9.2 feet), and measurements were made at a depth of 2 meters (6.5 feet). The peak sound pressure levels and the RMS sound pressure levels were measured continuously during the driving event.

Analyses of the acoustic signals from this pile driving event are provided in Figure I.5-14. Table I.5.9 shows the maximum and average peak and RMS levels measured. SEL levels were not measured continuously. Analyses of the loudest piles strikes, shown Figure I.5-14, indicate that maximum SEL levels were about 155 dB.

Table I.5-9 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving 18-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles – Berkeley Marina, Berkeley, CA

Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)					
	Peak		RMS		SEL	
	Max	Average	Max	Average	Max	Average
Unattenuated – Diesel Impact Hammer	181	172	167	159	155	--

Berkeley Marina 4/10/2007 Measurements at 10m South

Figure a. Waveform

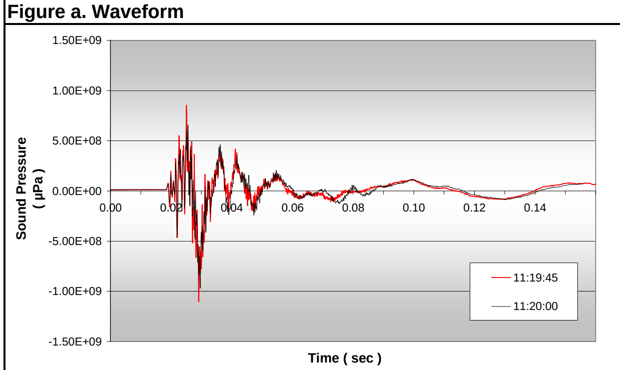


Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra

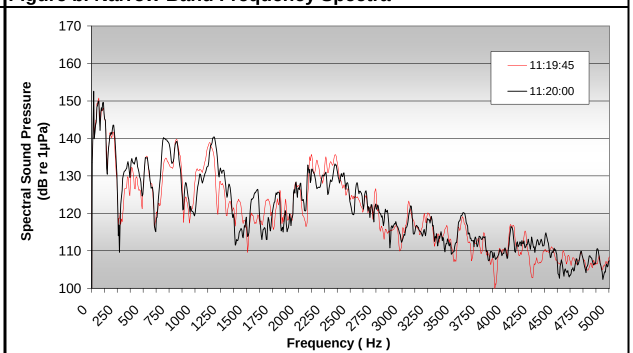


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

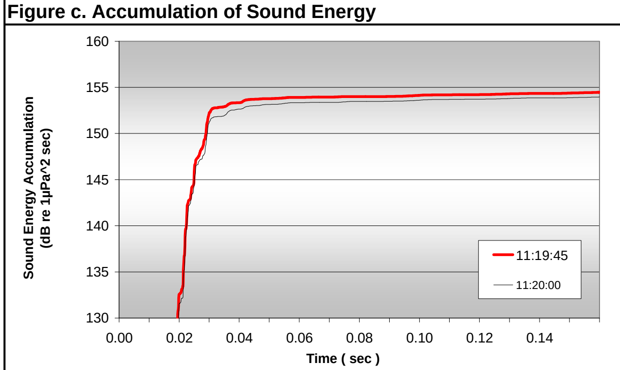


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Exposure Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
11:19:45	181	164	154
11:20:00	180	163	154

Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	$RMS_{impulse}$**
Reported Average	172	159
Reported Maximum	181	167

*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.5-14 Signal Analyses of Typical Pile Strike, Berkeley Marina, CA

I.5.10 18-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles—Berkeley Marina, Berkeley, CA

Underwater sound measurements were conducted on November 11, 2009, during the installation of three different 18-inch octagonal concrete piles at the Berkeley Marina. Pile installation was performed using a DelMag 30-42 diesel powered impact hammer.

Underwater sound measurements were made at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles. Two piles were next to the shore and the third pile was in deeper water away from shore. Water depth ranged from approximately 8 to 12 feet. The measurements were made from the floating dock where piles were being installed. The peak sound pressure levels, RMS, and single-strike SEL were measured continuously during the driving events. Sound measurement results are provided in Table I.5.10.

Table I.5-10 Summary of Measured Sound Pressure Levels for Driving 18-Inch Octagonal Piles – Berkeley Marina, Berkeley, CA

Pile	Conditions		Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
			Peak	SEL	RMS
1	Unattenuated Diesel Impact Hammer	Average	181	154	165
		Maximum	184	157	167
2	Unattenuated Diesel Impact Hammer[a]	Average	188	163	173
		Maximum	192	167	177
3	Unattenuated Diesel Impact Hammer	Average	174	147	158
		Maximum	185	154	166

[a] A partial bubble ring was used but it provided no measureable reduction in sound level.

The sound pressure data presented in Table I.5.10 indicates fairly repeatable sound pressure levels at each 10-meter location. Pile 2 had a higher level most likely due to harder driving. A partial bubble ring was used on Pile 2 with no measurable reduction in sound level. The reason for this was that the bubble ring did not completely surround the pile, allowing the noise from the pile strikes to be transferred directly into the water column.

I.5.11 24-Inch Octagonal Concrete Piles—Humboldt State University Aquatic Center Floating Dock, Humboldt Bay, Eureka, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made on November 1, 2010, when three 24-inch octagonal concrete piles were driven at Humboldt Bay in Eureka, California. The piles were jetted in to within 5 feet of the final tip elevation and then were driven the final 5 feet with an APE D36-32 diesel impact hammer. The total actual driving time for each pile was less than 5 minutes. The hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted at two locations; one was a fixed location that was 20 to 32 meters (65 to 105 feet) west of the piles being driven, and the other was 10 meters (33 feet) north of the piles being driven. The water depth at the 10-meter location was 4 meters (13 feet), and the hydrophone was set at 2 meters (6.5 feet) deep during the measurements. At the fixed location, the water depth was 3 meters (10 feet) and the hydrophone was set at 1.5 meters (5 feet) deep. Table I.5.11 summarizes the results of these measurements at both locations. All piles were driven without any attenuation.

Table I.5-11 Summary of Measured Sound Levels for Pile Driving of Unattenuated 24-inch Octagonal Concrete Piles – Humboldt Bay, Eureka, CA

		10-Meter (33-Foot) Location						20- to 32-Meter (65-Foot to 105-Foot) Location					
		Sound Pressure Levels in dB						Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
		Maximum			Average			Maximum			Average		
Pile	# of Blows	Peak	RMS	SEL	Peak	RMS	SEL	Peak	RMS	SEL	Peak	RMS	SEL
2[a]	56	179	162	152	176	158	151	175	160	151	173	155	148
3[b]	73	176	159	148	171	156	145	171	153	142	170	142	131
4[c]	65	176	167	155	171	156	142	169	152	142	168	150	136

[a] Pile 2 measured at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet)
[b] Pile 3 measured at 10 and 26 meters (33 and 85 feet)
[c] Pile C measured at 10 and 32 meters (33 and 105 feet)

I.5.12 12-Inch Square Concrete Piles—Haehl Creek, Willits, CA

Figure I.5-15 Upstream Measurement Site

Underwater sound measurements were made on July 13, 2011, when three 12-inch square concrete piles were driven at the abutment on the south side of Haehl Creek in Willits, California. The creek was temporarily dammed (see Figure I.5-15) and run through a flexible plastic pipe next to the construction site. An APE D 30-32 Diesel Impact hammer was used for all three concrete piles. Two systems were used to take the underwater sound measurements. One was approximately 18 meters (59 feet) upstream of pile driving activities and the other was approximately 41 meters (135 feet) downstream. Positions closer were either dewatered or had very shallow water (less than 1 foot deep).

Table I.5-12 Summary of Sound Pressures Measured for the Driving of 12-Inch Square Concrete Piles – Willits, CA

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB Measured at 10 Meters (33 Feet)		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	Unattenuated – Diesel Impact Hammer	176	--	146
2	Unattenuated – Diesel Impact Hammer	170	--	146
3	Unattenuated – Diesel Impact Hammer	168	--	142

I.5.13 24-Inch Square Concrete Fender Piles in 12 Meters of Water—Shell Martinez Marine Oil Terminal, Martinez, CA

Eleven 24-inch square concrete fender piles were driven as part of the construction of the fender retrofit project at the Shell Martinez Refinery Marine Terminal Berths 1 and 2 in Martinez, California (Figure I.5-16). Pile installation was performed using a diesel impact hammer to drive the piles to a final tip elevation. The purpose of the project was to replace the current fender design with a square concrete piling and foam-filled fender system at the marine terminal. The water depth where the piles were driven was 6 meters (20 feet). Measurements were conducted on two days: October 9 and 10, 2012.

Figure I.5-16 Wharf at Shell Martinez Refinery Marine Terminal Berths

There were six piles driven during the monitoring efforts on October 9, 2012. To install all six piles, it took a total of 8,800 strikes, the majority of which were used on the first pile (4,500 strikes). For the remainder, the number of strikes ranged from 695 to 1,045 per pile. The measurements were made on the north side of the pier at the location of Fender D. Measurements were taken at two distances from the pile driving events: the first location was positioned 17 meters (56 feet) from Pile 5 and 17.5 meters from the remaining five piles being driven. The water depth was 8 meters (26 feet), and the hydrophone was set at a depth of 6 meters (20 feet). The second location was positioned 35 to 70 meters (115 to 230 feet) from the piles being driven (no data was collected during the first pile driving event). The water depth at the distant locations was 3.6 meters (12 feet), and the hydrophone was set at a depth of 2 meters (6.5 feet). No RMS data was collected at the distance location. The measurement results for peak, RMS, and single-strike SEL levels are summarized in Table I.5-13.

Table I.5-13: Summary of the Measurements Results for October 9, 2012

Pile	Time of Event, MM:SS	Distance to Pile (meters)	Peak (dB)		RMS (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)		# of Strikes
			Ave	Range	Ave	Range	Ave	Range	
Pile 1	02:35	17.5	191	173–195	176	150–179	162	141–168	4,200
		70	No Data Available						
Pile 2	00:30	17.5	186	178—205[a]	172	159–183	160	145–171	1,045
		70	161	155–169	No Data Available		138	127–144	
Pile 3	00:27	17.5	185	179–193	170	164–178	159	144–167	950
		70	159	155–165	No Data Available		136	121–143	
Pile 4	00:21	17.5	190	186–192	175	166–177	164	145–165	695
		35	175	170–179	No Data Available		149	123–156	
Pile 5	00:27	17	186	177–194	171	164–178	158	144–166	1,045
		35	173	170–182	No Data Available		147	124–159	
Pile 6	00:23	17.5	189	183–191	175	165–177	163	147–166	865
		35	178	170–180	No Data Available		151	124–156	

[a] The measured level of 205 dB occurred only for a few strikes when the pile pads were not working properly. This is not a typical sound level.

17.5 meters = approximately 57.5 feet; 35 meters = approximately 115 feet

Five additional piles were driven on October 10, 2012. A total of 2,915 strikes were used to install all five piles. Measurements were made at two locations: 17.5 meters and 35 meters from the pile driving event. At the 17.5-meter position, the water depth was approximately 8 meters, and the hydrophone was set at a depth of 6 meters; at the 35-meter position, the water depth was 6 meters, and the hydrophone was set at a depth of 3 meters. No RMS data was collected at the distance location. The measurement results for peak, RMS, and single-strike SEL levels are shown in Table I.5-14.

Table I.5-14: Summary of the Measurement Results for October 10, 2012

Pile	Time of Event, MM:SS	Distance to Pile (meters)	Peak (dB)		RMS (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)		# of Strikes
			Ave	Range	Ave	Range	Ave	Range	
Pile 1	00:16	17.5	184	180–190	170	168–175	159	146–164	975
		35	173	171–176	No Data Available		148	134–154	
Pile 2	00:15	17.5	183	179–192	169	163–175	158	145–164	565
		35	173	167–177	No Data Available		147	133–154	
Pile 3	00:12	17.5	188	184–195	174	171–179	162	148–168	420
		35	177	171–179	No Data Available		152	138–156	
Pile 4	00:10	17.5	184	179–188	170	166–174	159	146–163	370
		35	172	169–177	No Data Available		147	135–153	
Pile 5	00:16	17.5	186	180–192	172	168–177	160	146–165	585
		35	173	170–179	No Data Available		147	134–155	

17.5 meters = approximately 57.5 feet; 35 meters = approximately 115 feet

I.5.14 16.5-Inch Concrete Piles—Kawaihae Small Boat Harbor, Kawaihae, HI

Between September 16, 2013, and October 23, 2013, hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted during the installation of 18 16.5-inch octagonal concrete mooring piles in the northeast portion of the Kawaihae Small Boat Harbor (south) on the island of Hawaii (Figure I.5-17). The work performed consisted of the installation of a mooring system for up to 25 light-draft vessels in the northeast portion of the inner harbor basin. The Kawaihae Small Boat Harbor was a relatively shallow harbor, surrounded by two rock breakwaters. The larger breakwater was on the outside of the harbor and was approximately 375 meters (1,230 feet) in length. The inner breakwater was approximately 229 meters (751 feet) long, and there was an 85-meter (279-foot) wide opening to the harbor. The work was conducted behind the inner breakwater, and there was no direct path for the sound to enter the open water outside the harbor. The D19-32 diesel impact hammer, manufactured by Pileco, Inc., was used to drive the piles. A bubble curtain was used during the installation of all piles. Hydroacoustic data were reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, RMS, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels.

Figure I.5-17 Pile Installation at Kawaihae Small Boat Harbor

One pile was driven in dry land, and the remaining piles were driven in water ranging in depth from 2 to 4 meters (6.5 to 13 feet). Measurements were made at fixed locations in the harbor. The nearest hydrophone to the pile driving operations was positioned 10 meters (33 feet) away. Water depths of this hydrophone ranged from 1 to 3 meters. A second hydrophone was positioned 46 meters (151 feet) from the piles, at a depth of 4 meters. Depending upon weather conditions, a third hydrophone was deployed from near the opening of the harbor in water 6 to 8 meters (20 to 26 feet) deep. Distances from the pile driving ranged from approximately 120 to 210 meters (390 to 690 feet). Measurement results for peak, RMS, and SEL levels are summarized in Tables I.5-15a, I.5-15b, and I.5-15c, respectively.

Table I.5-15a: Summary of the Measurement Peak Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Peak (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:22:58	827	10	167	163–171
			46	159	151–166
			210	No Data Available[a]	
2	00:21:37	885	10	178	162–188
			46	166	158–174
			200	No Data Available[a]	
3	00:29:48	556	10	172	165–181
			165	No Data Available[a]	
4	00:13:25	1,325	10	168	162–176
			46	163	158–170
5	00:27:32	987	10	166	158–174
			46	144	136–157
			158	No Data Available[a]	
6	00:14:23	736	10	186	178–192
			46	171	163–179
			155	No Data Available[a]	
7	00:15:34	742	10	181	160–189
			46	170	162–175
			145	No Data Available[a]	
8	01:34:11	1,057	10	180	168–191
			46	167	145–175
			140	No Data Available[a]	
9	00:21:32	956	10	182	168–189
10	00:18:02	821	10	180	169–186
			46	164	161–170
11	00:13:24	622	10	182	175–188
			46	167	160–177
			130	150	138–158
12	00:19:06	897	10	182	176–186
			46	163	156–170
			120	152	140–164
13	00:13:42	556	10	181	172–186
			46	163	156–170
			125	151	141–162
14	00:10:13	483	10	179	168–183
			46	161	158–169
15	00:14:49	562	10	179	168–184
			46	164	159–170
16	00:14:06	677	10	177	171–188
			46	167	162–179
17	00:17:06	796	10	177	175–179
18	00:21:23	941	10	178	166–182
			46	164	157–173

[a] Peak levels were not detectable above ambient.
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 46 meters = approximately 151 feet; 140 meters = approximately 460 feet

Table I.5–15b: Summary of the Measurement RMS Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	RMS (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:22:58	827	10	155	151–159
			46	149	140–156
			210	132	128–138
2	00:21:37	885	10	167	151–178
			46	158	149–164
			200	127	120–137
3	00:29:48	556	10	163	159–168
			165	Not Detectable[a]	
4	00:13:25	1,325	10	160	136–168
			46	154	149–159
5	00:27:32	987	10	158	146–168
			46	144	128–152
			158	131	120–140
6	00:14:23	736	10	169	164–174
			46	162	148–169
			155	134	128–140
7	00:15:34	742	10	171	155–178
			46	160	137–164
			145	134	119–143
8	01:34:11	1,057	10	168	156–178
			46	158	154–163
			140	134	123–140
9	00:21:32	956	10	171	154–179
10	00:18:02	821	10	167	157–174
			46	153	133–158
11	00:13:24	622	10	172	166–175
			46	158	148–172
			130	140	118–147
12	00:19:06	897	10	171	166–175
			46	151	131–156
			120	141	129–146
13	00:13:42	556	10	170	163–175
			46	152	131–157
			125	141	120–147
14	00:10:13	483	10	166	156–172
			46	153	135–156
15	00:14:49	562	10	166	156–174
			46	154	133–159
16	00:14:06	677	10	166	162–179
			46	158	152–168
17	00:17:06	796	10	164	157–169
18	00:21:23	941	10	166	157–171
			46	154	144–160

[a] RMS levels were not detectable above ambient.
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 46 meters = approximately 151 feet; 140 meters = approximately 460 feet

Table I.5-15c: Summary of the Measurement Single-Strike SEL Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (HH:MM:SS)	Number of Strikes	Measurement Position (meters)	Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
				Average	Range
1	00:22:58	827	10	143	138–147
			46	138	126–143
			210	120	116–126
2	00:21:37	885	10	155	144–167
			46	146	139–152
			200	119	112–125
3	00:29:48	556	10	154	150–160
			165	Not Detectable[a]	
4	00:13:25	1,325	10	151	144–157
			46	144	139–128
5	00:27:32	987	10	149	138–159
			46	124	118–141
			158	120	113–128
6	00:14:23	736	10	159	156–163
			46	153	142–158
			155	123	109–128
7	00:15:34	742	10	158	146–167
			46	151	125–154
			145	124	112–132
8	01:34:11	1,057	10	156	148–167
			46	150	132–155
			140	124	115–129
9	00:21:32	956	10	159	145–164
10	00:18:02	821	10	157	149–161
			46	143	122–147
11	00:13:24	622	10	160	156–166
			46	146	139–166
			130	127	110–135
12	00:19:06	897	10	159	149–163
			46	140	120–144
			120	128	115–134
13	00:13:42	556	10	158	145–164
			46	140	121–145
			125	128	116–134
14	00:10:13	483	10	155	148–162
			46	143	128–146
15	00:14:49	562	10	156	148–163
			46	145	123–148
16	00:14:06	677	10	155	152–168
			46	147	139–156
17	00:17:06	796	10	155	153–158
18	00:21:23	941	10	154	146–160
			46	143	134–148

[a] SEL levels were not detectable above ambient.
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 46 meters = approximately 151 feet; 140 meters = approximately 460 feet

I.5.15 14-Inch Square Concrete Mooring Piles, Noyo Harbor Mooring Basin Dock, Fort Bragg, CA

Underwater sound measurements were made as part of the Noyo Harbor Mooring Basin Dock Replacement and Modification Project on July 31, 2014 and August 14, 2014 (**Figure 1.5-18**). On July 31, four 14-inch square concrete piles were driven, and on August 14, an additional 14-inch pile was driven. On both occasions, a Delmag D12-42 diesel impact hammer was used for the installation. According to the conditions of the permit authorized by the California Coastal Commission, all pile installation required the use of a bubble curtain; however, during the installation of the first pile, the contractor did not use a bubble. The remainder of the piles was driven with a bubble curtain.

Figure I.5.18– Noyo Harbor

In the project area, the water depth was approximately 2 to 3 meters (6.5 to 10 feet). This area is located behind a sea wall that protects the berths from strong tidal and river currents. The field measurements were made at two fixed locations in the harbor, ranging from 10 to 48 meters (33 to 157 feet) from the piles. The first hydrophone was placed 10 meters from each pile, while the second hydrophone was deployed 40 to 48 meters (131 to 157 feet) from the piles, depending upon the site conditions. The total driving time for each pile ranged from 5 to 21 minutes. On July 31, the total number of strikes per pile was approximately 829, 339, 57, and 260 for Piles 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively. The number of strikes for the pile installed on August 14 was 316. Table I.5.16 summarizes the results of these measurements at both locations. While the first pile driven was unattenuated, the other four piles were driven with a bubble curtain. Figure 1.5 19 shows the difference between the unattenuated and attenuated pile driving on July 31, 2014 at the 10-meter location.

Table I.5.16 Summary of Pile Driving of Unattenuated and Attenuated 14-inch Square Concrete Piles – Noyo Harbor

Date	Conditions	Distance	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
			Peak	RMS	SEL
July 31, 2014	Unattenuated	10 meters (33 feet)	173 Typ. 183 Max.	157 Typ. 166 Max.	146 Typ. 154 Max.
		45 meters (148 feet)	153 Typ. 163 Max.	139 Typ. 148 Max.	127 Typ. 136 Max.
	Attenuated	10 meters (33 feet)	161 Typ. 168 Max.	147Typ. 155 Max.	137 Typ. 144 Max.
		40 meters (131 feet)	145 Typ. 157 Max.	132 Typ. 136 Max.	119 Typ. 125 Max.
		45 meters (148 feet)	138 Typ. 155 Max.	123 Typ. 134 Max.	118 Typ. 133 Max.
August 14, 2014	Attenuated	10 meters (33 feet)	155 Typ. 164 Max.	143 Typ. 150 Max.	134 Typ. 139 Max.
		58 meters (190 feet)	133 Typ. 141 Max.	123 Typ. 127 Max.	119 Typ. 121 Max.

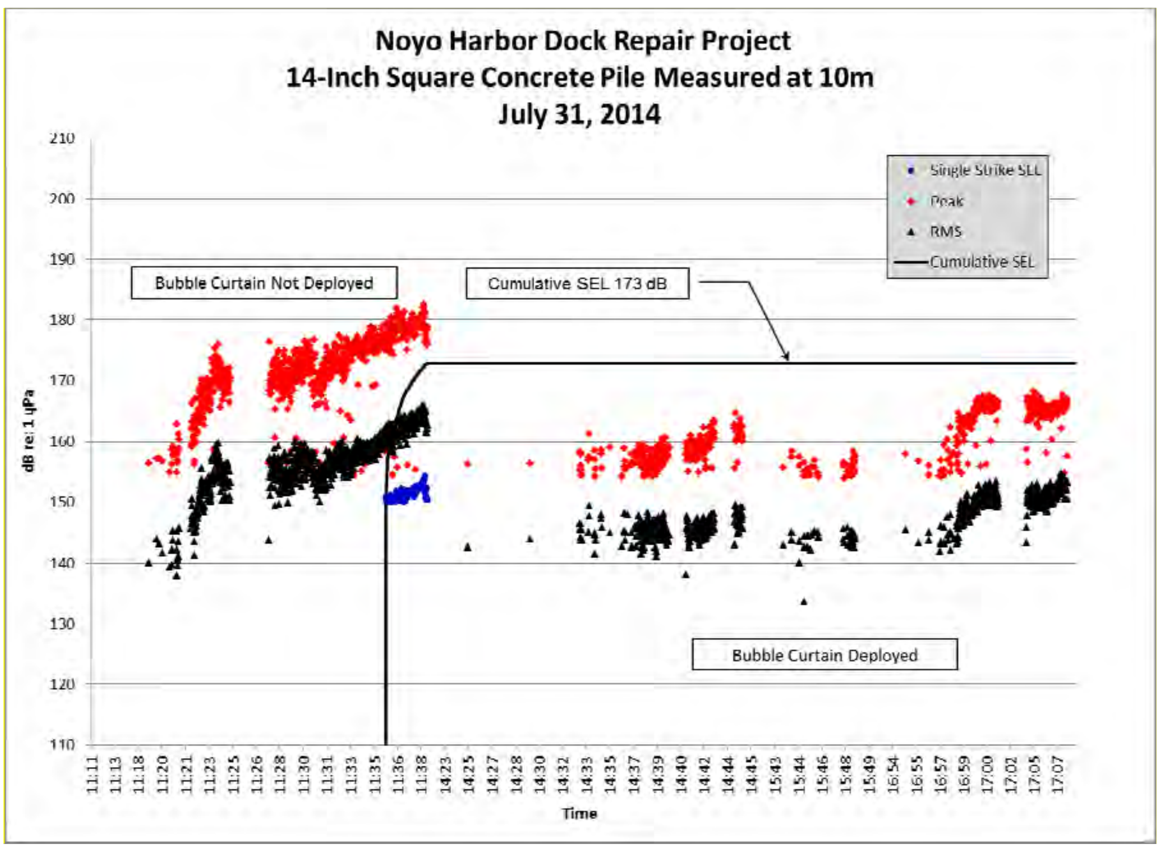


Figure I.5.19 – Unattenuated and Attenuated 14-inch Square Concrete Piles – Noyo Harbor

1.5.16 Choctawhatchee Bay Bridge Test Pile Project

Hydroacoustic monitoring for the test pile driving associated with installation of concrete piles in Walton County, Florida at the Choctawhatchee Bay Bridge on State Road 83 (U.S. Highway 331) was conducted from February 24, 2014 through March 20, 2014.

Piles were driven to expand the Choctawhatchee Bay Bridge. The purpose of the project was to expand the two-lane facility crossing Choctawhatchee Bay to a four-lane facility in order to increase capacity and improve mobility between the Walton County beaches and the Interstate 10 corridor. The expansion for the Choctawhatchee Bay Bridge covered a total length of 3.4 miles.

Hydroacoustic monitoring was conducted on 12 test piles. There were two types of test piles used for this project, Type I and Type II. Type I piles are hollow except for an 11-foot solid section in the tip, or bottom, of the pile and a 10-foot solid section in the head, or top, of the pile. Thus, 139 feet of a 160-foot Type I pile are hollow. Type II piles are solid for their entire length of 160 feet, and contain more steel for that reason. Both piles are high-capacity piles. Of the 12 test piles monitored, five were Type I and seven were Type II.

The hydroacoustic data are primarily reported for individual pulses as sound pressure level peak (SPLpeak) and root mean square (SPLrms). Additionally, SEL and cumulative sound exposure levels (cSEL) are provided. Table I.5.17 summarizes the daily SPLpeak, SPLrms, SEL, and cSEL levels as measured at 33 feet.

Table I.5.17 Summary of Pile Driving at the "Near Field" (33 feet) Location

Pile ID	Pile Type	Total Strike Count	Time	SPLpeak[a]		SPLrms[a]		SEL[a]		Cumulative SEL[b]
				Mean	Range	Mean	Range	Mean	Range	
13	II	629	9:49:48–12:11:28	_ [c]	Max 197	175	170–184	162	144–174	194
15	II	771	11:50:04–14:00:40	190	185–199	177	168–185	167	155–175	197
22	II	1,690	11:50:04–14:00:40	189	184–199	177	168–185	167	155–175	198
26	I	1,629	9:49:48–12:11:28	182	177–192	169	163–179	159	148–169	191
28	I	1,207	15:46:16–17:35:16	183	187–190	169	160–178	159	148–167	191
30	I	1,526	12:19:32–13:56:55	183	176– 191	170	161–176	159	147–166	192
25	I	907	13:04:42–16:37:25	180	176–189	168	163–176	158	149–165	188
32	I	1,232	16:36:38–14:16:55	176	168–185	164	155–171	154	142–160	186
14	II	339	13:44:45–14:26:48	184	175–189	171	163–175	162	148–165	188
18	II	2,176	13:38:01–15:13:03	194	189–200	180	173–185	170	159–174	204
20	II	725	11:50:45–12:30:10	189	184–196	177	164–182	167	156–173	196
24	II	430	11:50:45–12:30:10	187	181–195	174	167–181	165	154–172	192

[a] – dB re: 1μPa

[b] – dB re: 1μP1-sec^2

[c] Error in SPLpeak mean because detector only captured max level

The field measurements were made on the pile-driving barge at 33 feet from each of the piles and at a remote location 154 feet to 1,500 feet away from the barge.

Measurements were made using two separate systems (Figure I.5.20). The first was a Reson TC4033 hydrophone connected to a Larson Davis 831 Sound Level Meter (SLM). This system was used to measure sounds at 33 feet from the pile, the "near field" location. The second system consisted of the Reson TC4013 hydrophone with PCB in-line charge amplifier (Model 422E13) and PCB multi-gain signal conditioner (Model 480M122) feeding the signal into a Roland Model R-05 solid state recorder. The sound recordings were subsequently analyzed using a Larson Davis SLM. The multi-gain signal conditioner provided the ability to lower or raise the signal strength so that measurements were made within the dynamic ranges of the instruments used to analyze the signals.

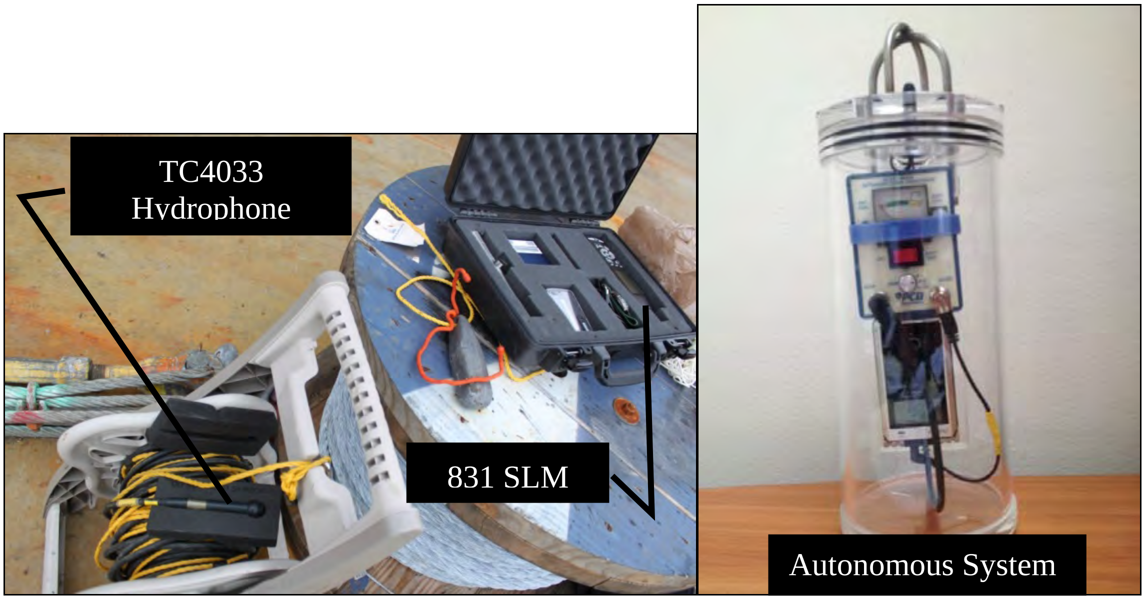


Figure I.5.20 – Instrumentation used for Underwater Measurements

Driving of each test pile was completed within a single day and no more than one test pile was driven on any day. During the pile-driving events, there were periods with no pile driving taking place. These delays were due to leveling the pile, equipment problems, or adjustment of the impact hammer.

During the pile driving, the times were recorded and the number of pile strikes was estimated from the acoustic pile-driving data. Pile installation was performed using a diesel impact hammer (ICE 100).

The measurements were acoustically isolated from the barge to ensure that the underwater noise was the only noise being measured. **Figure I.5.21** shows the pile driving locations.

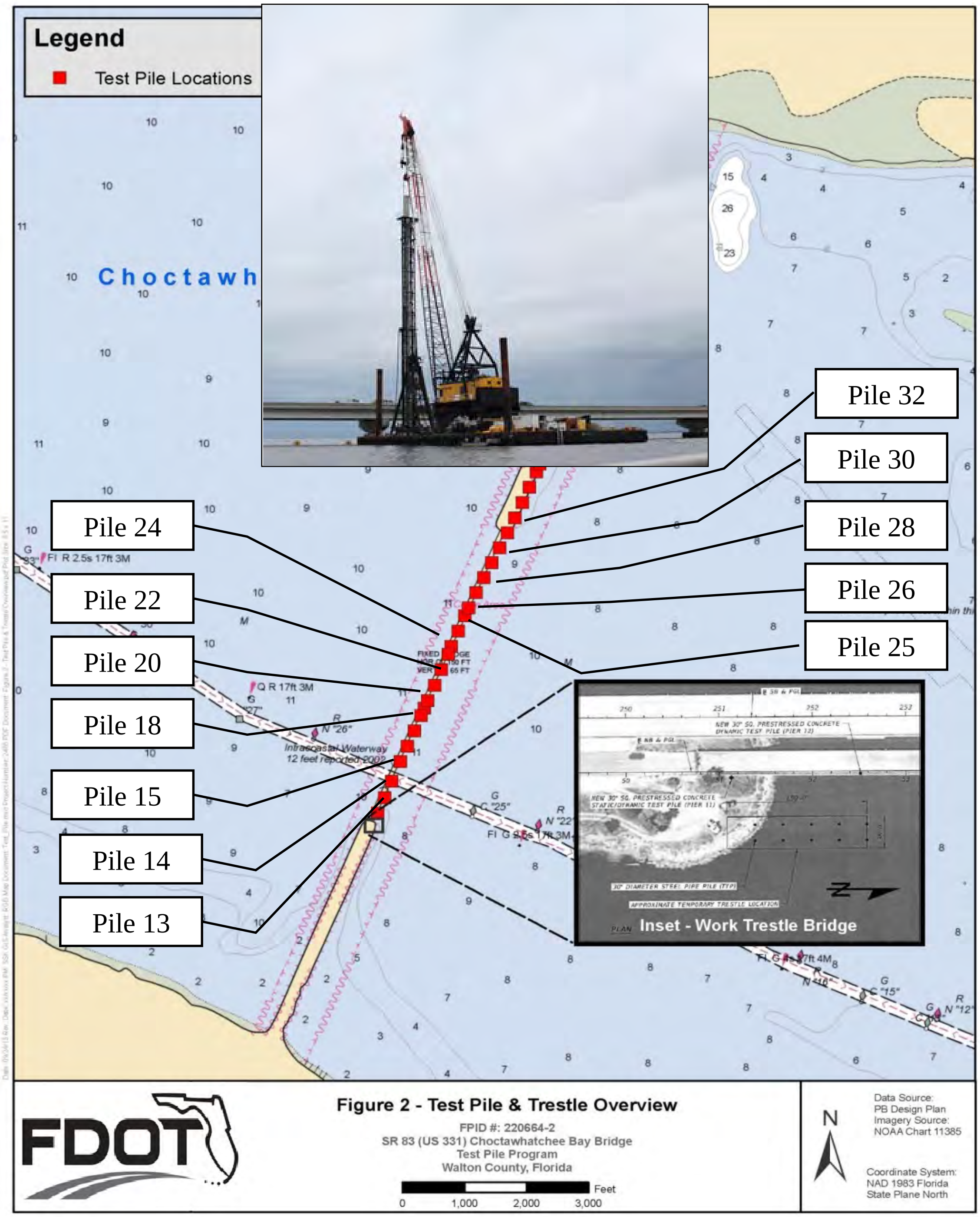


Figure I.5.21 – Location of 12 Test Piles

Metrics Collected "Near Field" (10 meters)

Tables I.5.18 and I.5.19 summarize the measured received levels at 10 meters (33 feet) from the piles being driven, with the exception of the pile driven at Pile 32 which was measured at 11 meters (36 feet).

The data show that there was 7–8 dB difference between the received levels of the Type I and Type II piles, with the Type II piles being louder.

Table I.5.18 Summary of Type I Piles Measured at 33 Feet (measurements in dB re: 1µPa)

Pile ID	Type Pile	SPLpeak (Max)	SPLrms (Mean)	SEL (Mean)	cSEL[a] (Daily)	Total Strike Count	Number of Strike that exceeded the Cumulative 187 Threshold
26	I	192	169	159	191	1,629	1,080
28	I	190	169	159	191	1,207	747
30	I	191	170	159	192	1,526	840
25	I	189	168	158	188	907	90
32[b]	I	185	164	154	186	1,232	0
Mean		**189**	**168**	**158**	**190**	**1,300**	**551**

[a] dB re: 1µPa^2-sec
[b] Due to safety concerns the actual distance to the pile was 36 feet

Table I.5.19 Summary of Type II Piles Measured at 33 Feet (measurements in dB re: 1µPa)

Pile ID	Type Pile	SPLpeak (Max)	SPLrms (Mean)	SEL (Mean)	cSEL[a] (Daily)	Total Strike Count	Number of Strike that exceeded the Cumulative 187 Threshold
13	II	197	175	162	194	629	535
15	II	199	177	167	197	771	696
22	II	199	177	167	198	1,690	1,563
14	II	189	171	162	188	339	34
18	II	200	180	170	204	2,176	2,132
20	II	196	177	167	196	725	655
24	II	195	174	165	192	430	354
Mean		**196**	**176**	**166**	**196**	**966**	**853**

[a] dB re: 1µPa^2-sec

One-Third Octave Band Noise

Figures I.5.22 and I.5.23 show the one-third octave band spectra for the two different pile types. One-third octave spectra depict how much sound energy there is for given frequency ranges. The Type I piles tend to have more energy at lower frequencies than the Type II piles. This makes sense when considering the transmission loss rates described below. Lower-frequency sounds propagate farther than high-frequency sounds, thus the transmission loss rates are lower for Type I piles.

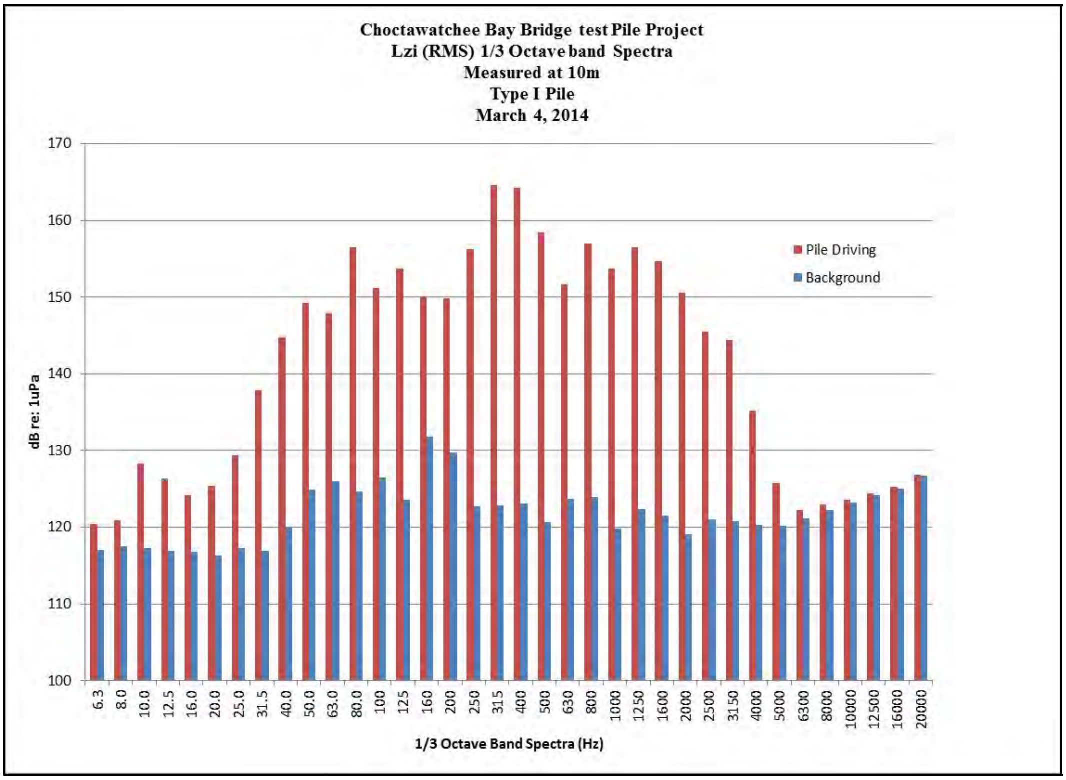


Figure I.5.22 Typical 1/3 Lzi (RMS) Octave Band Spectra for a 30-inch Type I Concrete Pile

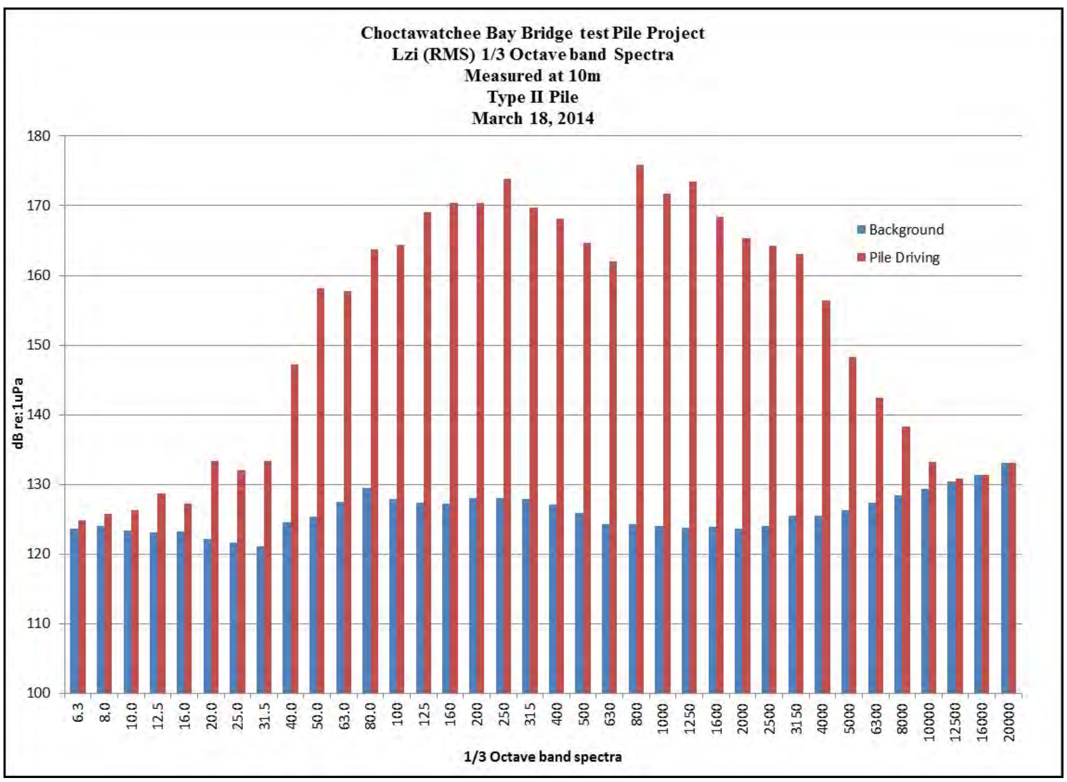


Figure I.5.23 Typical 1/3 Lzi (RMS) Octave Band Spectra for a 30-inch Type II Concrete Pile

Sound Transmission Loss

Pile-driving sounds that enter the water column experience a loss in intensity, or attenuation, primarily as a function of distance from the source, but also because of several environmental factors. Although transmission loss is challenging to predict, it is well known that a simplified equation (X Log(r) where "r" is the range to the pile and X denotes the calculated transmission loss) can be used to model the attenuation trend of sound as it propagates away from a source. By best fitting the logarithmic curve to data collected at various ranges, an empirical estimate of the transmission loss curve can be obtained.

There was a measurable difference in the transmission loss rates of the two types of piles. The estimated rate of transmission loss for the Type I piles ranged from a 13Log for the SEL to 16Log for the SPLpeak levels. For the Type II piles, the transmission loss rate ranged from 20Log for the SEL to 22Log for the SPLpeak levels. Figures I.5.24 and I.5.26 illustrate the transmission loss curves, graphically showing the estimated reduction in sound intensity over distances away from the pile driving. Table I.5.20 provides a summary of measured data.

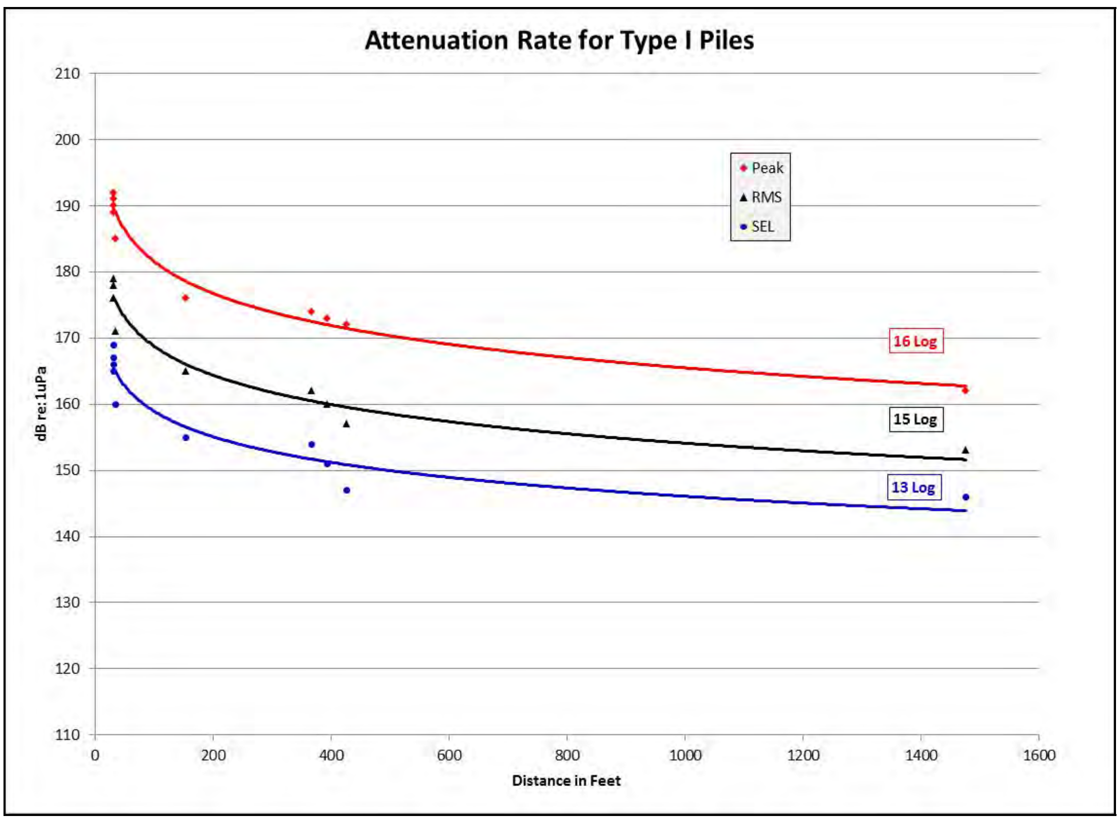


Figure I.5.24 Transmission Loss of Sound Pressure Levels (dB re: 1μPa) for Type I Piles

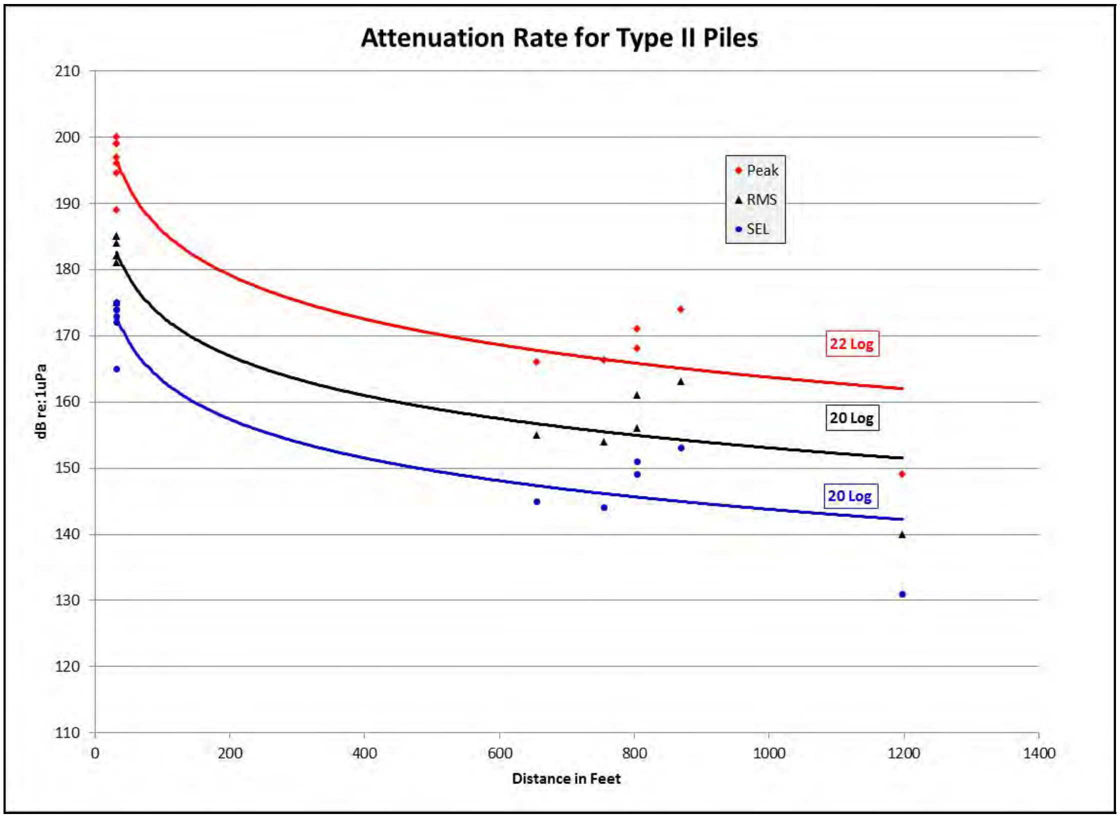


Figure I.5.26 Transmission Loss of Sound Pressure Levels (dB re: 1µPa) for Type II Piles

Table I.5. 20. Summary of Pile-Driving Noise Monitoring

(Shaded represent areas are Type II Piles)

Pile	Date	Time	Location (meters)	Estimated Number of Strikes	Water Depth (Feet)		Peak SPL dB re:1μPa		RMS SPL dB re:1μPa		SEL dB re:1μPa²-sec		
					Pile	H-P	Mean	Range	Mean	Range	Mean	Range	cSEL
13	24-Feb	9:49:48–12:11:28	10	629	10	10	--[a]	Max 197	175	170–184	162	144–174	194
			245			10	161	154–168	151	134–156	142	129–151	--[c]
15	27-Feb	11:50:04–14:00:40	10	771	10	10	190	185–199	177	168–185	167	155–175	197
			150			10	161	156–171	146	140–161	136	130–149	--[c]
22	1-Mar	14:00:40 – 16:25:08	10	1,690	10	10	189	184–199	177	168–185	167	155–175	198
			49			10	--[b]	--[b]	--[b]	--[b]	--[b]	--[b]	--[b]
26	4-Mar	14:59:03 – 17:44:56	10	1,629	10	10	182	177–192	169	163–179	159	148–169	191
			450			10	154	149–162	144	136–153	136	127–146	--[c]
28	5-Mar	15:46:16–17:35:16	10	1,207	10	10	183	187–190	169	160–178	159	148–167	191
			47			10	172	167–176	161	155–165	150	140–155	180
30	11-Mar	12:19:32–13:56:55	10	1,526	12	12	183	176–191	170	161–176	159	147–166	192
			120			10	168	161–173	155	147–160	145	134–151	163
25	12-Mar	13:04:42–16:37:25	10	907	13	13	180	176–189	168	163–176	158	149–165	188
			94			10	165	161–172	151	146–157	142	134–147	--[c]
32	15-Mar	13:36:38–14:16:55	11	1,232	11	11	176	168–185	164	155–171	154	142–160	186
			112			10	165	156–174	152	138–162	142	129–154	153
14	17-Mar	13:44:45–14:26:48	10	339	12	12	184	175–189	171	163–175	162	148–165	188
			201			10	160	152–166	149	130–155	140	125–145	--[c]
18	18-Mar	13:38:01–15:13:03	10	2,176	12	12	194	189–200	180	173–185	170	159–174	204
			265			10	168	159–174	157	148–163	147	131–153	177
20	19-Mar	11:50:45–12:30:10	10	725	12	12	189	184–196	177	164–182	167	156–173	196
			365			10	145	138–149	135	125–140	127	117–131	--[c]
24	20-Mar	11:40:45–12:03:10	10	430	12	12	187	181–195	174	167–181	165	154–172	192
			229			10	159	152–166	148	140–154	138	130–144	--[c]

--[a] Problem with the peak detector in SLM. Only maximum level recorded.

--[b] There was electronic noise from a short in the system for a portion of the drive, data not reported.

--[c] According to NOAA Fisheries guideline, single strike SEL below 150 dB re: 1μPa²-sec do not accumulate to cause injury to fish.

H-P = Hydrophone depth

10 meters = approximately 33 feet

I.5.17 References

1. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Structural Repairs to Pier 2 Naval Weapons Station, Concord, California – Report of Underwater Sound Level Measurements Resulting from Pile Driving*. Report to Miller Thompson Constructors dated January 17, 2003.

2. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2003. *Reconstruction of Pier 95 (Amports), Port of Benicia – Report of Underwater Sound Level Measurements Resulting from Pile Driving*. Report to Manson Construction Company dated April 17, 2003.

3. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2004. Letter to Steve Hutchinson at Dutra Construction – Subject: *Underwater Sound* Measurement *Results – Pier 40 Construction Pile Driving (Concrete Piles)*, dated July 13, 2004.

4. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2004. *Port of Oakland Berth 22 Underwater Sound Measurement Data for Pile Driving Activity, August 2–4, 2004*. Report to Manson Construction Co. dated August 18, 2004.

5. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2005. *Port of Oakland Berth 22 Underwater Sound Measurement Data for the Driving of Octagonal Concrete Piles, August 2, 2004 – February 14, 2005*. Report to Manson Construction dated April 4, 2005.

6. Illingworth and Rodkin. 2014. *State Road 83 (United States Highway 331) Choctawhatchee Bay Bridge Hydroacoustic Monitoring Report. Draft Report*. Submitted to Florida Department of Transportation, Chipley, Florida, under Contract No. C-9B22 – Amendment No. 3, issued to HDR Inc., Tampa, Florida. Petaluma, California.

7. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2004. Letter to Todd Bruce at Dutra Construction – Subject: *Port of Oakland Berth 32 Concrete Pile Installation – Results of Underwater Sound Measurements*, dated October 25, 2004.

8. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2005. *Port of Oakland Berth 32 Underwater Sound Measurement Data for the Driving of Octagonal Concrete Piles, April 18 and 21, 2005*. Report to Manson Construction Company dated June 10, 2005.
9. Strategic Environmental Consulting (SEC). 2005. *Monitoring the Effects of Conventional Pile Driving on Three Species of Fish*. April 8, 2005.

I.6 Steel Sheet Piles

Sheet piles are usually interlocking steel "AZ"-type piles that are about 2 feet wide and range in length. They are commonly used to construct walls and cofferdams in marine environments. These piles usually are installed using a vibratory driver/extractor. At the Port Of Oakland, long steel sheet piles were installed in relatively deep water using an impact hammer with a steel extension or "follower." This chapter describes results for the few projects that involved the installation of steel sheet piles. Little information is known about the hammer or driving energies used to install these piles. These projects did not involve the use of attenuation systems.

I.6.1 Vibratory and Impact Driving of AZ25 Steel Sheet Piles at Berth 23—Port of Oakland, CA

Underwater sound pressure levels were measured during the impact driving of steel sheet piles as part of the Berth 23 construction project at the Port of Oakland, California[1]. The steel sheet piles were first installed with a King Kong APE 400B vibratory driver/extractor hammer to a level below the waterline. The approximately 15-meter-long (49-feet-long) sheet piles then were driven to their tip elevation with an ICE 60S diesel impact hammer. The tip elevation for the piles was underwater near the mud line, where water depth was about 12 to 14 meters (39 to 46 feet) . The impact hammer was fitted with a steel extension to allow the driving of the sheet piles below water (see Figure I.6-1). An underwater camera system was used to align the steel extension of the impact hammer to the sheet piles underwater. Measurements focused on the sounds produced from impact driving of these piles; however, some measurements of vibratory installation were made.

Figure I.6-1 Driving of Steel Sheet Pile Underwater Using Hammer Follower

Table I.6-1 summarizes results of the underwater sound measurements made for driving five piles. These are the average sound pressure levels measured during the driving event. Levels varied about 5 dB throughout the course of a driving event. These sheet piles were installed in 12 to 15 minutes, with pile strikes about once every 1.4 seconds—or 43 to 44 strikes per minute. Measurements were made at distances ranging from 5 to 40 meters (16.5 to 130 feet) but primarily at 10 meters (33 feet). No underwater sound attenuation systems were used. Ambient levels were measured at 125 dB RMS, well below the levels imparted by the pile driving.

The first sheet pile driven was measured from a boat that was maneuvered to stay about 10 meters from the pile, but distances varied slightly. Measurements for the second pile were made at several distances as the boat was maneuvered during breaks in the driving. Prior to the completion of driving the second pile, installation of a sheet pile using a vibratory hammer was measured. These data were reported separately for 10 meters[2], but peak pressure levels were about 175 to 177 dB at 10 meters and 166 dB at 20 meters (65 feet). Measurements for the third, fourth, and fifth piles were made with the boat tied to the dockside in order to maintain a distance of 10 meters from the pile. In addition to the 10-meter position, a 20-meter position was added for driving of the fourth and fifth piles. These positions were along the sheet pile wall, not normal to the face of the pile as was done for the first and second pile driving events. A fairly steady peak pressure level of 202 to 205 dB was measured at the 10-meter position. RMS levels were generally from 186 to 188 dB, and the SEL was about 175 dB. The fourth pile, driven from 14:20 to 14:33, was measured simultaneously from the dockside at positions of 10 and 20 meters. Levels were only about 2 dB lower at 20 meters. The 20-meter position had more variability in levels, where peak pressure levels varied from 194 dB in the early part of the drive to near 210 dB near the end of the drive. The 10-meter peak pressure levels varied from about 200 to 210 dB. In terms of peak pressure levels, levels were highest for the fifth driving event, but RMS and SEL levels were not much higher than other driving events. Ambient levels were measured at 125 dB RMS (impulse).

Table I.6-1 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving Steel Sheet Piles –Berth 23, Port of Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Average Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	10 meters normal to the sheet face	205	189	178
2	5 meters normal to the sheet face	209	194	--
	10 meters normal to the sheet face	204	189	178
	20 meters normal to the sheet face	200	185	--
	40 meters normal to the sheet face	188	173	--
Vibratory installation	10 meters normal to the sheet face	177	163	162
	20 meters normal to the sheet face	166	--	--
3	10 meters parallel to the sheet face	203	187	175
4	10 meters parallel to the sheet face	203	188	178
	20 meters parallel to the sheet face*	205	186	175
5	10 meters parallel to the sheet face	205	189	179
	20 meters parallel to the sheet face*	202	189	178

* Measurements made only for loudest part of drive
10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 20 meters = approximately 65 feet

The distance-related attenuation of sound varied whether facing the sheet piles or parallel to the sheet wall. When normal, sound pressure levels dropped off at a rate of about 5 dB per doubling of distance from 5 to 20 meters (16.5 to 65 feet). The drop-off rate from 20 to 40 meters (65 to 130 feet) was over 10 dB. Measurements were made only at 10 and 20 meters parallel to the wall. The drop-off rate was much less, about 2 dB. Sound was radiated through the adjoining panels, which reduced the drop-off rate in these directions parallel to the wall.

Signal analysis of representative pulses indicated considerable high-frequency content, compared to other impact pile driving pulses. The example shown in Figure I.6-2 is for pulses measured at 10 and 20 meters during the installation of the fourth sheet pile. The RMS impulse level (measured with the sound level meter) was similar or slightly lower than the calculated RMS (over 90 percent of the energy). The SEL was about 25 to 27 dB lower than the peak pressure level and 13 dB lower than the RMS level (90 percent). The majority of sound energy in the pulse was contained within the first 30 to 40 msec, but the pulse lasted over 100 msec. Unlike most impact pile driving, these sounds were relatively broadband, with much of the sound content in the frequency range of 25 to 4,000Hz.

Berth 23 - Port of Oakland - Underwater Pile Driving Waveform - Steel Sheet Pile - 11/17/05

Figure a. Waveform | **Figure b. Narrow Band Frequency Spectra**

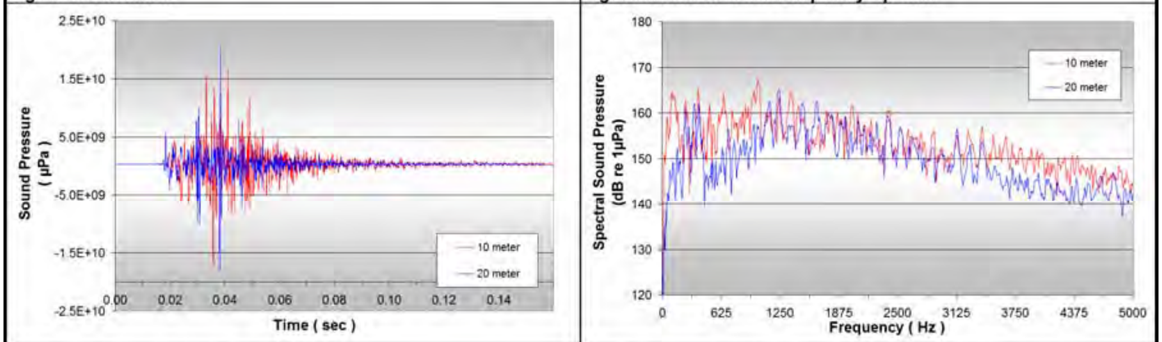


Figure c. Accumulation of Sound Energy

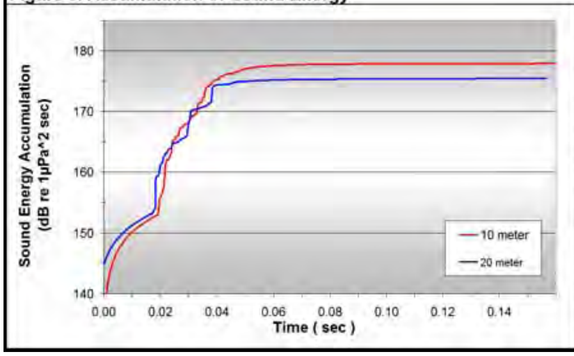


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Energy Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

4th Pile 14:32	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
10 meter	205	191	178
20 meter	206	189	175

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average (10 m - 20 m)	203 - 205	188 - 186
Reported Maximum (10 m - 20 m)	208 - 209	191 - 189

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.6-2 Representative Signal Analyses for Sheet Piles Driven with Impact Hammer at Berth 23, Port of Oakland. Pulses received at 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) parallel to sheet wall.

Signals for vibratory installation of a single sheet pile installation were conducted for sounds received at 10 meters (see Figure I.6-3). The vibratory installation involved just the stabbing of the sheet pile. Vibratory installation results in fairly continuous sounds; therefore, they are described slightly differently. An impulse RMS is not applicable because these sounds are not impulsive. Because the sounds are continuous, the averaging period used to calculate the RMS is not that critical. The difference between a period of 0.035 second and 1 second was found to result in about 1 dB difference. The SEL is usually associated with an event, such as a pile strike. For vibratory installation, the event is defined as either the entire duration of the sound or a fixed time. Using the duration of the event would not provide data that could be compared to other pile driving events. Therefore, we present the SEL as measured over 1 continuous second of vibratory pile installation.

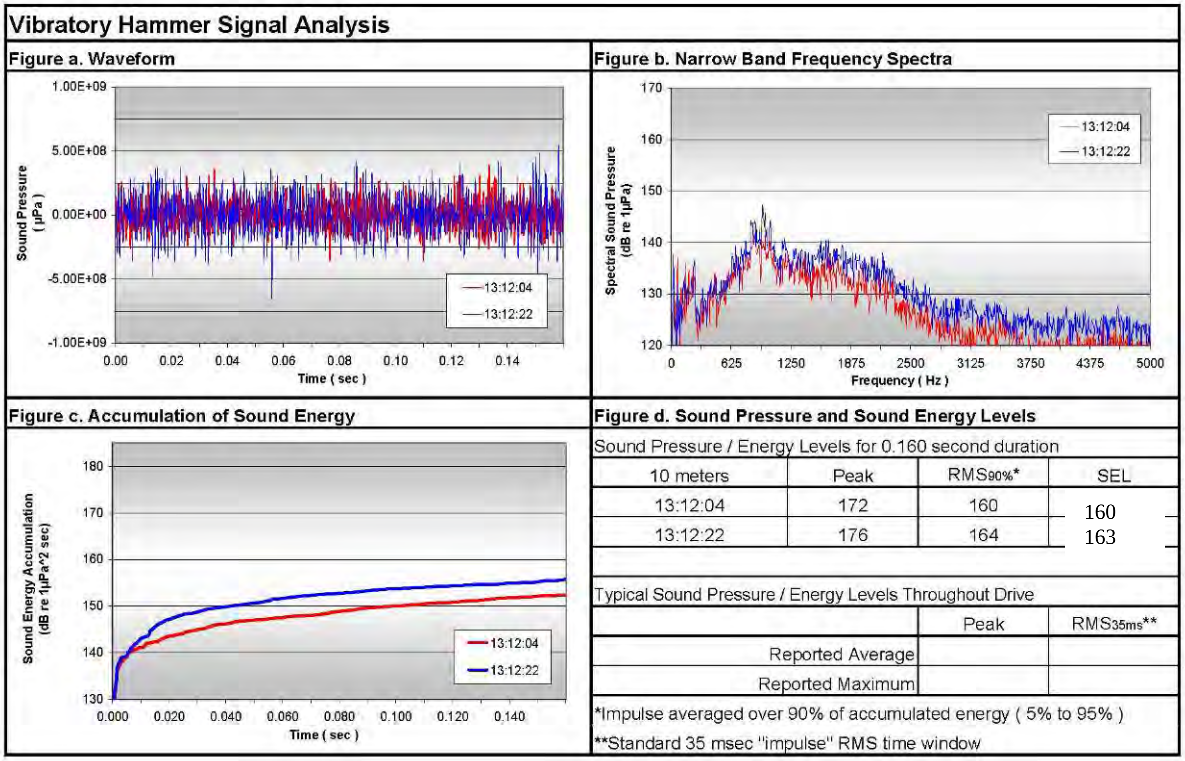


Figure I.6-3 Representative Signal Analyses for Sheet Piles Installed with Vibratory Driver/ Extractor at Berth 23, Port of Oakland. Pulses at 10 meters (33 feet) normal to sheet wall face.

The signal analysis shows the fairly continuous broadband sound. Much of the sound content is contained over the frequency range of 400 to 2,500 Hz. The hammer frequency is 23 Hz; therefore, distinct very low-frequency tones are associated with the rapid pile strikes. SEL accumulates throughout this continuous sound event.

I.6.2 Vibratory Installation of AZ25 Steel Sheet Piles at Berth 30—Port of Oakland, CA

Underwater sound levels associated with the installation of steel sheet piles were measured in March 2006 at Berth 30 at the Port of Oakland[3]. This operation was similar to that described above for Berth 23, except a method was tested involving a vibratory driver/extractor to avoid high-amplitude sounds. The model APE 400B King Kong hydraulic vibratory hammer was used to drive the steel sheet piles. The hammer was fitted with a steel extension (follower) to allow driving of the piles below the water line. Pile lengths were about 15 meters (49 feet), and water depth was about 12 meters (39 feet).

Measured sound pressure level data for the installation of five piles is presented in Table I.6-2. These piles had been stabbed and driven to the point where a follower had to be used. Two measurement systems were used at 10 meters (33 feet) with different positions and depths. Both systems measured an ambient sound pressure level of 132 dB (RMS) when the nearby workboat motor was running. Levels between the two sensors varied by 0 to 7 dB over the course of the five driving events. The deeper sensor (5-meter [16.5-foot] depth) measured higher sound levels. The required sensor depth was 3 meters (10 feet).

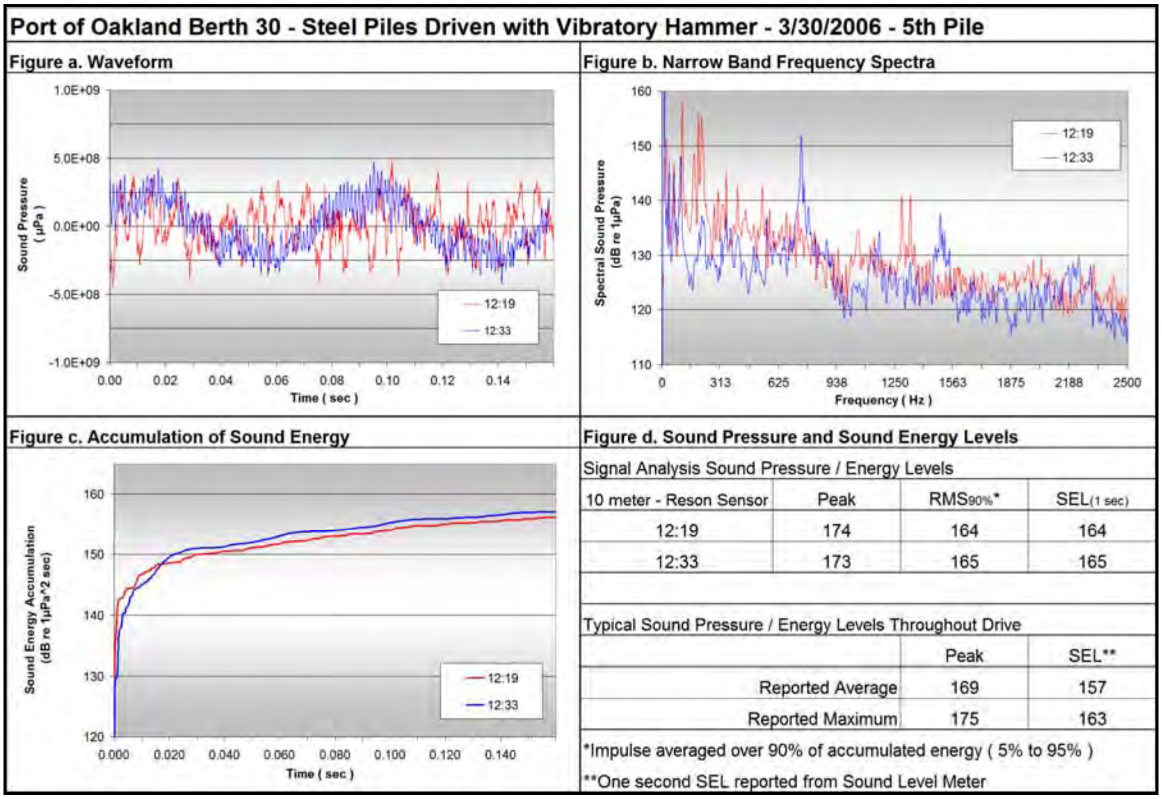
Table I.6-2 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Vibratory Driving of Steel Sheet Piles – Berth 30, Port of Oakland, CA

Pile	Conditions	Average Sound Pressure Level Measured at 10 meters (33 feet) in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	10 meters from face, 3-meter depth	175 185 max	--*	160 165 max
2	10 meters from face, 3-meter depth	171	--*	159
	10 meters from face, 5-meter depth	172	--*	160
3	10 meters from face, 3-meter depth	166	--*	154
	10 meters from face, 5-meter depth	172	--*	160
4	10 meters from face, 3-meter depth	167	--*	155
	10 meters from face, 5-meter depth	174	--*	162
5	10 meters from face, 3-meter depth	169	--*	157
	10 meters from face, 5-meter depth	174	--*	161

* Sound pressure levels were not reported, but would be similar to the SEL for 1 second.
3 meters = approximately 10 feet; 5 meters – approximately 16.5 feet

The sound pressure levels for the first driving event varied considerably. Initially, sound pressure levels were high and then dropped about 10 dB half way through the driving event and continued to decrease further until installation of the pile was complete. Levels near the completion of the driving event were about 20 dB lower than the initial maximum levels. Level associated with the second, third, fourth, and fifth driving events were fairly consistent. Peak pressure levels were generally in the range of 170 to 180 dB for the deeper hydrophone. Except for the first driving event, peak pressure levels at the 3-meter depth (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration required position) were 165 to 175 dB. One second SELs were typically 12 dB lower than peak pressure levels and typically ranged from 155 to 162 dB, depending on the pile and sensor position. Pile installation ranged from 5 to 18 minutes. The first four piles took from 5 to 10 minutes to install, while the fifth pile took 18 minutes.

A representative signal analysis for these pile driving events is presented in Figure I.6-4. Unlike the signals reported for Berth 23, these signals showed more tonal characteristics. These characteristics were slightly different for each pile driven. The difference is likely related to the excitement of the interlocked sea wall.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

10 meter - Reson Sensor	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL(1 sec)
12:19	174	164	164
12:33	173	165	165

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	SEL**
Reported Average	169	157
Reported Maximum	175	163

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**One second SEL reported from Sound Level Meter

Figure I.6-4 Representative Signal Analyses for Sheet Piles Installed with Vibratory Driver/Extractor at Berth 30, Port of Oakland. Pulses at 10 meters (33 feet) normal to sheet wall face. Note low-frequency signal (blue) measured late in driving event.

I.6.3 Sheet Piles—Northern Rail Extension near Salcha, AK

As part of Phase I construction for the Northern Rail extension project near Salcha, Alaska, seven 24-inch steel shell piles and nine sheet piles were driven. These piles were part of the construction of the new bridge temporary access causeway and trestle, which were located upriver from the new bridge. For this project, vibratory pile driving was conducted for the sheet piles using an APE 200 vibratory hammer. This section discusses only the driving of the sheet piles; for information regarding the steel shell piles, see section I.3.28. For the purpose of the project, only peak sound pressure levels were reported. The sheet piles were vibrated on two days: July 30 and 31, 2012.

Figure I.6-5 Installation of Sheet Piles

On July 30, 2012, five sheet piles were partially installed using a vibratory hammer (Figure I.6-5). The peak values were below the peak detector of the sound level meter (168 dB); consequently, the system was set to add 20 dB of gain into the system in an attempt to capture the low peak levels. The hydrophone was placed at approximately 10 meters (33 feet) from the coffer dam and in about 0.5 meters (1.6 feet) of water. The vibratory driving took 25 minutes and 13 seconds, with numerous starts and stops. In the morning of July 31, 2012, four additional sheet piles were vibrated at the Pier 2 coffer dam. The distance from the pile and the depth of the hydrophone were the same as the previous day. The total pile driving duration on the second day was one hour 37 minutes and 25 seconds, with numerous starts and stops. The peak sound pressure level and SEL level results for both days are summarized in Tables I.6-3 and I.6-4, respectively.

Table I.6-3 Summary of the Peak Measurement Results for July 30 and 31, 2012

Date	Time Duration, HH:MM:SS	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	Peak (dB)		
			Average	Minimum	Maximum
7/30/2012	00:25:13	10/33	156	146	164
7/31/2012	01:37:25		152	144	160

Table I.6-4 Summary of the SEL Measurement Results for July 30 and 31, 2012

Date	Time Duration, HH:MM:SS	Distance to Pile (meters/feet)	SEL (dB)		
			Average	Minimum	Maximum
7/30/2012	00:25:13	10/33	140	120	150
7/31/2012	01:37:25		140	114	148

I.6.4 24-Inch Sheet Piles, Napa River Flood Control Project, Napa, CA

The Napa County Flood Control and Water Conservation District installed 24-inch sheet piles as part of the Napa River/Napa Creek Flood Reduction Project in Napa, California. California Department of Fish and Wildlife permit Amendment No. 1 required hydroacoustic monitoring during the impact driving of these sheet piles. Underwater sound measurements were made over a period of a little more than 2 weeks, starting on October 15, 2014. From October 15 to October 31, 2014, 101 24-inch sheet piles were driven, and underwater monitoring was conducted at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from each pile. The piles were installed using an American Pile Driving hydraulic impact hammer (APE 7.5).

On October 15, 2014, six sheet piles were installed. The water depth was approximately 3 meters (10 feet). Nine sheet piles were installed on October 17, 2014. The water depth was approximately 2.5 to 5 meters (8 to 16.5 feet). Seven sheet piles were installed on October 20, 2014, and two of those piles were driven twice during the day. The water depth at the measurement location was 5 meters deep. On October 28, 2014, underwater sound monitoring was performed during the impact driving of 12 sheet piles, three of which were driven twice during the day, in 4 to 5 meters of water. The final 2 days of underwater monitoring were on October 30 and 31, 2014. Thirteen sheet piles were installed on October 30, and 11 were installed on October 31. On both days in the water depth ranged from 4 to 6 meters (13 to 20 feet). Table I.6-5 summarizes the impact pile driving results from each day of testing. Figure 1.6 6 shows a typical pile driving event.

Table I.6-5 Summary of Impact Pile Driving of Unattenuated 24-inch Sheet Piles – Napa River Flood Control Project

Date	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
October 15	Unattenuated – 6 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	188 Typ. 197 Max.	176 Typ. 181 Max.	167 Typ. 169 Max.
October 17	Unattenuated – 9 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	194 Typ. 211 Max.	176 Typ. 182 Max.	167 Typ. 169 Max.
October 20	Unattenuated – 9 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	195 Typ. 209 Max.	180 Typ. 184 Max.	170 Typ. 174 Max.
October 21	Unattenuated – 17 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	191 Typ. 198 Max.	175 Typ. 182 Max.	166 Typ. 171 Max.
October 28	Unattenuated – 15 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	190 Typ. 193 Max.	173 Typ. 177 Max.	164 Typ. 166 Max.
October 29	Unattenuated – 14 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	191 Typ. 206 Max.	175 Typ. 184 Max.	166 Typ. 172 Max.
October 30	Unattenuated – 13 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	191 Typ. 199 Max.	175 Typ. 192 Max.	166 Typ. 186 Max.
October 31	Unattenuated – 18 24-inch sheet piles @ 10 meters	188 Typ. 198 Max.	173 Typ. 181 Max.	165 Typ. 171 Max.

10 meters = 33 feet

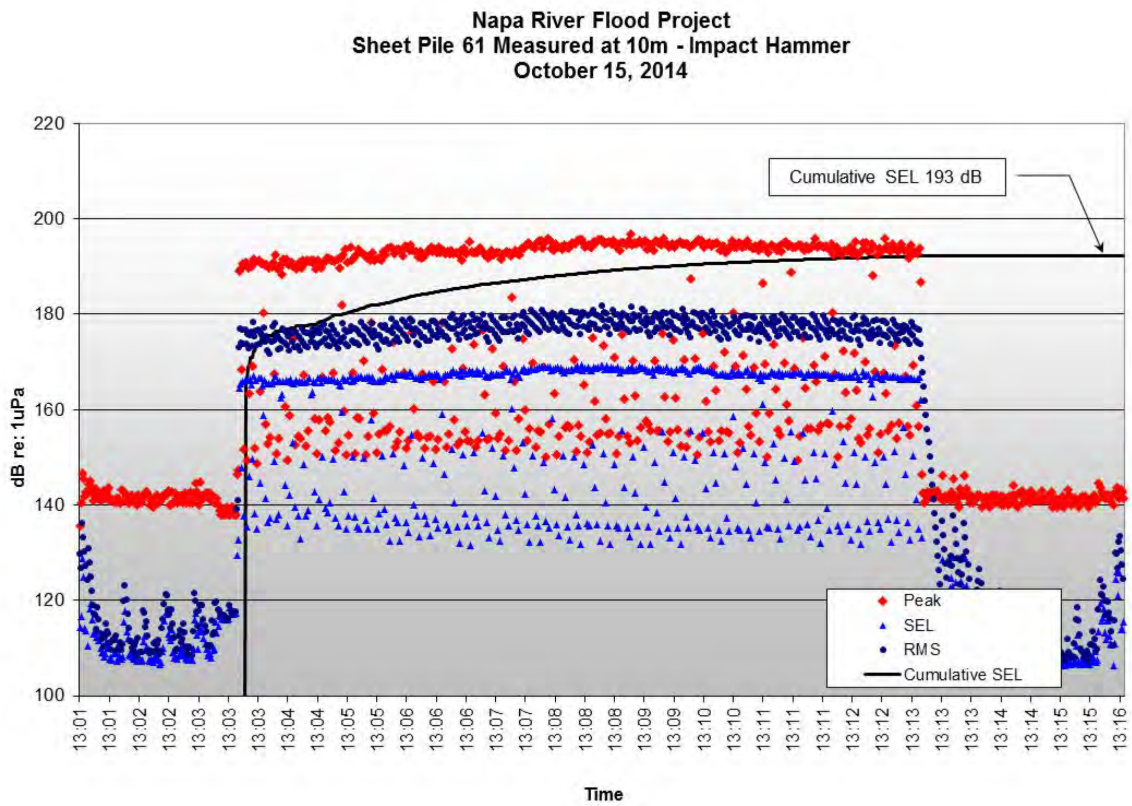


Figure I.6-6 Sheet Pile 61 Driven with an Impact Hammer Measured at 10 meters (33 feet). October 15, 2014. Napa River Flood Project.

I.6.5 References

1. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Port of Oakland Berth 23 – Underwater Sound Measurement Data for the Driving of Steel Sheet Piles and Square Concrete Piles – November 17 and December 3, 2005*. Report to Vortex Marine Construction, dated January 12, 2006.

2. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Letter to Thanh Vuong (Port of Oakland) analyzing vibratory and impacts driving sounds of sheet pile sounds measured at Berth 23, Port of Oakland*. February 28, 2006.

3. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2006. *Port of Oakland Berth 30 – Underwater Sound Measurements for the Installation of Steel Sheet Piles with a Hydraulic Vibratory Hammer*. Report to the Port of Oakland, dated May 8, 2006.

I.7 Timber Piles

Timber piles are uncommon in California. There has been only one opportunity to measure the installation of these piles. This occurred during marina construction in Alameda, California. Measurements are described in this section.

I.7.1 Impact Driving of Timber Piles for Construction at Ballena Bay Marina—Alameda, CA

Underwater sound pressure levels were measured for driving four wood piles using a 3,000-pound drop hammer[1]. The piles were driven to secure pleasure craft slips at the Ballena Bay Marina in Alameda, California (see Figure I.7-1). Primary measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile. Supplementary measurements were made at 20 meters (65 feet) for the first, third, and fourth piles. Measurements for 10 meters in two separate directions were made for the second pile. The water depth was about 2 to 4 meters (6.5 to 13 feet), so the hydrophones were positioned at 1- to 3-meter (3.3- to 10-foot) depths. A 3,000-pound drop hammer was used to insert the wood dock piles. Drop heights for most pile strikes were recorded. A cushion block was used between the hammer and the pile. This cushion consisted of two 3/8-inch-thick layers of rubber matting, a composite plastic block, and about 7 inches of wood. The blocks were replaced when peak sound pressure levels exceeded 180 dB. Variations of the block composition were tested on the first two piles. It appeared that the composite plastic with wood resulted in lower underwater sound pressure levels.

Table I.7-1 summarizes results of the underwater sound measurements made for driving the four piles. There was quite a range in sound levels as drop heights ranged from 7 to 15 feet and cushion blocks were periodically changed to reduce sound levels. The ranges of sound levels were reported, since these typically varied by 10 dB or more.

At 10 meters, peak sound pressure levels were generally in the range of 170 to 180 dB, and RMS sound pressure levels ranged from 160 to 168 dB. During some short periods, sound pressure levels exceeded 180 dB peak and 170 dB RMS at 10 meters. The highest measured levels were 191 dB peak and 176 dB RMS. Sound pressure levels were typically 10 dB lower at 20 meters from the pile. Measurements made at 10 meters in two different directions were quite similar. The piles took about 30 minutes to drive, but pile strikes were infrequent since a drop hammer was used. Strikes typically occurred about once or twice per minute.

Figure I.7-1 Driving of Timber Piles at Ballena Bay Marina Using a 3,000-Pound Drop Hammer

Table I.7-1 Typical Range of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving Timber Piles – Ballena Bay Marina, Alameda, CA

Pile	Condition	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
1	10 meters (33 feet)	172–180 max. 188	163–168 max. 176	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	165–171 max. 181	155–158 max. 170	--
2	10 meters (33 feet)	172–178 max. 182	163–170 max. 172	--
3	10 meters (33 feet)	170–182 max. 191	158–172 max. 175	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	165–178 max. 181	154–165 max. 167	--
4	10 meters (33 feet)	170–177 max. 179	160–166 max. 167	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	165–171 max. 173	155–160 max. 162	--

Signal analysis of representative pulses indicates considerable low-frequency content, compared to other impact pile driving pulses. The example shown in Figure I.7-2 is for a pulse measured at 10 meters during installation of the fourth pile. The sounds are comprised of low-frequency content and appear to include very low frequency ground-borne sound reflection that is continuous beyond the 0.17-second window of analysis. Most of the sound content is below 400 Hz. The SEL continues to accumulate through the analysis window as the ground-borne sound adds acoustic energy.

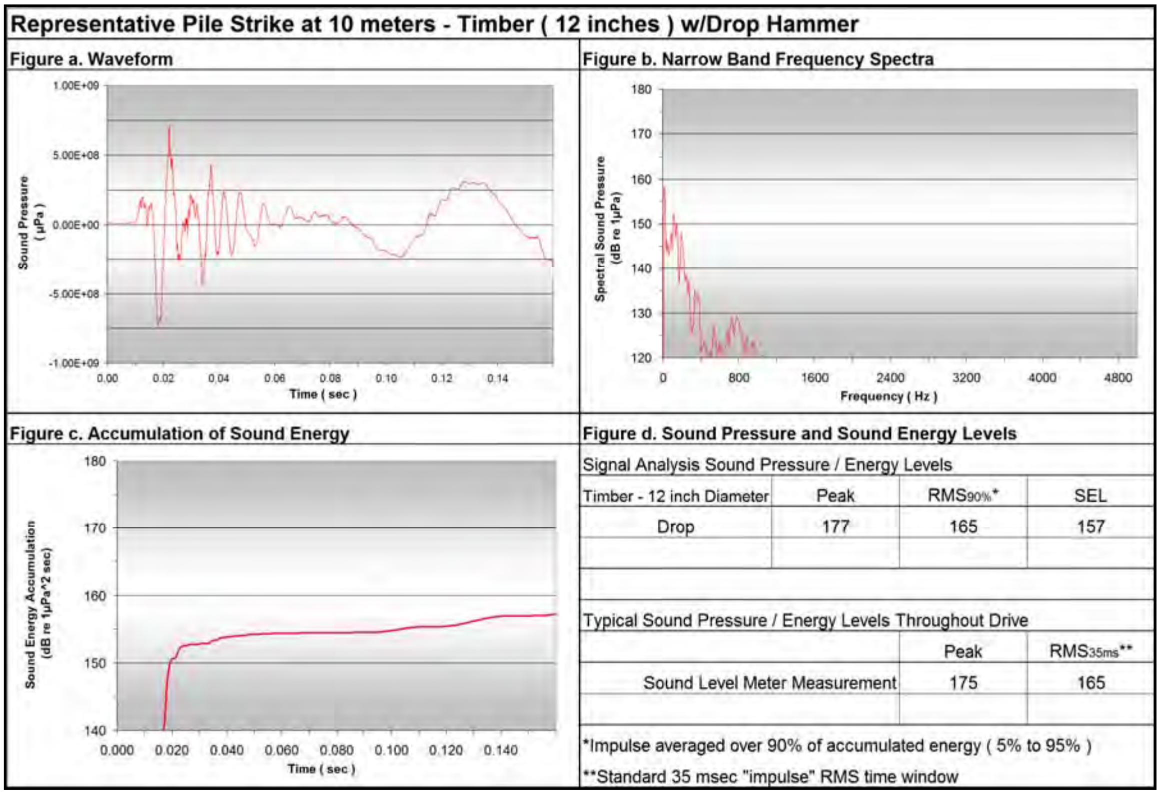


Figure I.7-2 Representative Signal Analyses for Timber Pile Driven with a Drop Hammer at Ballena Bay Marina. Pulse received at 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile.

I.7.2 Wood Piles—Port of Benicia, Benicia, CA

At the Port of Benicia, five wood piles were driven on October 24, 2013 (Figure I.7-2). Pile driving began at approximately 7:52 a.m. and concluded at 11:42 a.m. The water depth was approximately 10.7 meters (35 feet), and the hydrophone depth was 4.9 meters (16 feet) during pile driving. Measurements were made at one location at a distance of 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile driving operations. Hydroacoustic data were reported for individual pulses as peak sound pressure level, single-strike SEL, and cumulative SEL levels. All data is summarized in Table I.7-2.

Figure I.7-3 Wood Pile Installation at Port of Benicia

Table I.7-2 Summary of the Measurement Peak Sound Pressure Level Results

Pile	Total Time of Drive (MM:SS)	Measurement Position (meters)	Peak (dB)		Single-Strike SEL (dB)	
			Average	Range	Average	Range
1	00:40	10	165	163–167	143	139–148
2	01:59	10	169	162–173	147	140–151
3	07:57	10	170	161–180	148	139–158
4	02:18	10	169	163–176	148	150–155
5	04:18	10	170	160–180	148	140–157

I.7.3 Vibratory Driving of Timber Piles at Norfolk Naval Station

At the Naval Station Norfolk in Norfolk, Virginia, nine timber piles were driven on October 27, 2014. The piles driven were nonstructural fender piles intended to upgrade the fender system at Pier 4 (Figure 1.7-4). The water depth at the pile locations was approximately 40 feet. The piles were driven adjacent to the south side of Pier 4 using a vibratory hammer. Measurements were made at two locations, the first ranging from 30 feet to 75 feet (and the second from 145 feet to 1,246 feet. These pile installation events were very short, ranging from 18 seconds to 65 seconds. The measured noise levels for the last three piles installed were higher than the previous piles installed. During the installation of these piles, the vibratory hammer began to smoke, which indicated that resistance to the piles being installed had increased. There may have been either some underwater obstructions or a different type of substrate. At this time it is unknown what actually caused the increase in noise levels.

Table I.7.3 provides a data summary of maximum Peak, maximum and average 1-second SEL, maximum and average 1-second RMS, and the maximum and average 10-second average RMS sound pressure levels for the vibratory pile driving measured. The average attenuation rate was calculated to be $31*Log_{10.}$ There are no data sets available to compare the vibratory installation of timber piles with other locations. However, when comparing the attenuation rate of timber piles driven with a drop hammer, the attenuation rates are similar.


Figure I.7-4 Installation of Timber Piles

Table I.7.3 Data Summary of RMS Vibratory Driving Levels for Timber piles (dB re: 1µPa)

Pile ID	Distance	Duration (mm:ss)	Peak (Maximum)	1 Second SEL		1-second RMS		10-second RMS	
				Range	Average	Range	Average	Range	Average
1	23	1:05	158	134-141	137	134-142	137	136-139	138
	50		[a]	124-130	127	125-130	128	121-129	127
2	19	1:22	159	136-144	138	135-144	138	137-142	139
	46		[a]	124-131	129	127-132	129	128-130	129
3	17	0:37	160	135-147	138	135-141	138	137-138	138
	46		[a]	124-131	129	127-132	129	128-130	129
4	13	0:41	169	143-160	149	141-160	149	145-159	149
	75		[a]	128-136	132	128-136	132	130-135	132
5	11	0:26	171	160-165	163	160-166	163	163-164	163
	72		[a]	123-139	137	136-140	138	137-138	137
6	10	0:18	172	158-164	162	159-164	162	162-162	162
	70		[a]	120-142	138	138-142	139	139-140	139
7	12	0:31	174	158-167	163	158-168	163	163-163	163
	68		[a]	134-140	136	134-140	136	136-136	136
8	10	0:34	174	158-166	165	158-166	165	163-166	165
	65		[a]	134-140	138	134-140	138	136-136	136
9	9	0:24	176	163-168	165	163-170	165	165-156	165
	63		[a]	123-141	137	136-142	137	137-138	137

[a] Peak levels not discernable above background noise (e.g., boats passing by and other construction noise)

Figure I.7-5 depicts average Leq spectra measured during installation of timber piles.

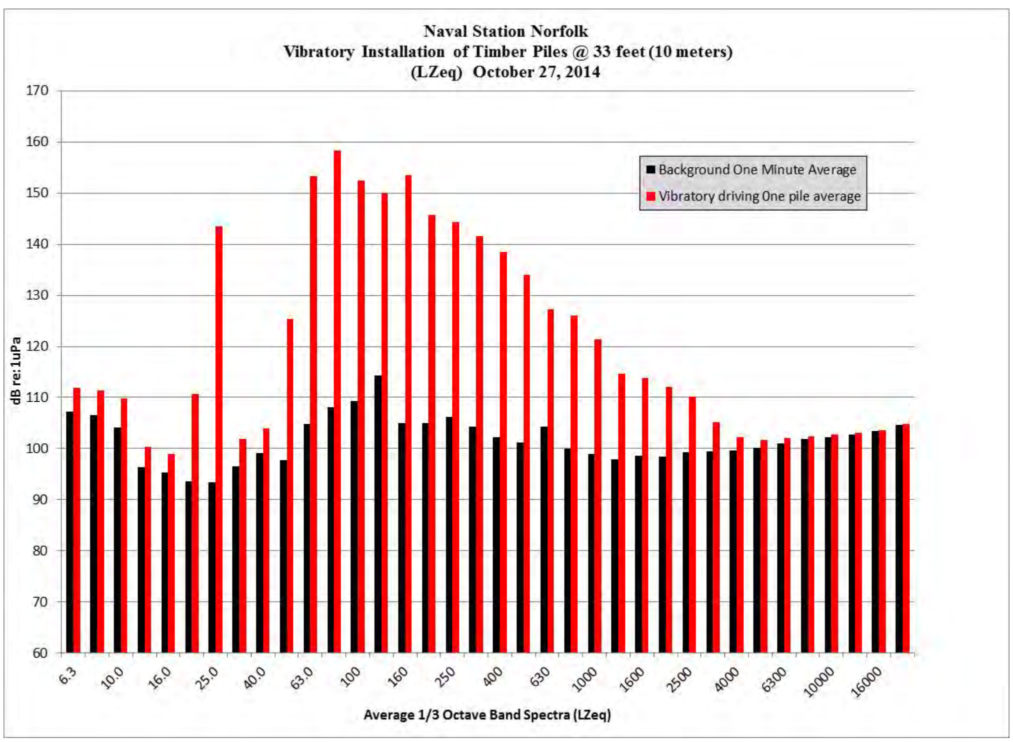


Figure I.7-5 Average L_{eq} Spectra for Timber piles

I.7.4 References

1. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2004. *Letter to Jon Marty (Western Dock Enterprises) transmitting Underwater Sound Measurement Results for Ballena Bay Dock Construction Pile Driving* (Wood Piles). March 25, 2004

2. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2015. *Hydroacoustic and Airborne Noise Monitoring at the Naval Station Norfolk during Pile Driving – Interim Report 21 October through 27 October 2014*. Report to HDR Environmental, Operations and Construction, Inc. February.

I.8 New Benicia-Martinez Bridge Project

Construction of the Benicia-Martinez Bridge involved driving large-diameter, open-ended steel shell piles, which were approximately 2.4 meters (8 feet) in diameter. A large hydraulic hammer was used to drive the piles at hammer energies up to 570 kilojoules (420,410 ft-lbs). This project included extensive measurements of underwater sounds conducted during the driving of these large piles.

I.8.1 Project Description

Construction of the new northbound Benicia-Martinez Bridge began in 2002 (Figure I.8-1). The new bridge crosses the Carquinez Strait between the City of Benicia in Solano County and the City of Martinez in Contra Costa County. The 2.7-kilometer- (1.7-mile-) long bridge will carry northbound vehicles along Interstate 680. The existing bridge currently carries both southbound and northbound traffic and will carry southbound traffic only in the future. An existing railroad bridge will remain between the two spans. Pile driving began in 2002 and was completed in July 2003. The piles were then anchored to the bedrock. The piles are 2.4 meters (8 feet) in diameter.

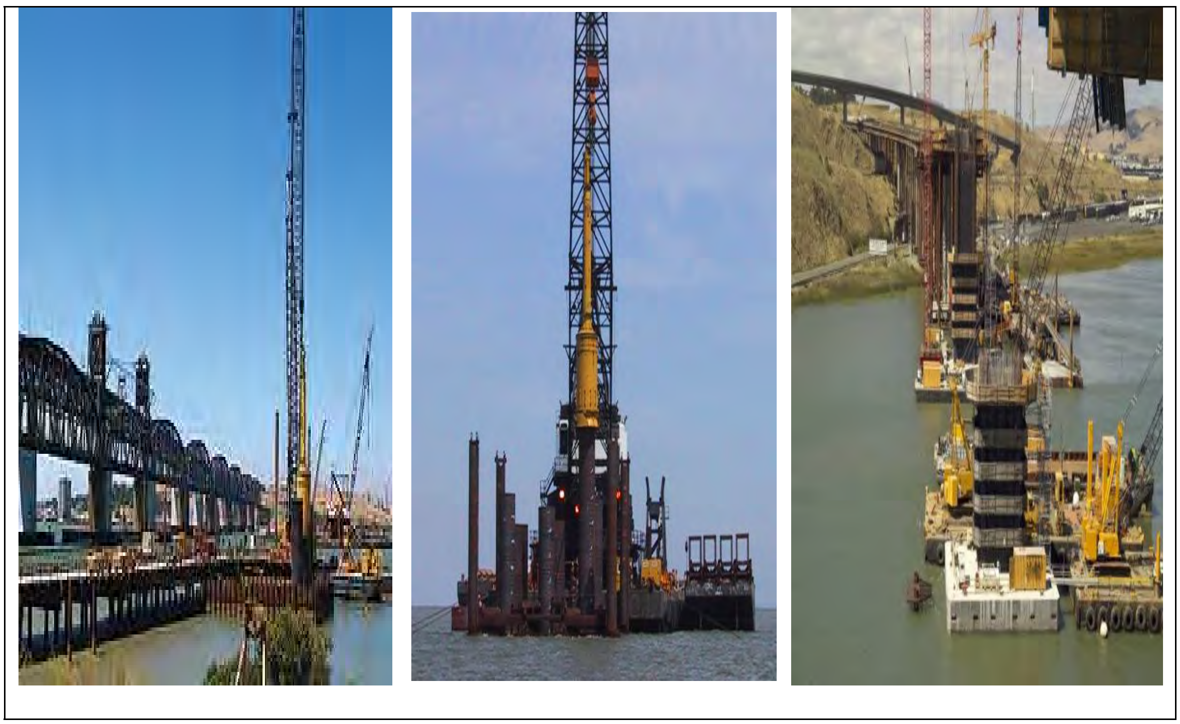


Figure I.8-1 Construction of the New Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Sound measurements were conducted during driving of 2.4-meter-diameter piles at different pier groups. Each pier group consisted of about eight piles set in a driving template. A large hydraulic hammer was used to drive the piles. During pile driving, hammer energies were typically in the range of 500 to 570 kilojoules (368,781 to 420,410 ft-lbs). Some of the pier locations were in open water at least 400 meters (1,310 feet) from shore. Water depth was estimated to be between 12 and 15 meters (39 and 49 feet) in the main channel.

I.8.2 Measurement Results

Detailed underwater sound measurements were conducted during driving of the large steel shell piles. The measurements were conducted from April through July 2002 for unattenuated conditions. Attenuation systems were tested in late July/August 2002 and January 2003. The effectiveness of the selected attenuation system was monitored in 2003. Underwater sound measurements were conducted by two firms: Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. (I&R) and Greeneridge Sciences Inc. (GS). Although GS was a subconsultant to I&R, the measurements and analyses were made independently to ensure quality control. Measurements were first made to characterize underwater sound pressure levels associated with driving the piles without the inclusion of control features to reduce the sound pressure levels. Measurements were then conducted to evaluate the attenuation provided by a large steel pile casing (3.7-meter [12.1-foot] diameter) under different conditions (i.e., with water, bubbled, and dewatered).

Unattenuated Measurements

Construction began on the bridge without any underwater noise restrictions on pile driving. When observed impacts occurred (i.e., injured fish), unattenuated pile driving was restricted to slack tide periods while noise attenuation devices were considered. Except for during short periods used to test attenuation devices, unattenuated pile driving ceased after July 2002. Measurement data summarized at specific distances are shown in Table I.8-1.

<u>In Water (Piers 8, 9, and 13)</u>

Measurements were made by I&R for the unattenuated open water conditions on four separate days. I&R measured underwater peak sound pressure levels ranging from 227 dB (re 1 μPa) at 4 meters (13 feet) from the outside of the pile to 178 dB at approximately 1,100 meters (3,640 feet). The bulk of I&R's measurements were made at mid-level depths (i.e., from 5 to 7 meters (16.5 to 23 feet) from distances of 15 to 300 meters (50 to 980 feet), where sound levels ranged from about 215 to 197 dB. Some measurements were made at depths near the surface and bottom. I&R found a 4- to 6-dB variation in sound levels over depth, with near-surface levels (at 1 meter depth) being the lowest. Table I.8-2 shows the variation in sound pressure levels measured at 4, 50, and 310 meters for different depths.

Table I.8-1 Summary of Unattenuated Sound Pressure Levels Measured for the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Approximate Distance*	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
5 meters	227	215	201
10 meters	220	205	194
20 meters	214	203	190
50 meters	210	196	184
100 meters	204	192	180
500 meters	188	174	164
1,000 meters	180	165	155

* Measured from the pile at about mid depth (10–15 meters deep)

10 meters = approximately 33 feet

GS conducted unattenuated measurements on two separate days. Measurements were made near the surface at 1 and 2 meters, mid depth at 5 meters, and near the bottom at 10 meters. Near the surface, peak sound pressure levels ranged from 226 dB at 14 meters to 163 dB at 1,614 meters. Mid-depth levels ranged from 220 dB at 14 meters to 189 dB at 317 meters. At the 10-meter depth, peak sound pressure levels ranged from 222 dB at 14 meters to 173 dB at 1,614 meters. With the exception of the near field measurements (at 14 meters), the mid- to lower-depth measurements were usually 4 to 10 dB higher than the shallow measurements. Levels measured at the 1-meter depth varied considerably more than the levels measured at other depths.

Table I.8-2 Measured Sound Levels for Various Depths – Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Depth	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Peak	RMS	SEL
4 meters from pile (12 meters deep)			
2 meters	220	207	--
4 meters	223	210	--
10 meters	224	210	--
50 meters from pile (12 meters deep)			
2 meters	209	194	181
4 meters	209	196	183
6 meters	210	196	184
10 meters	209	196	184
11 meters	208	196	184
310 meters from pile (9 meters deep)			
2 meters	197	184	--
7 meters	199	186	--
2 meters = approximately 6.5 feet 10 meters – approximately 33 feet 50 meters = approximately 164 feet 310 meters = approximately 1017 feet			

Measurements made by I&R and GS were compared and found to closely agree. Measurement results typically did not vary by more than 2 dB. Data collected by both I&R and GS were combined to derive the relationship between the distance from the pile being driven and the peak underwater sound pressure level.

Equations that predict the received peak sound pressure level were developed for mid depth or 5-meter depth.

$$RL_{peak} = 218 - 15 \log (R/10)$$
$$RL_{RMS} = 206 - 16 \log (R/10)$$
$$RL_{SEL} = 195 - 17 \log (R/10)$$

Where RL is the received level in dB re 1 μPa and R is the distance from the pile in meters for values of R between 10 and 500 meters.

Figure I.8-2 illustrates the relationship between measured sound levels and distance from the pile in open water. Sound levels dropped off at a faster rate in shallow water, as was found when measuring under very shallow conditions at Pier 6.

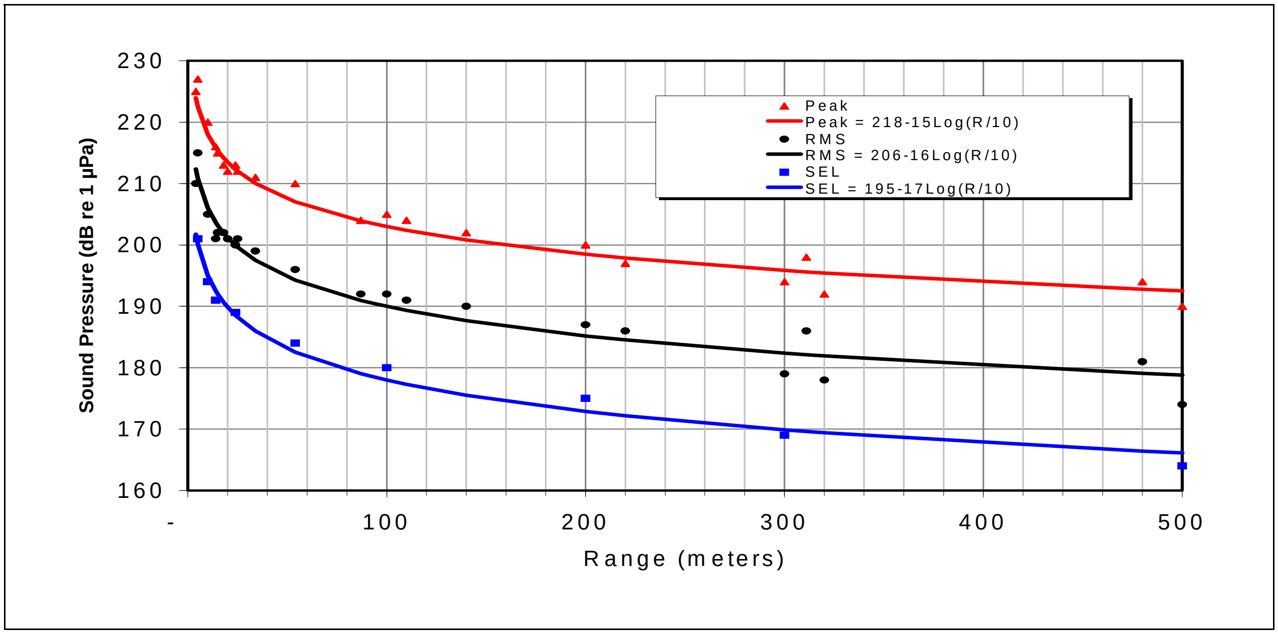


Figure I.8-2 Relationship between Measured Sound Level and Distance from Pile – Unattenuated, Open Water

Cofferdam (Pier 6)

Limited underwater sound measurements were made at Pier 6, which was in a cofferdam with water (Figure I.8-3). The water depth inside and around the cofferdam was quite shallow, about 1.5 to 2 meters (5 to 6.5 feet) deep. Measurements were conducted both inside and outside the cofferdam to a distance of about 50 meters (165 feet).

Analyses of the signals were not conducted; therefore, SEL data are not available. The data summarized in Table I.8-3 indicate that sound pressure levels were much lower than those measured under open water unattenuated conditions. This appeared to be mostly due to the very shallow water conditions and not to the attenuation provided by the cofferdam. The measurement data indicate that the cofferdam may have reduced sound pressure levels by 10 dB; however, there was substantial variation in sound pressure levels both inside and outside of the cofferdam. Therefore, it is difficult to identify the amount of sound reduction provided by the cofferdam with water inside under shallow water conditions.

Table I.8-3 Measured Sound Levels for Cofferdam with Water – Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Approximate Distance	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Peak	RMS	SEL
Inside cofferdam			
5 meters (16.5 feet)	215	203	--
10 meters (33 feet)	208	199	--
19 meters (62 feet)	203	194	--
Outside cofferdam			
12 meters (39 feet)	193	206	--
22 meters (72 feet)	198	184	--
36 meters (118 feet)	190	170	--
54 meters (177 feet) north	179	162	--
54 meters (177 feet) northwest	185	167	--

Figure I.8-3 Cofferdam with Water Used for the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Isolation Casing

Underwater sound levels for piles driven with a steel pipe sleeve or casing were measured to evaluate the reduction in underwater sound levels from unattenuated conditions. The casing, which was 3.8 meters (12.5 feet) in diameter, was tested under three conditions: (1) with water in the casing; (2) with a bubble ring placed at the bottom of the casing in operation; and (3) with the casing dewatered[1]. Figure I.8-4 shows the air bubble curtain condition. Measurements were conducted by both I&R and GS at relatively close-in distances. Results of these tests are summarized in Table I.8-4. Analyses of the pulse signals for the different test conditions are illustrated in Figure I.8-5. A summary of the results is described in the following sections.

Table I.8-4 Measured Sound Levels for Isolation Casing Tests – Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Approximate Distance	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
	Peak	RMS	SEL
Bare pile			
14 meters (46 feet)	216	201	191
24 meters (79 feet)	213	201	189
54 meters (177 feet)	210	196	184
100–106 meters (328–348 feet)	204	191	180
Casing with air bubbles			
14 meters (46 feet)	192	176	--
24 meters (79 feet)	189	173	
54 meters (177 feet)	187	174	163
100–106 meters (328-348 feet)	--	--	--
Casing dewatered			
14 meters (46 feet)	--	--	--
24 meters (79 feet)	191	175	--
54 meters (177 feet)	185	173	162
100–106 meters (328-348 feet)	181	172	160

Figure I.8-4 Isolation Casing/Air Bubble Curtain System Tested for the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Isolation Casing with Water

Underwater sound measurements indicated that the casing with water provided very little noise reduction. At 24 meters from the pile, GS measured a 0-dB difference in the peak sound pressure levels. At 14 meters, GS measured increased sound levels; however, this unusual variability may be due to near-field effects. At 54 meters, I&R measured a 2-dB reduction in peak levels. Close examination of the acoustical data obtained for this test at 54 meters did not indicate any substantial changes in the acoustical pressure waveform. The frequency analysis indicated a small reduction in sound levels above about 1,600 Hz.

Isolation Casing with Bubbles

Results for the casing with bubbles showed a dramatic reduction in underwater sound levels. GS measured reductions in peak sound pressure levels of 30 to 34 dB at 14 meters and 23 to 31 dB at 24 meters. I&R measured a reduction of 23 dB peak and 21 dB SEL at 54 meters (measured at mid-depth only). A close examination of the acoustical pressure waveforms recorded at 54 meters showed a fast rise time in pressure that occurred within the first 5 msec. A rapid fluctuation in underpressure to overpressure occurred within about 2 msec. The decay time of the pulse was relatively slow, lasting about 50 to 100 msec. Much of the energy associated with the pulse occurred within the first 50 msec. The narrow-band frequency analyses showed that the greatest acoustical energy was in the 50 to 350 Hz range and that most of the energy was contained over the range of 25 to 1,600 Hz. Based on these data, the bubbled casing condition was most effective at close-in distances.

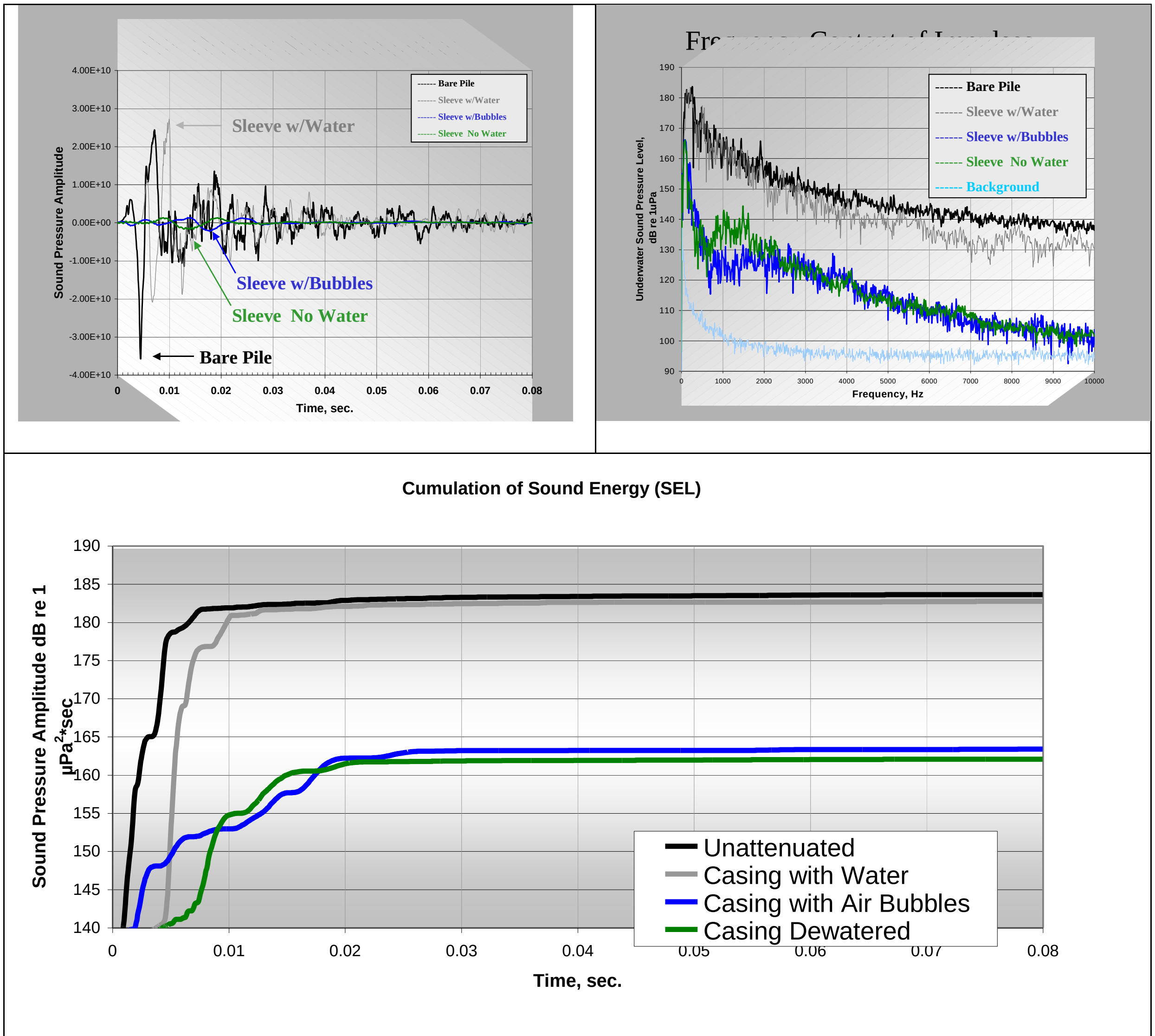


Figure I.8-5 Signal Analyses of Underwater Sound Pulses at 54 Meters (177 Feet) – Isolation Casing Tests

<u>Isolation Casing without Water</u>

At the request of National Marine Fisheries, testing was also conducted with the water removed from the isolation casing. Results for the dewatered casing were similar to the casing with bubbles results. I&R measured a reduction in peak sound pressure levels of 25 dB at 54 meters, 2 dB lower than the measured bubble condition, and GS measured a reduction of 22 dB peak at 24 meters, levels 2 dB higher than the bubble condition.

Bubble Curtain System, Bubble Tree

After the isolation casing/air bubble curtain measurements, the construction contractor designed an unconfined bubble curtain system to be used for the remainder of the bridge construction. Because of the pile template, a fully circular bubble curtain could not be used. A bubble tree design was developed to accommodate the pile template. This system included four bubble trees positioned on each quadrant of the pile. Each tree consisted of partial circular rings stacked vertically at multiple levels, with up to nine stages (Figure I.8-6). Each stage or ring was open or closed. The system was designed to surround the pile with bubbles continuously. Four 1,500 cubic-foot-per-minute- (cfm-) oil-free air compressors were used to supply air to the bubble tree system.

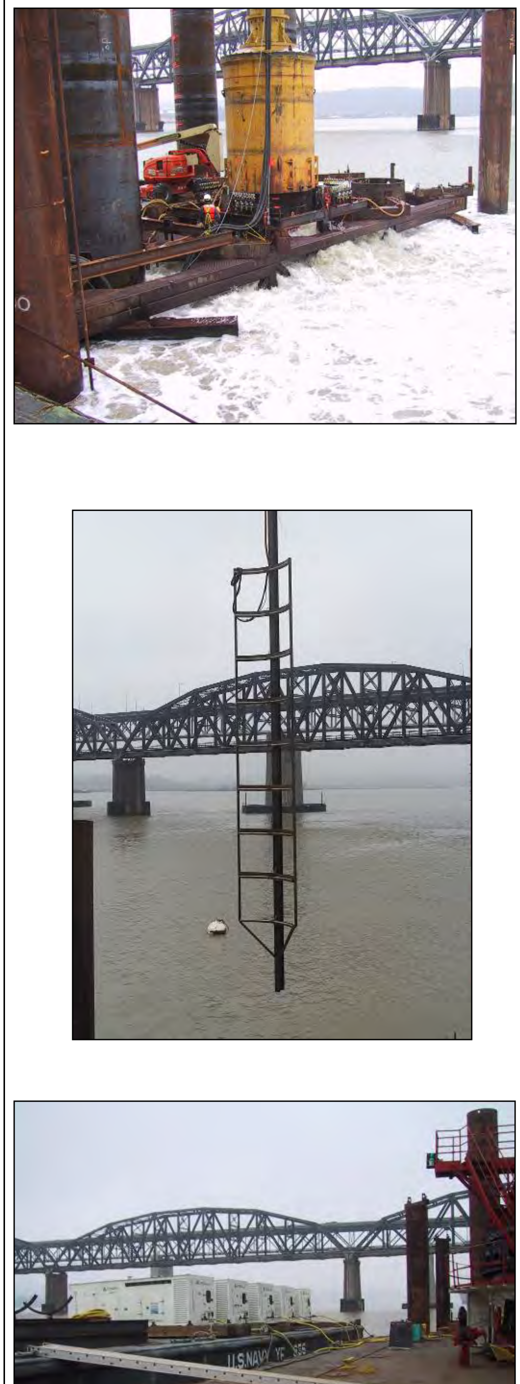


Figure I.8-6 Air Bubble Curtain Tree System Used at the Benicia-Martinez Bridge

Prior to development of the bubble tree system, there had been concerns that unconfined air bubble curtain systems would be compromised by currents, which would sweep the bubbles away from the pile. It was therefore assumed that a confined bubble curtain system, such as the isolation casing/air bubble curtain, would be advantageous. Although successful in dramatically reducing sound pressures, the confined bubble curtain system with the casing was too costly to implement because it required redesigning and fabricating the existing pile template. This would have caused substantial financial constraints on the project due to the extra work required and the resulting delays. To compensate for currents, multiple stages were included in the bubble tree system and considerable more air was provided to the system. Each "tree" was designed to provide sufficient bubble coverage to one quadrant around the pile; therefore, four bubble trees would provide adequate coverage without needing to modify the pile template.

Testing Results (Pier 13)

Plans were developed to measure at three different fixed positions approximately 100 meters (330 feet) from the pile (actual distances varied from 95 to 150 meters [310 to 490 feet] due to tidal currents and final placement of buoys by the contractor). Each position was oriented in a different direction so that the directionality of the system could be tested under different current conditions. Measurements were conducted at two depths: approximately 2 meters (6.5 meters) below the water surface and between 5 and 10 meters (16.5 and 33 feet) below the water surface. A fourth measurement position was added at approximately 50 meters (165 feet) from the pile. Measurements were made during the driving of two piles. One pile was driven during an ebb tidal current and the other was driven during a flood tidal current. The testing sequence of the air bubble curtain system included an

“ON” condition, an “OFF” condition, and an “ON” condition that lasted at least 10 minutes. Detailed measurement results were reported to Caltrans[2].

Findings indicate that this system was just as effective as the isolation air bubble curtain system. Peak sound pressure levels were reduced by 19 to 33 dB, sound pressure levels (in terms of RMS) were reduced by 17 to 29 dB, and the SEL was reduced by 20 to 25 dB. At most measurement positions, peak sound pressure levels were reduced by over 22 dB and sound pressure levels were reduced by over 25 dB. Measured sound pressure levels for both the isolation casing air bubble system and the air bubble tree are compared with unattenuated conditions in Table I.8-5. Results are graphically compared with unattenuated conditions in Figure I.8-7. The signal analyses of the pulse recorded at 95 meters west of the pile during the test illustrate the attenuation provided by the system (Figure I.8-8).

Table I.8-5 Measured Sound Levels for Air Bubble Tree Tests – Pier 13

Position	Sound Levels in dB re 1 μPa		
	Unattenuated Pile	Isolation Casing/Air Bubble Curtain	Air Bubble Tree
~50 meters (165 feet)	Peak = 210 RMS = 196 SEL = 184	Peak = 187 RMS = 174 SEL = 163	Peak = 182* RMS = 168* SEL = 159*
~100 meters (165 feet)	Peak = 204 RMS = 191 SEL=180	Peak = 181 RMS = 172 SEL=162	Peak = 185* RMS =170* SEL = 160*

* Average of Pile 1 and Pile 4 measurements for mid depths

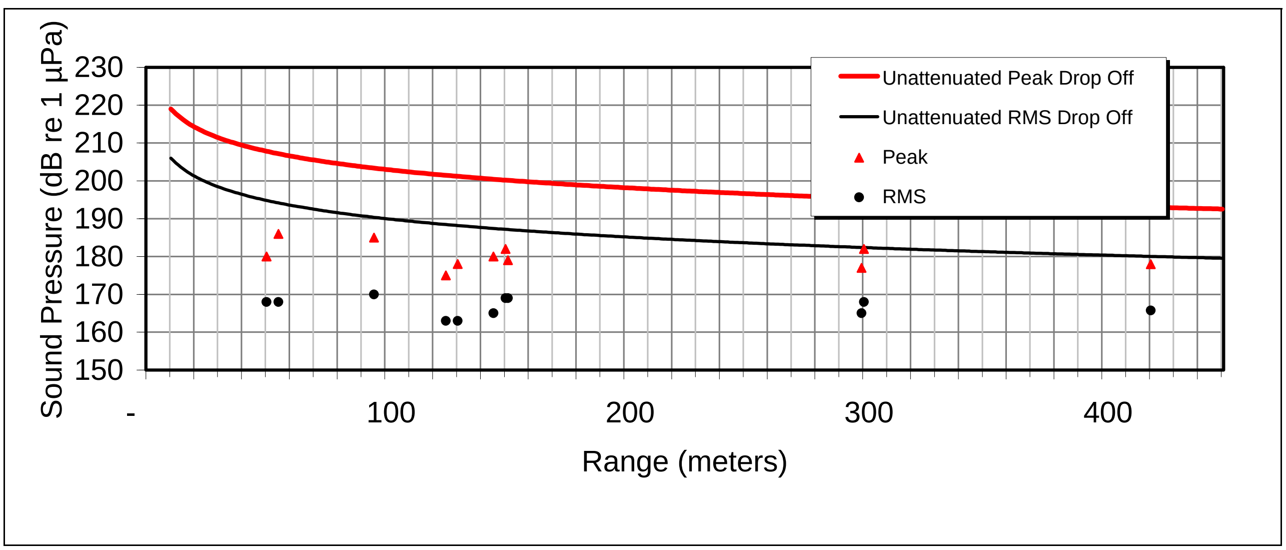


Figure I.8-7 Results of Pier 13 Measurements Compared to Unattenuated Sound Levels

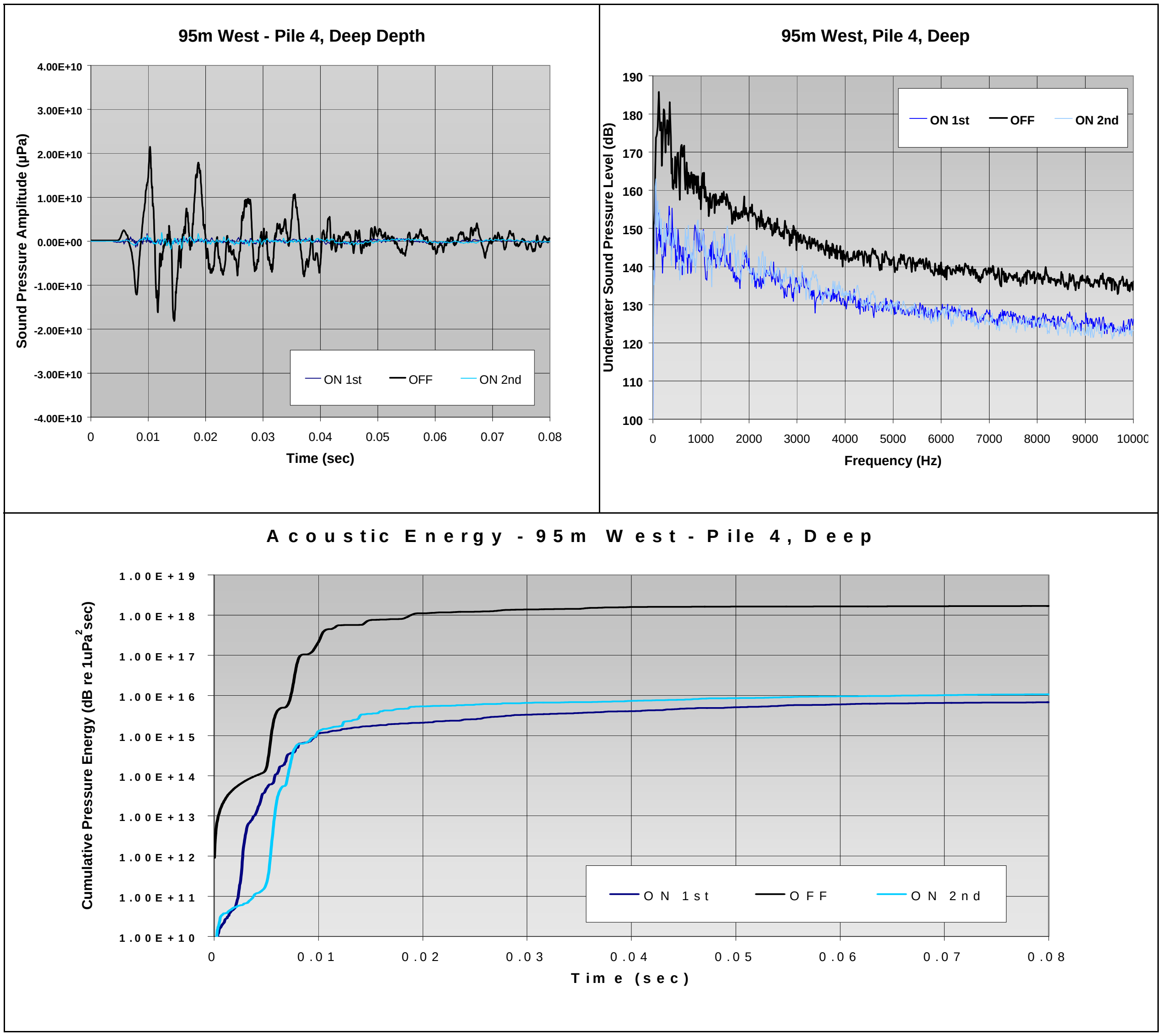


Figure I.8-8 Signal Analyses of Underwater Sound Pulses at 95 Meters (310 Feet) West – Air Bubble Tree

Compliance Monitoring Results

Measurements were made to document underwater sound levels and air bubble curtain performance during production pile driving. Measurements were made at Piers 7, 11, 12, and 15. Only peak and RMS sound pressure levels were reported under the compliance monitoring tasks.

Pier 7

During this measurement day, two piles were driven. The first pile had been previously driven to refusal. Center-relief drilling had been conducted and driving of the pile was completed in a 20-minute period. The second pile was driven from a stabbed position to a point of refusal. Results, in terms of peak and RMS sound pressure levels, are shown graphically and compared with unattenuated levels measured for other piers (Figure I.8-9). Results indicate about 10 to 20 dB of attenuation from the air bubble curtain system.

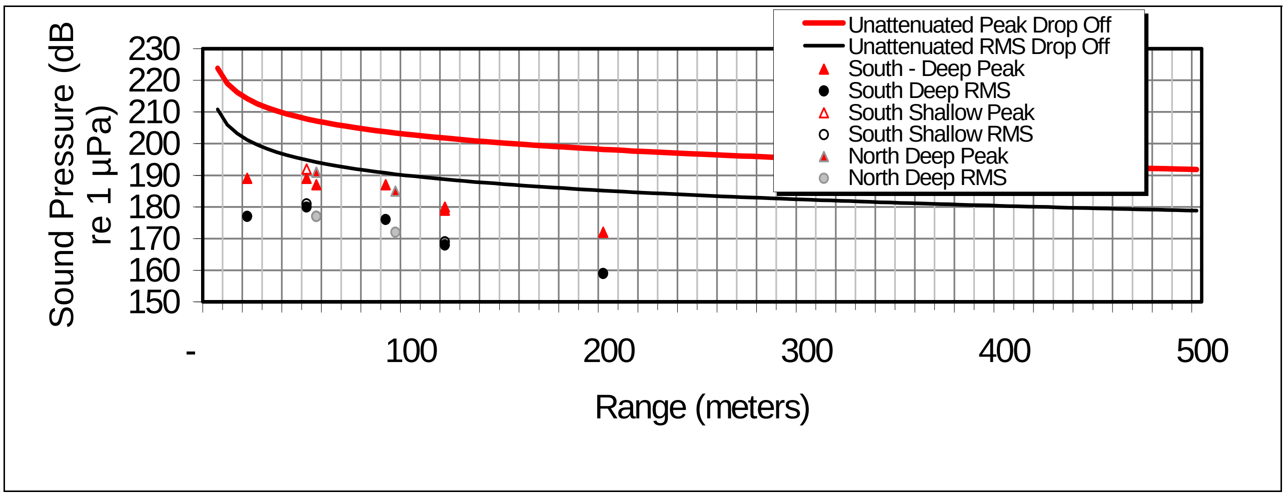


Figure I.8-9 Results of Pier 7 Measurements Compared to Unattenuated Sound Levels

Pier 11

Measurements were conducted for the entire driving period of Pile 7 at Pier 11 on May 21, 2003. The air bubble curtain system provided about 10 to 14 dB attenuation. However, a measurement on the west side was only 4 dB lower than the predicted unattenuated condition, indicating that there may be a "sound leak" in the unconfined air bubble curtain system on the west side. Results are plotted graphically in Figure I.8-10.

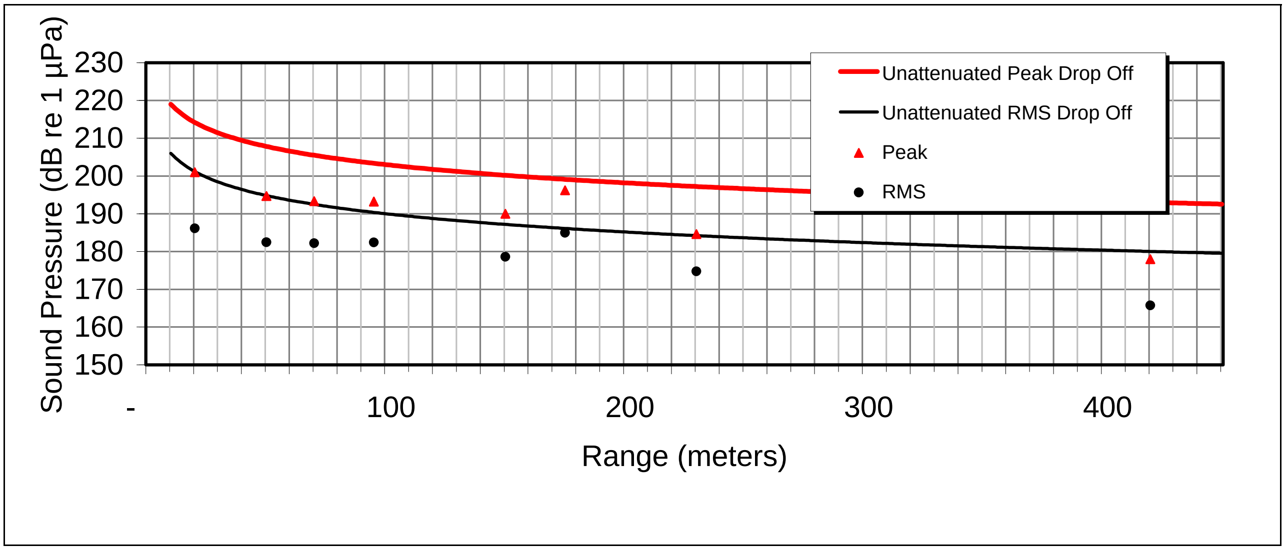
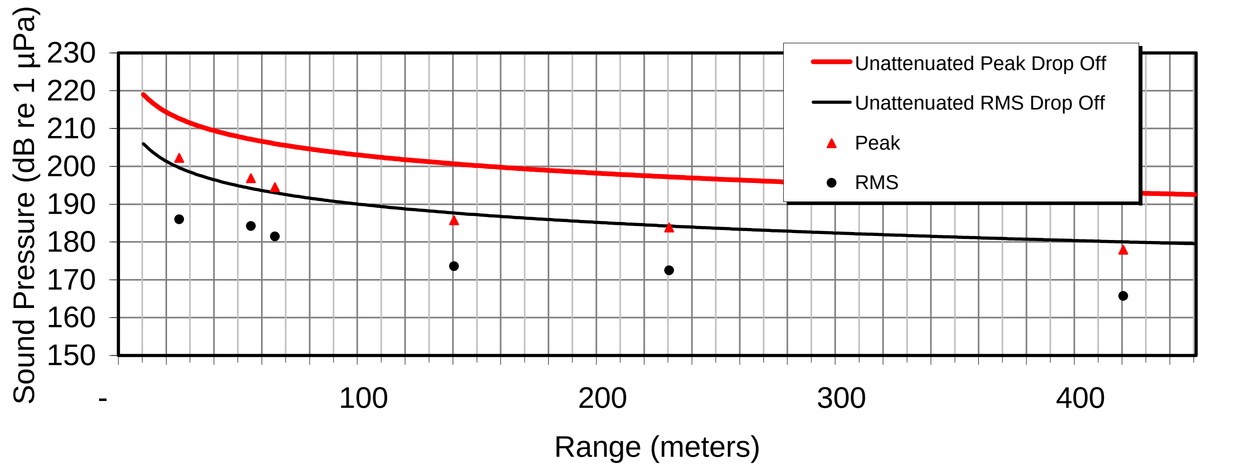


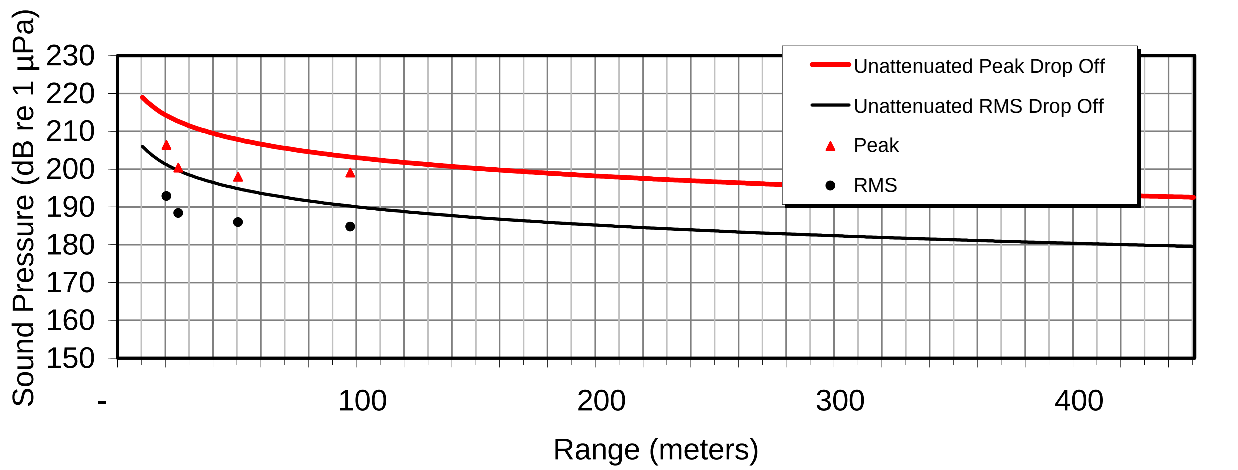
Figure I.8-10 Results of Pier 11 Measurements Compared to Unattenuated Sound Levels

<u>Pier 12</u>

Measurements were conducted for Pier 12 on two separate days (April 25 and May 8, 2005). Center relief pile driving was conducted, where drilling is conducted inside the pile and then the pile is driven to refusal. This method prevents damage to the hammer and pile. The results, in terms of peak and RMS sound pressure levels, are plotted against unattenuated conditions (Figure I.8-11) as discussed previously for Pier 7. Both tests show only about 5 to 15 dB of attenuation, indicating that there may have been operational problems with the air bubble curtain system or substantial flanking of sound through the ground surfaces below the water.



Center Relief Pile Driving, Pile 2 – April 25, 2003



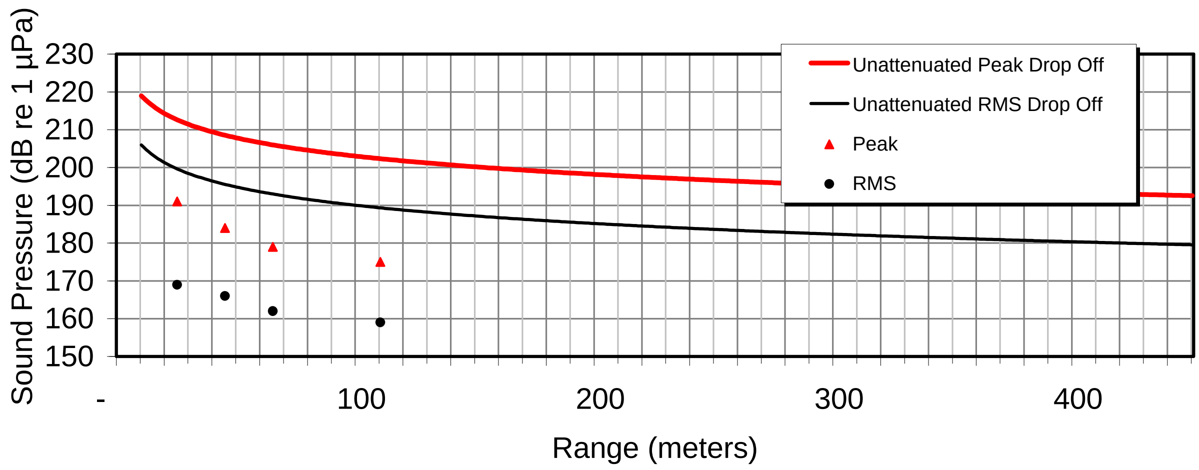
Center Relief Pile Driving, Pile 7 – May 8, 2003

Figure I.8-11 Results of Pier 12 Measurements Compared to Unattenuated Sound Levels

Pier 15

Measurements were made during the driving of Pile 7 at Pier 15 (pile at south side of pier) on the morning of July 2, 2003, under a strong ebb current. Pier 15 is in relatively shallow water (about 4 to 6 meters [13 to 20 feet] deep) near the north shore. Results (plotted graphically in Figure I.8-12) were similar to those obtained for Pier 13. The air bubble curtain system provided about 20 dB to 30 dB of attenuation.

Figure I.8-12 Results of Pier 15 Measurements Compared to Unattenuated Sound Levels



I.8.3 References

1. Reyff, J. 2003. Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Construction of the Benicia-Martinez Bridge – Results of Measurements Made at Pier 13 with the UABC Operating. *Produced by Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. for California Department of Transportation under Contract No. 43A0063, Task Order No. 18.* April.

2. Reyff, J., P. Donavan, and C. R. Greene, Jr. 2002. *Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Construction of the Benicia-Martinez Bridge*. Produced by Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. and Greeneridge Sciences under contract to the California Department of Transportation, Task Order No. 18, Contract No. 43A0063. August.

I.9 San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

I.9.1 Project Purpose/Description

The East Span Seismic Safety Project (East Span Project) replaces the existing East Span of the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge (SFOBB) with a new bridge that features a pre-cast segmental “skyway” and a single tower, self-anchored suspension structure in central San Francisco Bay (see Figure I.9-1).

Figure I.9-1 Artist Rendering of the New San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span

The project has four primary components (see Figure I.9-2):

- Geofill at the Oakland touchdown
- Oakland approach structures
- Skyway structures
- Single-tower self-anchored suspension structure/Yerba Buena Island transition

To facilitate an efficient and cost-effective building program, the Main Span component was separated into several construction contracts. In addition, a separate contract will be used to remove the existing bridge when construction is complete. Work on the self-anchored suspension and Yerba Buena Island transitional components of the project are currently under construction.

The project setting is in the central San Francisco Bay between San Francisco and Oakland, east of Yerba Buena Island. The study area consists of the construction zone along the north side of the existing East Span. See (Figure I.9-2) for the project location and study area. The project area is bounded by Yerba Buena Island on the west, Oakland Inner Harbor to the south, and the Oakland Touchdown to the east. To the north, San Francisco Bay stretches out for nearly 14 kilometers (9 miles) before it is bounded by the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

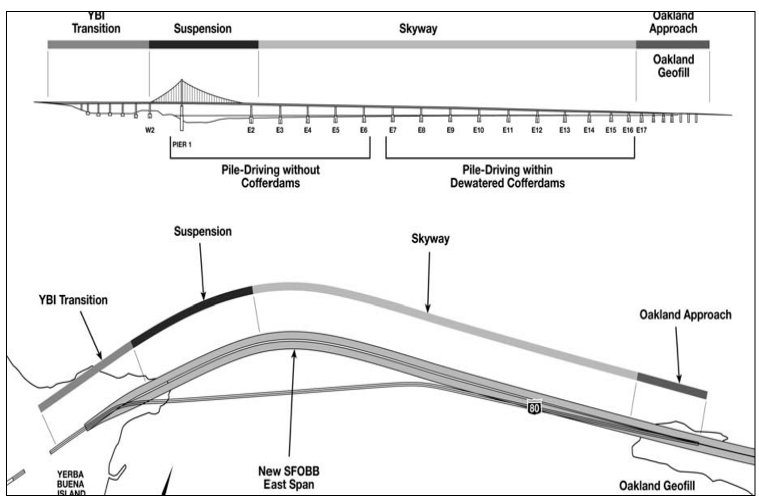


Figure I.9-2 Project Components—San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span

The SFOBB Project included driving large piles (2.7-meter- [8-foot-] diameter) that were over 100 meters (330 feet) long. Piers that would support the new bridge include at least six of these piles, with four piles installed at an angle (battered). In addition, blasting was conducted at Yerba Buena Island for construction of piers on land near the water.

I.9.2 Hydroacoustic Measurement Plans

Hydroacoustic measurements were made during the driving of test piles (referred to as the Pile Installation Demonstration Project [PIDP]) and during the driving of production piles during project construction. At preparation of this document, all piles for the Skyway portion of the bridge had been driven. Hydroacoustic measurements also were made during blasting activities at Pier W1 at Yerba Buena Island. The blasting was conducted on land but near the water.

Plans were developed for underwater sound measurements for production pile driving. Hydroacoustic measurements were conducted during the PIDP and PIDP Re-Strike[1, 2]. The production part of the project included two studies that required hydroacoustic monitoring: (1) the Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program; and (2) the Marine Mammal Monitoring Program.

- The Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program required underwater sound measurements to characterize the sound field during pile driving. Plans were developed prior to measurements and were documented in the Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program Plan[3]. Specific underwater sound measurement positions were specified in the plan. In addition, the plans for conducting the fish cage study were described, which included underwater sound measurements to document the sound exposure received by fish from pile driving.

- Protection of marine mammals, primarily pinnipeds or seals, was conducted through implementation of the Marine Mammal Monitoring Program Plan[4]. The program elements included monitoring of pinnipeds in the area and establishment of a marine mammal safety zone (MMSZ) through hydroacoustic measurements. Monitoring plans documented the methodology and frequency of hydroacoustic monitoring activities to comply with the Incidental Harassment Authorization issued by National Marine Fisheries Service in 2003[5].

In addition to the programs noted above, additional hydroacoustic monitoring activities were carried out on this project to further document hydroacoustic conditions around pile driving (especially pile driving in dewatered cofferdams), document hydroacoustic effects of the air bubble curtain system, and monitor conditions during blasting at Yerba Buena Island near the water.

I.9.3 Hydroacoustic Measurements

2000 Pile Installation Demonstration Project

The 2000 PIDP involved the installation of three piles into the floor of San Francisco Bay. The objective of the PIDP was to test and evaluate technical, engineering, and environmental factors associated with driving large, hollow steel piles approximately 100 meters long[1]. The PIDP involved utilization of two sizes of hammers, three different pile alignment configurations, and two different types of hydroacoustic attenuation systems. The piles were 108 meters (356 feet), long with an inside diameter of 2.4 meters (8 feet), and an outside diameter of 2.57 meters (8.5 feet). Pile 1 was a vertical pile, where no hydroacoustic attenuation devices were used. Pile 2 was a battered pile (driven at an angle) that was angled to the east and included a single-ring air bubble curtain. Pile 3 was inserted at a different location and also was battered, but it was angled to the west. A proprietary fabric underwater barrier attenuation system (Proprietary) was used for Pile 3. As with the SFOBB East Span Seismic Safety project, two different sizes of Menck hydraulic hammers were used. The MHU500T, or smaller hammer, had a maximum capacity of about 550 kilojoules (368,750 ft-lbs); and the MHU1700T (Figures I.9-3a and I-9.3b) had a maximum capacity of about 1,780 kilojoules (1,253,750 ft-lbs).

Figure I.9-3a Small Hydraulic Hammer (MHU500T) Used for Much of the Pile Driving

Figure I.9-3b Large Hydraulic Hammer (MHU1700T) Hammer Used for Last Quarter of Pile Driving Where Resistance Was Greatest

Results of acoustical measurements made during the PIDP were reported to the California Department of Transportation[1]. The underwater sound measurements for the 2000 PIDP were not comprehensive, but important data came from measurements at hydrophone depths of 1 and 6 meters (3.3 to 20 feet), without a sound attenuation system in place. Results are reported in Table I.9-1. Measurements were made at different distances and different depths. Attenuation systems were used for PIDP Piles 2 and 3.

The unattenuated measurements for PIDP Pile 1 indicated a source level of 209 dB peak, 198 dB RMS, and 185 dB SEL at 100 meters (330 feet). These levels were based on measurements for the 6-meter depth. Lower noise levels were found for depths near the surface. Measurements were made at 200 meters for PIDP Pile 2 when a simple air bubble curtain system was used (see Figure I.9-4a). These measurements were made with both the smaller MHU500T and larger MHU1700T hammers. Use of the larger hammer resulted in underwater sound levels that were 1 to 2 dB higher. The air bubble curtain system did not appear to provide measurable attenuation. There was no air bubble curtain ON/OFF test, so the effectiveness of the system could not be directly measured. Comparison of measurements between Pile 1 and Pile 2 indicated about 0 to 2 dB attenuation from the system. Tidal currents and insufficient air supply likely compromised the effectiveness. A Proprietary system was used for PIDP Pile 3 (see Figure I.9-4b). This system, which is able to confine bubbles close to the pile, was found to reduce sound pressure levels by about 5 to 10 dB. It should be noted that PIDP Pile 3 was driven in shallower waters and had unattenuated levels that were about 10 dB lower than those measured for PIDP Pile 1.

Table I.9-1 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for the 2000 Pile Installation Demonstration Project (PIDP) – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge, East Span

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
PIDP 1 Section 1D (top)	Menck1700T hammer (900 kilojoules)			
	100 meters unattenuated – 1-meter depth	197	185	~172
	100 meters unattenuated – 3-meter depth	205	192	~178
	100 meters unattenuated – 6-meter depth	207	196	~183
	360 meters unattenuated – 1-meter depth	181	167	~157
	360 meters unattenuated – 3-meter depth	188	175	~164
	360 meters unattenuated – 6-meter depth	191	179	~168
PIDP 2 Section 2D (top)	Menck500T hammer (550 kilojoules)			
	200 meters unattenuated – 1-meter depth	197	184	~172
	200 meters unattenuated – 3-meter depth	201	189	~178
	200 meters unattenuated – 6-meter depth	197	186	~174
PIDP 2 Section 2D (top)	Menck1700T hammer (1,000 kilojoules)			
	200 meters partially attenuated – 1-meter depth	199	187	~175
	200 meters partially attenuated – 3-meter depth	201	190	~177
	200 meters partially attenuated – 6-meter depth	199	188	~176
PIDP 3 Section 3D (top)	Menck1700T hammer (1,500 kilojoules)			
	100 meters east unattenuated (Proprietary OFF)– 1-meter depth	193	179	~167
	100 meters east unattenuated (Proprietary ON)– 1-meter depth	189	175	--
	100 meters west unattenuated (Proprietary ON)– 1-meter depth	188	175	~163
	100 meters west unattenuated (Proprietary OFF)– 1-meter depth	197	184	~173
	500 meters west unattenuated (Proprietary ON)– 1-meter depth	170	160	~148

Figure I.9-4a Simple Air Bubble Ring Used during Driving of PIDP Pile 2

Figure I.9-4b Proprietary Fabric Air Bubble Curtain (Proprietary) Used during Driving of PIDP Pile 3

Levels were always lowest near the surface (1-meter depth). A spreading loss formula was derived; the formula corrected for hammer size and measured excess attenuation, and yielded approximately 30 dB loss per tenfold increase in distance.

Pile Installation Demonstration Project Re-Strike

The PIDP Re-Strike was conducted in 2003 for geotechnical evaluation of pile stability and to demonstrate the effectiveness of a bubble curtain system that was designed to provide protection to fisheries resources in San Francisco Bay. For the Re-Strike Project, the Menck1700T hydraulic hammer (MHU1700T), with a capacity of 1,780 kilojoules, was used at or near full capacity. The geotechnical evaluation was intended to demonstrate the limits of pile "take-up" over time to verify that the pile elements of the foundation would be strong enough to support the construction loadings that are anticipated while the footing is still relatively young. The criterion used to determine stability was 670 strikes with less than 250 millimeters (approximately 1 foot) movement. A secondary objective was to evaluate a bubble curtain system that was improved over the single-ring system used during the 2000 PIDP. This two-ring bubble curtain discharged considerably more air than the 2000 PIDP bubble curtain system and was fitted much more tightly around the pile than either the single-ring bubble curtain or the fabric barrier system.

Figure I.9-5a Air Bubble Curtain System with Compressors in Background

Figure I.9-5b Air Bubble Curtain System in Operation during the PIDP Re-Strike

Measurements results for each of the three piles struck are presented in Table I.9-2 for both attenuated and unattenuated conditions. The reduction in sound pressure levels provided by the air bubble curtain system ranged considerably. The direct reduction in sound pressure levels, which was evaluated by comparing bubble curtain ON and OFF measurements, for Piles 1 and 2 was 6 to 17 dB for peak pressure levels and 3 to 10 dB for RMS sound pressure levels. Piles 1 and 2 were located next to each other in fairly deep water (about 12-meters [39 feet]). Reductions at Pile 3, which was in shallower water, were over 20 dB for both peak pressure levels and RMS sound pressure levels on the north side. However, the reductions on the south side for Pile 3 were much less. Close to Pile 3 on the south side, the reductions were on the order of 5 to 7 dB. Further away at about 450 meters (1,475 feet) south, the reductions were only about 2 dB. Uneven bottom topography around Pile 3, which could have compromised the air bubble curtain performance near the bay bottom, was suspected to have resulted in the lower reductions to the south. However, subsequent production pile measurements indicate that ground-borne sound generation from vibration produced by the pile driving was likely the cause. It is important to note that overall sound pressure levels associated with Pile 3 were lower than those for Piles 1 and 2. Measurements of peak pressure levels made at about 100 meters were consistent with the measurements made during the PIDP in 2000. Those measurements were the basis for predictions of the maximum peak pressure levels during SFOBB East Span construction. Measured peak pressure levels were lower than the levels predicted in the

Biological Opinion, except at the 450-meter south position. At this location, measured peak pressure levels were 5 to 8 dB higher than predicted. This was the result of the ground-borne sound generation in that direction that was not known at the time of the predictions. Conversely, unattenuated peak pressure levels at 450 to 500 meters (1,475 to 1,640 feet) north were 0 to 6 dB lower than predicted.

Table I.9-2 Summary of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for the 2003 Pile Installation Demonstration Project (PIDP) Re-Strike Using the MHU1700T Hammer at Full Energy – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge, East Span

Pile	Conditions	Sound Pressure Levels in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
PIDP 1	100 meters south attenuated	196	185	--
	100 meters south unattenuated	206	192	--
	460 meters south attenuated	189	178	--
	460 meters south unattenuated	198	185	--
	100 meters north attenuated	201	189	--
	100 meters north unattenuated	207	194	--
	450 meters north attenuated	175	162	--
	450 meters north unattenuated	182	171	--
PIDP 2	100 meters south attenuated	197	185	--
	100 meters south unattenuated	208	195	--
	460 meters south attenuated	191	180	--
	460 meters south unattenuated	--	--	--
	100 meters north attenuated	196	184	--
	100 meters north unattenuated	205	193	--
	450 meters north attenuated	180	171	--
	450 meters north unattenuated	190	177	--
PIDP 3	100 meters south attenuated	193	182	--
	100 meters south unattenuated	199	186	--
	450 meters south attenuated	184	173	--
	450 meters south unattenuated	187	175	--
	100 meters north attenuated	179	169	--
	100 meters north unattenuated	198	184	--
	470 meters north attenuated	<180	<170	--
	470 meters north unattenuated	184	172	--

Signal analyses presented in Figure I.9-6 show the acoustical pulses for measurements made at 100 meters south of the piles. Each pulse lasted about 80 msec or longer, and most of the disturbance occurred during the first 25 to 35 msec. In all cases, the reduction in acoustical energy is evident. The bubble curtain system was effective at reducing sound pressure levels above 1,000 Hz in all cases and above 300 Hz in some cases. The reductions were over 20 dB above 2,000 Hz. The reduction in higher frequencies is evident by the smoother increase and decrease in pressure over time. These signals also illustrate the site differences for both bubble curtain ON and OFF conditions between the locations of Piles 1 and 2 and the location of Pile 3. At Pile 3, sound pressure levels were much lower even without the air bubble curtain ON. The measured reduction between ON and OFF conditions was less at Pile 3, but the resulting attenuated levels were lower than any of the levels measured at Piles 1 or 2. Shallower conditions and different substrates probably contributed to the overall reduced levels.

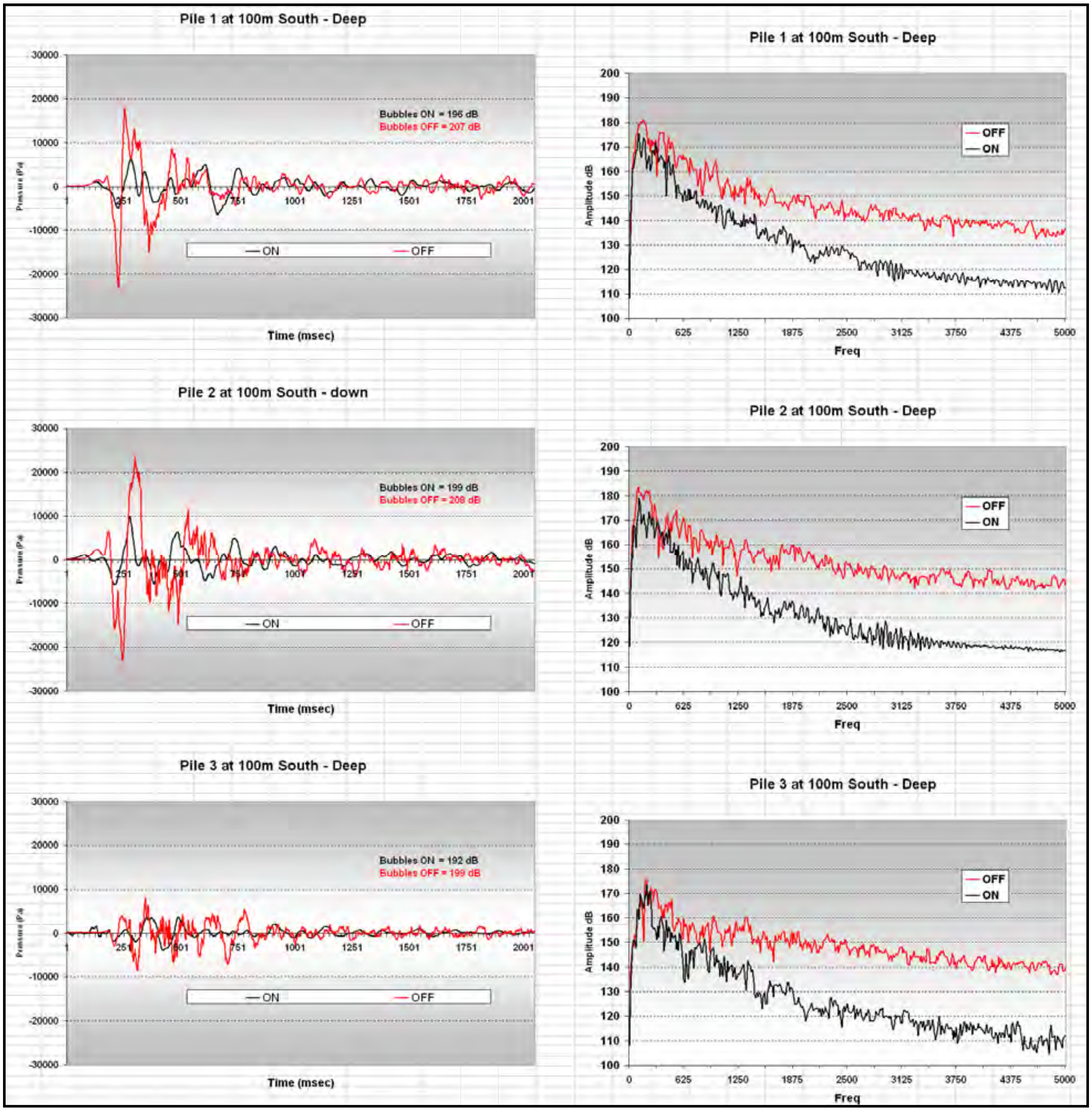


Figure I.9-6 Representative Signal Analyses for PIDP Re-Strike Measurements Made at 100 Meters (330 Feet) from Three Different Piles with and without Air Bubble Curtain Attenuation – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge, East Span

I.9.4 Production Pile Driving

As of this writing, the SFOBB East Span Replacement construction is still ongoing. However, much of the pile driving has been completed. Some pile driving is still planned for the self-anchored suspension tower. Much of the pile driving was conducted for the Skyway portion of the bridge, which involved 28 piers that consisted of six large-diameter piles about 100 to 110 meters (328 to 360 feet) long. Twenty of the piers were constructed in the shallower waters, where dewatered cofferdams were used. In these cases, piles did not have direct contact with the water. Eight of the piers were constructed in water, where an air bubble curtain system was used to attenuate underwater sounds to protect fish and marine mammals. Extensive noise measurements were conducted for this project as part of the Fisheries Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program, the Marine Mammal Monitoring Program, and supplemental measurements to test effectiveness of the air bubble curtain system. This was the most intensive underwater sound monitoring program implemented for a construction project that involved marine pile driving. In all, several hundred underwater sound measurements were made on 19 separate days for production pile driving. This is in addition to the measurements made for the 2000 PIDP, the 2003 PIDP Re-Strike, Pier T1 CIDH casings, and Pier E2 foundation pile driving measurements. Acoustic measurement results obtained from this project are contained in several project biological compliance reports that are available over the internet at www.biomitigation.org (select biological mitigation reports, then the subject: Hydroacoustics)[6,7,8,9,10,11]. Because the measurement results are extensive for this project, they are summarized in this chapter. The reader is referred to the *Hydroacoustic Monitoring Report for the Skyway Construction Project* for a full description of the data collected for this project[9].

Production – Dewatered Cofferdam

Twenty of the bridge piers were constructed in dewatered cofferdams. The dewatered cofferdam provided the greatest reduction in peak sound pressure levels created by impact pile driving into the water column. The air within the dewatered cofferdam mostly decoupled the pressure wave from the surrounding water column, resulting in substantially lower underwater sound pressure levels transmitted outside of the cofferdam. However, flanking of sound through the ground substrate was detected in the region that was generally south of the piles. Sound pressure levels in this region reached about 200 dB peak (190 to 192 dB RMS) at about 100 to 150 meters (328 to 492 feet) from the pile. The sound pressure levels were lower nearer to the pile. Sound pressure levels in other directions were typically 180 dB peak (170 dB RMS) or less at all monitoring locations.

Each cofferdam included six 100-meter-long, 2.4-meter- (8-foot-) diameter piles that were driven into the bottom of San Francisco Bay using 550-kilojoules and 1,780-kilojoules hydraulic hammers (see Figure I.9-7). Pier E16E included the first piles driven in a dewatered cofferdam in shallow water, with depths of mostly about 3 to 4 meters (10 to 13 feet). The Menck MHU500T, providing about 550 kilojoules of energy, was used to drive the top half of this pile. About 200 feet of pile had been driven into the ground before these measurements were made. Sound pressure levels measured between 25 and 65 meters(82 and 213 feet) from the pile were mostly less than 180 dB peak, 170 dB RMS, and 160 dB SEL. Surprisingly, a position that was 95 meters (311 feet) west had much higher sound levels. At this position, sound pressure levels reached 196 dB peak, 184 dB RMS, and 172 dB SEL. This was an isolated area around the pile, where sound levels were lower at all other positions. More extensive monitoring was conducted at Pier E15W near Pier E16E to investigate these higher sound levels. Again, a small area of substantially higher sound levels was found, while all other areas around the pile had much lower levels. In general, measurements made from 35 to 300 meters (115 to 985 feet) from the pile had sound pressure levels under 190 dB peak and 180 dB RMS. One isolated area at 70 to 80 meters (230 to 262 feet) southwest of the pile had levels 202 dB peak and 189 dB RMS near the end of the drive, when almost 100 meters of pile had been driven into the ground.

Figure I.9-7 SFOBB Pile Driving in Dewatered Cofferdam at Pier E7E (Deepest Cofferdam) Using Menck 1700MHU

Measurements under similar conditions for Pier E12W found higher sound levels in fairly isolated areas. The area of elevated sound pressure levels was larger and had higher levels. While most levels around the pile were 20 dB lower, the area about 100 to 150 meters (329 to 492 feet) from the piles in the west through south positions had sound pressure levels up to 205 dB peak and 194 dB RMS. These levels were measured during the final driving stages (deepest driving) when the MHU1700T hammer rated at 1,750 kilojoules was used. Measurements were made at Pier E11W when the bottom pile sections (i.e., the first 50 meters of pile) were driven using the MHU500T hammer. In this case, most sound pressure levels were below 185 dB peak and 175 dB RMS, with the exception of the south through southeast directions. In these directions, sound pressure levels were elevated to about 190 to 195 dB peak, 180 to 183 dB RMS, and 170 to 173 dB SEL. The highest levels occurred between 90 and 120 meters (295 to 393 feet) from the pile during the last 5 minutes of pile driving. Levels were lower both closer and further from the pile. Water depth was about 5 meters. This was the first 50-meter section of pile that was driven. Measurements were not made for the top portion, when the MHU1700T hammer was used.

More extensive measurements were made for other piers with dewatered cofferdams but in deeper water when only the top pile sections were driven with the MHU1700T hammer. Pier E10E included a full acoustic characterization during the driving of top pile sections. Measurements were made when both the MHU500T and MHU1700T hammers were used. Drop-off rates were plotted for these driving conditions (see Figures I.9-8a and I.9-8b). For the most part, sound pressure levels were below 190 dB peak and 180 dB RMS in all directions except the louder isolated cases that typically occurred in the southerly direction. The loudest levels were found at 100 meters from these long piles. In the louder directions, highest sound levels were found at 100 meters from the pile, where sound pressure levels were 190 to 205 dB peak and 180 to 190 dB RMS. SELs analyzed for individual strikes showed roughly a 10-dB relationship to RMS levels.

These measurements at Pier E10E found that sound pressure levels were attenuated by 20 to 30 dB or more in all but the southerly directions, when compared to unattenuated open water conditions. Relatively and unexpectedly high levels were measured to the south beyond 100 meters from the pile (primarily south-southeast). These levels were attenuated only by about 5 to 10 dB. In fact, peak pressure levels as high as 204 dB were measured at 120 meters south-southeast for Pier E10E. Sound pressure levels were about 5 to 10 dB lower in the southwest direction, indicating some focusing of these relatively high sound pressure levels. Some additional measurements made during the driving of a pile at Pier E9E confirmed these findings. These measurements also found levels as high as 170 dB peak just off the east side of Yerba Buena Island (about 2,000 meters [6,560 feet] west)[*] while measurements at 100 meters (328 feet) west were 187 dB peak. More limited measurements were made at Pier E7E, the most westerly pier where a dewatered cofferdam was used. Interestingly, Pier E7E is located near Pile 3 of the PIDP. Measurements indicated that the reduced levels were present in the northerly direction as well as in the

[*] This level was measured in water near Yerba Buena Island during hydroacoustic measurements conducted to measure blasting on the island as part of the W2 pier construction project.

southerly direction. However, higher levels were seen to the southeast. The highest level measured in that direction was about 195 dB peak at 220 meters (720 feet). At 100 meters (328 feet) south, pressure levels were about 5 to 10 dB lower than with the air bubble curtain on at Pile 3 during the PIDP. At 500 meters (1,640 feet) south, peak pressure levels were about 3 to 5 dB lower than the PIDP Re-Strike Pile 3 air bubble curtain "ON" conditions. At 200 meters (656 feet) north, the cofferdam levels were about 2 dB lower than the air bubble curtain "ON" conditions with PIDP Re-Strike Pile 3.

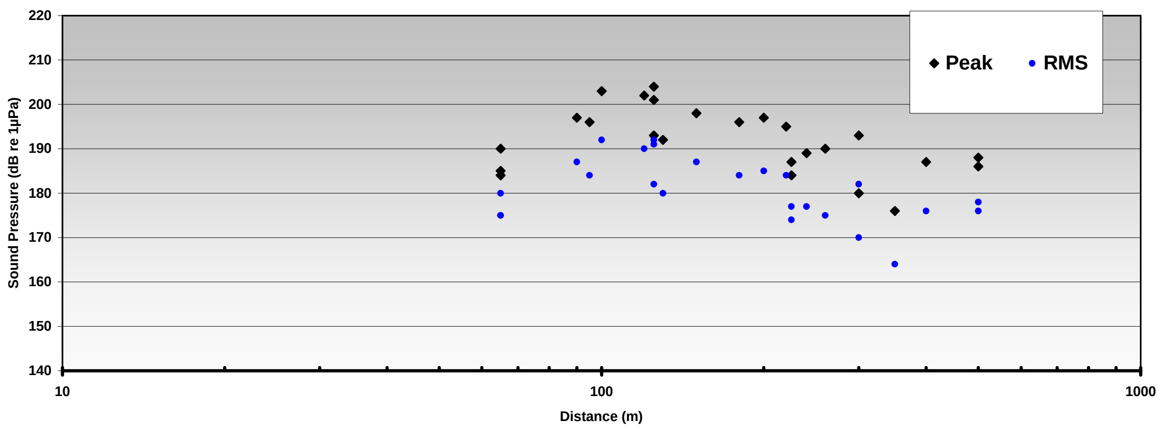


Figure I.9-8a Drop Off in Sound Pressure Levels with Dewatered Cofferdam in Southerly (Louder) Direction

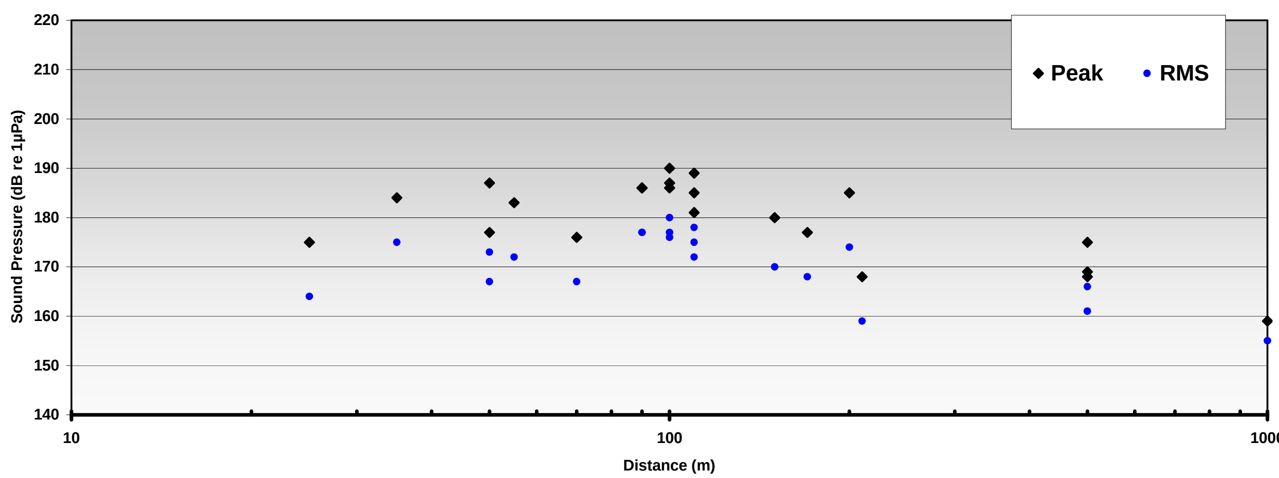


Figure I.9-8b Drop Off in Sound Pressure Levels with Dewatered Cofferdam in Other (Quieter) Directions

<u>Signal Analysis for Dewatered Cofferdam Measurements</u>

Signal analyses of representative pulses generated from pile driving in dewatered cofferdams were examined from data at Piers E16E and E10E. Pile driving in dewatered cofferdams eliminates the direct coupling of the steel pile and the water. Ground-borne propagation of the pulse is believed to have resulted in localized areas of low-frequency sound in the water generally south of the piers. At Pier E16E, signal analyses (see Figure I.9-9 and Figure I.9-10, and note that pressure scales are different) are presented for one depth at two distances—95 meters (312 feet) and 50 meters (164 feet). Note that water depth around Pier E16E was relatively shallow, about 1.5 to 3 meters (5 to 10 feet). These data provide illustrations for signals associated with the unusual findings at this pier, where localized sound pressure levels were higher at further distances than at closer distances. Of particular interest in these charts is the relatively slow accumulation of sound energy where the signal was heavily attenuated at the 50-meter position. It can also be seen that sound energy is concentrated in the low-frequency region below 400 Hz. Low-frequency sound will not propagate in very shallow water. The pile extends down to 100 meters (328 feet) below the mud line when driving is complete. The pulse also propagates through the ground and radiates into the water at the mud line. The source of this sound is ground-borne vibration caused by the pile interacting below the mud line. Signals for pulses measured during pile driving at other dewatered cofferdams showed similar characteristics. Some of the measurements made close to the cofferdam, included some high-frequency sounds, but these were of low amplitude. The highest amplitude sounds measured for the dewatered cofferdam condition for this project (about 120 meters southeast of Pier E10E) had low-frequency characteristics similar to that measured 95 meters west of Pier E16E.

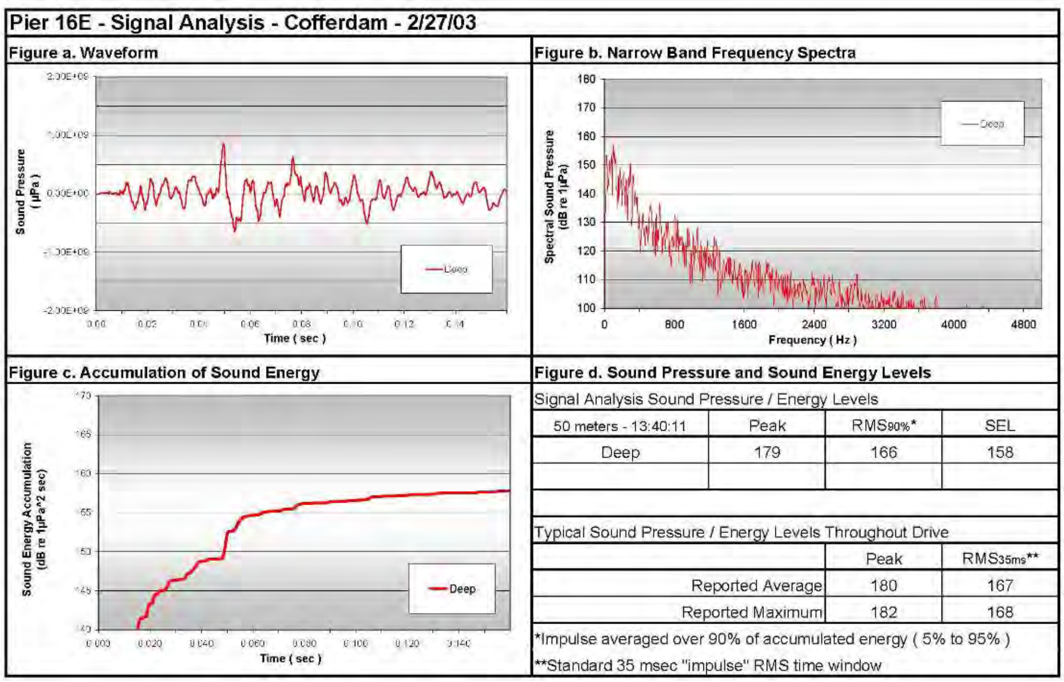
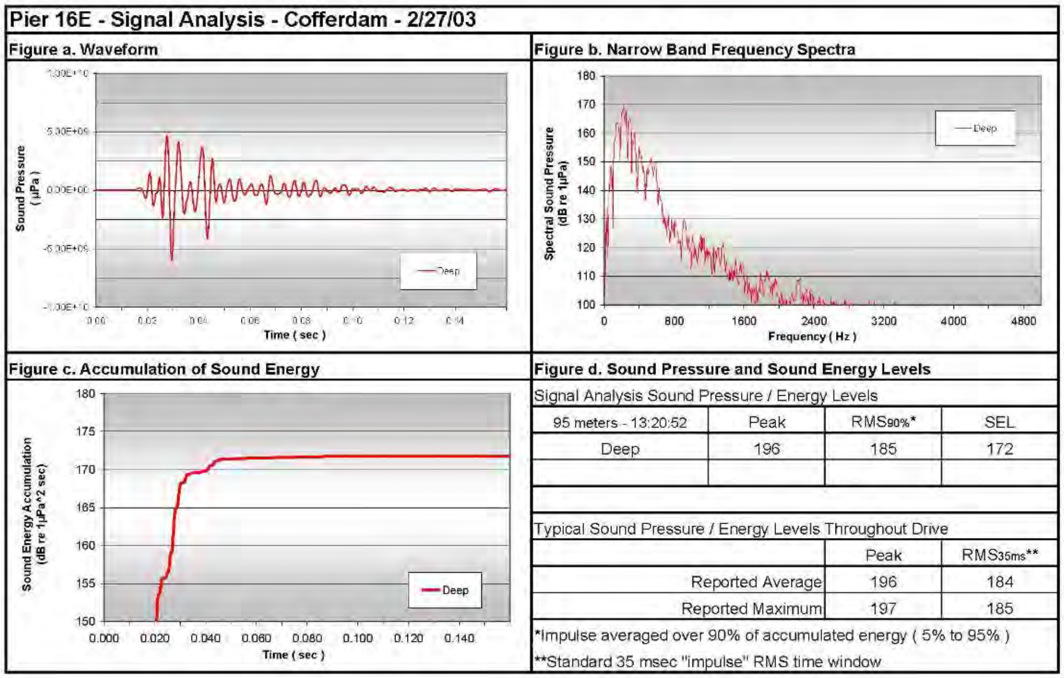


Figure I.9-9 Pulse from Pile Driven in Dewatered Cofferdam at Pier E16E (Very Shallow Water) Measured 50 Meters (164 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
95 meters - 13:20:52	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Deep	196	185	172

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	196	184
Reported Maximum	197	185

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.9-10 Pulse from Pile Driven in Dewatered Cofferdam at Pier E16E (Very Shallow Water) Measured 95 Meters (311 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

Time History of Sound Pressure Levels – Dewatered Cofferdam

Sound pressure levels varied throughout the driving of a particular pile. The variability in amplitude and duration of driving events at one location for Pier E10 are illustrated in Figure I.9-11. Peak pressure levels were measured almost continuously during a day of pile driving at Pier E10E when hydroacoustic characterization was performed. Continuous measurements of the top sections of a group of piles at Pier E10E were measured at three distances (about the 50-meter [164-foot] north, 100-meter [328-foot] north, and 120-meter [394-foot] southeast positions). These data are interesting, because they illustrate the levels associated with the two different hammers and how they varied over time. Measurements at 50 meters (164 feet) and 100 meters (328 feet) varied, and levels were not always lower at 100 meters (328 feet) as one would expect. They also show that levels did vary by 5 dB or more over the particular driving periods, where all sites tended to show the same trend in levels, with some exceptions. While levels showed similar trends for Piles 4 and 5, all three positions had different trends for Pile 6 when the large hammer was used. In general, levels measured with the MHU1700T hammer were slightly higher than levels measured with the MHU500T hammer. These data demonstrate that there is no simple relationship between received sound pressure level, position, and hammer energy—especially when the source of the sound is ground borne.

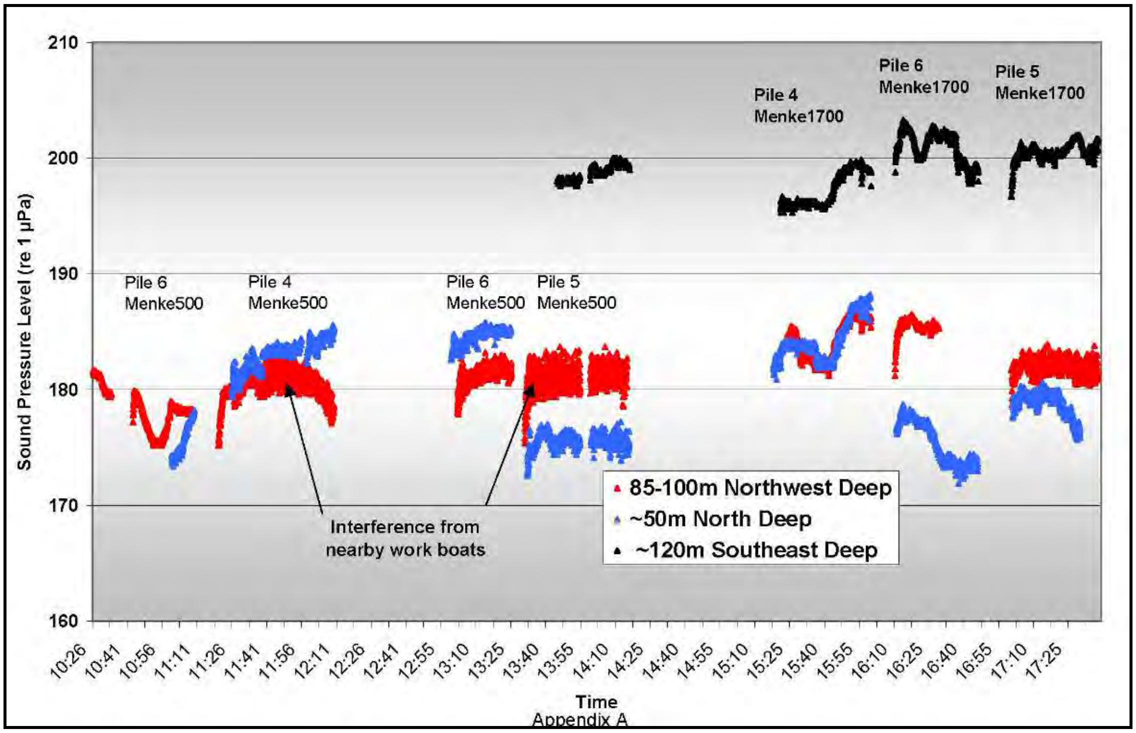


Figure I.9-11 Peak Pressure Levels Measured at Three Different Positions during the Course of Pile Driving in 1 Day at Pier E10E (Dewatered Cofferdam) – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

Production – In-Water

The air bubble curtain system was used to attenuate underwater noise levels for the eight piers that were located in deeper water (Piers E6E and E6W through E3E and E3W). Water depths ranged from about 10 to 12 meters (33 to 39 feet) at Pier E6E and E6W to almost 15 meters (49 feet) at Piers E3E and E3W. Sound pressure levels were reduced by the air bubble curtain, as evidenced by comparing sound pressure levels generated during production pile driving with those measured during the PIDP and PIDP Re-Strike. The air bubble curtain system was tested by measuring sound pressure levels at certain distances with the system on and off. Air bubble curtain performance is discussed later.

Resulting sound pressure levels typically ranged from about 190 to 205 dB peak and 180 to193 dB RMS at 50 meters, to 190 to 200 dB peak and 180 to 185 dB RMS at 100 meters. At positions close to the pile (i.e., 100 to 200 meters), sound pressure levels were always highest on the upstream side of the air bubble curtain system where bubbles tended to be washed away by the tidal currents. At 500 meters, there was a wide range in sound pressure levels of 170 dB to 190 dB peak and 160 to 178 dB RMS. Sound pressure levels measured at 500 meters (1,640 feet) or farther away were likely comprised of mostly ground-borne sounds and, therefore, were mostly unaffected by the air bubble curtain. Measurements were made very close to the piles at Pier E5E and Pier E3E. Sound levels at measurement positions downstream and normal to the current indicate substantial attenuation, with highest levels next to the air bubble curtain of 200 to 205 dB peak and 185 to 195 dB RMS. When a current was present, sound pressure levels were much higher at the upstream side. For instance, a peak sound pressure level of 215 dB and RMS of 199 dB was measured next to the air bubble curtain on the upstream side, while positions normal or downstream of the current were 10 to 15 dB lower. Measurements were made out to 4,400 meters (14,435 feet, or about 2.7 miles) in both north and south directions. Sounds from pile driving could be measured at a position 2,000 meters (6,560 feet) north of the pile, where peak pressure levels were 169 dB and RMS levels were 162 dB. At 4,400 meters north, pile driving was barely audible; but reliable measurements above background of 130 dB RMS could not be made. Sounds at 2,000 and 4,400 meters to the south were not audible above background noise levels of 130 to 140 dB. Waters 2,000 to 4,400 meters south were shallower. Separate measurements made for a different pier indicated peak pressure levels of 170 dB peak and 162 dB RMS at 2,200 meters north.

The maximum levels measured were 220 dB peak, 201 dB RMS, and 190 dB SEL at a distance of 5 to 7 meters (16.5 to 23 feet) from the pile (the average was about 5 dB lower). This was an unattended measurement made inside the pile-driving template at the closest position that could be measured with the air bubble curtain system operating. The lowest levels measured were undetectable, below about 130 dB RMS, at 2,000 meters south and 4,400 meters north.

Figure I.9-12 shows the plot of measured peak and RMS sound pressure levels over distance. Sound pressure levels were estimated to drop off at a rate of 18 to 19 dB per tenfold increase in distance from the pile. The drop-off rate was highly variable due to air bubble curtain performance for near-source measurements and variable ground-borne sound radiation for distant positions. About 10 dB of variation was recorded for all measurement distances. Obviously, a single measurement point cannot be used to describe sound radiated from this pile driving activity.

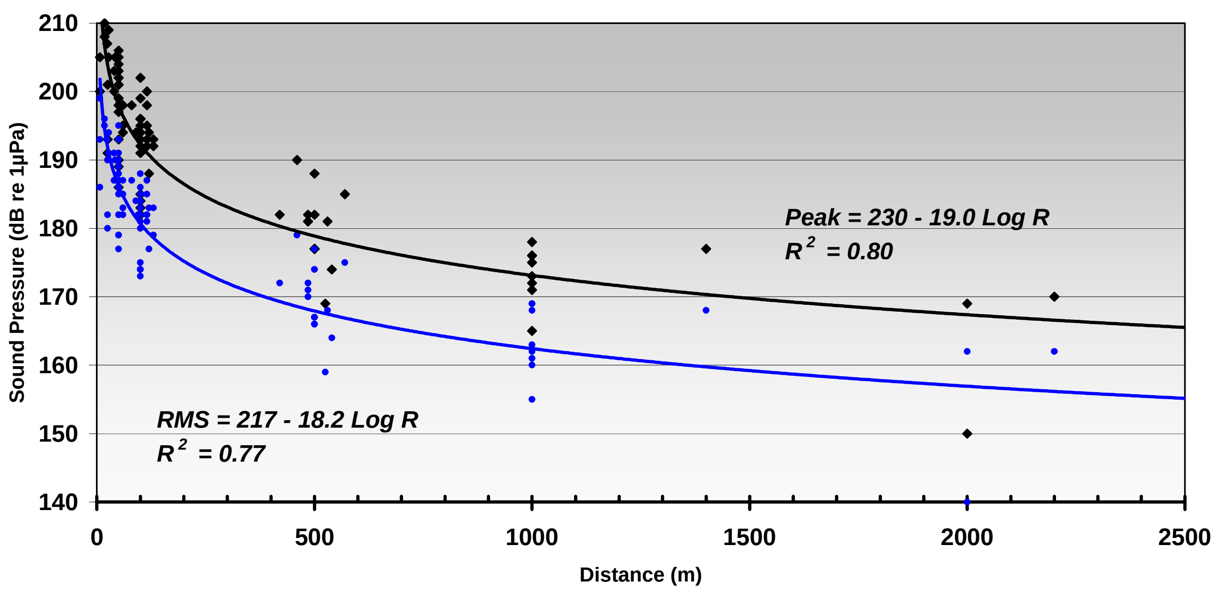


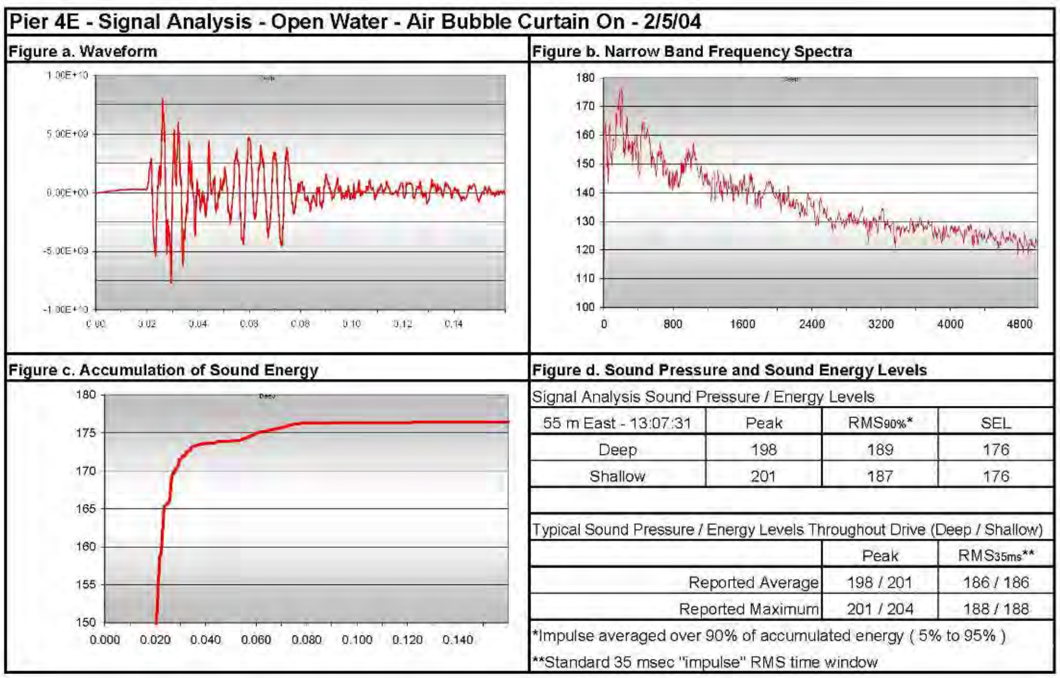
Figure I.9-12 Drop Off in Sound Pressure Levels with the Air Bubble Curtain System during In-Water Pile Driving – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

Since currents usually ran north-south, measurements to the east or west were generally unaffected by the effect of the current on the air bubble curtain system. Measurements were generally louder to the west, where waters were deeper, than to the east. At 100 meters, the variation could be about 5 dB. At 500 meters, the variation increased upward to 20 dB.

Most measurements were made at two depths: 2 meters below the water surface and 2 meters above the water bottom. Measurements at the deeper sensor were usually slightly higher, especially for RMS sound pressure levels. Higher peak pressure levels were infrequently measured at the shallower sensor, while the corresponding RMS levels were similar or slightly lower than the RMS level measured at the deeper sensor. A test of sound levels for different depths at Pier E4E indicated that sound pressure levels were fairly uniform from near the bottom up to almost 1 meter below the surface. For depths 1 meter or less, sound pressure levels were substantially lower and difficult to measure.

Signal Analysis for In-Water Pile Driving

Signal analysis was conducted for representative pulses at the piers where measurements were conducted for in-water pile driving (Piers E6E, E5E, E3E, E4E, E3W, and E4W). An air bubble curtain system was used to reduce sound pressure levels, except for brief periods of testing at Piers E6E, E3E, and E4W. In all, hundreds of signals were analyzed and presented in project reports[8,9,10,11]. Figures I.9-13 through I.9-17 show the pulses from pile driving for distances of 55, 110, 570, 1,400, and 2,200 meters—generally to the north of the pile driving. These illustrate the attenuation of these pulses as one moves farther from the pile. These examples were chosen for the direction with the lowest rate of attenuation, which appears to be caused by the pulse transmitted through the ground.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

55 m East - 13:07:31	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Deep	198	189	176
Shallow	201	187	176

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive (Deep / Shallow)

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	198 / 201	186 / 186
Reported Maximum	201 / 204	188 / 188

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.9-13 Pulse from Pile Driven in Water with Air Bubble Curtain at Pier E4E Measured 55 Meters (180 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

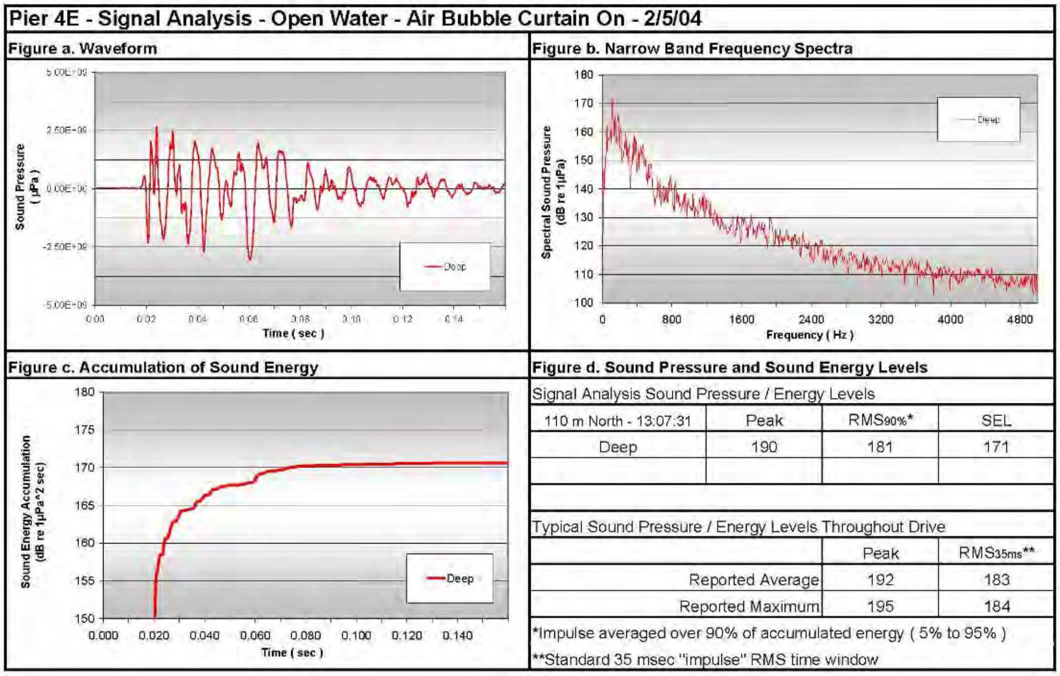


Figure I.9-14. Same as Figure I.9-13, Except 110 Meters (360 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

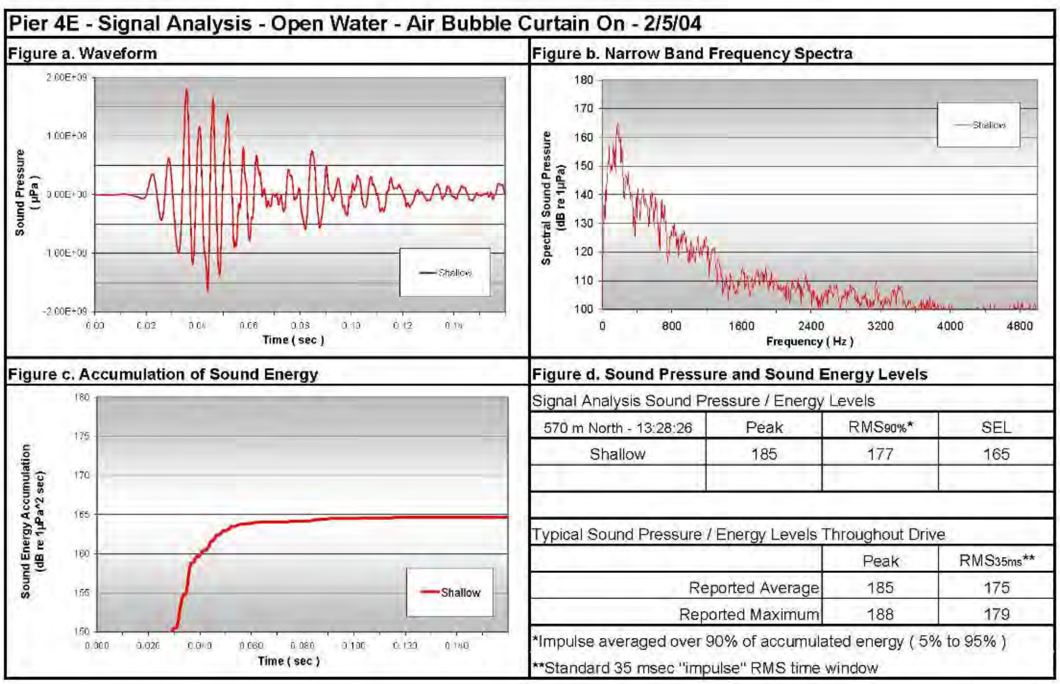


Figure I.9-15 Same as Figure I.9-13, Except 570 Meters (1,870 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

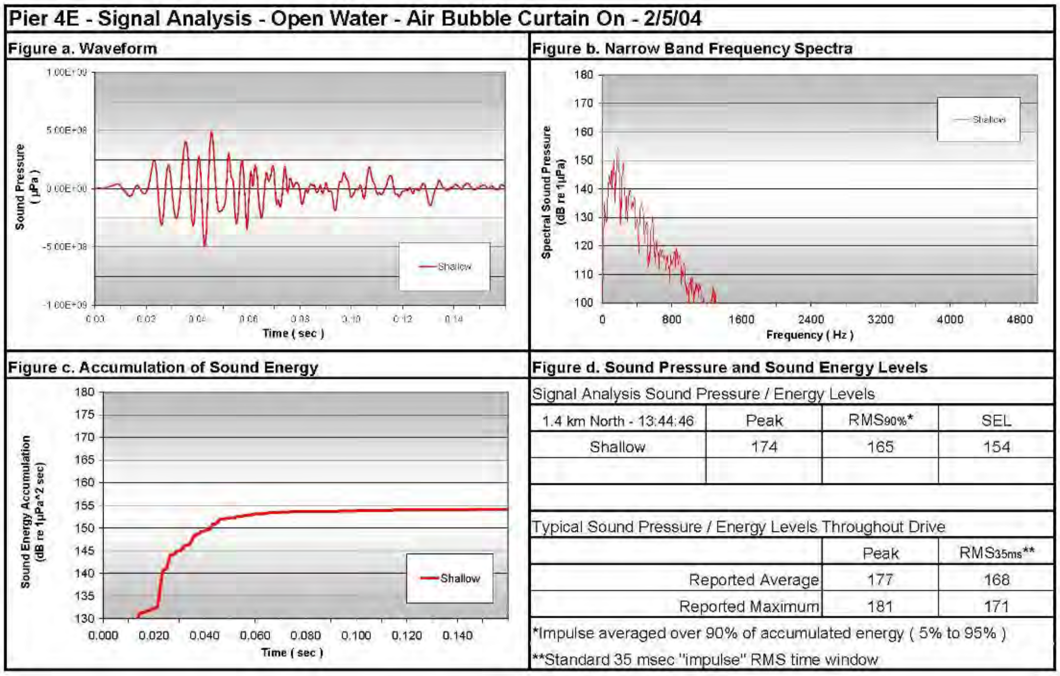


Figure I.9-16 Same as Figure I.9-13, Except 1,400 Meters (4,590 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

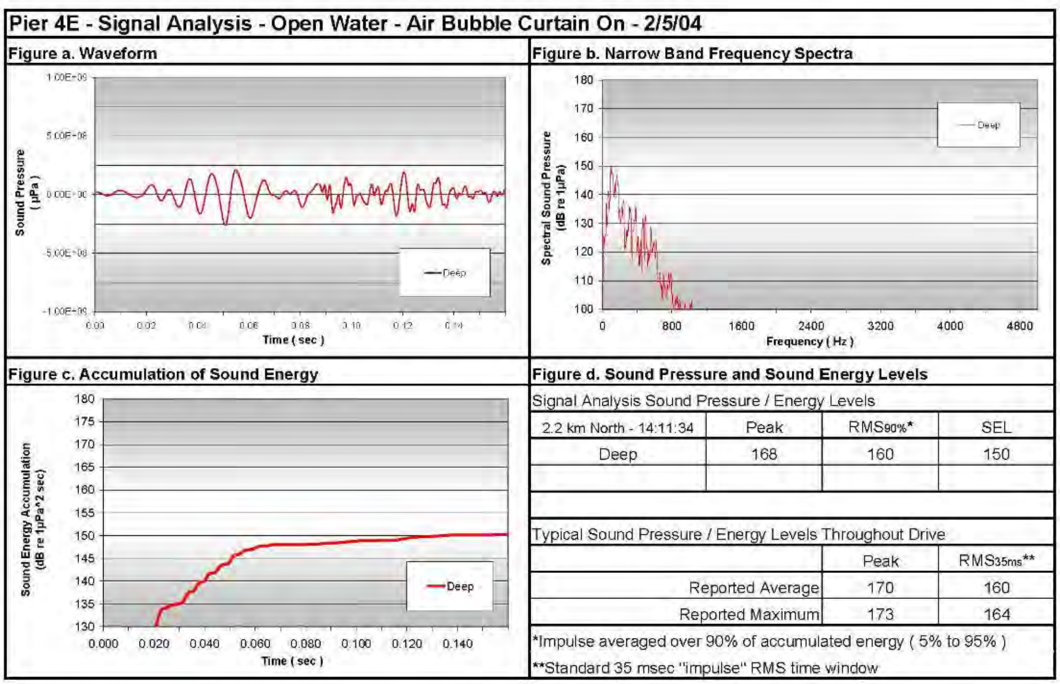


Figure I.9-17 Same as Figure I.9-13, Except 2,200 Meters (7,220 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

Caged Fish Studies

Fish cage monitoring with hydrophones was conducted in late 2003 and 2004 as part of the Fisheries Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program. The fish were exposed to sound pressure levels of up to 209 dB peak, 192 dB RMS, and 182 dB SEL at distances as close as 24 meters (79 feet) from the pile. A complete discussion of the results of this study and associated measured sound pressure level data are included in the Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program Compliance Report[8] and the addendum to that report[10]. These reports include acoustical signal analyses of the pile driving sounds measured in the cages containing the fish.

Air Bubble Curtain Tests

Underwater sound measurements conducted when the air bubble curtain was turned on and then off at Piers E6E and E3E indicate a large variation in air bubble curtain performance. The underwater sound measurements obtained from these tests indicated that, in general, peak sound pressure levels were reduced by about 5 to 20 dB at positions of about 100 meters (328 feet) or closer. The reduction was less for positions farther away, where the contribution of ground-borne sound was probably substantial and the higher frequency sound was naturally attenuated. Both air bubble curtain tests were conducted under relatively strong currents, which affected the attenuation performance. The air bubble curtain performance could be reduced somewhat under relatively strong currents. On the upstream side, the current tends to wash bubbles past that side of the pile, resulting in higher sound pressure levels. The pier cap appears to provide some attenuation of the sound pulse, since unattenuated sound pressure levels measured at 100 meters for Pier E6E were lower than unattenuated sound pressure levels measured during the PIDP. The PIDP piles did not include a pier cap, and Pier E6E is fairly close to Pile 3 of the PIDP—making a comparison possible.

Table I.9-3 summarizes the sound pressure levels measured at Pier E6E. The air bubble curtain system was turned on and off during the driving of the north and south piles at Pier E6E. A fairly strong north-to-south flood current was present during these tests. Measurements were made at several positions. Pier E6E was not the ideal pier to conduct the on/off tests since it is in the shallowest water, where piles are driven without a cofferdam and the pier box extends about two-thirds of the way from the water surface to the bay bottom, leaving only one-third of the pile (or about 3 to 5 meters) exposed to the water. Measurements made at positions 45 meters (148 feet) west, 50 meters (164 feet) north, 100 meters (328 feet) west, 100 meters (328 feet) south, and 100 meters (328 feet) north found that sound pressure levels were 8 to 10 dB higher when the air bubble curtain was turned off during the first test. A 1- to 2-dB reduction was measured 500 meters (1,640 feet) south. During the second test, a 2- to 9-dB reduction was measured. The 9-dB difference measured at 100 meters (328 feet) south was consistent with the first test. The 2-dB difference measured at 50 meters (164 feet) north was not consistent with the first test and indicated poorer air bubble curtain performance in the upstream side; however, the overall unattenuated level was 3 dB lower than the first test. A 1- to 2-dB difference was measured at about 500 meters (1,640 feet) south and 400 meters (1,312 feet) west.

A brief test with the air bubble curtain off for 1 minute of hammer strikes was conducted at Pier E3E. Pier E3E was in water about 12 to 15 meters (39 to 49 feet) deep. Measurements were made at 25 meters (82 feet) north, south, and west, as well as an additional position 50 meters (164 feet) north. No distant measurements were made during this brief test. A strong flood current (flowing from north to south) was present during the test. At the 25-meter (82-foot) positions, differences of 11 to 18 dB peak (9- to 15-dB RMS) were measured. At the downstream position (south), the difference was 18 dB (15 dB RMS). At the position normal to the current, the reduction was similar. The upstream positions showed differences of 10 dB at 25 meters (82 feet) and 13 dB at 50 meters (164 feet). There was a typical variation of 5 to 7 dB from pulse to pulse (or strike to strike) at the south position when the air bubble curtain was on. The variation at the north and west positions was only about 1 to 2 dB. Results are shown in Table I.9-4. The attenuation provided by the air bubble curtain at 50 meters north of the pile is clearly shown in Figure I.9-16.

Table I.9-3 Summary of Measurements – Pier E6E Bubble Curtain On/Off Test, 11/21/2003

Position	Water Depth	ON		OFF	
		RMS	Peak	RMS	Peak
North pile					
45 meters west	6 meters	187	200	196	210
50 meters north	6 meters	191	203	196	210
100 meters west	6 meters	182	194	188	201
120 meters north	6 meters	177	188	184	196
485 meters south	8 meters	172	182	174	182
South pile					
45 meters west	6 meters	191	203	196	210
50 meters north	6 meters	195	206	197	208
100 meters west	6 meters	184	194	190	203
420 meters west	7 meters	171	181	173	183
485 meters south	8 meters	172	182	173	184

Table I.9-4 Summary of Measurements – Pier E3E Bubble Curtain On/Off Test, 1/24/2004

Position	Water Depth	ON		OFF	
		RMS	Peak	RMS	Peak
Center pile					
50 meters north	11 meters	187	199	197	212
25 meters north	11 meters	190	201	199	212
25 meters south	11 meters	182	193	198	211
25 meters west	11 meters	180	191	195	209

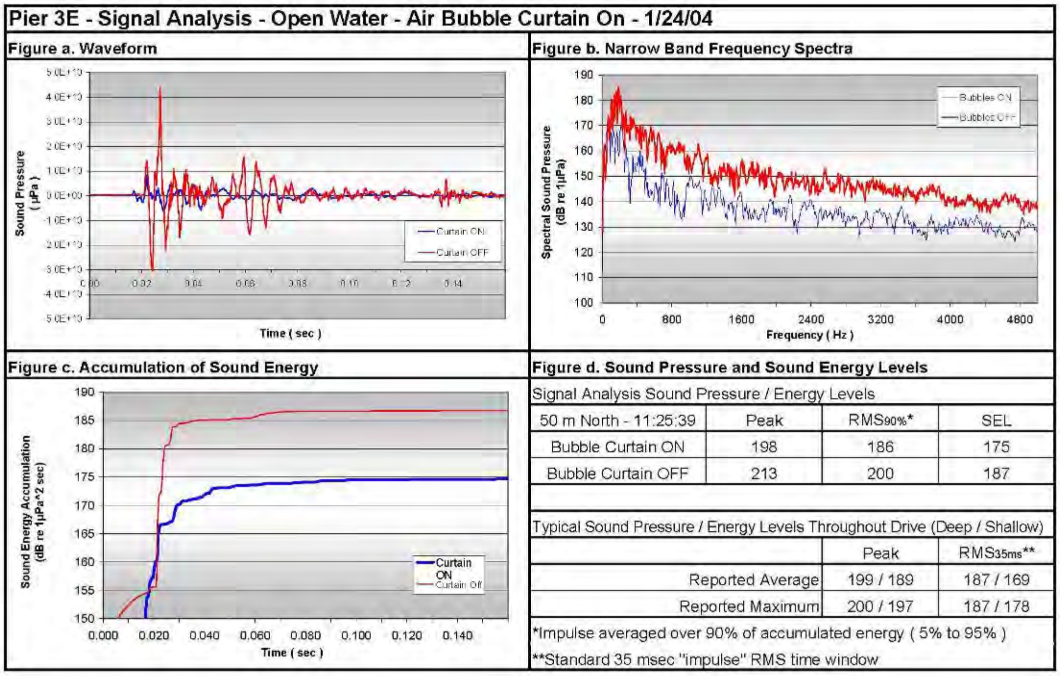


Figure I.9-18 Pulse for Attenuated and Unattenuated Piles Strikes during Air Bubble Curtain Test at Pier E3E Measured 50 Meters (164 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project

A subsequent air bubble curtain on/off test at Pier E4W indicated much less attenuation and a possible problem with the air bubble curtain. In addition, there were irregular rates of attenuation in different directions. For instance, both peak and RMS sound pressure levels were lower toward the east than at other positions of similar distance. The underwater sound measurements obtained during the Pier E4W air bubble curtain on/off test indicated that the air bubble curtain reduced peak sound pressure levels by approximately 0 to 8 dB. This was less than the 5- to 20-dB reduction previously measured at Piers E6E and E3E. Measured sound pressure levels with the air bubble curtain system were generally higher than for other in-water piles with the air bubble curtain operating. The subsequent hydroacoustic characterization for Pier E3W indicated much better air bubble curtain performance, where peak sound pressure levels were less than 190 dB at 100 meters (328 feet) from the piles. There is no available explanation for the reduced air bubble curtain performance at Pier E4W during this test.

Although air bubble curtain on and off tests were not conducted at Pier E5E, the close-in measurements describe the sound pressure level very close to the pile to characterize the air bubble curtain performance in different directions. With ebb current (flowing south to north) underwater sound pressure levels were found to vary considerably from north to south. This difference is illustrated in the charts that show data 7 meters (25 feet) north and 7 meters (25 feet) south of the pile. These charts, shown in Figure I.9-17, illustrate the rapid rise time and high peak pressure level, as well as the higher frequency noise levels close-in to the air bubble curtain system.

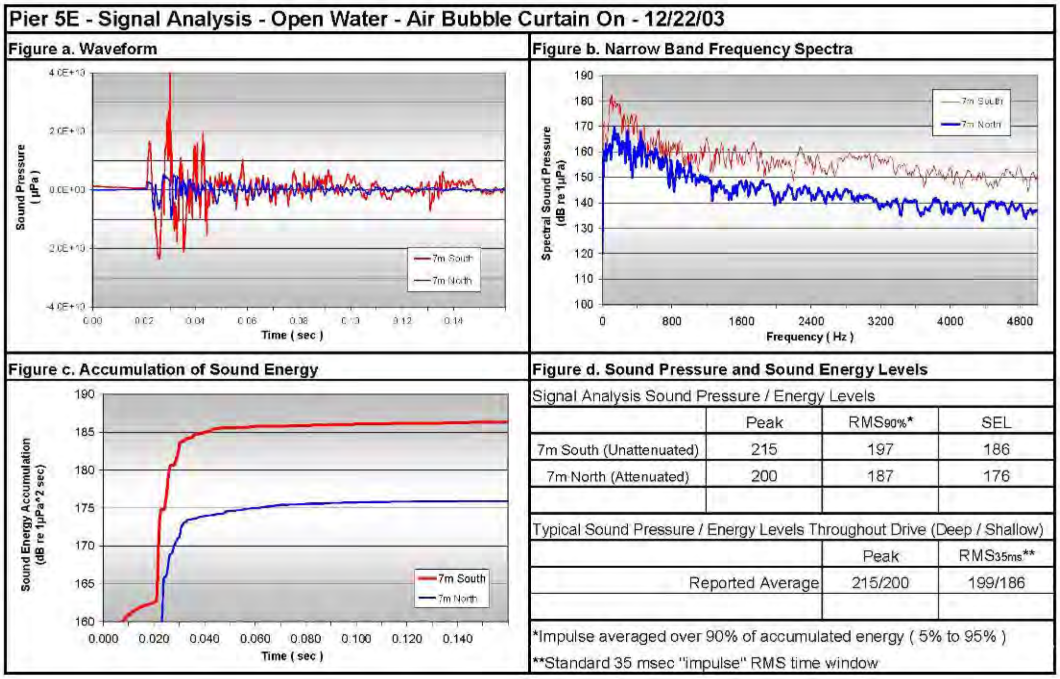


Figure I.9-19 Pulses for Attenuated and Unattenuated Pile Strikes at Edge of Air Bubble Curtain System at Pier E5E Measured 7 Meters (23 Feet) from Pile – San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span Replacement Project. Bubbles to south of pile were being washed away by tidal current.

I.9.5 Greeneridge Sciences Measurements at Pier E6E

Greeneridge Sciences, Inc. (GS) also made underwater recordings during driving of piles at Pier E6E. The piles driven were the top sections of the piles. The GS measurements were conducted independently of the Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. (I&R) measurements to provide an independent check, to provide supplemental data, and to gain insights into the data. A comparison of the measured sound pressure levels at a location approximately 100 meters (328 feet) west and a location about 500 meters (1,640 feet) south are shown in Table I.9-5. The data show excellent correlation between the two separate measurements.

With the air bubble curtain system operating, GS measured peak sound pressure levels of 197 dB (SPL of 185 dB) at 100 meters (328 feet) at their deep sensor. Sound pressure levels were 3 to 5 dB lower at their shallow sensor position. The pulse duration (time interval of the arrival of 5 percent and 95 percent of the total energy) was about 0.08 second. Spectral analyses of the pulses found much of the energy in the frequency range of 160 to 400 Hz, similar to that shown by I &R for Pier E6E at 100 meters (328 feet) west. GS found the air bubble curtain system to reduce peak sound pressure levels by 7 dB at 100 meters (328 feet) and from 2 to 3 dB at 500 meters (1,640 feet). The corresponding reductions in RMS levels were about 6 and 4 dB, respectively. I&R found reductions of peak pressure levels of 9 dB at 100 meters (328 feet) and 2 dB at 500 meters (1,640 feet). The corresponding reductions in RMS levels were 6 and 2 dB.

Table I.9-5. Comparison of I&R and GS Data Monitored at Pier E6E, 11/21/2003 – Deep Sensor Position

Location	Measured Sound Pressure Levels in dB					
	Peak		RMS*		SEL	
	I&R	GS	I&R	GS	I&R	GS
100 meters (328 feet) west						
MHU 500T bubble ON	196	196	183	184	--	172
MHU1700T bubble ON	194	197	184	185	172	174
MHU1700T bubble OFF	203	204	190	191	178	180
485 to 500 meters (1,491 to 1,640 feet) south						
MHU 500T bubble ON	180	181	170	169	160	160
MHU1700T bubble ON	181	182	171	170	161	161
MHU1700T bubble OFF	183	184	173	174	164	164

* Note that GS averages over the duration of the pulse ($RMS_{90\%}$), while I&R averages over a 35-millisecond time constant ($RMS_{impulse}$)

I&R = Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc.
GS = Greeneridge Sciences, Inc.

I.9.6 References

1. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. 2001. *Final data report: Noise and vibration measurements associated with the Pile Installation Demonstration Project for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span*. Submitted to the State of California Department of Transportation, District 4, Toll Bridge Program. August.
2. Reyff, J. 2003. *Underwater Sound Pressures Associated with the Re-Strike of the Pile Installation Demonstration Project Piles - Measurements Results for the PIDP Re-Strike – East Span Seismic Safety Project on the SFOBB*. Submitted to the State of California Department of Transportation, District 4, Toll Bridge Program. July.
3. California Department of Transportation (Caltrans). 2002. *Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program – Work Plan*. September.
4. Caltrans. 2002. *Marine Mammal Monitoring Program – Work Plan*. October.
5. National Marine Fisheries Service. 2003. *Incidental Harassment Authorization for the East Span of the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge*. November 4.
6. Caltrans 2004. *Hydroacoustic Measurements during Blasting for Piers W2E and W2W on Yerba Buena Island - August - September, 2003*. February.
7. Caltrans 2004. *Marine Mammal and Acoustic Monitoring for the Eastbound Structure – November 2003 – February 2004*. June.
8. Caltrans 2004. *Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program Compliance Report*. June
9. Caltrans 2005. *Hydroacoustic Monitoring Report for the Skyway Construction Project*. May.
10. Caltrans 2005. *Fisheries and Hydroacoustic Monitoring Program Compliance Report Addendum*. May.
11. Caltrans 2006. *Hydroacoustic Measurements at Piers T1 and E2*. August.

I.10 Richmond-San Rafael Bridge Project

Between 2002 and 2004, the California Department of Transportation (Caltrans) performed construction to retrofit the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge (RSRB) to meet current seismic standards. This vital freeway bridge (Interstate 580) crosses the northern portion of the San Francisco Bay, connecting Marin and Contra Costa Counties. The bridge consists of a cantilever section with stacked roadways that crosses 185 feet over the main channel and the trestle section with side-by-side roadways that crosses the relatively shallow Bay waters near Marin County (see Figure I.10-1).

The seismic retrofit activities included installation of over 760 cylindrical steel piles over the 3-year period using impact pile drivers. The piles ranged in size from 0.3 meter (14 inches) to 3.8 meters (12.5 feet or 150 inches) in diameter. The piles were installed using a variety of pile driving hammers, depending on the size of the pile. Underwater sound measurements were made for different piles driven during the seismic retrofit construction of the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge[1,2,3,4]. These include the following:

- Permanent 0.36-meter (14-inch) diameter steel pipe piles (fender piles)
- Temporary 0.76-meter (30-inch) diameter steel pipe trestle piles
- Permanent 1.7-meter (66-inch) diameter steel pipe trestle piles
- Permanent 3.2-meter (126-inch) diameter steel pipe piles
- Permanent 3.8-meter (150-inch) diameter steel pipe piles

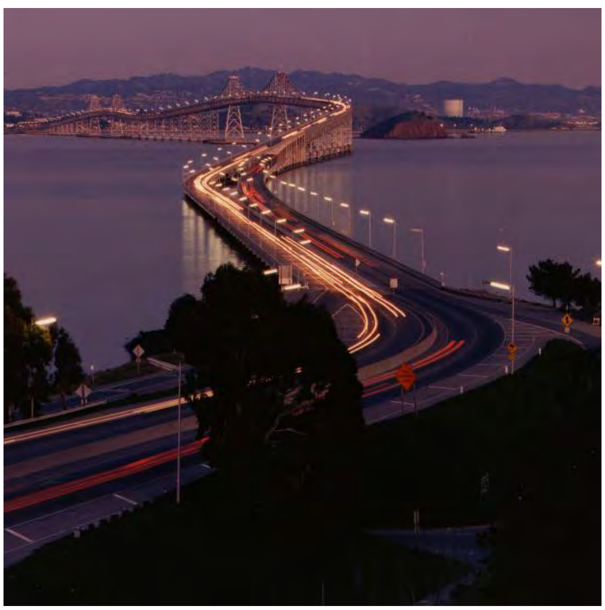


Figure I.10-1 Richmond-San Rafael Bridge viewed from San Rafael, CA

The 30- and 66-inch diameter piles were driven along the trestle part of the bridge in relatively shallow water (about 2 to 5 meters [6.5 to 15 feet] deep). These piles were driven only at night due to the need for traffic control and lane closures. The permanent 14-inch fender, 126-inch, and 150-inch piles were driven to support existing piers of the cantilever sections. Driving of these piles occurred in relatively deep waters (about 13 to 15 meters [43 to 49 feet]). Water conditions near the bridge are hazardous due to boat traffic, wind, rough seas, and strong currents. Because of these conditions, optimum measurement positions could not always be accessed. Results of measurements made for each of these piles are described below.

Underwater sound pressure level measurements were made during pile driving for the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge Seismic Retrofit. These included measurements for 14- and 30-inch steel pipe piles, 66-inch steel cast-in-drilled hole (CIDH) piles and 126- and 150-inch CISS piles. The performance of an air bubble curtain system was tested (in terms of reducing sound pressure levels) for the 30-inch steel pipe and 66-inch CIDH piles. The 30-inch steel pipe and 66-inch CIDH piles along the trestle section could be measured only from the temporary false work that was between the two side-by-side roadways. The 14-inch steel pipe and large CISS piles that were driven in deep water were measured from a boat.

I.10.1 Permanent 0.2-Meter- (14-Inch-) Diameter Steel Pipe Fender Piles

Because access to the construction area was difficult, measurements were conducted in only a limited number of positions. Since water was deep, measurements were made at about 10-meter (33-foot) depths. Measurements were conducted for five different driving events. Figure I.10-2 shows a typical pile installation near a bridge pier. Each event was relatively short, some lasting less than a minute. All measurements were made when a Del-Mag D19 hammer was used at energies of about 40 to 45 kilojoules. Measurements were conducted at various distances; results are summarized in Table I.10-1.

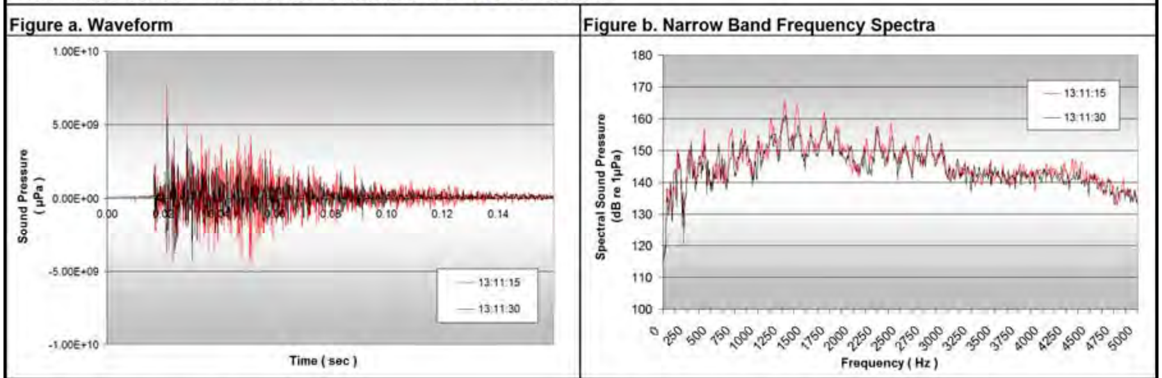
Figure I.10-2 14-Inch-Diameter Pile Being Driven next to Pier at Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Table I.10-1 Typical Range of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 14-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles for the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
Position	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
22 meters (72 feet)	190–196 max. 198	178–180 max. 182	170
28 meters (92 feet)	185–191	169–171	--
40 meters (131 feet)	187–191	174–178	165
50 meters (164 feet)	185–190	173–176	--
195 meters (640 feet)	169–172	157–159	--

Sound pressure levels of up to 198 dB peak, 182 dB RMS, and 170 dB SEL were measured at 22 meters (72 feet) from the pile. Because the piles were driven adjacent to a pier, the pier obstructed sound propagation in some directions. All of the measurements were conducted with the line of sight to the pile unobstructed. The rate of attenuation of sound ranged from 5 to 10 dB per doubling of distance. Figure I.10-3 shows the signal analysis of two representative pulses measured at 22 meters from the pile. The narrow-band frequency spectra for these piles include substantial higher frequency sound content (between 100 and about 5,000 Hz). This ringing that occurred resulted in pulse duration that exceeded 100 msec, and 90 percent of the acoustical energy was contained within 60 to 80 msec. The high-frequency content of this pulse is evident from the waveform.

14-in Pile RSRB 10/21/2002 Measurements 22m South



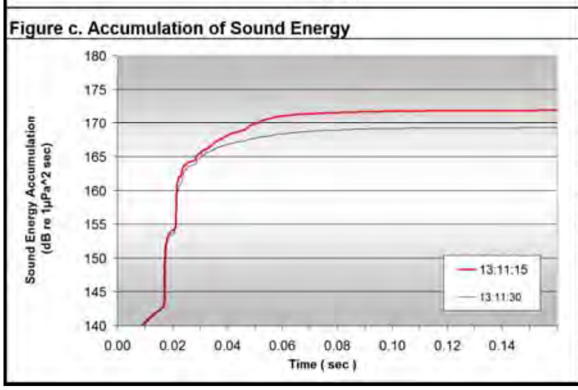


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Exposure Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
13:11:15	198	183	172
13:11:30	195	180	169

Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS$_{impulse}$**
Reported Average	196	180
Reported Maximum	197	182

*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.10-3 Representative Signal Analyses for 14-Inch-Diameter Pile. Pulse received at 22 meters (72 feet) from the pile at Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

I.10.2 Temporary 0.9-Meter- (30-Inch-) Diameter Steel Pipe Trestle Piles

The 30-inch-diameter piles were driven to support a temporary construction trestle between the two directional roadways along the trestle portion of the bridge. As a result, measurements were made in a straight line direction east of the pile driving. The piles were driven with a Del-Mag D-30 or D-62 diesel impact hammer. Reported driving energies were 150 to 170 kilojoules. The driving periods for these piles were relatively short, lasting about 2 to 4 minutes of continuous strikes (one strike per 1.5 seconds). The piles were first stabbed using the weight of the pile and the hammer to sink them into the mud. Then "dry" blows were used infrequently to tap the pile. These piles were driven in relatively shallow waters that were 4 to 5 meters (13 to 16.5 feet) deep. A view of the trestle is shown during evening in Figure I.10-4. Note that these piles were driven at night, because road closures were required for safety reasons. Two lanes of traffic are located immediately adjacent of the plywood barriers along the trestle. At most, two piles were driven at night, sometime between 10:00 p.m. and 4:00 a.m. Measurements were conducted at various distances in the easterly (deeper) direction and are summarized in Table I.10-2.

The driving of four piles was measured on two separate nights. Measurement depths were from 2 to 3 meters (6.5 to 10 feet). The continuous driving events were relatively short, lasting 2 to 4 minutes or less. During two of the events, periods of several minutes prior included sporadic hits to the pile. These sporadic hits resulted in relatively low sound pressure levels. Sound pressure levels ranged from 205 dB peak and 190 dB RMS at 10 meters (33 feet), to 195 dB peak and 169 dB RMS at 60 meters (197 feet). Measurements for all four pile driving events were made at 20 meters (65 feet); all indicated unattenuated peak pressure levels of 200 dB. The measurements were made in relatively shallow water (about 3 meters deep); therefore, levels lower than those from deeper-water piles were expected.

Figure I.10-4 30-Inch-Diameter Pile Being Driven for Temporary Trestle at Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Table I.10-2 Typical Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 30-Inch-Diameter Steel Pipe Piles – Unattenuated – Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Position	**Sound Pressure Level Measured in dB**		
	Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
10 meters (33 feet)	205 max 210	190 max 192	- -
20 meters (65 feet)	200	185	--
30 meters (98 feet)	199	181	170
40 meters (131 feet)	194	178	--
60 meters (197 feet)	195	169	--

Signal analysis was provided for measurements made at 30 meters from the pile (see Figure I.10-5). These signals contained relatively high-frequency content, but most of the acoustical energy was contained in the bands between 125 and 1,000 Hz. Much of the event lasted about 35 to 40 msec. The ringing of the pile is evident in both the waveform and frequency spectra. The ringing of the pile followed the initial low-frequency pulse from the hammer impact. The change in the rate of accumulated energy shows the additional energy caused by the ringing pile.

An air bubble curtain system was used for piles driven in 2003. The unconfined air bubble curtain consisted of a simple 2-meter-diameter ring that was placed at the mud line around the pile (supported from the pile driving crane). A compressor, using a firehouse, supplied the air. This system was tested for two piles, with measurements made at four different positions between 10 and 40 meters from the pile. Two of the positions were at 20 meters but in different directions. Pile driving occurred with the system on, then off, and finally on. Results, presented in Table I.10-3, show that about 10 dB of reduction was provided. In two of the tests, peak sound pressure levels were reduced below 190 dB at 20 meters.

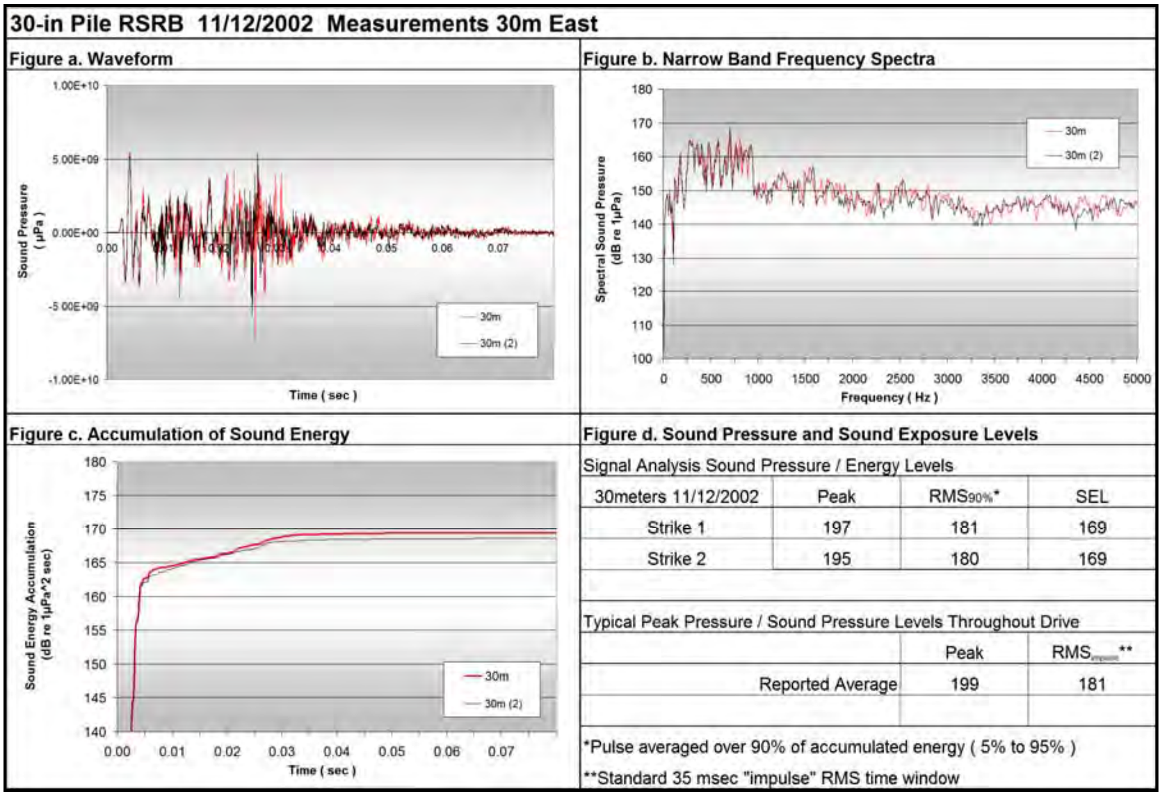


Figure I.10-5 Representative Signal Analyses for 30-Inch-Diameter Pile. Pulse received at 30 meters (98 feet) from the pile at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

Table I.10-3 Results of Air Bubble Curtain Test for 30-Inch-Diameter Piles at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
	Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
10 meters (33 feet)			
Unattenuated	205	190	--
Attenuated	196	180	--
20 meters (65 feet)			
Unattenuated	200	185	--
Attenuated	191	175	--
40 meters (131 feet)			
Unattenuated	194	178	--
Attenuated	184	169	--

Figure I.10-6 Simple Air Bubble Curtain System Used To Attenuate Sounds for 30-Inch-Diameter Piles

I.10.3 Permanent 1.7-Meter- (66-Inch-) Diameter CIDH Trestle Piles

The 66-inch-diameter piles were CIDH piles that were used to support the new trestle section. These piles were driven from the temporary trestle that was supported by the 30-inch piles. Following pile driving, the piles were cleaned out and drilling was conducted to construct the supports for the new trestle bents. The piles were driven with a Del-Mag D-62 or D-100 diesel impact hammer. Reported driving energies were about 270 kilojoules. Pile driving of a 66-inch-diameter pile through the temporary trestle is shown in Figure I.10-7. These piles were also driven at night and are located immediately adjacent to the plywood barriers along the trestle. At most, two piles were driven at night, between 10:00 p.m. and 4:00 a.m. Measurements were conducted at various distances between 4 and 80 meters (13 and 282 feet) in the easterly (deeper) direction. Water and measurement depths were similar to those for the 30-inch piles. Results are summarized in Table I.10-4.

Figure I.10-7 66-Inch-Diameter CIDH Pile Being Driven at Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Table I.10-4 Typical Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 66-Inch-Diameter CIDH Piles – Unattenuated – Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
	Peak	RMS	SEL
4 meters (13 feet)	219	202	--
10 meters (33 feet)	210 max 211	195 max 197	--
20 meters (65 feet)	205	189	--
30 meters (98 feet)	203	185	173
40 meters (131 feet)	198	180	--
60 meters (197 feet)	187	169	158
80 meters (282 feet)	187	170	--

Signal analysis was provided for measurements made at 30 meters from the pile (see Figure I.10-8). These signals were comprised of mostly lower frequency content, with most of the acoustical energy contained in the bands between 125 and 1,500 Hz. Much of the event lasted only 30 to 40 msec, with most energy contained within 20 msec (very fast). Analyses of strikes farther away showed longer durations. The ringing of the pile is evident in both the waveform and frequency spectra, but not as pronounced as it was for the 30-inch piles. The ringing of the pile followed the initial low-frequency pulse from the impact of the hammer (about 10 msec into the event). SEL accumulates quickly with this pulse.

An air bubble curtain test also was performed for these piles, similar to the test conducted for the 30-inch diameter piles. This system was tested for two of the 66-inch-diameter piles, with measurements made at four different positions between 10 and 80 meters from the pile. The first test was conducted under slack tide conditions with little current. A current was present during the second test, which affected the bubble curtain surrounding the pile. This was evident from observations that showed an elliptical pattern of bubbles at the surface, with part of the pile unshielded (see Figure I.10-9). Measurements at 10 meters mostly reflected the reduced bubble coverage. Pile driving occurred with the system on, then off, then on, and finally off. Results, presented in Table I.10-5, show 10 to 15 dB of reduction provided under light current conditions. Only the 10-meter position was compromised by the effects of the current on the second bubble curtain test. A 5- to 10-dB reduction occurred at that position, while other measurements at other positions were similar to the previous test. In two of the tests, peak sound pressure levels were reduced to almost 190 dB at 20 meters.

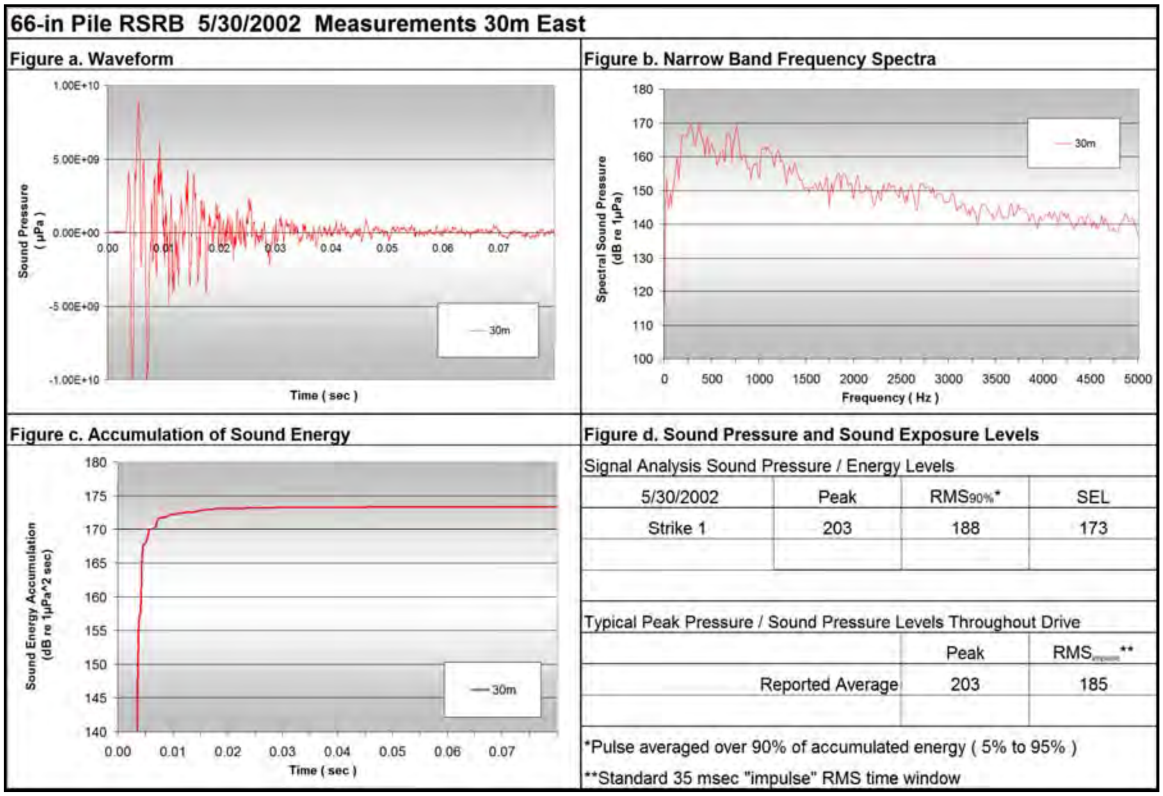


Figure I.10-8 Representative Signal Analyses for 66-Inch-Diameter CIDH Pile.
Pulse received at 30 meters (98 feet) from the pile at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

Table I.10-5 Results of Air Bubble Curtain Test for 30-Inch-Diameter Piles at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge			
	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
Position	**Peak**	**RMS**	**SEL**
10 meters (33 feet)			
Unattenuated	208	195	--
Attenuated – slack	192	177	--
Attenuated – current	203	185	--
20 meters (65 feet)			
Unattenuated	204	189	--
Attenuated	191	173	--
40 meters (131 feet)			
Unattenuated	196	181	--
Attenuated	183	165	--
80 meters (282 feet)			
Unattenuated	196	181	--
Attenuated	183	165	--

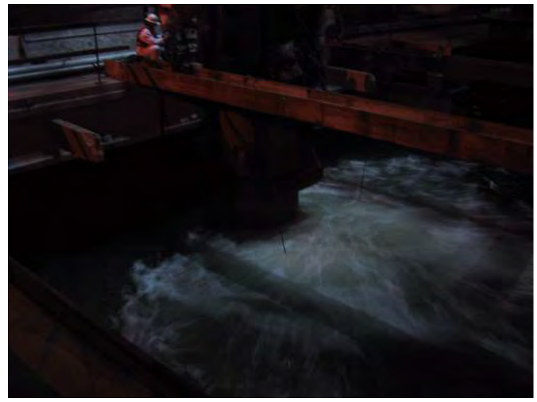


Figure I.10-9 Bubble Pattern around the 66-Inch-Diameter CIDH Pile during Tidal Currents

I.10.4 Permanent 3.2-Meter- (126-Inch-) Diameter CISS Piles

These 126-inch-diameter piles were driven immediately adjacent to existing bridge piers. Underwater noise levels associated with these piles were measured on only one occasion. The driving of these piles involves a submersible hydraulic hammer, where driving begins with the top of the pile and hammer above the water surface. A follower between the pile and hammer is used so the pile can be driven to a precise tip elevation at the mud line. When driving is complete, both the pile and hammer are underwater near the bottom. These piles were driven with an IHC hydraulic hammer that provided typical maximum driving energies of about 350 to 400 kilojoules. Because the piles were located immediately adjacent to the existing bridge piers, attenuation systems were not used. Pile driving durations were about 40 minutes, over a 1.5-hour period. The hammer strikes the pile frequently at the beginning (about once per second), but less frequently as the stroke increases. The frequency of pile strikes was about once every 2 seconds through much of the driving event. Figure I.10-10 shows the pile driving operation as the hammer was becoming submerged. Due to the relatively rough water conditions and the amount of boat traffic, measurements were made primarily at two locations. Two other spot measurements were briefly made near the end of the pile driving event. Measurements results are presented in Table I.10-6.

Pile driving lasted less than 45 minutes. The two primary measurement locations were from the barge at 10 meters (33 feet) and from a mooring buoy at 230 meters (755 feet). The entire pile driving event was measured at the 10-meter location, while most of the event also was measured at the 230-meter location. There were no mooring buoys that were closer to the pile, and boat traffic was restricted due to the presence of a dive boat (driving was temporarily halted at times while a diver was sent down to check the pile tip elevation). Most measurements were made at a depth of about 10 meters in water 15 meters (49 feet) deep.

Underwater sound levels associated with the driving of this pile varied considerably at the close-in location (10 meters) but were fairly constant over much of the driving period at the distant location

(230 meters). The variation of about 5 to 10 dB that occurred close in appeared to be related to the position of the pile and hammer. The highest noise levels occurred during the early part of the driving, when the pile extended all the way through the water column and the hammer was above the water. In this case, more pile was available to radiate acoustic energy into the water. This variation was on the order of about 2 dB at the distant location (230 meters), indicating that the primary sound source was through the substrates.

Figure I.10-10 126-Inch-Diameter CISS Pile Being Driven Underwater at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Table I.10-6 Typical Range of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 126-Inch-Diameter CISS piles – Unattenuated – Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Position	Sound Pressure Level Measured in dB		
	Peak	RMS	SEL
10 meters (33 feet)	218–208	206–197	--
55 meters (180 feet)	??–198	??–185	--
95 meters (311 feet)	195–192	185–180	170
230 meters (755 feet)	190–187	177–175	165

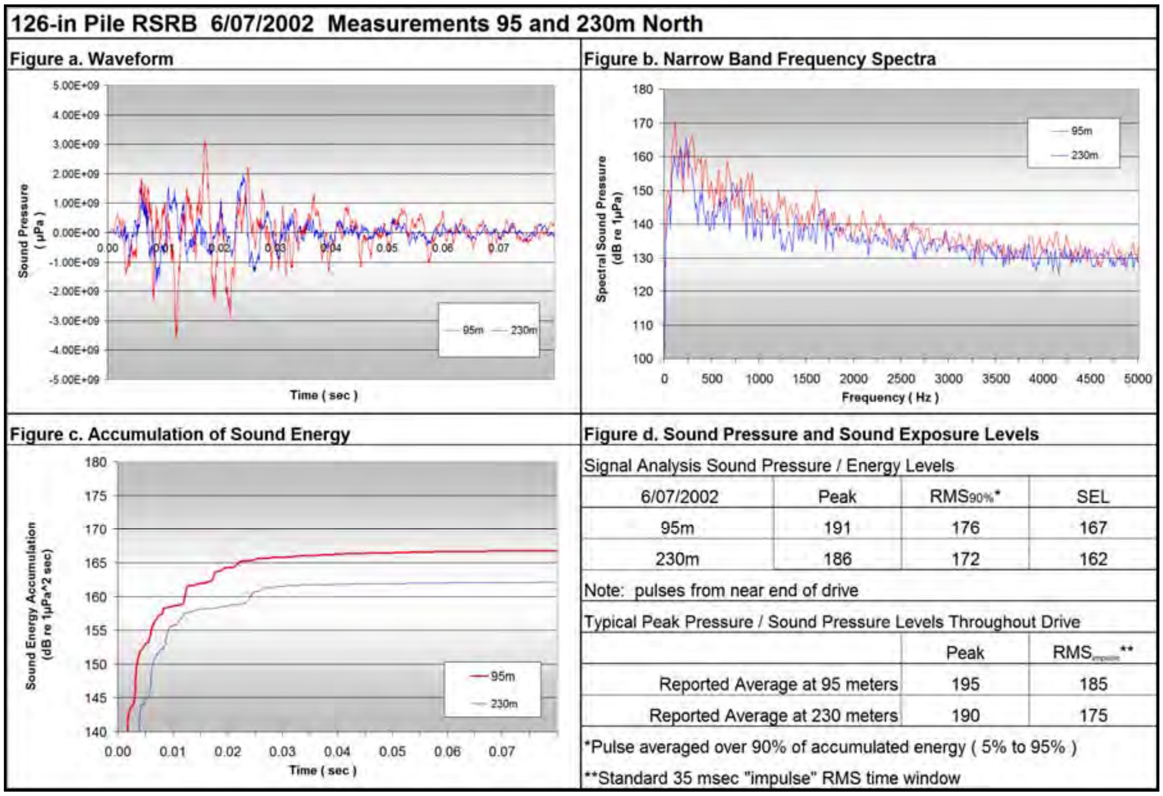
Note: At positions close to the pile, sound pressure levels were highest when the pile extended through the water column and decreased as the pile was driven closer to the mud line. This variation was less at distant positions.

Interpolations of the data are difficult because measurements were made at only four distances, and two of those were made late in the driving period when close-in levels were lower. The data do indicate that the maximum peak levels of 190 dB and RMS levels of 177 dB occurred at 230 meters from the pile. A rough interpolation of the data indicates that peak levels of 195 dB and RMS levels of about 185 dB occurred at about 100 meters.

Evaluations of the acoustic waveforms indicate that these pulses from a pile strike lasted approximately 100 msec (see Figure I.10-11). The rise time from the initial disturbance to the peak (or near peak) pressure levels was about 3 to 5 msec close in, at 10 meters. The rise time at 230 meters was about 6 to 7 msec; however, the peak pressure level occurred about 10 msec into the disturbance. Most energy, which makes up the RMS level, occurred during the first 45 to 50 msec. Reflections, probably due to the adjacent bridge pier, are apparent in the signal characteristics. The frequency spectra were dominated by low-frequency energy (i.e., less than 1,000 Hz). The rate that the SEL accumulates over the duration of the pulse is relatively slow.

I.10.5 Permanent 3.8-Meter- (150-Inch-) Diameter CISS Piles

These piles were similar to the 126-inch-diameter piles; they also were driven immediately adjacent to existing bridge piers with tip elevations near the mud line. Driving energies were up to 450 kilojoules. Figure I.10-12 shows the driving operation with the hammer mostly submerged. Driving durations were also about 45 minutes over a 1- to 2-hour period. Table I.10-7 summarizes the measurements for two different piles driven. For one of the events, sound pressure levels were measured continuously at 22 meters from the pile along with spot measurements. Only spot measurements were conducted for the other event, but most of the measurements were made 60 to 65 meters (197 to 213 feet) from the pile.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

6/07/2002	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
95m	191	176	167
230m	186	172	162

Note: pulses from near end of drive

Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMSimpulse**
Reported Average at 95 meters	195	185
Reported Average at 230 meters	190	175

*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.10-11 Representative Signal Analyses for 126-Inch-Diameter CISS Pile. Pulse received at 95 and 230 meters (311 and 755 feet) from the pile near end of driving event at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

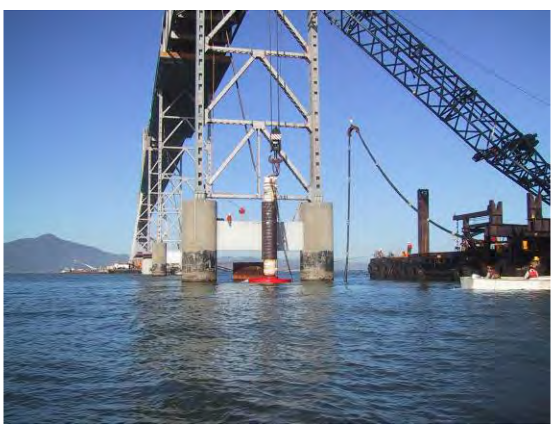


Figure I.10-12 150-Inch-Diameter CISS Pile Being Driven Underwater at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

Table I.10-7 Typical Range of Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 150-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles – Unattenuated – Richmond-San Rafael Bridge

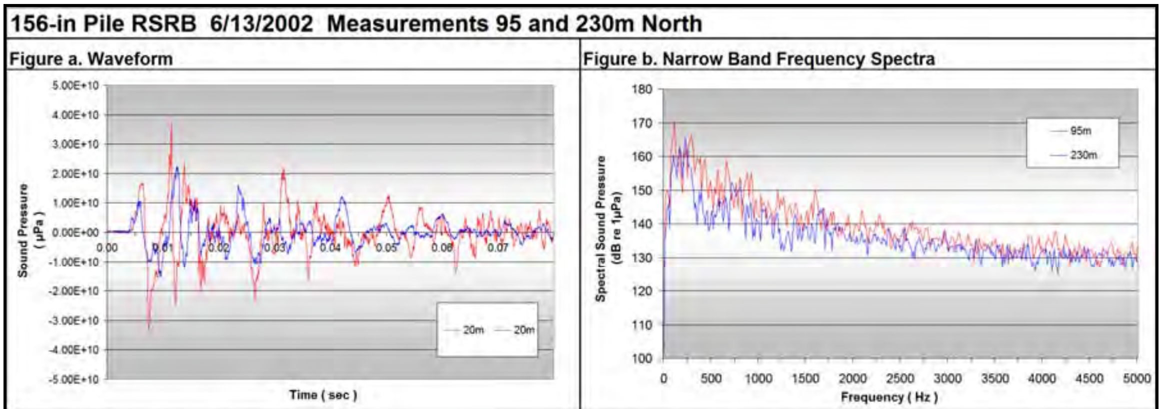
Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
	Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
20 meters (65 feet)	215–205	206–197	--
55 meters (180 feet)	205–202	193–188	--
95 meters (311 feet)	194	181	--
160 meters (525 feet)	191	175	--
230 meters (755 feet)	192	178	--
~1,000 meters (3,300 feet)	169	157	--

Note: At positions close to the pile, sound pressure levels were highest when the pile extended through the water column and decreased as the pile was driven closer to the mud line. This variation was less at distant positions.

At 20 meters from one of the piles, sound pressure levels were measured continuously and ranged from 215 dB peak and 200 dB RMS at the beginning of the drive to 205 dB peak and 193 dB RMS at the end of the drive. At 230 meters, sound pressure levels were typically 192 to 189 dB peak and 178 to 180 dB

RMS. For the other pile, peak sound pressure levels were about 203 dB at 50 meters. Underwater sound levels were generally similar to those measured for the 126-inch-diameter pile.

Figure I.10-13 shows the signal analyses for two pulses recorded at 20 meters from the pile. The first pulse was recorded midway through the driving event, while the second was recorded near the end of the event. Much of the acoustic energy for both pulses is relatively low frequency, similar to the 126-inch-diameter piles measured at 95 meters. The events last over 80 msec, with much of the energy contained in 60 msec.



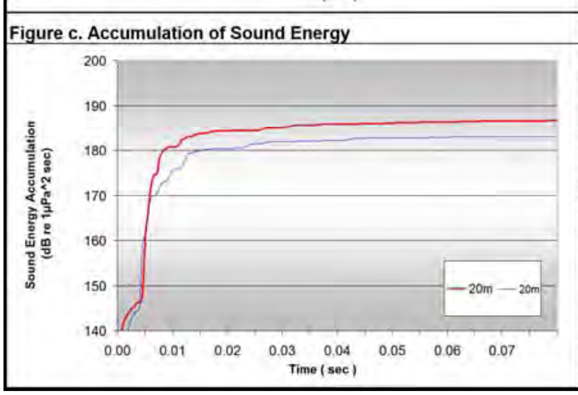


Figure d. Sound Pressure and Sound Exposure Levels

Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

6/13/2002	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
20m Mid	211	196	187
20m late	207	192	183

Note: pulses from near end of drive

Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive

	Peak	RMS impulse**
Reported Average at 20 meters	210	197
Reported Average at 230 meters	191	178

*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.10-13 Representative Signal Analyses for 150-Inch-Diameter CISS Pile. Pulse received at 20 meters (65 feet) midway and near the end of the driving event at the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge.

I.10.6 References

1. Reyff, J. A. 2003. *Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Seismic Retrofit Construction of the Richmond-San Rafael Bridge - Measurements Results for the Driving of Temporary and Permanent Piles*. January 31.

2. Reyff, J. A. 2003. Memo to Mike Scott and Tim O'Hearn of Caltrans, Subject *Richmond—San Rafael Bridge 30in Pile Bubble Curtain Test*. May 14.

3. Reyff, J. A. 2003. Memo to Mike Scott and Tim O'Hearn of Caltrans, Subject *Richmond—San Rafael Bridge 66in Pile Bubble Curtain Test*. May 19.

4. Reyff, J. A. 2006. *Richmond-San Rafael Bridge Seismic Safety Project – Extent of 208-dB Peak Sound Pressures*. June 16.

I.11 Humboldt Bay Bridges

Construction for Humboldt Bay Seismic Retrofit Project on State Route 255 between the City of Eureka and the Samoa Spit in California required the driving of steel shell and CISS piles of various sizes. This project consisted of seismically retrofitting the existing bridge substructure of the State Route 255 Eureka Channel, Middle Channel, and Samoa Channel bridges, which collectively span Humboldt Bay and are called the Humboldt Bay Bridges (see Figure I.11-1). The project included installation of 0.65-meter- (24-inch-) diameter steel pipe piles for the construction of a temporary construction trestle and 0.91-meter- (36-inch-) diameter and 1.52-meter- (60-inch-) diameter steel shell piles for the foundation of the three bridges. All piles were driven to a specified tip elevation. An isolation casing with an air bubble ring or a dewatered cofferdam was used to reduce the underwater sound pressure levels associated with driving of the larger permanent piles; the temporary 24-inch temporary piles were driven without any attenuation. The project tested various sound attenuation systems.

Noise measurements were conducted for the Humboldt Bay Bridges Project, as underwater noise attenuation was required for all in-water permanent piles. Results presented in this chapter were collected for pile driving at four different piers. The first set of data was collected at Pier 8 in the Eureka Channel, when different attenuation systems were tested. Strong tidal currents compromised the performance of unconfined air bubble curtain systems. Therefore, systems that were unaffected by currents were developed. Measurements were made at Pier 12 of the Samoa Channel when 60-inch-diameter piles were driven with an isolation casing/air bubble curtain. Finally, measurements were made at Pier 2 on the Middle Channel Bridge, and Pier 3 of the Samoa Channel.

Figure I.11-1 Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

I.11.1 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier 8, Eureka Channel—Attenuation System Testing

Several tests were conducted in February 2004 at Pier 8 in the Eureka Channel to analyze the sound levels associated with various attenuation devices on the characteristics and intensity of the underwater sound[1]. Piles at Pier 8 in Eureka Channel, which were fully inserted prior to testing, were restruck to perform the various tests. Unattenuated strikes were also done to confirm the changes in sound pressure level due to the attenuation devices. The goal was to determine the best attenuation system available for this specific project. A Delmag D36-32 diesel impact hammer was used, providing about 95 kilojoules of energy.

Figures I.11-2a–c show the various underwater sound measurement tests conducted for Pier 8. The piles had been driven almost to their tip elevation and then left for several days prior to the tests. As a result, the piles resisted movement when driven during these tests. Nine tests were conducted. Water depth varied by about 2 meters (6.5 feet) due to tidal changes. In general, water depth was about 8 to 10 meters (26 to 33 feet). Hydrophone depth was about 5 meters (16.5 feet). Currents were strong during some of the tests.

Figure I.11-2a Driving 36-Inch-Diameter Pile in a 5-Foot Casing with Inside Bubble Ring – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

Figure I.11-2b Unconfined Air Bubble Curtain Used at Slack Tide – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

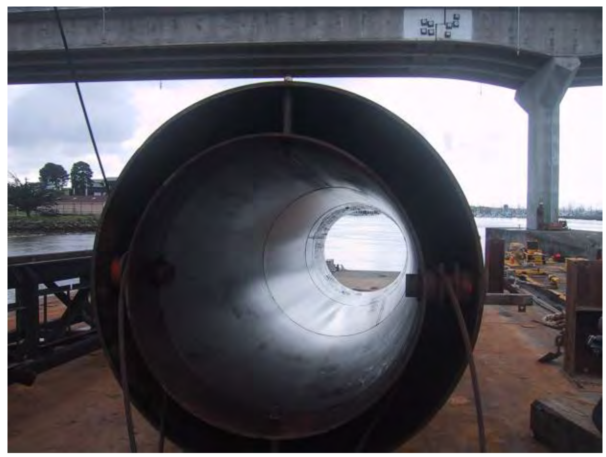


Figure I.11-2c Double-Walled Attenuator – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

The first test used the double-walled attenuator that was developed for this project (see Figure I.11-2c). The attenuator was placed around the 36-inch CISS pile. Because of the high tide at the time tests began, the attenuator was flooded. A bubble ring was placed at the bottom of the double-walled attenuator so the water could be aerated. The test was repeated as Test 2. When the tide went out and water levels lowered, water was pumped out of the double-walled attenuator for Test 3 and repeated for Test 4. Unattenuated tests were conducted as Test 5 and Test 6. A 1.5-meter- (5-foot-) diameter single-walled pile casing and air bubble curtain was used for Test 7 and 8 (see Figure I.11-2a). The air bubble curtain was placed inside the casing. The air bubble curtain was operated at reduced compressor flow for Test 7 and maximum flow for Test 8. Finally, Test 9 used an unconfined air bubble curtain during slack tide (Figure I.11-2b).

Table I.11-1 summarizes the results of underwater sound measurements. Primary measurements were made at 10 meters (33 feet) in three different directions. Levels were similar with about a 2-dB variation (5 dB maximum) for all of the tests. Measurements also were made at 50 meters (165 feet) for all but Tests 7 and 8. Measurements were made at 100 meters for Tests 7, 8, and 9. In terms of peak sound pressure level, the unconfined air bubble curtain operating during slack tide conditions resulted in the lowest levels at 10 and 50 meters. However, it was not practical to drive piles only at slack current condition. The 5-foot-diameter, single-walled casing with air bubbling was adopted as the new sound control method since peak pressure levels were lower than the dewatered double-walled attenuator used previously. The tests indicated that only 10 to 15 dB of attenuation could be achieved from the attenuation devices for these piles. Maximum unattenuated sound levels were 210 dB peak, 193 dB RMS, and 183 dB SEL at 10 meters. Based on additional measurements at 50 meters, these levels dropped off at a rate of 5 to 6 dB per doubling of distance.

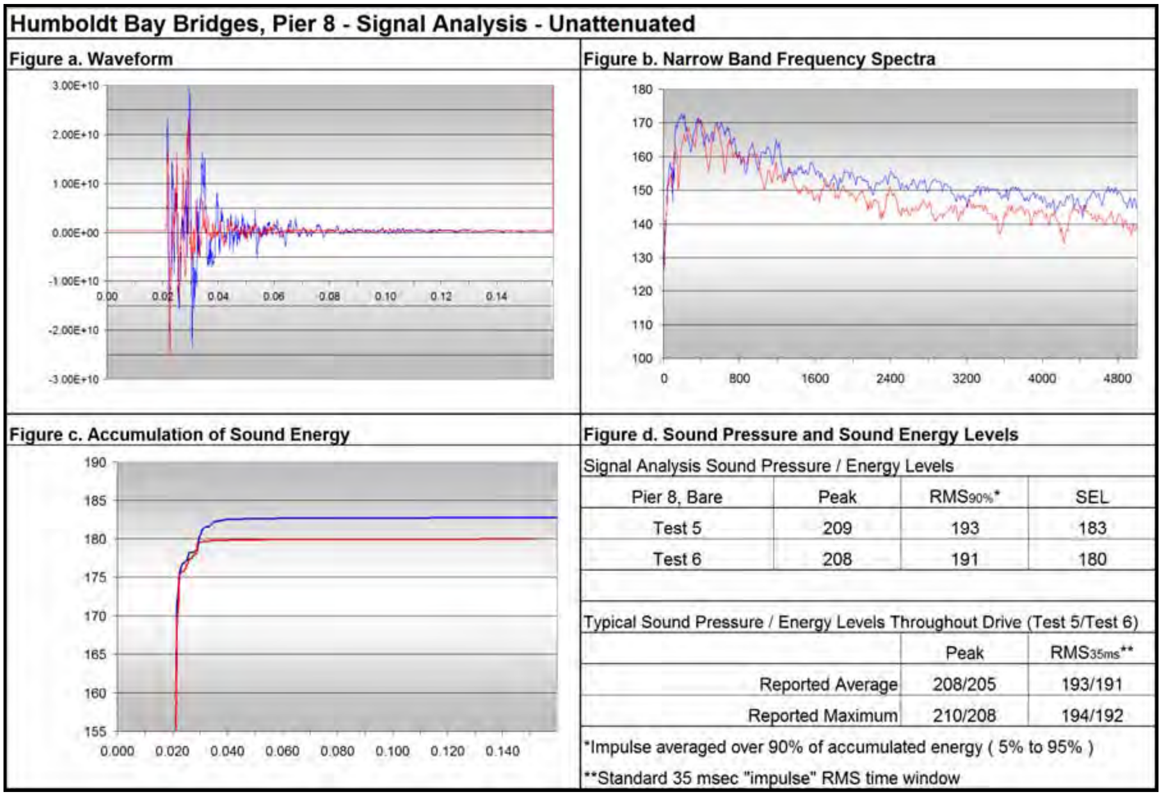
Table I.11-1 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles during Attenuator Testing – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

Pile	Position	Sound Pressure Level Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Test 1 – Flooded double-walled attenuator with bubble ring inside	10 meters	195	182	170
	50 meters	185	174	--
Test 2 – Repeat of Test 1	10 meters	196	183	171
	50 meters	184	173	--
Test 3 – Dewatered double-walled attenuator flooded with bubble ring	10 meters	199	188	176
	50 meters	187	176	--
Test 4 – Dewatered double-walled attenuator dewatered	10 meters	199	188	176
	50 meters	188	177	--
Test 5 – No attenuation, bare pile	10 meters	210	193	183
	50 meters	198	182	--
Test 6 – No attenuation, but water pumped out of the pile	10 meters	205	191	180
	50 meters	195	179	
Test 7 and 8 – 5-foot-diameter single-walled isolation casing bubbled*	10 meters	196	185	174
	100 meters	178	165	153
Test 9 – Unconfined air bubble curtain at slack tide with maximum air flow	10 meters	192	180	170
	50 meters	183	172	--
	100 meters	179	168	155

* Test 7 was bubbled at a reduced rate, while Test 8 was bubbled at maximum flow. There was no difference in the sound levels measured.

10 meters = approximately 33 feet; 50 meters = approximately 165 feet

Signal analyses for the unattenuated pile strikes recorded at 10 meters are shown in Figure I.11-3. These signals were characterized as having a fairly short duration of about 40 msec with a rapid rise time, which is indicated by the fast rate that SEL accumulates. The frequency spectra indicate relatively high-frequency sound content, but most sound energy was in the 125 to 1,000 Hz range. Figure I.11-4 shows the different signals and associated frequency spectra associated with the various attenuation tests recorded at 10 meters. Each of the systems were effective at reducing sounds at frequencies above about 500 Hz, with the unconfined air bubble curtain most effective at reducing higher frequency sounds (i.e., above 1,000 Hz); however, these sounds did not contain much of the unattenuated energy.



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels

Pier 8, Bare	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
Test 5	209	193	183
Test 6	208	191	180

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive (Test 5/Test 6)

	Peak	RMS35ms**
Reported Average	208/205	193/191
Reported Maximum	210/208	194/192

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.11-3 Representative Signal Analyses for Unattenuated 30-Inch-Diameter Pile at 10 Meters (33 Feet) – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

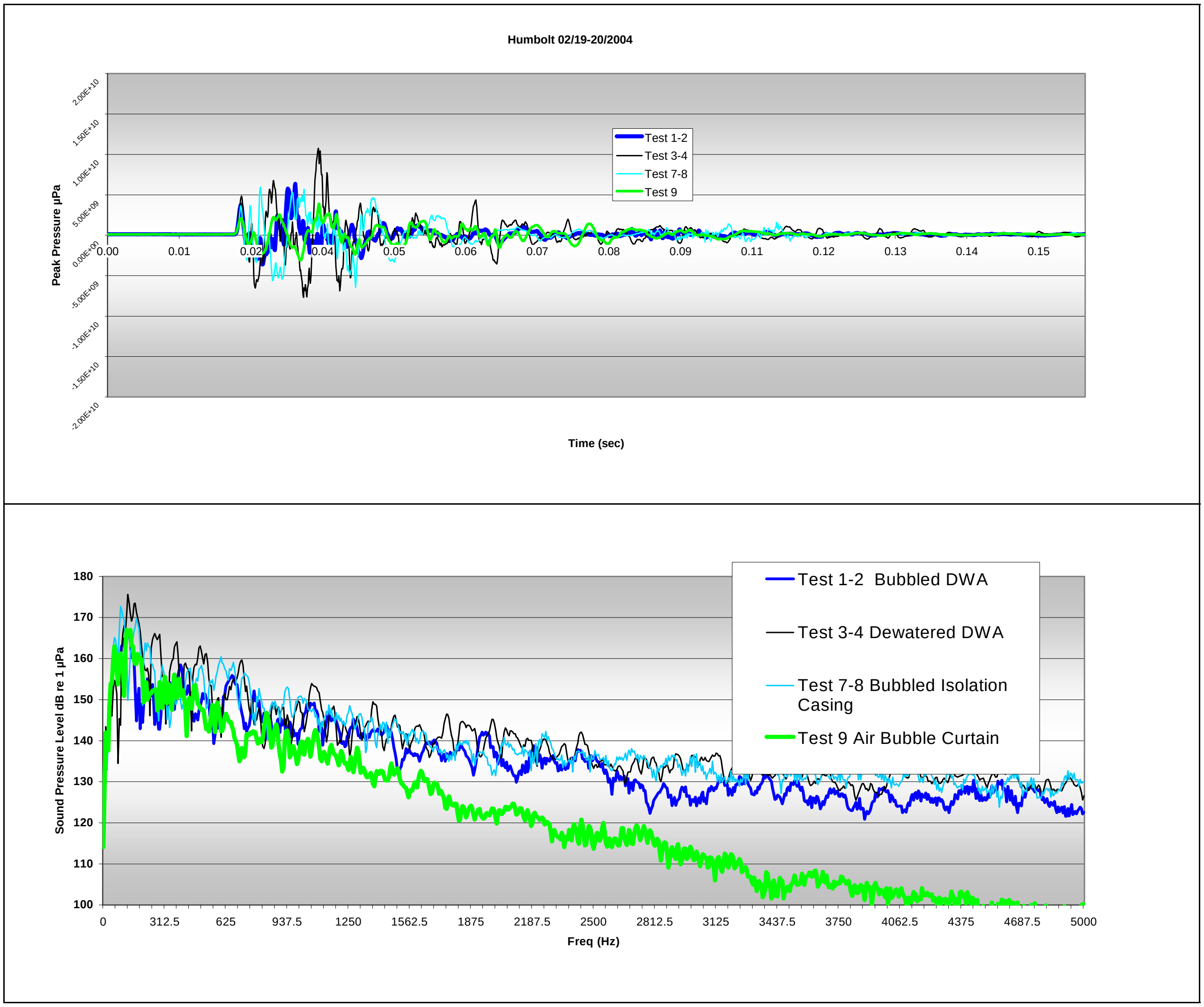


Figure I.11-4 Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 30-Inch-Diameter Pile at 10 Meters (33 Feet) – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

I.11.2 60-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier S12, Samoa Channel—Production Driving

Measurements were made during the driving of two 60-inch-diameter CISS piles at Pier S12 in the Samoa Channel of Humboldt Bay (see Figure I.11-5)[2]. These piles were driven through large-diameter isolation casings that were bubbled, as described in Section I.11-1. These were the first sets of piles driven after the attenuation tests previously described. Measurements were made during the driving of one pile.

Table I.11-2 summarizes the measured sound levels at each position. Measurements were made at two different positions: 10 meters (33 feet) from the pile and one position down the channel at 125 meters (410 feet) from the pile. At the 10-meter positions, measurements were made at depths of 5 meters (16.5 feet), where water depth was only about 7 meters (23 feet). Water depth at 125 meters in the channel was 10 meters, and the hydrophone was placed 7 meters deep. Measurements at 10 meters from the pile were similar for both positions.

Figure I.11-5 Driving 60-Inch Diameter Piles – Pier S12, Samoa Channel at Humboldt Bay, Eureka, CA

Sound levels varied by about 4 dB throughout the driving event. Figure I.11-6 shows the trend in measured sound pressure levels over the course of the pile-driving event. Sound pressure levels were highest at the beginning of pile driving and lowest at the end. For the most part, measurements at 10 meters east and west were similar, except during the second part of the driving where the peak pressure levels varied by 3 dB. However, RMS sound pressure levels varied only by 1 dB. Interestingly, there was only 5 dB of attenuation with distance from 10 to 125 meters. The attenuated levels were higher than expected.

Table I.11-2 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 60-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier S12, Samoa Channel – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

Conditions	Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
		Peak	**RMS**	**SEL**
First part of pile driving ~4 minutes	10 meters (33 feet) west	203	188	177
	10 meters (33 feet) east	202	188	--
	125 meters (410 feet)	197	185	172
Second part of pile driving ~7 minutes	10 meters (33 feet) west	201	198	174
	10 meters (33 feet) east	198	176	--
	125 (410 feet) meters	194	181	169
Third (last) part of pile driving <2 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)west	199	186	--
	10 meters (33 feet) east	199	186	--
	125 meters (410 feet)	194	181	--

The signal analyses presented in Figure I.11-7 show that the sounds at 10 meters were attenuated at frequencies of about 500 Hz and above (compared to the unattenuated pulse shown in Figure I.11-3 for a 30-inch-diameter pile). However, the attenuation system was probably compromised somewhat because the pile was not centered in the attenuator. The high sound levels measured at 125 meters indicate that there was a substantial ground-borne component of underwater sound. This is evident from the frequency spectra that show little or no attenuation between 10 and 125 meters at frequencies below 600 Hz and substantial attenuation of 20 to 25 dB for frequencies above 1,200 Hz. The high sound levels were theorized to be associated with the dense sand layers in the substrate. These types of dense sand layers were also present at parts of the Port Of Oakland where shore-based piles resulted in higher sound levels (see Section I.5.5). The 60-inch-diameter unattenuated piles measured at Richmond-San Rafael Bridge (see Chapter I.10) were about 8 to 10 dB louder at 10 meters (33 feet), but similar at 80 meters (262 feet) to the levels at 125 meters (410 feet) presented above.

Figure I.11-6 Trend in Measured Sound Levels for Driving of One Attenuated 60-Inch-Diameter Pile at 10 and 125 Meters (33 and 410 Feet) – Pier S12, Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

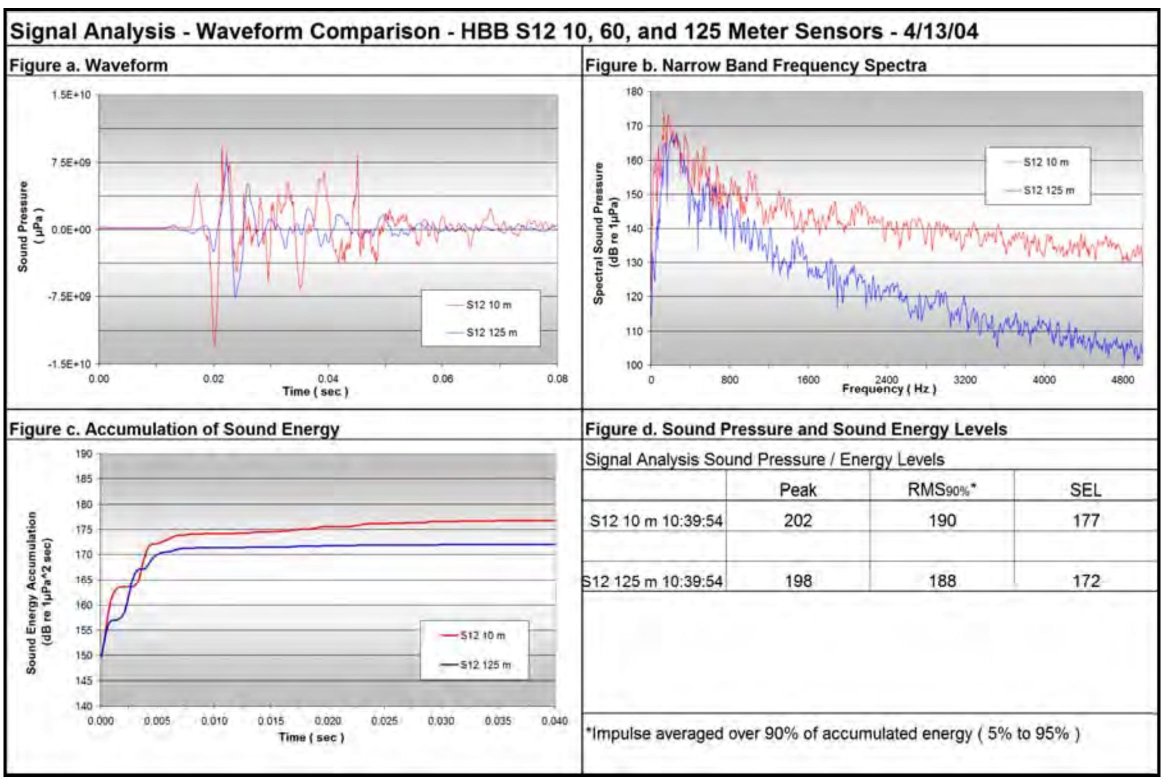


Figure I.11-7 Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 60-Inch-Diameter Pile at 10 and 125 Meters (33 and 410 Feet) – Pier S12, Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

I.11.3 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier M2, Middle Channel—Production Pile Driving

In June 2005, 1.1-meter- (36-inch-) diameter CISS piles were driven at Pier M2 in the Middle Channel of Humboldt Bay[3]. These piles were driven inside an isolation casing, with a bubble ring placed inside the casing (see Figure I.11-8). Pile driving was performed using an APE 9.5 Hydraulic Hammer mounted on an excavator. This hammer provides about 43,000 ft-lbs, or 58 kilojoules of energy. The actual driving time four each pile was approximately 6 to 12 minutes. Piles 3 and 4, located on the east side of Pier M2, were measured the first day. The piles on the west side of Pier M2 (Piles 1 and 2) were measured the next day. The water depth was 4 meters (13 feet), and the hydrophone was set 3 meters (10 feet) deep. Measurements were made at 10, 20, and 40 meters (33, 65 and 130 feet) from the pile. Results are summarized in Table I.11-3.

Figure I.11-8 Driving 36-Inch-Diameter Piles at Pier M2 with Isolation Casing and Bubble Curtain – Middle Channel at Humboldt Bay, Eureka, CA

Table I.11-3 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier M2, Middle Channel – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

Conditions	Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Pile 3 ~8 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)	198	183	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	192	180	169
Pile 4 ~6 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)	197	185	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	192	181	169
	40 meters (130 feet)	190	178	164
Pile 1 ~12 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)	196	181	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	195	182	--
Pile 2 ~13 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)	196	182	170
	20 meters (65 feet)	194	182	172
	40 meters (130 feet)	191	180	166

The measured sound levels at 10 meters were consistent with levels measured during testing of the attenuation system (see Section I.11.1). The rate of sound attenuation with distance was also quite low. This was not so much the case for Piles 3 and 4, but for Piles 1 and 2. Measurements at 20 meters for these piles were similar to those at 10 meters, but higher in some cases. Signals for pulses recorded during the driving of Pile 4 are shown in Figure I.11-9. The attenuation provided by the bubbled isolation casing is evident in both the waveform and frequency spectra, when compared to the unattenuated signals shown in Figure I.11-3.

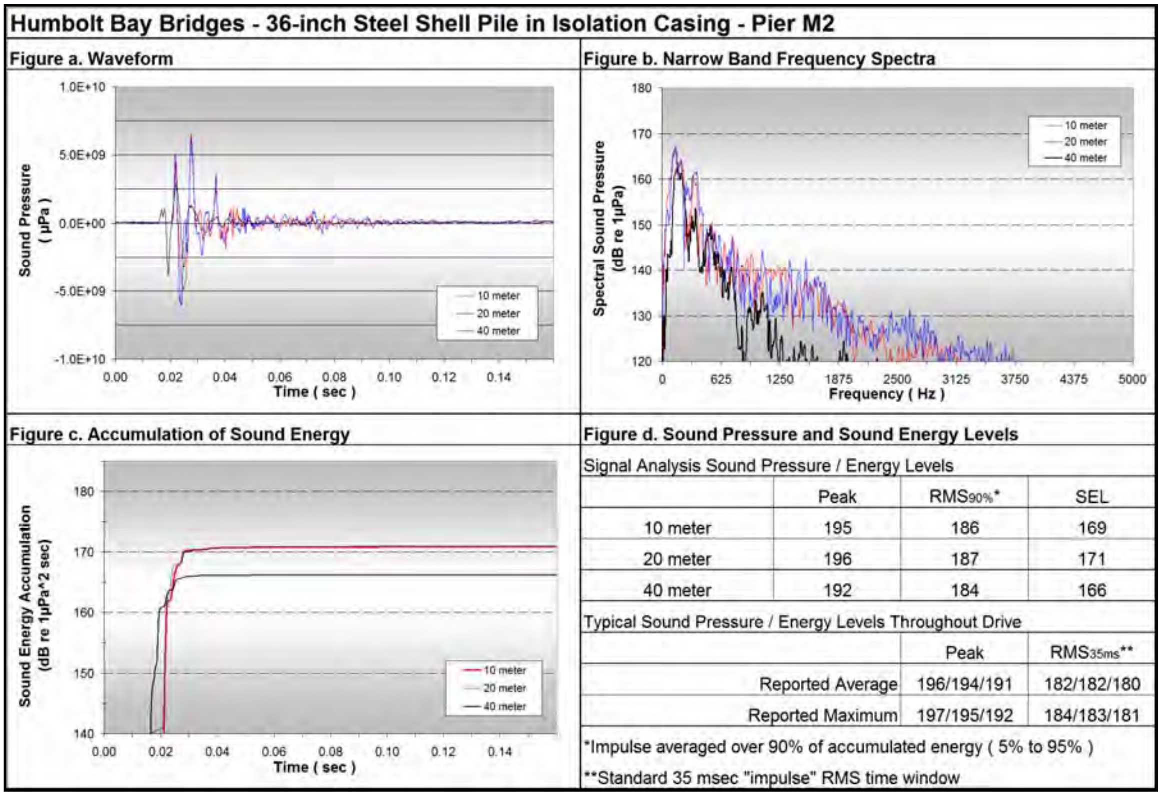


Figure I.11-9 Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 36-Inch-Diameter Pile at 10, 20, and 40 Meters (33, 65, and 130 feet) – Pier S12, Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

I.11.4 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier S3, Samoa Channel—Production Driving

Measurements were made during the driving of 36-inch-diameter CISS piles at Pier S3 in the Samoa Channel of Humboldt Bay for the Humboldt Bay Bridge Seismic Retrofit project[4]. Piles at Pier S3 were driven through an unconfined air bubble curtain. The APE 9.5 hydraulic hammer was used, similar to Pier M2. Water depth was 6 meters (20 feet), and the hydrophone was 5 meters (16.5 feet) deep. Measurements were made at 10 and 20 meters, as summarized in Table I.11-4. Results indicate slightly lower levels than measured at Pier M2, especially at 20 meters. There was about a 7-dB variation in sound levels during the approximately 7-minutes of pile driving.

Table I.11-4 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for 36-Inch-Diameter CISS Piles at Pier S3, Middle Channel – Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

Conditions	Position	Sound Pressure Levels Measured in dB		
		Peak	RMS	SEL
Pile at S3 ~7 minutes	10 meters (33 feet)	Avg. 194 max. 200	Avg. 182 max. 186	--
	20 meters (65 feet)	Avg. 190 max. 193	Avg. 178 max. 182	168

The signal analysis was performed only for pulses captured at 20 meters. The signals shown in Figure I.11-10 are comparable to those in Figure I.11-9. They show a pulse of longer duration with higher frequency content (above 1,000 Hz). Pulses measured at Pier M2 contained most energy in about 20 to 25 msec, while the pulses at Pier S3 had most energy in about 40 msec. The amplitude of the Pier S3 pulses was generally lower.

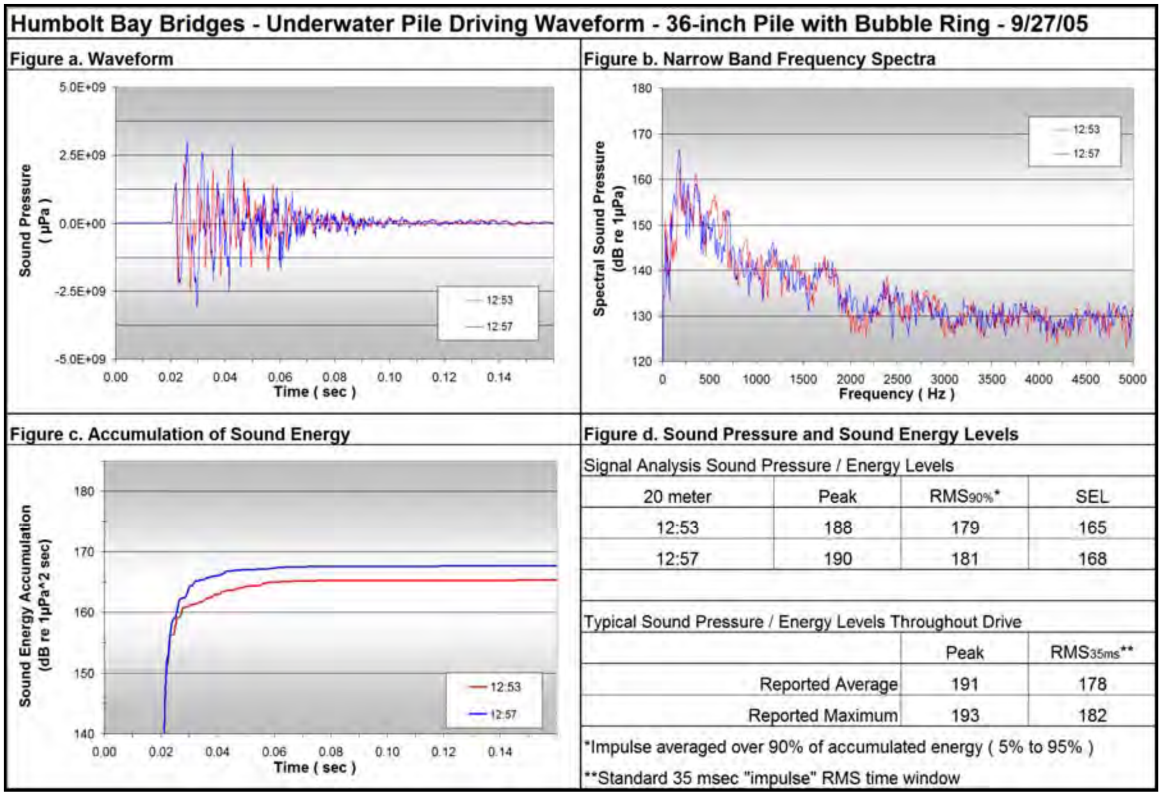


Figure I.11-10 Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 36-Inch-Diameter Pile at 20 Meters (65 Feet) – Pier S3, Humboldt Bay Bridges, Eureka, CA

I.11.5 References

1. Reyff, J. and Rodkin, R. 2004. *An Assessment of Underwater Sound Impulses Generated from Humboldt Bridge Pile Driving Tests*. March 18, 2004.

2. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. Data files of unpublished measurements for pile driving at Pier S12, Humboldt Bay Bridges on February 13, 2004.

3. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. Data files of unpublished measurements for pile driving at Pier M2, Humboldt Bay Bridges on June 7 and 8, 2005.

4. Illingworth & Rodkin, Inc. Data files of unpublished measurements for pile driving at Pier S2, Humboldt Bay Bridges on September 27, 2005.

I.12 Plastic Piles

Plastic piles are uncommon in California. There has been only one opportunity to measure the installation of these piles. This was during a fender repair project in Solano County, California. Measurements are described in this section.

I.12.1 13-Inch-Diameter Plastic Piles—Solano Route 37 Napa River Bridge Fender Repair Project, Solano County, CA

Underwater sound measurements were performed on January 14, 2008, during the installation of four 13-inch-diameter reinforced plastic piles at the Napa River Bridge for Route 37, Solano County, California.

The measurements were made at distances of 10 and 20 meters (33 and 65 feet) from the piles at a depth of about 3 meters (10 feet) below the water surface. Water depth was about 10 meters. The peak sound pressures and the RMS levels were monitored continuously during the driving event. SEL levels were monitored but not continuously. The piles driven had a steel driving shoe attached and were approximately 85 feet long. The piles were driven with an ICE-60 diesel-powered hammer. Figure I.12-1 shows typical installation of 13-inch-diameter plastic piles.

Figure I.12-1 Typical Installation of 13-Inch-Diameter Plastic Piles

Four different piles were measured—Piles 10, 11, 12, and 13. The water current during the driving of Piles 12 and 13 was fairly strong and may have compromised the accuracy of some of the sound readings. Pile 11 was driven during a slack tide with little current. Typical sound pressure levels were 168 dB peak, and the maximum peak sound pressure level was 173 dB at 10 meters. The typical RMS sound pressure level was 156 dB with a maximum of 159 dB. Sound levels at 20 meters were about 2 to 3 dB lower than at 10 meters, an indication that substantial sound energy emanated from below the water bottom (i.e., pile tip). Table I.12-1 summarizes the maximum and average peak and RMS sound pressure levels measured during driving of the four plastic piles.

Table I.12-1 Typical Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Driving of Four Plastic Piles—Napa River Bridge Fender Repair, Solano County, CA

Conditions	Distance	Measured Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
		Peak		RMS	
		Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average
Unattenuated – Diesel Impact Hammer	10 meters (33 feet)	177	166	159	153
	20 meters (65 feet)	172	163	157	151

For Pile 10, there was little difference in the signals measured at 10 and 20 meters. Only a slight decrease in the higher frequencies (above 1000 Hz) was noted for the 20-meter signals. The sounds were made up of very low frequency sound energy, mostly below 1000 Hz. Dominant tones were at about 200 Hz. Measured SEL values were in the range of 135 to 145 dB. Each pile-driving event lasted about 2 minutes with the hammer striking the pile about once per second or almost 120 times per driving event. Figure I.12-2 show individual pulses from the driving events for Pile 10.

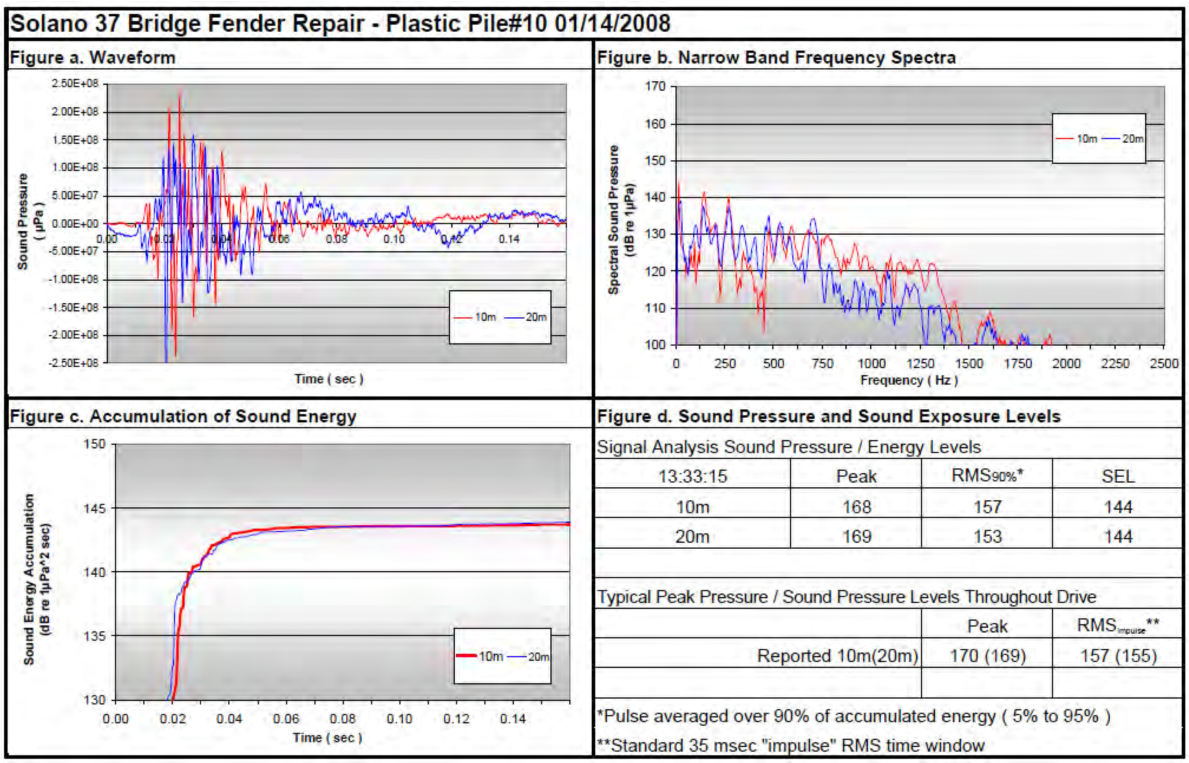


Figure I.12-2 Signal Analysis for Plastic Pile 10 on January 14, 2008, Napa River Bridge Fender Repair, Solano County, CA

I.13 Modified H-Piles, Steel Sheet Piles, and Steel Shell Piles—Ten Mile River Bridge Project, Fort Bragg, CA

Construction of the Ten Mile River Bridge Project on State Route 1 north of the city of Fort Bragg, California, consisted of replacing the existing seismically unsound bridge with a new structure east of the existing bridge (See Figure I.13-1) and required driving modified H-piles, sheet piles, and steel shell piles. The project included installing modified H-piles during the construction of a temporary construction trestle, sheet piles for the construction of the coffer dams around the permanent piers, and permanent 762 millimeter (mm) (30-inch) steel shell piles for the foundation of the bridge. All piles were driven to a specified tip elevation. An air bubble ring was used in the partially dewatered cofferdam to reduce the underwater sound pressure levels associated with driving the larger permanent piles; the temporary modified H-piles were driven in an isolation casing.

Figure I.13-1 Ten Mile River Bridge, Fort Bragg, CA

Underwater noise attenuation was required during the installation of all in-water permanent piles. Underwater noise measurements were conducted during installations, and results were collected work conducted at four different piers. Pier 5, the southernmost pier, was on the south side of the Ten Mile River in the floodplain approximately 20 meters (65 feet) from the edge of the river channel. Pier 6 was at the edge of the river channel, and Piers 7 and 8 were in the river channel. Pier 8 was the northern most set of piles driven in shallow water into bedrock.

The first set of data is from the installation of the modified H-piles, the next set is from the installation of the sheet piles for the coffer dam, both in water and on land. The last set is from the permanent steel shell piles.

I.13.1 Modified H-Piles for Temporary Construction Trestle

Two separate trestles were built; the first was for construction of the new bridge, and the second was for demolition of the existing bridge. These trestles were supported on modified H-piles, which were constructed from three separate H-piles. Two of the H-piles were smaller than the third and were welded to the web of the larger one (See Figure I.13-2).

The H-piles were typically installed in two stages. In the first stage, piles were "stabbed" in place with a vibratory hammer, and then a diesel impact hammer completed the drive. An isolation casing was used to reduce the underwater noise generated from the impact driving. The casing consisted of a section of 24-inch steel shell pile with a 48-inch section of corrugated metal pipe placed around the pile. Both ends of the pipe were then welded on to the steel pile to create a 1-foot air space around the H-pile. Two different casings were constructed, a short one for shallow water and a taller one for the deeper water (See Figures I.13-3a–d). The peak levels for the piles driven in water ranged from 169 dB to 201 dB. The RMS levels ranged from 153 dB to 183 dB.

Figure I.13-2 Modified H-Piles

Figure I.13-3a Taller Isolation Casing

Figure I.13-3b Shallow Water Isolation Casing

Figure I.13-3c End View of Isolation Casing

Figure I.13-3d Isolation Casing Being Installed

Table I.13-1 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Modified H-Piles with Isolation Casing. Ten Mile River Bridge, Fort Bragg, CA

		Sound Pressure Levels in dB			
		RMS		Peak	
	Distance	Maximum	Average	Maximum	Average
Construction of Work Trestle	10 meters (33 feet)	179	167	190	181
Construction of Demolition Trestle	10 meters (33 feet)	187	178	201	189

I.13.2 Sheet Piles for Cofferdam Construction

Construction of the cofferdams consisted of driving four "spud" piles (H-pile) and a series of 2-foot-wide sheet piles. The sheet piles were installed using a vibratory pile driver only, and there was no attenuation used. Underwater noise levels were measured during installation of sheet piles for part of Bent 5 and all of Piers 6, 7, and 8. Approximately 14 H-piles and 171 sheet piles were monitored on 17 days April 6, 2007–July 26, 2007. The peak sound pressure levels and RMS levels were measured. Data presented is only for the 10 meter position.

Table I.13-2 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Sheet Piles. Ten Mile River Bridge, Fort Bragg, CA

	Sound Pressure Levels in dB	
Pier	Peak	RMS
5	150 (on land)	135 (on land)
6	152 (on land) 174 (in water)	131 (on land) 140 (in water)
7	172 (in water)	142 (in water)
8	170 (in water)	140 (in water)

I.13.3 Permanent 762 mm Steel Shell Piles

Prior to driving the 762mm (30-inch) steel shell piles in the cofferdams, the cofferdams were excavated approximately 25 feet below the existing grade to allow for the construction of the pile cap. After the excavation was complete, two types of driving were used to install the piles. The first sections of piles were partially vibrated in to a point where the pile was secure and could stand by itself in the template. The remainder of the first section and subsequent sections were driven using a Delmag D-36 diesel impact hammer. When the top of the piles were at the water line in the cofferdam, a "chaser" was added to the impact hammer to drive the piles to the design tip elevation below the water depth (See Figure I.13-4). A total of 32 piles were installed in each cofferdam. The typical pile layout is shown in Figure I.13-5. Prior to driving the piles, a single bubble ring was placed around the piles to reduce the underwater noise from the driving. There were no official tests of bubble ring effectiveness; however, during the production driving, there were incidences when the bubble ring was not turned on until after the driving had begun. Measurement results indicate that the bubble ring reduced the peak levels by 10-15 dB.

Figure I.13-4 "Chaser" Attached to Diesel Impact Hammer Driving the Steel Shell Piles with the Bubble Ring on

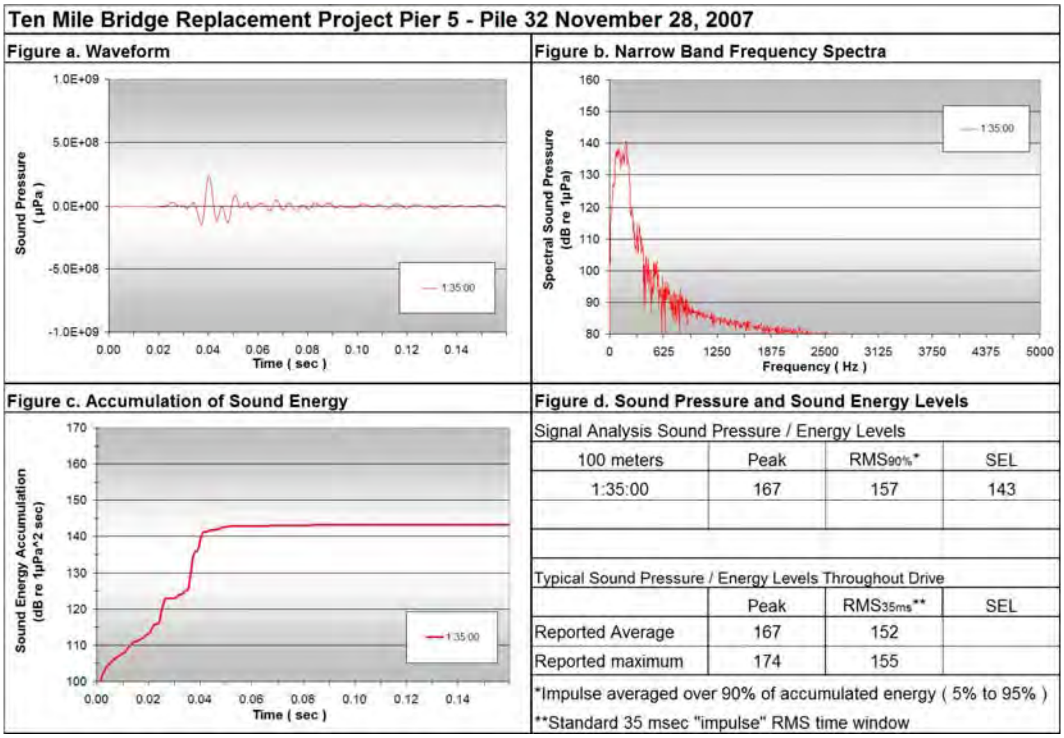
Underwater noise levels were measured during pile installation at Piers 5, 6, 7, and 8 with the bubble curtain turned on. The driving conditions at Piers 6 and 7 were similar in that the soil where the piles were placed was as expected and the design length of the piles was adequate for the bearing of the piles. At Pier 7, however, soil conditions were more resistant and the driving was suspended because the peak levels reached 190 dB impact threshold. (This project was permitted before the current threshold of 206 dB was adopted by NOAA Fisheries.) The piles were then drilled out, and driving continued until the piles either reached the design tip elevation or the peak levels reached 190 dB. At Pier 5, the piles were extended an additional length and driven to bedrock to achieve the required bearing capacity. At Pier 8, bedrock was hit prior to the piles being driven to tip elevation. Some center relief drilling was then conducted. The piles were not driven to the design tip element but rather were driven to an acceptable depth that gave them good lateral support. Table I.13-3 gives the maximum and average measured peak and RMS sound pressure levels at the various piers and for the different driving conditions.

Figure I.13-5 Pier 5 Steel Shell Pile Layout in Cofferdam Typical of all Pier Locations

Table I.13-3 Sound Pressure Levels Measured for Steel Shell Permanent Piles.
Ten Mile River Bridge, Fort Bragg, CA

Pier 5 Piles Driven on Land in Cofferdam						
	Vibratory		**Impact**		**Impact with Chaser**	
	Peak	RMS	Peak	RMS	Peak	RMS
Maximum	170	159	174	157	169	159
Average	164	152	165	151	162	148
Pier 6 in Cofferdam at Edge of Water with Bubble Rings						
	Vibratory		**Impact**		**Impact with Chaser**	
	Peak	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**
Maximum			195	184	192	178
Average			186	172	184	170
Pier 7 in Cofferdam with Bubble Rings Water Depth Outside the Cofferdam 5-7 feet						
	Vibratory		**Impact**		**Impact with Chaser**	
	Peak	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**
Maximum	183		192	178	193	176
Average	158		186	172	185	170
Pier 8 in Cofferdam with Bubble Rings Water Depth Outside the Cofferdam 5-7 feet						
	Vibratory		**Impact**		**Impact with Chaser**	
	Peak	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**	**Peak**	**RMS**
Maximum	182	167	205	190	202	188
Average	166	156	193	180	196	182

Signal analyses for the pile strikes recorded at 10 meters at Piers 5, 6, 7, and 8 during the installation of the 30-inch diameter piles are shown in Figure I.13-6. These signals were characterized as having a fairly short duration of about 40 milliseconds. The signals from the piles in the water show a rapid rise time as compared to the land-based piles, as indicated by the rate that SEL accumulates. The frequency spectra indicate relatively high-frequency sound content, but most sound energy was in the 125–1,000 hertz range.

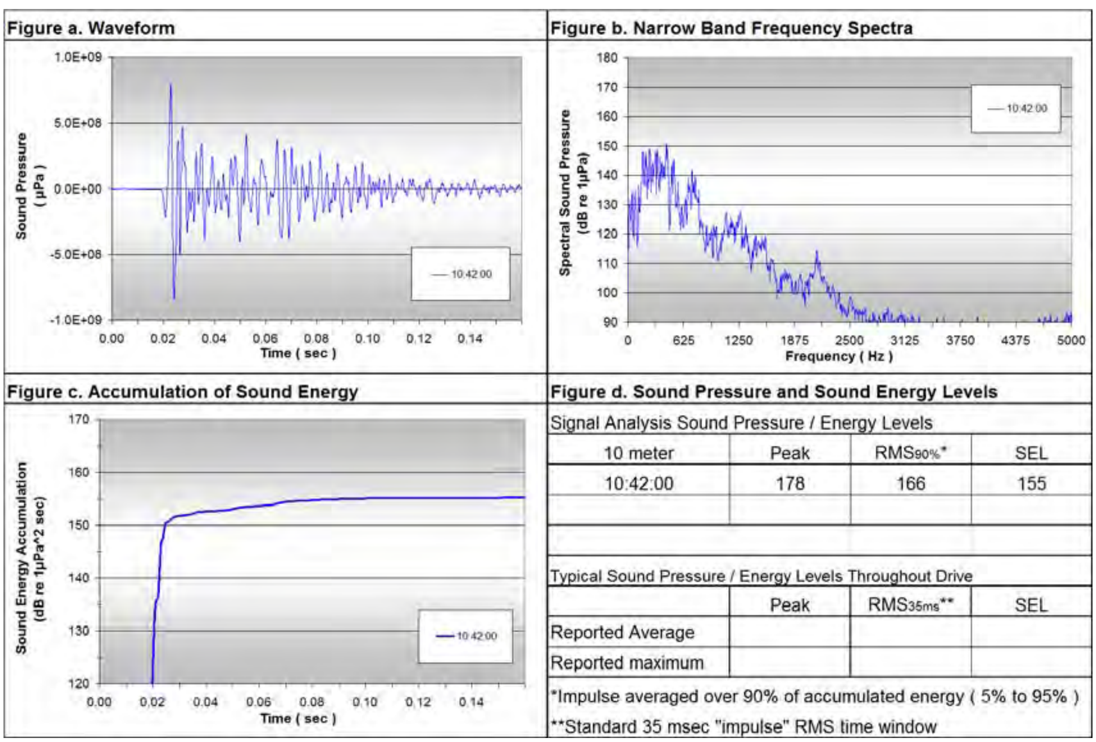


Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
100 meters	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
1:35:00	167	157	143
Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive			
	Peak	RMS35ms**	SEL
Reported Average	167	152	
Reported maximum	174	155	

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.13-6a Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 30-inch Pile at 100 Meters (330 Feet) on Land in Cofferdam at Pier 5. Ten Mile Bridge – Fort Bragg, CA

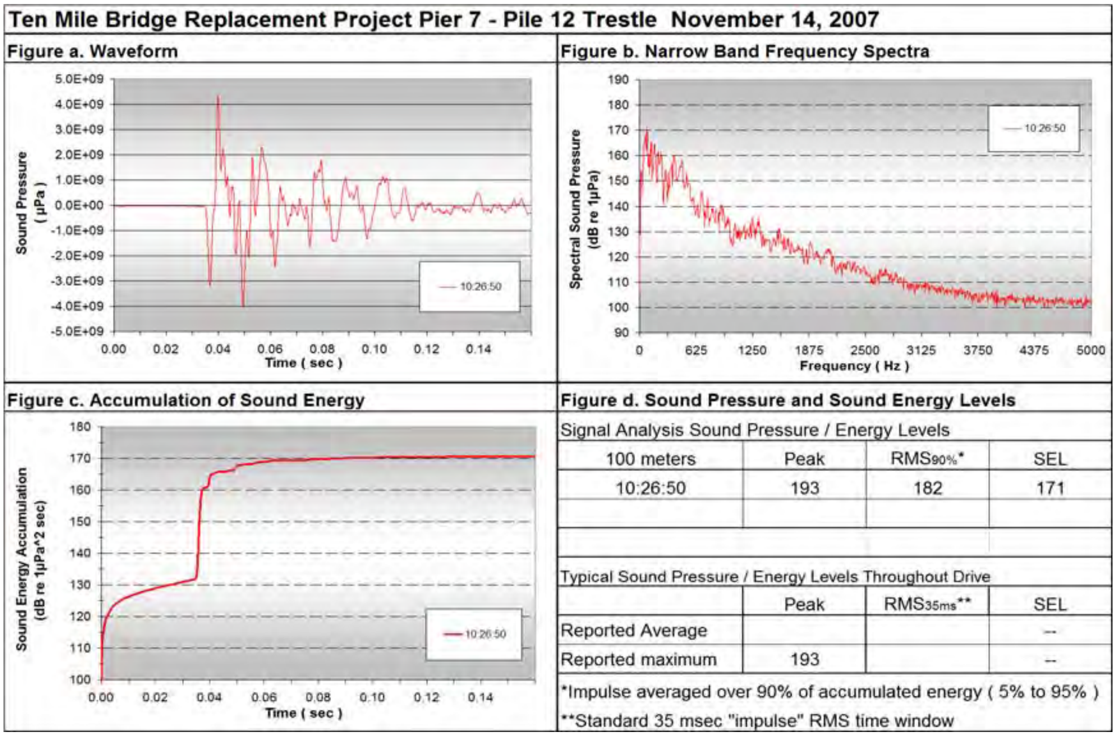


Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
10 meter	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
10:42:00	178	166	155
Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive			
	Peak	RMS35ms**	SEL
Reported Average			
Reported maximum			

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)

**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.13-6b Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 30-inch pile at 100 Meters (330 Feet) on Land in Cofferdam at Pier 6. Ten Mile Bridge – Fort Bragg, CA

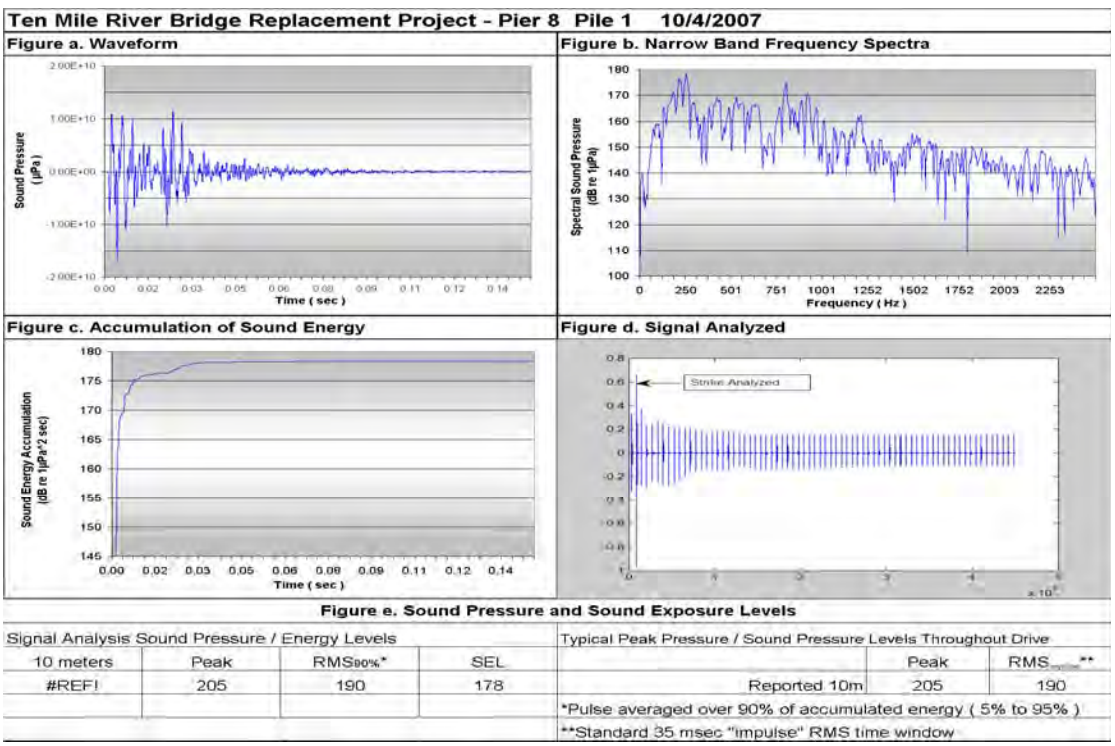


Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
100 meters	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
10:26:50	193	182	171

Typical Sound Pressure / Energy Levels Throughout Drive			
	Peak	RMS35ms**	SEL
Reported Average			--
Reported maximum	193		--

*Impulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.13-6c Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 30-inchPile at 10 Meters (33 Feet) in Cofferdam



Signal Analysis Sound Pressure / Energy Levels			
10 meters	Peak	RMS90%*	SEL
#REF!	205	190	178

Typical Peak Pressure / Sound Pressure Levels Throughout Drive		
	Peak	RMS[illegible]**
Reported 10m	205	190

*Pulse averaged over 90% of accumulated energy (5% to 95%)
**Standard 35 msec "impulse" RMS time window

Figure I.13-6d Representative Signal Analyses for Attenuated 30-inch Pile at 10 Meters (33 Feet) in Cofferdam at Pier 8. Ten Mile Bridge – Fort Bragg, CA

I.13.4 References

1. Pommerenck, K and Rodkin, R. 2010. *Underwater Sound Levels Associated with Pile Driving at the Ten Mile River Bridge Replacement Project.* December 2010.

Appendix II Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Acronyms

μPa	micro-Pascal(s)
dB re: 1μPa	decibel(s) referenced to 1 micro-Pascal
dB	decibel(s)
Department	California Department of Transportation
FFT	Fast-Fourier Transform
Hz	hertz
kHz	kilohertz
RMS	root mean square
$RMS_{90\%}$	effective root mean square sound pressure level
SEL	sound exposure level
TeNS	*Technical Noise Supplement*
TNAP	*Traffic Noise Analysis Protocol*

Appendix II Procedures for Measuring Pile Driving Sound

II.1 Introduction

This appendix describes a proposed methodology for measuring the sounds associated with underwater pile driving. Several key issues complicate the measurement of pile driving noise, including:

- A lack of uniform terminology,
- Variables in oceanic conditions during surveys and monitoring, and
- Differing approaches to field measurement and resultant data.

Different measurement descriptors are used to describe underwater sounds as they may affect marine resources. Accordingly, it is critical when making underwater sound measurements to adequately define the descriptors. It is useful, and sometimes required, to collect "real-time" data and report it immediately after a monitoring event. If this is necessary, it is important to select a descriptor that can be readily measured in the field. The underwater noise environment surrounding pile driving is typically very complex because of variable water depths and currents, combined with numerous physical obstructions and interfering noise sources that can affect noise measurements.

Researchers and resource agencies are trying to understand the impacts of pile driving in marine environments through use of field measurement data gathered from various projects and from a variety of research agencies. It is therefore imperative that the data arising out of such field measurements are consistent in terms of quality and content to allow meaningful comparisons between projects.

Since 2000, numerous measurements of underwater sound from pile driving have been collected at the request of the California Department of Transportation (the Department), constructors, and other stakeholders. Experiences and the data obtained from these measurements have provided a basis for development of a standardized measurement methodology. Proper, safe, and efficient methods were established based on familiarity with the many problems associated with conducting such measurements in a marine construction environment. The methodology outlined in this document establishes standard measurement distances and depths for hydroacoustic monitoring, monitoring durations, proper calibration, and field documentation methods. In addition, requirements for the analysis of underwater signals are described, including the capability requirements for the instrumentation, noise metrics that must be evaluated both in the time and frequency domains, and suggested data presentation templates. A range of information is provided so that instrumentation specifications necessary to accurately measure underwater sound levels from pile driving can be developed.

This appendix contains the following sections:

- Noise Descriptors,
- Underwater Sound Measurement Methodology,
- Analysis of Data and Recorded Sounds,
- Quality Control, and
- Reporting.

II.2 Noise Descriptors

Various descriptors are used to characterize noise levels, depending on the noise source and environment. The Department *Traffic Noise Analysis Protocol* (TNAP) and the *Technical Noise Supplement* (TeNS) contain explanations of the noise descriptors normally associated with traffic noise. Common descriptors used in environmental noise studies evaluating airborne noise are shown in Table II-1.

Table II-1. Common Airborne Noise Descriptors

Noise Descriptor	Definition
$\mathbf{L_{max}}$ (maximum noise level)	The highest instantaneous noise level during a specified period. This descriptor is sometimes referred to as “peak (noise) level.” The use of “peak” level should be discouraged because it may be interpreted as a non-RMS value noise signal (see Sec. N-2133 of TeNS for difference between peak and RMS noise signals).
$\mathbf{L_x}$ (a statistical descriptor)	The noise level exceeded X percent of a specified time period. The value of X is commonly 10. Other values of 50 and 90 are also used. Examples: L_{10}, L_{50}, L_{90}.
$\mathbf{L_{eq}}$ (equivalent noise level) – routinely used by the California Department of Transportation and the Federal Highway Administration to address the worst noise hour ($L_{eq}^{[h]}$)	The equivalent steady-state noise level in a stated period of time that would contain the same acoustic energy as the time-varying noise level during the same period.
$\mathbf{L_{dn}}$ (day/night noise level) – commonly used to describe the community noise level	A 24-hour average with a “penalty” of 10 dBA added during the night hours (2200–0700). The penalty is added because this time is normally sleeping time.
CNEL (community noise equivalent level) – a common community noise descriptor; also used to describe airport noise	Same as the L_{dn} with an additional penalty of 4.77 dBA (or 10 Log3) for the hours 1900–2200, which are usually reserved for relaxation, TV, reading, and conversation.
SEL (single-event level) – used mainly for aircraft noise; it enables comparing noise created by a loud but fast overflight with that of a quieter but slow overflight.	The acoustical energy during a single noise event, such as an aircraft overflight, compressed into a period of 1 second, expressed in decibels.

Airborne environmental noise descriptors typically are based on human hearing. The A-scale frequency-weighting network, abbreviated dBA, was developed to provide a single-number measure of a sound level in air across the human audible frequency spectrum. The A-weighting filter network has no direct application to assessing the effects of underwater pile driving noise on fish and marine mammals. The noise descriptors that are used to assess hydroacoustic noise are based on the linear (un-weighted) frequency spectrum, abbreviated dB. Given the frequency content of the pile driving pulses and the limitations of instrumentation that is commonly available to noise analysts, the un-weighted frequency spectrum is limited to the frequency range of 20 hertz (Hz) to 10 kilohertz (kHz) to accommodate the data acquisition of pile driving pulses from a wide variety of pile types and conditions.

All sound levels represented in decibels are related to a reference pressure. For airborne sound, the reference pressure is 20 micro-Pascals (µPa) (threshold of hearing human). For underwater sound, the reference pressure is 1 µPa. The 1- µPa reference pressure is mathematically convenient but results in a mathematical offset of +26 dB when compared to decibels based on the 20-µPa reference pressure.

When a pile driving hammer strikes a pile, a vibratory motion is created that propagates through the pile and radiates a pulse into the water and the ground substrate, as well as into the air. The rise and fall of the sound pressure pulse, represented in the time domain, is referred to as the *waveform*. The *peak pressure* is the highest absolute value of the measured waveform, and can be a negative or positive pressure peak. The root mean square (RMS) level for the pulse is calculated by computing the average of the squared pressures over the time that comprises the portion of the waveform containing 90 percent of the sound energy.[1] This RMS term is described as the *effective RMS level* and is abbreviated $RMS_{90\%}$ in this report. The $RMS_{90\%}$ level can be approximated for impact pile driving by measuring the signal with a precision sound level meter set to the "impulse" RMS setting All peak pressures and RMS sound pressure levels are expressed in decibels referenced to 1 µPa (dB re: 1µPa). Another measure of the pressure waveform that can be used to describe the pulse is the sound energy in the pulse. The total sound energy in the pulse is described using various terms. Assuming plane wave propagation, the total sound energy can be considered equivalent to the un-weighted sound exposure level (SEL), a common unit of sound energy used in airborne acoustics to describe short-duration events. The unit for SEL is dB re: $1\mu Pa^2$-sec.

Figure II-1 shows a sample pile driving waveform and the various acoustical descriptions associated with the signal.

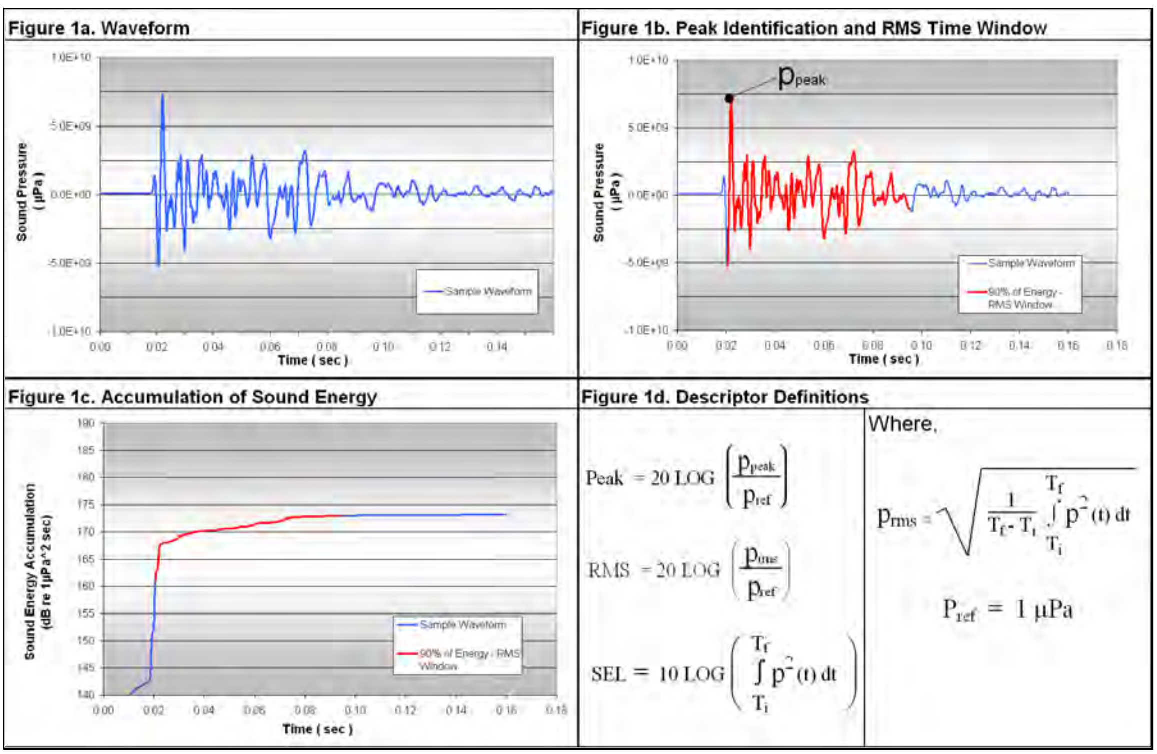


Figure II-1. Acoustical Descriptors Associated with a Pile Driving Waveform

The waveform, or time history, shown in the first panel of Figure II-1 presents the variation in pressure over time from a single pulse. The pressure is shown in micro-Pascals, and the time shown is in hundredths of a second (Figure 1a). Figure 1b shows the peak pressure for this sample pulse and the portion of the waveform from which the effective pressure ($RMS_{90\%}$) is calculated. Figure 1c shows how

[1] Richardson, Greene, Malone & Thomson, *Marine Mammals and Noise*, Academic Press, 1995; and Greene, personal communication.

acoustical energy accumulates over the duration of the pulse. It can be seen that the energy accumulates most rapidly at the beginning of the pulse, coinciding with the time when the peak pressure occurs. The rate of accumulation of energy varies, depending on the rise time to the peak pressure and the frequency content in the pulse. The resultant level in the sample shown in the Figure 1c (173 dB re: 1μPa^2 -sec) is the sound exposure level for this sample. Figure 1d summarizes the equations used to calculate the descriptors. The procedure for analyzing the signals and calculating the noise descriptors will be described later in this appendix.

To summarize, the three relevant single-number descriptors used to describe the acoustical pulse resulting from an impact pile driver are:

- **Peak/Sound Pressure Level:** The maximum absolute value of the instantaneous sound pressure that occurs during a specified time interval, measured in dB re: 1μPa (e.g., 198 dB Peak).

- **Effective Root Mean Square Sound Pressure Level:** A decibel measure of the square root of mean square (RMS) pressure. For pulses, the average of the squared pressures over the time that comprises that portion of the wave form containing 90 percent of the sound energy of the impulse in dB re: 1μPa is used (e.g., 185 dB RMS).

- **Sound Exposure Level:** The integral over time of the squared pressure of a transient waveform, in dB re: 1μPa2–sec. (e.g., 173 dB SEL). This is an approximation of sound energy in the pulse.

Most sounds, including the sound of a pile driving pulse, are composed of many different frequencies, referred to as the *frequency spectrum* of a sound. This concept is discussed in Section N-2137 of TeNS[2]. In hydroacoustics, frequency spectra are usually presented in 1/3 octave bands or "narrow bands" that normally have a constant bandwidth of 6 or 12.5 Hz. An example 6-Hz narrowband frequency spectrum is shown in Figure II-2. Frequency is measured in cycles per second, designated as Hz. When characterizing a sound pressure spectrum for a waveform, the unit of amplitude is typically the RMS pressure measured over a defined frequency bandwidth.

Frequency spectra are important because the frequency content of the sound may affect a species response to the sound (for physical injury as well as hearing loss). From an engineering standpoint, the frequency spectrum is important because it affects the expected sound propagation and the performance of sound attenuation systems, which are also frequency dependent. The frequency content of pulses is often requested by resource agencies.

[2] *Technical Noise Supplement* (TeNS). A technical noise supplement to the *Traffic Noise Analysis Protocol*. California Department of Transportation. October 1998.

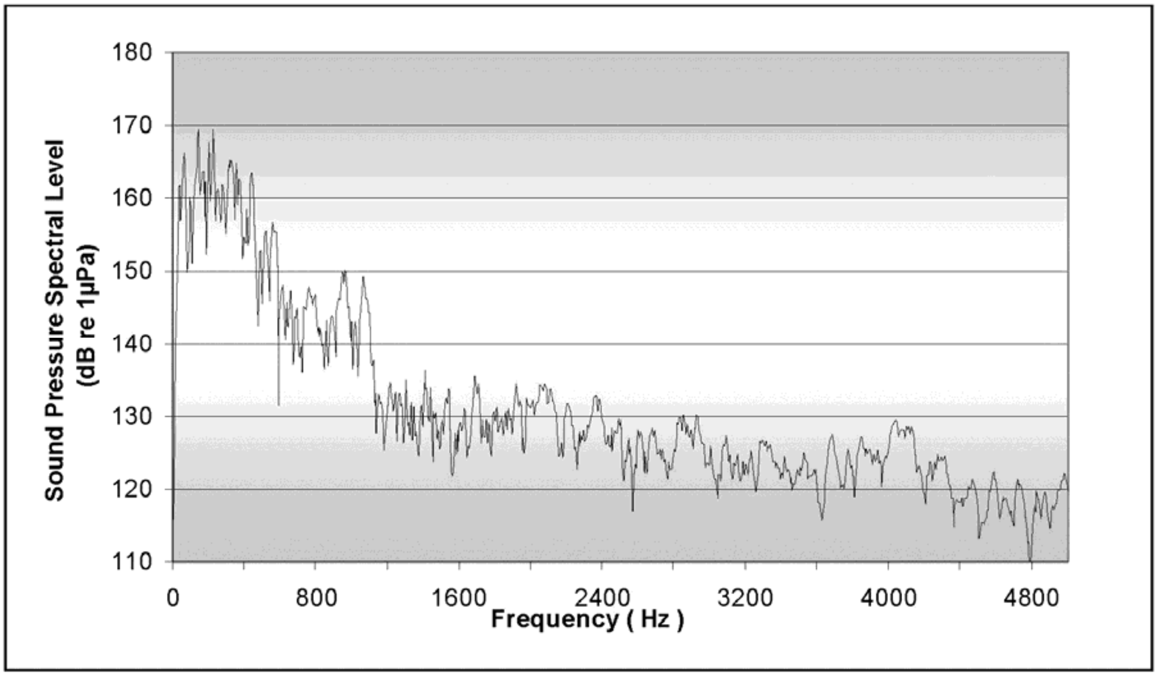


Figure II-2. Sample Narrowband Frequency Spectrum

II.3 Underwater Sound Measurement Methodology

II.3.1 Measurement Equipment

The instruments used for measuring, recording, and analyzing hydroacoustic data from pile driving are available from a wide variety of manufacturers, and different types of systems can be used to accomplish the task. Following the recommendations in TeNS, this guidance manual does not provide detailed information regarding the instrumentation used to collect and analyze hydroacoustic data nor endorse certain manufacturers. It is strongly recommended that the Department Headquarters Noise and Vibration unit be consulted before purchasing or using any noise instrumentation for the collection of hydroacoustic data.

Figure II-3 depicts a typical setup using a single hydrophone, single-channel system. A photograph of an actual field measurement system is included as Figure II-4. The signal is detected with a hydrophone, which serves the same function as the microphone on a sound level meter and is constructed like an accelerometer used for vibration measurements. Some examples of pressure sensors, including a blast transducer and two hydrophones that would be appropriate for this type of measurement system, are shown in Figure II-5. The hydrophone must be completely waterproof and corrosion resistant, electrically stable, rugged enough to withstand pile driving site conditions, and sufficiently sensitive to produce a signal that can be measured and analyzed. To maintain a waterproof seal, the hydrophone and cable are an integral assembly, which is supplied by the manufacturer. Extension cables with waterproof connectors are available. A 100-foot (30-meter) cable has proven to be adequate for all projects that have been completed to date. The electrical signal generated by the hydrophone is passed through a charge converter and then to a power supply that acts as a pre-amplifier; consequently, a strong, clear signal can be sent to the data recorder and real-time measurement system.

General performance standards are recommended based on the experience gained through measurements on numerous projects. Peak sound pressure levels generated by marine pile driving at measurement positions close-in to the pile and out to distances of several hundred meters normally fall within the 140 to 230 dB re: 1µPa (a dynamic range of 90 dB). Conditions are rugged; therefore, the selected hydrophone should be of medium sensitivity and resistant to damage. Based on these two criteria, and the possibility that it may be desirable to standardize around a single sensor for ease of calibration and analysis, a "miniature type" hydrophone has been found to serve very well. This hydrophone is available from different manufacturers, including Bruel & Kjaer (Type 8103), Reson (Type TC4013), and G.R.A.S. (Type 10CT). These hydrophones have a flat frequency response from less than 1 Hz to at least 170 KHz, meaning there is no correction necessary for signals that contain data over this frequency range. As previously noted, the sound energy in pile driving pulses is concentrated between 20 Hz and 10 KHz, which falls well within the measuring range of these hydrophones. The sensitivity of these hydrophones is about -211 dB re: 1 volt per µPa (the exact sensitivity varies with manufacturer). Experience has proven that the measuring system can accept up to about 1 volt before saturating (or overloading). The measurement system with a hydrophone of this sensitivity can measure pulses with a peak pressure of up to about 212 dB re: 1µPa with a uni-gain (one-to-one) charge converter. To measure higher peak pressures, it is recommended that a charge converter or charge amplifier be used that can attenuate the signal from the hydrophone. An inexpensive charge converter with 20-dB step attenuation built into it can replace the uni-gain charge converter and accomplish this task. The power supply should include amplifiers that can be adjusted in accurate discrete steps (e.g., 6 dB or 20 dB) to amplify the signal. This allows low-level signals to be accurately recorded. Suitable power supplies are available from Bruel & Kjaer, G.R.A.S., PCB, and other manufacturers.

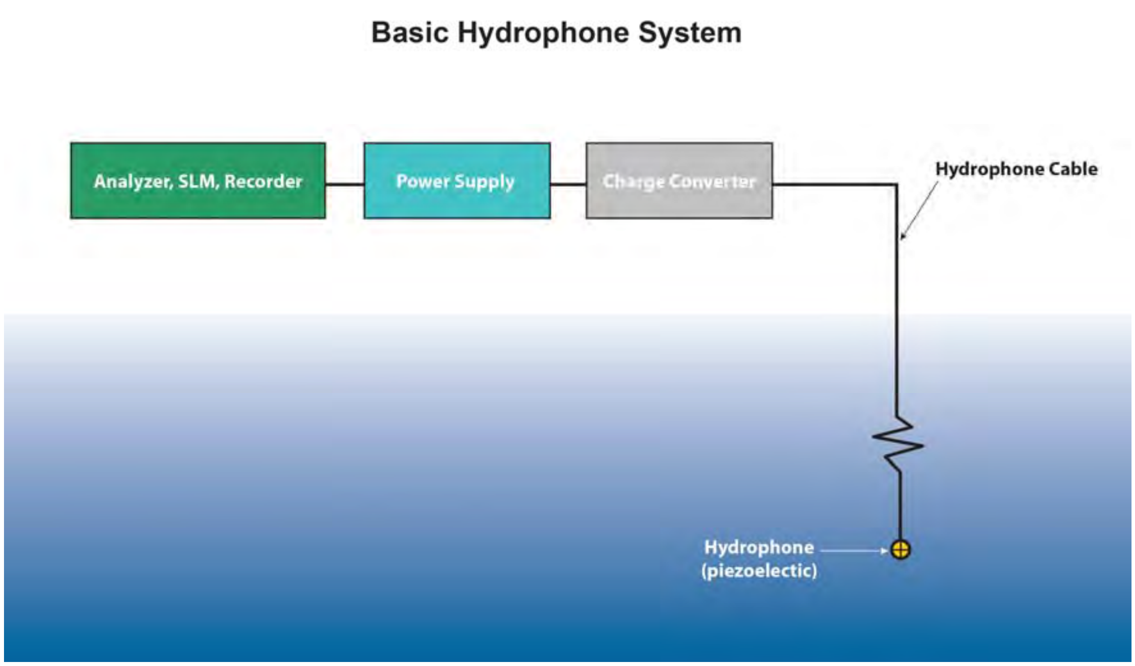


Figure II-3. Schematic of a Basic Hydrophone System

Figure II-4. Example of a Field Measurement Setup

Figure II-5. Example of Different Pressure Sensors

It is important to record the hydroacoustic data from a pile driving project so that subsequent detailed analyses of the signals can be completed. An accurate real-time measurement of the peak pressure and an estimate of the effective RMS pressure during the pile driving also should be made. These data are used as a point of reference when subsequently analyzing signals and are sometimes of critical interest to (for example, to determine the effectiveness of mitigation measures in the field, or the size of the area where marine mammal monitoring is required). Traditionally, data have been tape-recorded on digital audiotape recorders to provide an accurate recording over the frequency range of interest. Digital solid state recorders that record directly to a hard drive or flash card are now available and should be given serious consideration when purchasing new instrumentation, as digital audiotape recorders may soon become obsolete. The recording system should sample at a rate of at least 44 KHz, have a dynamic range of at least 80 dB, and meet numerous other specifications for precision professional data recording. To provide real-time information, a precision integrating sound level meter (such as the Larson-Davis 820, which is used routinely in highway noise measurement) has proven to be an excellent measurement system for spot-checking data in the field. To be useful, the real-time instrument must be able to measure in sequential one-second or shorter intervals, measure the linear (un-weighted) peak pressure accurately, and measure either the un-weighted or C-weighted (RMS) sound pressure level using the standard "impulse" time constant. The C-weighted impulse RMS time constant setting has proven to provide a good estimate of the un-weighted RMS 90 % sound pressure level (i.e., the effective RMS).

Note: It is critical that the power consumption of the instrumentation is well understood and that the battery life of all the batteries is known so that batteries may be replaced, if necessary, during the measurements. In addition, the instruments used must have sufficient memory storage.

II.3.2 Measurement Sampling Positions

There are several considerations in the selection of sampling positions:

- Location of species of interest,
- Safety for the operator and instrumentation,
- Consistency with other studies,
- Environmental factors at the job site,
- Pile driving scenario, and
- Meeting threshold requirements.

Before 2000, no protocols existed for conducting hydroacoustic measurements of underwater pile driving projects. Limited work had been done at only a few locations in the world. In conversations with the National Marine Fisheries Service, it was agreed that a sampling position 10 meters from the pile would be established as a standard reference distance for small piles. This distance was selected because it was believed to be safe for instrumentation and the noise analyst. For large-diameter steel pipe piles, jobsite conditions sometimes dictate a distance farther from the pile. The number of sampling positions depends on the characteristics at the job site. These characteristics include whether the site is adjacent to shore or in open water, whether the effects of water currents are important at a particular site, and whether a noise abatement system is in place. The presence of a noise abatement system sometimes complicates the feasibility of obtaining measurements at the 10-meter reference position. For example, the dimensions of a cofferdam may exceed 10 meters or place the cofferdam walls very close to a 10-meter distance from the pile. A bubble curtain system can create water turbulence at distances of 10 meters that render the environment unsuitable for hydroacoustic measurement. Under these conditions, a site-specific close-in reference position must be found and specified. Normally, a secondary distance of 20 meters can be accommodated within the constraints imposed by site conditions.

Additional measurements at greater distances are sometimes required by regulatory agencies. The measurement positions are normally specified in the orders or developed as part of a Noise Monitoring Work Plan. To establish attenuation rates, at least three positions at different distances should be used.

The depth of the hydrophone in the water column also must be considered at each location. Several factors must be considered when determining the depths at which the measurements would be made.

These include the depth at which the fish species of concern (or marine mammals) may be found most frequently, the depth of the water at the measurement location, and the effects of proximity to the surface or bottom on the accuracy of the noise measurement. Small changes in hydrophone depth within about 1 meter of the water surface cause large changes in measured noise levels. This makes repeatable measurements difficult to obtain, so measurements at depths of less than 1 meter are not recommended. In water that is more than 1 meter deep and less than 3 meters deep, a single measurement at low-depth is appropriate to characterize hydroacoustic pressures in the water column. Currently, regulatory agencies have requested hydroacoustic data at a depth of 3 meters. Two measurements, one at 1 meter below the surface and one positioned 1 meter from the bottom are normally sufficient to characterize acoustic pressures in the water column. A third measurement at mid-depth may be added or may be used as an alternative to the position 1 meter from the surface, depending on the depth of the water and the expected location of fish in the water column.

II.3.3 Procedures

The measurement and analysis of underwater noise from pile driving requires a thorough understanding of basic acoustic principles and specific training in the use of the instrumentation described above. This discussion assumes that the noise analyst is trained in and proficient with the use of acoustical instrumentation and recording systems.

II.3.3.1 Instrumentation Field Calibration

The measurement system must be calibrated prior to conducting a field measurement. Hydrophones are shipped from the manufacturer with a specified sensitivity. Using this sensitivity it is possible, but difficult, to measure correct levels from the real-time and recorded signals. Acoustical calibrators, therefore, must be used to calibrate the instrumentation system. The calibration should first be conducted in the office or lab prior to going to the job site. A second calibration should be conducted after transportation to the field, to confirm that the systems are correctly working and are still in calibration.

At low frequencies, the sensitivities of the recommended hydrophones are the same in air as they are in water. Calibration at a single calibration frequency is a valid method to use.[3] Hydrophone calibrators are available from various manufacturers. These are similar to standard acoustical calibrators but are normally of the pistonphone type rather than the electronic tone type of calibrator. The pistonphone generates a signal at 250 Hz. Because hydrophones come in different shapes and sizes, the appropriate coupler must be attached to the pistonphone. The relationship of the coupler volume to the hydrophone size affects the dB level of the calibration tone. The corrected calibration level must be supplied by the manufacturer for the specific calibrator, coupler, and hydrophone to be used. Pistonphones are typically rated in dB re: 20μPa. As an example, a pistonphone may be rated at 114, 124, or 134 dB re: 20μPa. This must be adjusted for the reference pressure of water by adding 26 dB, so that the rated calibration level would become 140, 150, or 160 dB re: 1μPa, respectively. The adjustment to correct for the coupler/hydrophone volume is then added. The system shown in Figure II-6 utilized a 114 dB re: 20μPa (140 dB re: 1μPa) pistonphone, and the manufacturer-supplied coupler with a "miniature hydrophone" has a coupler correction of +5.3 dB, so the calibration level is 145.3 dB (114 dB + 26 dB + 5.3 dB) re: 1μPa at 250 Hz. The instrumentation can be calibrated to the known calibrator signal level. Any attenuation or amplification that is supplied by the charge converter/amplifier or power supply must be accounted for when calibrating the sound level meter or data recorder and noted in the field logbooks. It

[3] Application Notes, *Introduction to Underwater Acoustics*, Bruel & Kjaer.

is recommended that all gain settings be set to uni-gain for initial calibration of the system. The calibration level should be recorded on the real-time sound level meter and the data recorder. All settings should be noted in the logbook, and all instrumentation that is part of each system should be noted in the logbook.

Again, the instrumentation calibration should be verified in the field prior to conducting measurements. Ideally, this would be done at the location where the equipment is to be deployed, just prior to conducting measurements. Sometimes this is not possible if pile driving or other very noisy activities have already begun at the site. Under these conditions, the calibration must be conducted at a relatively quiet location prior to deploying the instrumentation at the job site. At the time of the field calibration, the instrumentation should be configured identically with the same components as during the pre-field calibration. This should be confirmed through notes in the logbook. Calibration levels should again be noted, as well as each of the instrumentation settings. The calibration signal should be listened to through headphones to confirm that there is no electrical noise.

II.3.3.2 Setup and Locations

Measurement locations must be determined in the field. As previously discussed, measurement distances and directions are normally specified in the orders from the resource agency and confirmed in the work plan. To determine the appropriate distance at a marine construction site, hand-held range finders, accurate to within +/- 1 meter at distances ranging from 10 to 1,000 meters, are typically used. Safe positions must be selected in consultation with the pile driving contractor. The instrumentation should be placed in waterproof field boxes to allow for the measurement of marine pile driving under wet or poor weather conditions. Measurements are normally made from the pile driving barge, from a boat attended by the noise analyst, or from instrumentation left unattended in a secured raft.

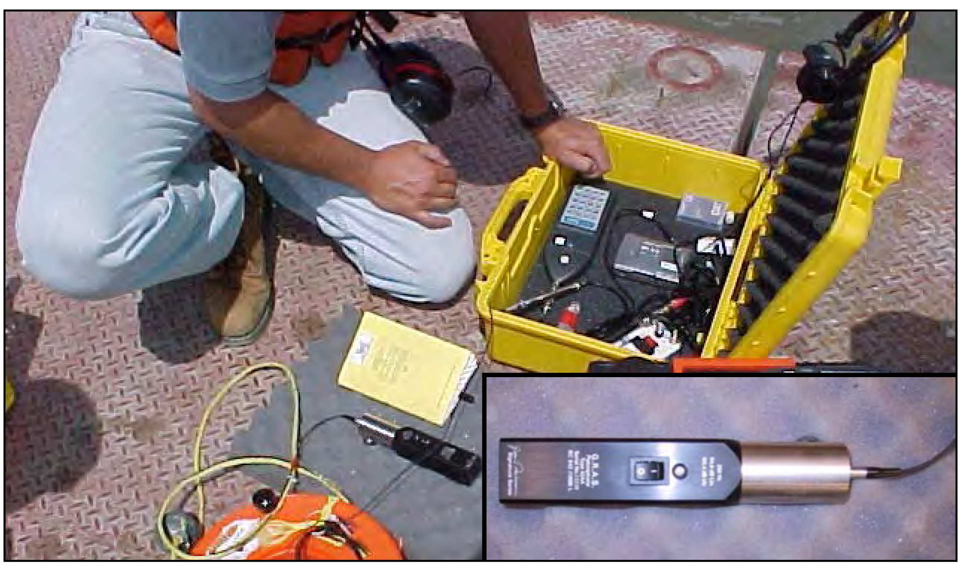


Figure II-6. Calibration in the Field

Once the locations have been identified and the instrumentation calibrated, the hydrophones are deployed to the specified depths. Measurement systems using at least two channels are recommended so that measurements may be made for two depths at each location with a single measurement system. The current of the water (or swiftly moving water in a river) can complicate the measurement location setup, as it will tend to move the hydrophones away from the desired depths and locations. The effects of the current on the hydrophone placement can be overcome variously by attaching the hydrophone to a line that contains a large weight, or by sinking an anchor and running the hydrophone line down the anchor line. Another problem related to water current, called "strumming" of the hydrophone line, occurs when the current induces a vibration in the hydrophone line that causes an audible noise in the system. This has been minimized by either attaching streamers to the hydrophone line or by taking the load off of the hydrophone line through secondary support. If there is a strong current, this should be noted in the logbook and accounted for as well as possible. Recorded signals should be monitored through headphones to confirm that systems are working properly and extraneous noise has been minimized. Current can produce considerable noise that could be mistaken as pile driving noise.

All instrumentation should be monitored periodically during the measurements to confirm that battery power has not been lost, storage media have not been filled up (tapes or digital media), and all cables and connectors are secured. Once the measurement session has concluded, instrumentation must be shut down and carefully stowed. All "live" data collected on data loggers should be downloaded from the instrumentation to a notebook computer. An appropriate file-saving protocol should be developed and followed so that there is no confusion later regarding the location or content of data files. All live data should be translated into file format suitable for storage in Excel, or whatever data management software is being utilized, then reviewed and annotated with information including date, location, and any special notes that may be applicable to the data set. If digital audio tape recordings have been made, the tapes should be properly labeled, including data, measurement location, and instrumentation system. If digital storage media have been used in the collection of data, these data should be treated like live data and transferred to a notebook computer. The flash card or other digital media should be labeled and safely stowed.

II.3.3.3 Safety

Safety for the noise analyst and instrumentation is a paramount consideration when conducting hydroacoustic measurements at a pile driving site. Use common sense. Wear all of the mandated safety gear, which normally includes hard hat, safety glasses, foam earplugs and ear muffs, an appropriate life jacket meeting the specifications for the jobsite, a whistle and safety light, long pants, and steel-toed boots. Pay attention to what is going on around you at all times, as very large pieces of equipment will be moved in proximity to the noise analyst and the measurement instrumentation. The construction contractor's onsite foreman should be made aware of your presence.

II.3.3.4 Field Logbooks

Good field notes are crucial. As previously noted, the calibration exercise must be documented for each measurement procedure. A small diagram of the instrumentation should be included in the logbook. After positioning the hydrophone, a sketch should be included in the logbook showing the relationship of the pile to the hydrophone and any other noteworthy obstructions (e.g., locations of barges, or proximity to a wharf). Sometimes an array of piles is in place and this should be noted, as well as the location of the pile being driven, because the existing piles can affect measured signals. The following should be noted at a minimum:

- All instrumentation settings,
- Date,
- Times pile driving begins and ends,
- Water depth,
- Hydrophone depth,

- Water conditions (e.g., surface waves and current),
- Distance to pile,
- Pile type and size,
- Soil composition,
- Pile driver size and type,
- Any out of normal conditions, and
- Observed peak and RMS-impulse levels.

II.4 Analysis of Data and Recorded Sounds

Data obtained following the procedures outlined in this manual include both live data obtained on the data logger (sound level meter) and recorded data used for subsequent detailed analysis. Procedures are described for managing both sets of data.

II.4.1 Real-Time (Live) Data

Live data should be analyzed first because it can be used as a guide in the field to confirm that data acquisition systems are working properly and can be checked against when analyzing the recorded signals. The live recorded data would include the peak and RMS sound pressure levels, measured in consecutive 1-second intervals at representative hydrophone positions. Levels observed at attended measurement locations are recorded in the logbooks at the beginning, during, and at the end of each pile driving event. Only a limited amount of data analysis is required for the live data. From this global data set, the important parameters are the absolute maximum peak and RMS pressures measured during each session, the range of peak and RMS pressures measured during each session, and typical maximum peak and RMS pressures (those that repeat themselves regularly during the measurement session).

Figure II-7 shows a typical chart of peak and RMS pressures measured over the course of a day of noise measurements at one location. Such a chart, when presented for each measurement location, provides a complete history of the overall sound pressures measured on a particular day of pile driving on a project site. Each measurement day could be made up of a number of pile driving events, which would each consist of numerous pile strikes.

Figure II-8 shows a typical chart of peak and RMS pressures measured over the course of a single pile driving event. Live data should not be presented until all of the systems have been post-calibrated and the data have been compared and contrasted. Then preliminary results can be reported to Department project staff. Data should be considered “preliminary” until all analyses are completed to confirm the quality and accuracy of the data.

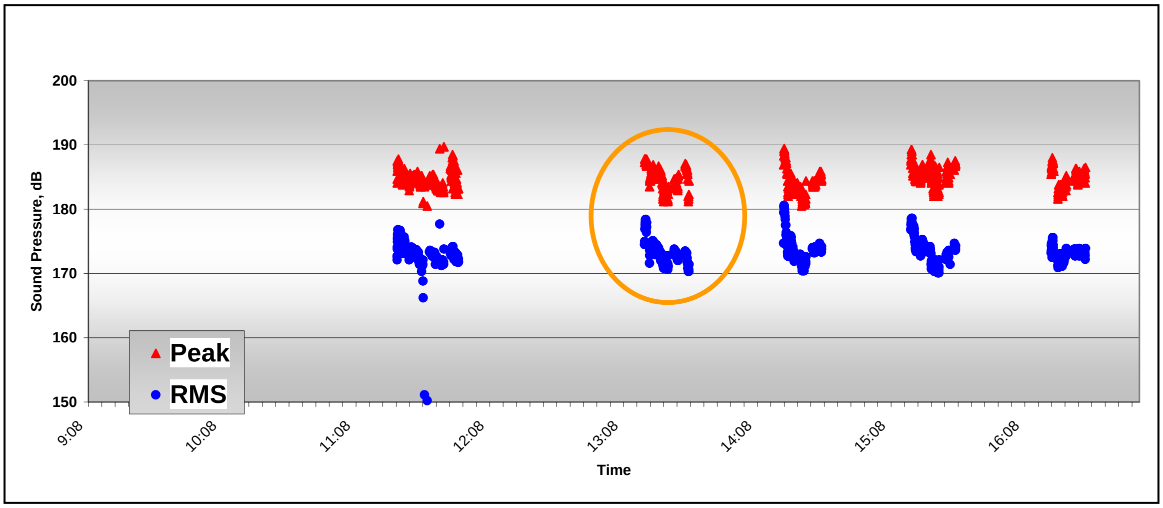


Figure II-7. Example of 1 Day of Pile Driving Data from a Sound Level Meter (Five Events)

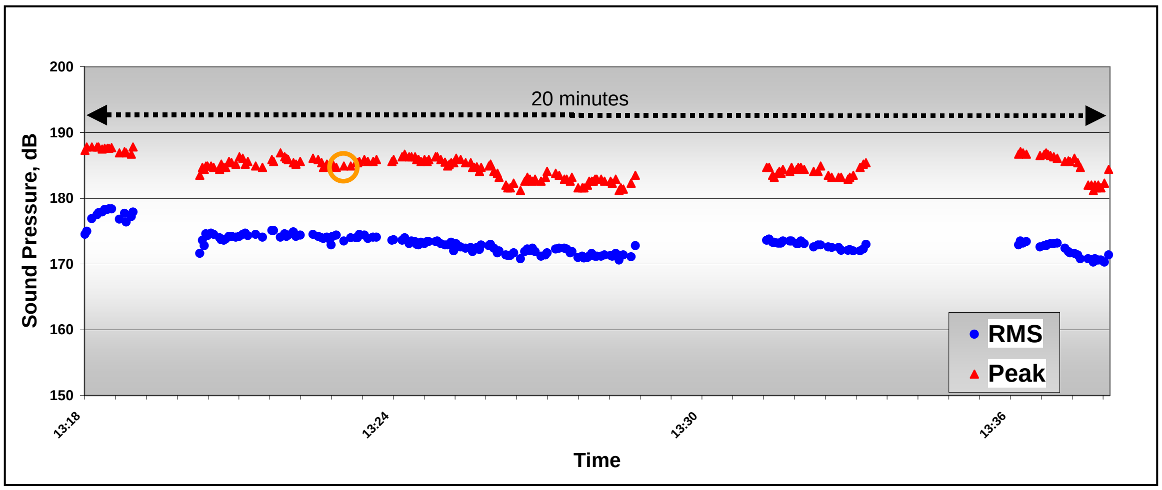


Figure II-8. Example of Peak and RMS Pressures for a Single Pile Driving Event

II.4.2 Recorded Data

The primary purpose for recording data and subsequent analysis is to obtain the characteristics of the pulses in the time and frequency domains. Figure II-9 shows a series of pile strikes in the time domain. The waveform for the pulse is a record of the variations in pressure over time during the individual pulse. Normally, it is necessary to analyze only pulses that are representative of typical maximum peak pressures. If a real-time frequency analyzer was used to analyze the pulses, then a narrow band frequency analysis of representative pulses would be completed first. The band width is typically set at 800 lines of resolution (6.25 Hz) over a frequency range of 0 to 5 KHz. This is accomplished by taking a Fast-Fourier Transform (FFT) of the representative pulses. The steps in this process are to: (1) identify and isolate the pressure time trace or waveform of interest; (2) perform the FFT to provide the frequency spectrum in the narrow bands; and (3) sum the results into 1/3 octave bands as necessary. The output from this analysis is a set of pressure data in increments of approximately 12 microseconds and a narrow band frequency analysis of the signal and constant bandwidth of 6.25 Hz. Figure II-10 shows a single pile strike that has been analyzed identifying the peak pressure; and Figure II-11 shows a typical four-panel display, which summarizes the data from each selected pile strike. The time history shown in the first panel of Figure II-11, also shown in Figure II-10, presents the variation in pressure over time from a single pulse. The pressure is shown in micro-Pascals, and the time shown is in hundredths of a second (Figure II-11a). Figure II-11b shows the frequency spectrum associated with this single pulse. Figure II-11c shows how acoustical energy accumulates over the duration of this individual pulse, resulting in the SEL. It can be seen that the time and the pulse when the peak pressure occurred corresponded to the most rapid rate of accumulation of energy. The energy is summed over the period when 90 percent of the energy occurred, leaving out the initial 5 percent and the final 5 percent. The resultant level is the sound exposure level in dB re: 1μPa^2 sec. Figure II-11d summarizes the calculated descriptors for the pulse, including the peak and RMS$_{90\%}$ sound pressure levels, the SEL, and typical peak and RMS$_{35ms}$ sound pressure levels generated throughout the pile driving event.

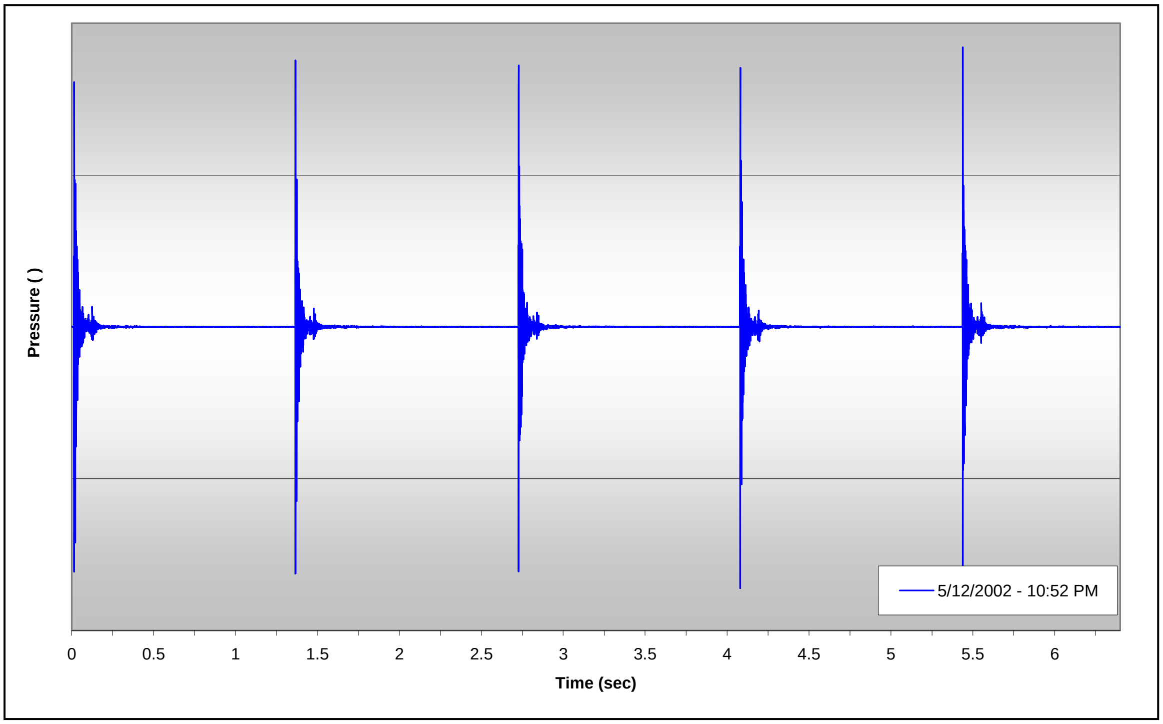


Figure II-9. Series of Pile Strikes in the Time Domain

The noise metrics used to assess the effects of pile driving sounds are still being reviewed. It is very important to record data and analyze data in a consistent manner so that data sets can be compared to one another. It is important that data can be re-analyzed in the future as the regulatory criteria are formalized. A consistent approach to data analysis and data management is necessary in order to provide a consistent and uniform basis for categorizing and predicting noise levels from pile driving projects for use in the environmental and regulatory review processes.

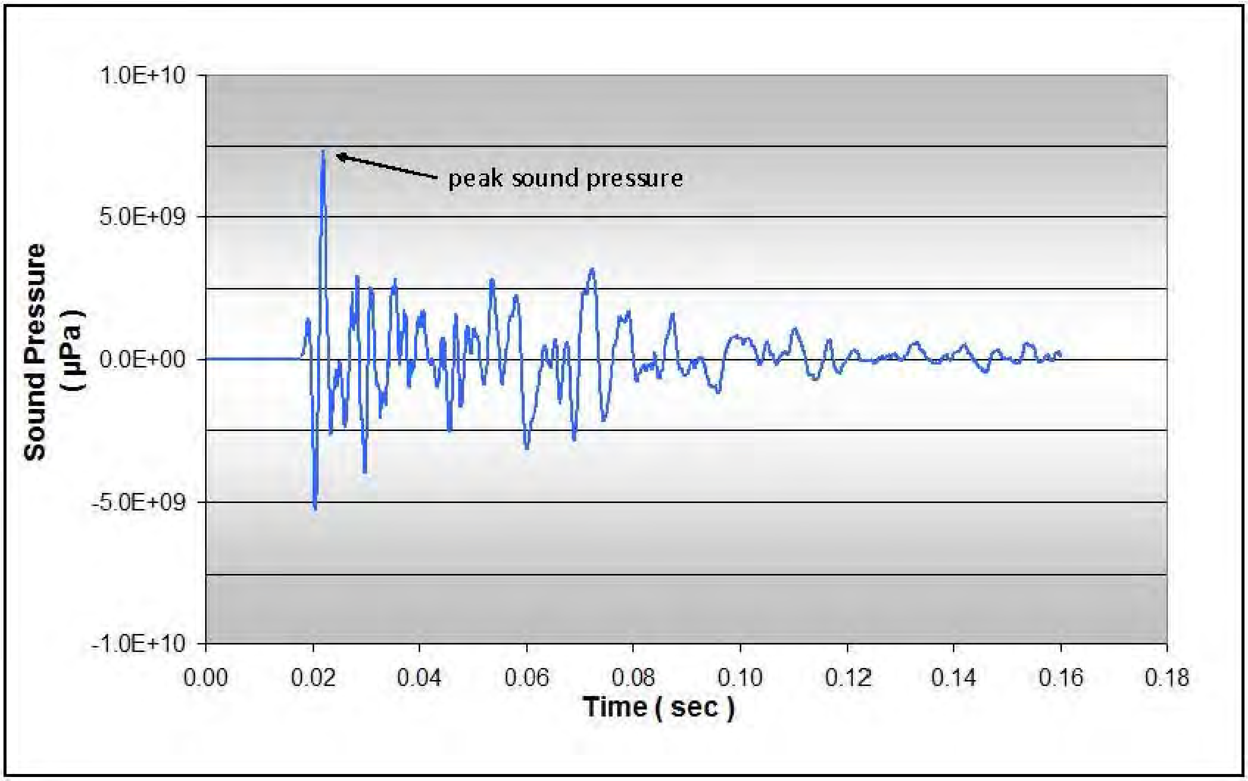


Figure II-10. Peak Sound Pressure of a Sample Pile Driving Pulse

II.5 Quality Control

To ensure quality control of all data from field measurements, measurement systems must be properly calibrated and operating correctly, all equipment settings and field observations must be documented, and work must be made by or under the supervision of a noise analyst that is qualified and trained to conduct these types of measurements.

II.5.1 Measurement Systems

The measurement systems should be calibrated prior to use in the field with a proper calibrator, such as a pistonphone and hydrophone coupler. The pistonphone, when used with the hydrophone coupler, produces a continuous tone at a specified frequency and known amplitude. The sound level meters are calibrated to this level prior to use in the field. The calibration tone is then measured by the sound level meter and is recorded by the digital audio recorders that are used in the field. The same calibrator is used to check the calibration of the sound level meter and to establish the reference tone on the recorder. The system calibration should be checked at the end of the measurement event both by measuring the calibration tone with the sound level meter and recording the post-measurement calibration tone onto the recording system. Calibration utilizing an acoustical calibrator calibrates the entire system, including all cables and connectors. The pistonphone calibrator should be certified at an independent facility by a certified metrologist. The measurement systems proposed in this manual allow for a direct reading of sound pressures in the field and the subsequent detailed analysis of the pile driving pulses. While the systems use the same input hydrophone, they are otherwise completely separate and can be used to check each other to confirm that measured and analyzed levels are correct.

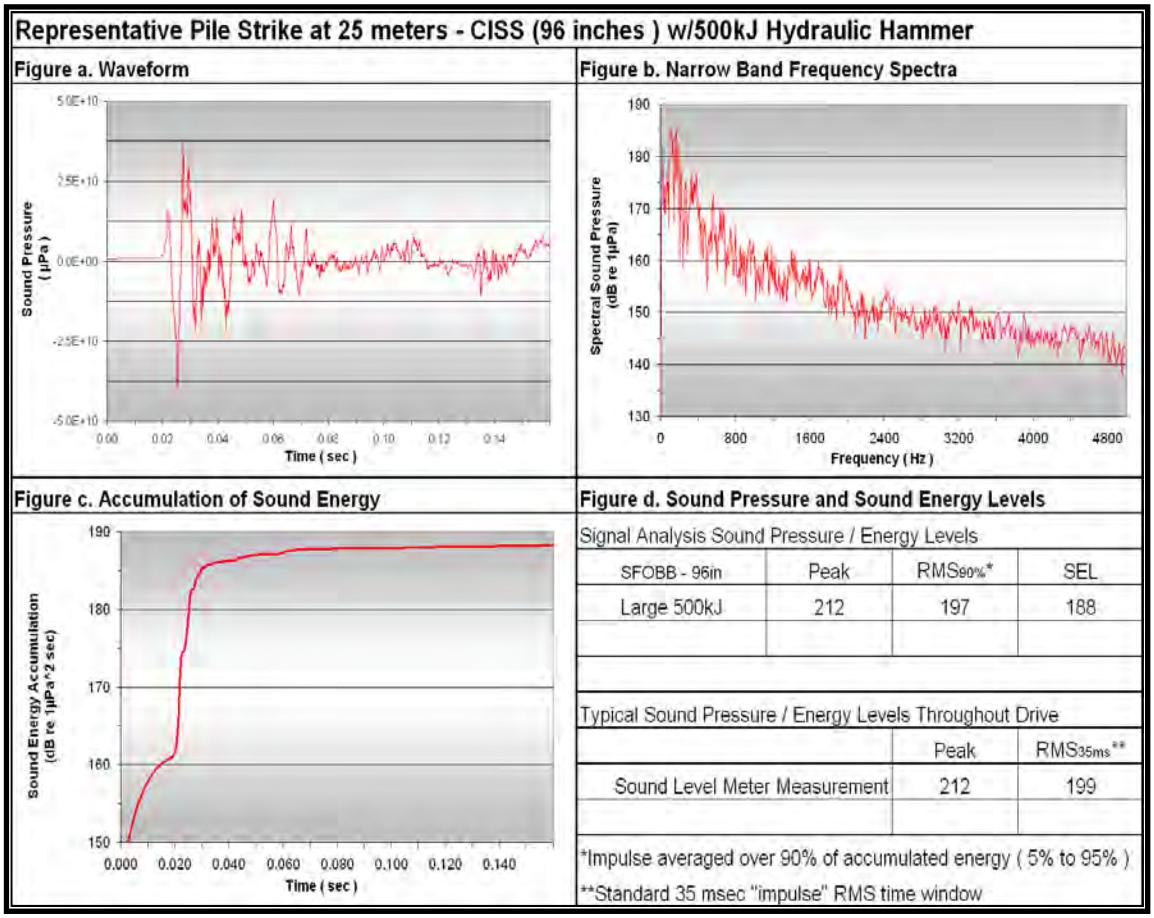


Figure II-11a–d. Example Four-Panel Display

II.5.2 Field Logbooks

Field logbooks are used to note all equipment settings and field conditions. Notebook entries should be copied after each measurement day and filed for safekeeping. Digital audiotapes or other storage media should be labeled and stored for subsequent analysis.

II.5.3 Supervision

All work should be done by or under the direct supervision of a person with demonstrated qualifications and experience.

II.6 Reporting

Data reporting normally occurs at the end of a series of events of pre-established benchmarks during a construction project. Interim data reports typically include discussion of all of the relevant information for each pile drive that had been noted in the logbooks and described in the field logbooks section of this report. A chart similar to Figure II-11, which shows a four-panel display used to summarize data from each pile driving event, should be created and presented for each hydrophone during each pile driving event. The real-time data that was displayed in Figure II-7 also should be summarized for each measurement location for each day of monitoring. Any unusual events that affected the measured data should be noted in summary paragraphs describing the reported data. Verbal reports should be made only if proper protocols have been established for the project.

At the conclusion of a project, a final report is prepared. The final report includes an introduction describing the project; a methodology section that describes measurement positions, measurement equipment, underwater sound descriptors, and the methods used to manage measurement data; a complete report of measured data; a report of the performance of attenuation systems, if applicable; and an analysis of the data with respect to orders from regulatory agencies.

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix III Fish Habitat Types and Distribution

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Acronyms

CESA	California Endangered Species Act
Delta	Sacramento/San Joaquin River Delta
DPS	distinct population segments
EEZ	exclusive economic zone
EFH	essential fish habitat
ESA	federal Endangered Species Act
ESU	evolutionarily significant unit
HSP	habitat suitability probability
NOAA Fisheries	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service
PC	present in coastal waters
PN	present in nearshore
PO	present offshore only
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

Appendix III Fish Habitat Types and Distribution

III.1 Introduction

This appendix provides information on fish distribution and habitat types throughout California. The information is intended to give Caltrans staff a broad of perspective of the diversity of fish and fish habitat that may be encountered on projects throughout the state. However, the information will need to be supplemented for specific project locations through querying the CalFish database, reviewing basin-specific publications, and contacting local California Department of Fish and Wildlife, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries), U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), and other fisheries biologists familiar with the aquatic habitats in the project location.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- Location – Describes the 10 major watersheds in California and the 12 Caltrans districts.
- Species Occurrence – Reviews the status, habitats, and hearing capabilities of fish commonly found in California. It also reviews unique populations of fish found in isolated environments.
- Habitat – Three aquatic environments are discussed in detail: (1) aquatic environments occurring within areas of tidal influence, including marine nearshore areas and estuaries; (2) rivers and streams outside the influence of marine tidal habitats; and (3) lakes and isolated ponds.

III.2 Location

The State of California Department of Natural Resources identifies 10 major watersheds throughout the state (Figure III-1). The major coastal watersheds include the North Coast, San Francisco Bay, Central Coast, and South Coast. Inland watersheds include the North Lahontan, Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, Tulare Lake, South Lahontan, and Colorado River. Within these major watersheds, a variety of habitats occur (see Section III-4).

Figure III-1 shows the major watersheds that occur in California. Figure III-2 shows the 12 Caltrans districts. Table III-1 shows the relationship of the major watershed areas identified in Figure III-1 to the 12 Caltrans districts shown in Figure III-2.

Figure III-1. Major California Watersheds

Figure III-2. Caltrans Districts

Table III-1. Relationship of California Watershed Regions to Caltrans Districts

Watershed Region	Caltrans District
North Coast	1, 2, 4, and a small portion of 3
North Lahontan	2, 3, 9, and 10
Sacramento River	1, 2, 3, 4, and 10
San Francisco Bay	4 and a small portion of 1
Central Coast	5, 7, and a small portion of 4 and 6
San Joaquin River	3, 4, 6, 10, and a small portion of 5
Tulare Lake	6 and a small portion of 5
South Coast	7, 8, 11, 12, and a small portion of 5 and 6
South Lahontan	6, 7, 8, and 9
Colorado River	8 and 11

III.2.1 North Coast

The North Coast region includes all streams in California draining to the Pacific Ocean north of San Francisco Bay. North Coast streams pass through or drain from the California coastal mountains. These streams are typically relatively high-gradient steams with small estuaries. Watersheds are often rugged, with steep valley sides. Valleys are often heavily forested, especially in the upper elevations. All North Coast watersheds have been affected by various human actions. The North Coast Regional Water Control Board summarizes information on conditions and management actions along the North Coast. The North Coast Watershed Assessment Program web site (available at http://coastalwatersheds.ca.gov/Watersheds/tabid/55/Northcoast/tabid/56/Default.aspx) links to additional aquatic habitat and species information for North Coast streams.

III.2.1.1 Major River Systems

North Coast major river systems include the following:

- Winchuck River,
- Smith River,
- Klamath River,
- Trinity River,
- Redwood Creek,
- Mad River,
- Eel River,
- Mattole River,
- Ten Mile River,
- Pudding Creek,
- Gualala River, and
- Russian River.

III.2.1.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 1 and 2 and District 4 to the San Francisco Bay are in the North Coast watershed (Figure III-2). A small portion of Caltrans District 3 in Glenn County is also within the North Coast watershed.

III.2.1.3 Key Fish Species

Along the North Coast, fish species that are most likely to be of concern to pile driving activities are coho and Chinook salmon and steelhead trout. NOAA Fisheries separates populations of salmon and steelhead into evolutionarily significant units (ESUs) or distinct population segments (DPSs) based on life history characteristics, genetic distinctness, and location—among other factors. Several salmon ESUs and steelhead DPSs are found in the North Coast region. The Southern Oregon/Northern California coho, California Coastal Chinook, Central California Coast steelhead, and Northern California steelhead populations are all found in the North Coast region and are listed as Threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA). Central California Coast coho are listed as Endangered under the ESA and are present in streams of the North Coast. Southern Oregon/Northern California Coastal Chinook, Upper Klamath Chinook, and Klamath Mountains Province steelhead also inhabit the North Coast region but are not listed under the ESA or California Endangered Species Act (CESA). Salmon and steelhead are anadromous, spawning in freshwater and migrating to the ocean to grow and mature. Salmon and steelhead trout may be present in North Coast streams and rivers year-round. Other protected fish species associated with habitats in North Coast streams and estuaries are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4).

III.2.2 San Francisco Bay

The San Francisco Bay region consists of the San Francisco Bay and tributaries, the Sacramento/San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), and coastal streams southward to Pescadero Creek (inclusive). The San Francisco Bay is the largest estuary on the west coast. It is highly modified by extensive urbanization, diking and drainage of wetlands, and diversion of significant inflow from the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. Despite extensive environmental degradation, the San Francisco Bay and Delta provide important habitat for protected estuarine resident species (such as the delta smelt) and protected anadromous species (such as Chinook salmon and steelhead trout). The California Bay-Delta Authority administers many activities in the San Francisco Bay region related to fish and their habitats, and may be contacted for more information specific to this area.

III.2.2.1 Major Tributaries

Major tributaries that provide the San Francisco Bay with freshwater input include the following:

- Sacramento River, and
- San Joaquin River.

However, these rivers are not within the San Francisco Bay watershed. Only coastal streams and streams that directly discharge to the Bay are considered to be within the San Francisco Bay watershed. Tributaries in the San Francisco Bay watershed that occur within the coverage area include the following:

- Lagunitas Creek,
- Petaluma River,
- Napa River, and
- Guadalupe River.

III.2.2.2 Caltrans Districts

A portion of Caltrans District 4 and a small portion of District 1 in Lake County are within the San Francisco Bay watershed (Figure III-2).

III.2.2.3 Key Fish Species

Typical fish species in the San Francisco Bay and Delta areas are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4). Protections granted to a number of fish species potentially can affect the planning and design processes of projects that involve pile driving activities in the San Francisco Bay watershed. Estuarine fish of concern include Delta smelt and longfin smelt. Delta smelt (federally listed as Threatened and state-listed as Endangered) occupy fresh and brackish bay, channel, and marsh habitats in the Delta, Suisun Bay, and Napa River. Longfin smelt are anadromous and occur in bay, estuary, and nearshore coastal environments from San Francisco Bay north to Prince William Sound, Alaska. Anadromous salmonids federally listed as Threatened in the region include California Central Valley steelhead, Sacramento River winter-run Chinook, and Central Valley spring-run Chinook. Central California Coast coho are federally listed as Endangered in the region. Anadromous salmonids migrate through the Bay and Delta during both their out-migration to the ocean, and during their upstream migration to spawn in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River systems and tributaries of the Bay. The Delta is designated as critical habitat for steelhead.

Southern DPS green sturgeon (a species federally listed as Threatened) are also considered to be present year-round in San Francisco Bay and the Delta, which encompasses the designated critical habitat for the species.

III.2.3 Sacramento River

The Sacramento River is located in the northern portion of the California Central Valley. The mainstem of the Sacramento River is of relatively low gradient and is fed by a number of higher gradient tributaries. Most river flow originates as snowmelt from Mt. Shasta and a number of streams draining the California Cascades. The California Coastal Mountains block much of the incoming moisture from the Pacific Ocean. As a result, the environment of the Central Valley is arid.

The Sacramento River system has been heavily modified by human actions related to water supply, agriculture, forestry, and urbanization. Agriculture is the dominant activity across the wide valley floor. Water diversions for irrigation occur throughout the mainstem and tributaries. Most tributaries are dammed to provide electricity, flood control, and water supply.

III.2.3.1 Major Tributaries

Major tributaries in the Sacramento River watershed include the following:

- Sacramento River,
- Lake Shasta,
- Cow Creek,
- Bear Creek,
- Battle Creek,
- Mill Creek,
- Deer Creek,
- Big Chico Creek,
- Feather River,
- Yuba River,
- American River, and
- Pit River.

III.2.3.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 1, 2, 3, 4, and 10 are within the Sacramento River watershed (Figure III-2).

III.2.3.3 Key Fish Species

Fish species likely to be encountered in the Sacramento River system are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4). The status and restoration of salmon are major concerns in the Sacramento River system. Programs to restore and protect the populations of Endangered Sacramento River winter-run Chinook, Threatened Central Valley spring-run Chinook, and Threatened California Central Valley steelhead are prominent in this region. Central Valley fall-run and late-fall-run Chinook also are present in the region; they are a federal candidate for listing under the ESA and late-fall-run

Chinook salmon is a State Species of Special Concern. Although Chinook are anadromous and migratory, certain life stages occur in the Sacramento River year-round.

Green sturgeon (a species federally listed as Threatened) also are considered to be present year-round in the Sacramento River system, and the river and several tributaries (e.g., lower Feather River) are part of the designated critical habitat for the species.

III.2.4 San Joaquin River

The San Joaquin River drains the smaller, southern portion of the Central Valley. It originates high on the western slopes of the Sierra Nevada in Kings Canyon National Park near Mount Goddard and is the second largest river drainage in the state (only the Sacramento River is larger). The San Joaquin River's tributaries include the Stanislaus River, Tuolumne River, Merced River, Calaveras River, and Mokelumne River. These tributary rivers are perhaps the most heavily dammed and diverted rivers in the world. The Cosumnes River is the only major river on the western slope of the Sierra Nevada that is not dammed. The San Joaquin River flows north to the Sacramento/San Joaquin River Delta, where it joins with the Sacramento River before entering San Francisco Bay.

III.2.4.1 Major Tributaries

Major tributaries in the San Joaquin River system include the following:

- San Joaquin River,
- Calaveras River,
- Stanislaus River,
- Tuolumne River,
- Merced River,
- Cosumnes River, and
- Mokelumne River.

III.2.4.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 3, 4, 6, and 10 and a small portion of District 5 in San Benito County are within the San Joaquin River region (Figure III-2).

III.2.4.3 Key Fish Species

Fish species likely to be encountered in the San Joaquin River system are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4). Fall-run Chinook salmon, steelhead trout, striped bass, American shad, and white sturgeon are anadromous species found in the system. Spring-run Chinook salmon were extirpated with completion of Friant Dam in 1946, but a long-term recovery effort (San Joaquin River Restoration Program) is currently under way to restore flows and a self-sustaining Chinook salmon population in the river between Friant Dam and the Merced River.

Steelhead/rainbow trout in the San Joaquin River are of the Central Valley steelhead DPS and are of concern because they are federally listed as Threatened under the ESA. Critical habitat has been designated for this species in all accessible reaches and tributaries of the river. Most Central Valley steelhead rear in freshwater for 2 years before migrating to the ocean, and rainbow trout reside in freshwater their entire lives. Therefore, steelhead/rainbow trout occur in the San Joaquin system year-round, with peak adult migration occurring in December, spawning from December to April, and peak out-migrations occurring through May.

Central Valley fall-run Chinook also are found in the San Joaquin River watershed; the species is a candidate for federal listing under the ESA..

III.2.5 Central Coast

The Central Coast region encompasses coastal California south of the Pescadero Creek Lagoon in San Mateo County to the Carpenteria salt marsh in Santa Barbara County. This region's environment consists of areas of coniferous/redwood forests of the Big Sur region in Monterey County and the semi-arid to arid regions of San Luis Obispo, San Benito, Santa Cruz, and Santa Barbara Counties.

III.2.5.1 Major River Systems

Major river systems in the Central Coast watershed include the following:

- Salinas River,
- Big Sur River,
- Little Sur River,
- Carmel River,
- Estrella River,
- Pajaro River,
- Santa Maria River, and
- Santa Ynez River.

III.2.5.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 5 and 7, and small portions of Districts 4 and 6 are within the Central Coast region (Figure III-2).

III.2.5.3 Key Fish Species

Activities in tidal areas of the Central Coast have the potential to affect the federally Endangered tidewater goby. This species occurs in isolated populations throughout coastal California in bays, estuaries, lagoons, and coastal wetland habitat that contain low salinities. The designated critical habitat for the species has recently been revised and now comprises 65 locations (critical habitat units) consisting of coastal lagoons and estuaries throughout the species' range in California..

The Central Coast also supports protected species of salmon. Federally Endangered Central California Coast coho salmon occur in the San Lorenzo River, and three populations of federally listed steelhead (Central California Coast, South Central California Coast, and Southern California DPSs) occur in the region. Contact NOAA Fisheries for details on species occurrence and designated critical habitat.

Other protected fish species present within the Central Coast region are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4).

III.2.6 South Coast

In general, streams and rivers of the South Coast region originate in the mountains of the four Southern California National Forests (Los Padres, Angeles, San Bernardino, and Cleveland), drain into the valleys, and meet the sandy beaches of the southern coastline. The aquatic and terrestrial environment of the South Coast has been substantially impacted by human development. Large rivers have been channelized, dammed, and dewatered. Perennial tributaries exist in higher elevations, but large rivers are generally disconnected to the ocean due to water going subsurface in some reaches. Most rivers and streams are connected only during winters of high rainfall and during El Niño events that occur every 3 to 4 years.

South Coastal wetlands, lagoons, salt marshes, and estuaries are known to support at least 60 species of fish (California Wetland Recovery Project 2001) and are extremely important elements of South Coast fish habitat. Most of the South Coast wetland and lagoon habitats have been destroyed or altered by human activities. Only 30 percent of wetland/lagoon habitats remain in southern California (Southern California Coastal Wetland Inventory 1998).

III.2.6.1 Major River Systems and Associated Lagoons

Major river systems and associated lagoons in the South Coast watershed include the following:

- Ventura River,
- Santa Clara River,
- Santa Ana River,
- San Gabriel River,
- Malibu Creek,
- Calleguas Creek/Mugu Lagoon, and
- San Mateo Creek.

III.2.6.2 Caltrans Districts

All of Caltrans District 12 and portions of Caltrans Districts 7, 8, and 11 are within the South Coast region (Figure III-2). Small portions of Caltrans District 5 in Santa Barbara County and District 6 in Kern County are also within the South Coast watershed.

III.2.6.3 Key Fish Species

Some typical fish species found in Southern California rivers and estuaries are listed in Table III-2 (at the end of this section) (also see Section III.4). Species with special protections in this region include Southern California steelhead/rainbow trout, unarmoured three-spine stickleback, and tidewater goby.

III.2.7 North Lahontan

The eastern California region of North Lahontan consists of 6,122 square miles of portions of Modoc, Lasssen, Sierra, Nevada, Placer, El Dorado, Alpine, Tuolumne, and Mono Counties. The northern part of this region is primarily arid high desert with relatively flat valleys. The central and southern portions of this region are comprised of the eastern slopes of the Sierra Nevada and include the California portion of the Lake Tahoe Basin. The major rivers in the region drain east into Nevada.

III.2.7.1 Major River Systems and Lakes

Major river systems and lakes in the North Lahontan region include the following:

- Lake Tahoe,
- Truckee River,
- Carson River, and
- Walker River.

III.2.7.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 2, 3, 9, and 10 are within the North Lahontan region (Figure III-2).

III.2.7.3 Key Fish Species

Lake trout, rainbow trout, brown trout, brook trout, and Kokanee are common salmonid species found in Lake Tahoe. A number of warmwater fish species have been illegally introduced to Lake Tahoe, including largemouth and smallmouth bass, crappie, and sunfish. While these fish typically are associated with warmwater environments, their populations are able to grow and spread within the Tahoe Basin. Only six native species remain in the lake: mountain whitefish, Lahontan redside shiner, Lahontan speckled dace, tui chub, Tahoe sucker, and Paiute sculpin. The Lahontan cutthroat is a native of the Truckee, Walker, and Carson drainages; is federally listed as Threatened; and is now extinct in Lake Tahoe. The federally Threatened Paiute cutthroat trout is located in the Carson River above Llewellyn Falls.

III.2.8 South Lahontan

The South Lahontan region includes Mono Lake, Owens Valley, Panamint Valley, Death Valley, and the Amargosa River Valley. The Mojave Desert occupies the southern half of the region. The South Lahontan region has fewer permanent rivers and streams due to the dryer hydrology of the east side of the Sierra Nevada. The largest river in this region is the Owens River, which flows from north to south over the length of the Owens Valley.

III.2.8.1 Major River Systems and Lakes

Major river systems and lakes in the South Lahontan region include the following:

- Owens River,
- Mono Lake,
- Amargosa River, and
- Mojave River.

III.2.8.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 6, 7, 8, and 9 are within the South Lahontan region (Figure III-2).

III.2.8.3 Key Fish Species

The Owens sucker, Owens pupfish, Owens tui chub, and Owens speckled dace are all native to the Owens River and are restricted to habitats in this system. The Owens tui chub and Owens pupfish are listed under both the CESA and ESA. Critical habitat has been designated for these species in the Owens River. The Owens sucker and speckled dace are both Species of Special Concern in California. The Mohave tui chub (federally and state-listed as Endangered) occurs in the region at four sites: Soda Springs, DFG's Camp Cady Wildlife Area, China Lake Naval Air Weapons Center, and the Barstow Desert Information Center. The Amargosa speckled dace is restricted to the Amargosa River and is a State Species of Special Concern. The Arroyo chub has been found in the Mojave system and is a State Species of Special Concern. Common non-native species in the region include largemouth bass, smallmouth bass, channel catfish, and bluegill.

III.2.9 Tulare Lake

The Tulare Lake watershed comprises the drainage area of the San Joaquin Valley south of the San Joaquin River. Tulare Lake is an intermittent lake in the Central Valley. At one time, the Kings, Kaweah, and Kern Rivers flowed into the lake; but their waters have been diverted for irrigation. In dry seasons, Tulare Lake is almost without water. The Tulare Lake watershed is essentially closed because surface water drains north into the San Joaquin River only in years of extreme rainfall. The major rivers in the region, the Kings, Kaweah, Tule, and Kern, begin in the Sierras and generally flow east to west into the San Joaquin Valley.

III.2.9.1 Major River Systems

As noted above, the major river systems in the Tulare Lake watershed include the following:

- Kaweah River,
- Tule River,
- Kern River, and
- Kings River.

III.2.9.2 Caltrans District

A portion of Caltrans District 6 and a small portion of District 5 (mainly in San Benito County) are within the Tulare Lake region (Figure III-2).

III.2.9.3 Key Fish Species

The Little Kern golden trout is found in the Tulare Lake region and is federally listed as Threatened. Critical habitat for Little Kern golden trout consists of the entire Little Kern River basin upstream from the barrier falls, 1 mile below the mouth of Trout Meadows Creek. Critical habitat for this species occurs within the Sequoia National Park and the Sequoia National Forest, in Tulare County. Other native species of concern in the region include the Kern brook lamprey, Kern River rainbow trout, and hardhead.

III.2.10 Colorado River

The Colorado River region covers approximately 20,000 square miles in the southeastern portion of California. It includes all of Imperial County and portions of San Bernardino, Riverside, and San Diego Counties. It is bound on the east by the Colorado River; on the south by the Republic of Mexico; on the west by the Laguna, San Jacinto, and San Bernardino Mountains; and on the north by the New York, Providence, Granite, Old Dad, Bristol, Rodman, and Ord Mountain Ranges.

III.2.10.1 Major Rivers and Lakes

Major rivers and lakes in the Colorado River region include the following:

- Colorado River, and
- Salton Sea.

III.2.10.2 Caltrans Districts

Portions of Caltrans Districts 8 and 11 are within the Colorado River region (Figure III-2).

III.2.10.3 Key Fish Species

The boneytail chub, Colorado pikeminnow, razorback sucker, and desert pupfish are all listed as Endangered under both the CESA and ESA in the Colorado River region. Critical habitat also has been designated for these species in the region.

III.3 Species Occurrence

This section reviews the status, habitats, and hearing capabilities of fish commonly found in California; it also reviews unique populations of fish found in isolated environments.

III.3.1 Fish of California

Table III-2 (at the end of this section) summarizes species that may be encountered in the coastal and Central Valley regions of California and includes information on life histories, hearing categories, habitat, and distribution by watershed[1]. Species are listed in order of the extent of protections granted to them.

III.3.2 Fish in Restricted Habitats

Many species or subspecies of fish are adapted to particular unique environments or are geographically restricted to particular drainages. Geographically restricted habitats are common in the arid and desert environments of the east (North Lahontan, South Lahontan, Tulare Lake, and Colorado River regions). These restricted environments often are degraded or lost due to human encroachment or natural causes;

[1] The following table is not a complete list of all fish that occur in California but a partial list intended only to aid the biologist in considering a wide range of species.

therefore, fish that depend on these environments tend to have special protections through the State and federal governments. Table III-3 (at the end of this section) lists protected fish species (in alphabetical order) found in restricted environments in California.

III.3.3 Essential Fish Habitat

Table III-4 (at the end of this section) summarizes the geographical regions and marine habitat for groundfish, coastal pelagic, and salmonid species protected under the Magnuson-Stevens Fisheries Conservation and Management Act. The areas in which these species are located may be more restrictive than areas designated as essential fish habitat (EFH) for the species complex to which they belong. Fish are listed in alphabetical order within the respective species complex.

Designated groundfish EFH is found along the entire California coastline. In the *Pacific Coast Groundfish EFH Final Environmental Impact Statement* authored by NOAA Fisheries[1] (2005), "groundfish EFH" is defined as all waters and substrates in depths less than or equal to 3,500 meters, including areas associated with seamounts in depths greater than 3,500 meters, to the upriver extent of saltwater intrusion. "Saltwater intrusion" is defined as areas where ocean salt levels are less than 0.5 parts per thousand during average annual low flow. Groundfish occurrence by species was estimated for Table III-4 by evaluating habitat suitability probability (HSP) maps prepared by the Pacific Fisheries Management Council as Appendix B, Part 4, to the *Pacific Coast Groundfish Fisheries Management Plan*[2] (2005). All areas in which the HSP is greater than zero for each EFH groundfish species fall within the designated EFH area.

The HSP maps were evaluated for each groundfish species. Species shown utilizing nearshore habitat along a significant portion of a watershed's coastline, sometimes including embayments, estuaries and river systems, for at least one life history stage were designated as present in nearshore (PN). These species can also utilize offshore habitat extensively or exclusively at some stage in their development. Species commonly present in or near coastal shelf waters according to the HSP maps and occasionally found in the nearshore of a watershed were designated as present in coastal waters (PC). Species that were not shown on the HSP maps to utilize nearshore habitat at any point during their life history in the watershed in question were designated as present offshore only (PO) if distributed in deeper waters parallel to the coastline.

Information regarding EFH for Pacific Coast salmonids and coastal pelagic species was obtained from their respective Fisheries Management Plans[3]. Salmon EFH is found in nearshore and tidal marine waters out to the limit of the exclusive economic zone (EEZ), offshore of California, north of Point Conception. In freshwater, salmon EFH is defined as all currently viable waters and most historically accessible habitat within designated hydrologic units. Species occurrence in marine or freshwater habitats is presented by watershed in Table III-4. EFH for coastal pelagic species in California is defined as all marine and estuarine waters along the shoreline to the limits of the EEZ and above the thermocline where sea surface temperatures fall between 10° and 26°C. This means that the northern limit varies seasonally while the southern limit is consistently set at the California-Mexico border.

---

[1] Available online at http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Groundfish-Halibut/Groundfish-Fishery-Management/NEPA-Documents/EFH-Final-EIS.cfm.

[2] Available online at http://www.pcouncil.org/groundfish/gffmp/gfa19.html.

[3] Available online at http://www.pcouncil.org/salmon/salfmp.html and http://www.pcouncil.org/cps/cpsfmp.html, respectively.

Table III-2. Protected Fish Species That May Be Encountered in Coastal and Central Valley Regions in California

Name	Life History	Perception of Sound	Habitat: Tidally Influenced/ Marine	Habitat: Rivers and Streams	Habitat: Lakes	Status by Region and District[a]: North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6 and 10)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Steelhead/rainbow trout (*O. mykiss*)	Anadromous and resident	Generalist	X	X	X	**CCC**-FT, CH	**CCV**-FT, CH	**CCV**-FT, CH	**CCC**-FT, CH	**CCC**-FT, CH	**SCCC**-FT, CH **SC**-FE, CH, SSC
Chinook salmon	Anadromous	Generalist	X	X	X	**CC**-FT, CH, EFH	**SRW**-FE,CH, EFH, SE **CVS**-FT,CH, EFH, ST **CVFLF**-SC, EFH, SSC	**CVFLF**-SC, SSC, EFH			
Coho salmon	Anadromous	Generalist	X	X	X	**SONCC**-FT, CH, EFH, ST **CCC**-FE, CH, EFH, SE			**CCC**-FE, CH, EFH, SE	**CCC**-FE, CH, EFH, SE	

Name	Life History	Perception of Sound	Habitat			Status by Region and District[a]					
			Tidally Influenced / Marine	Rivers and Streams	Lakes	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6 and 10)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Tidewater goby	Estuarine	Generalist	X			FE, CH SSC			FE, CH, SSC	FE, CH, SSC	FE, CH, SSC
Delta smelt	Estuarine	Generalist	X	X			FT, CH, SE	FT, CH SE	FT, CH, SE		
Longfin smelt	Estuarine and marine	Generalist	X			CS, ST	CS, ST	CS, ST	CS, ST		
Green sturgeon	Anadromous		X	X		FT, SSC, CH	FT, SSC, CH	FT, CH SSC	FT, CH, SSC	FT, CH, SSC	
California roach (includes all sub-species)	Freshwater			X	X	SSC	SSC	SSC	SCC	SSC	

Table III-2. (continued)

Name	Life History	Perception of Sound	Habitat			Status by Region and District[a]					
			Tidally Influenced/ Marine	Rivers and Streams	Lakes	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6 and 10)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Hardhead	Freshwater			X		SSC	SSC	SSC	SSC		
Pacific eulachon	Anadromous	Specialist	X	X		FT, CH, SSC			FT, SSC	FT, SSC	
Sacramento splittail	Anadromous	Generalist	X	X			SSC	SSC	SSC		
Arroyo chub	Freshwater									SSC	SSC
River lamprey	Anadromous		X	X		SSC			SSC		
Chum salmon	Anadromous	Generalist	X	X		SSC					
Coastal cutthroat trout	Anadromous and resident	Generalist	X	X		SSC					

Name	Life History	Perception of Sound	Habitat			Status by Region and District[a]					
			Tidally Influenced / Marine	Rivers and Streams	Lakes	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6 and 10)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)

[a] SONCC=Southern Oregon/Northern California Coast distinct population segment (DPS)/evolutionarily significant unit (ESU); CCC=Central California Coast DPS; CCV=California Central Valley DPS; SCCC-South Central California Coast DPS; SC=Southern California DPS; CC=California Coastal ESU; SRW=Sacramento River winter-run ESU; CVS=Central Valley spring-run ESU; CVFLF=Central Valley fall-run and late-fall-run.

CH =Species for which critical habitat.

EFH=Species for which essential fish.

FE =Federally Endangered species.

FT =Federally Threatened species.

FC = Federal candidate species.

FP = Federally proposed for listing.

FPD = Federally proposed for delisting.

SE= State Endangered species.

SSC=State Species of Special Concern.

ST =State Threatened species.

SC = State candidate species.

SP = State proposed for listing.

Table III-3. Fish Species Found in Restricted Environments in California

Name	River System	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	North Lahontan (2, 3, 9, and 10)	South Lahontan (6, 7, 8, and 9)	Tulare Lake (5 and 6)	Colorado River (8 and 11)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Amargosa pupfish	Amargosa River					SSC			
Amargosa speckled dace	Amargosa River					SSC			
Bigeye marbled sculpin	Pit River		SSC						
Blue chub	Klamath River	SSC							
Bonytail chub	Colorado River							FE, CH, SE	
Clear Lake hitch	Sacramento/Clear Lake and tributaries		SC, SSC						
Colorado pikeminnow	Colorado River							FE, CH, SE	
Cottonball marsh pupfish	Amargosa River/ Death Valley					ST			
Cowhead Lake tui chub	Cowhead Lake Slough				SSC				
Desert pupfish	Lower Colorado River, Salton Sea							FE, CH, SE	
Eagle Lake rainbow trout	Eagle Lake				SSC				
Eagle Lake tui chub	Eagle Lake				SSC				
Goose Lake lamprey	Goose Lake/ Lassen Creek		SSC						
Goose Lake redband trout	Goose Lake and tributaries		SSC						

Table III-3. (continued)

Name	River System	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	North Lahontan (2, 3, 9, and 10)	South Lahontan (6, 7, 8, and 9)	Tulare Lake (5 and 6)	Colorado River (8 and 11)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Goose Lake sucker	Goose Lake and tributaries		SSC						
Goose Lake tui chub	Goose Lake and tributaries		SSC						
Kern Brook Lamprey	Merced, Kaweah, Kings and San Joaquin Rivers			SCC			SCC		
Kern River Rainbow Trout	Kern River						SCC		
Klamath largescale sucker	Klamath River	SSC							
Klamath River lamprey	Klamath River/ Upper Klamath Lake	SSC							
Little Kern golden trout	Kern River (Tulare County)						FT, CH		
Lahontan cutthroat trout	Lakes and streams of northeastern California				FT				
Lahontan Lake tui chub	Lake Tahoe				SCC				
Lost River sucker	Klamath reservoirs, Lost River	FE, SE							
McCloud River red-band trout	McCloud River		SSC						
Modoc sucker	Pit River (Modoc and Lassen Counties)		FPD, FE, CH, SE						
Mojave tui chub	Mojave River					FE, SE			

Table III-3. (continued)

Name	River System	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	North Lahontan (2, 3, 9, and 10)	South Lahontan (6, 7, 8, and 9)	Tulare Lake (5 and 6)	Colorado River (8 and 11)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Mountain sucker	Lahontan Drainage, North Fork Feather, Truckee, Walker, and Carson Rivers		SCC		SCC				
Owens pupfish	Spring ponds, wetlands in Owens Valley					FE, SE			
Owens speckled dace	Owens Valley					SCC			
Owens sucker	Owens River, June Lake, Santa Clara River, Piru Creek and Reservoir					SCC			SCC
Owens tui chub	Owens River					FE, CH, SE			
Piute cutthroat trout	Carson River above Llewellyn Falls				FT				
Razorback sucker	Colorado River, Senator Wash Reservoir (Imperial County)							FE, CH, SE	
Reticulated sculpin	Rogue River	SSC							
Rough sculpin	Pit River		ST						
Russian River tule perch	Russian River	SSC							
Sacramento perch	Clear Lake and local reservoirs		SSC						
Salt Creek pupfish	Salt Creek					SSC			

Table III-3. (continued)

Name	River System	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	North Lahontan (2, 3, 9, and 10)	South Lahontan (6, 7, 8, and 9)	Tulare Lake (5 and 6)	Colorado River (8 and 11)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)
Santa Ana speckled dace	Santa Ana and San Gabriel Rivers								SSC
Santa Ana sucker	Los Angeles, San Gabriel, and Santa Ana Rivers								FT, CH, SCC
Saratoga Springs pupfish	Saratoga Springs					SSC			
Shortnose sucker	Klamath, Lost River	FE, SE							
Shay Creek threespine stickleback	Baldwin Lake, Shay Creek, Sugarloaf Meadows								SSC
Shoshone pupfish	Shoshone Spring					SSC			
Unarmored threespine stickleback	Streams of the South Coast								FE, SE
Volcano Creek golden trout	Golden trout Creek, South Fork Kern River, Cottonwood Lakes						SSC		
Note: For an explanation of status definitions, please refer to footnote "a" in Table III-2.									

Table III-4. Presence of Species Protected under Essential Fish Habitat in California Coastal Waters

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Pacific Coast Groundfish[a]							
Flatfishes							
Arrowtooth flounder	From Oregon south to Santa Barbara	PN	PN	PN			
Butter sole	From Oregon south to Ventura	PN	PN	PN			
Curlfin sole	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Dover sole	All of California	PN	PN	PC	PC		
English sole	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Flathead sole	From Oregon south to Monterey Bay	PN	PN				
Pacific sanddab	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Petrale sole	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Rex sole	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Rock sole	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Sand sole	From Oregon south to Redondo Beach	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Starry flounder	From Oregon south to Avila Beach	PN	PN	PN	PN		

Table III-4. (continued)

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Rockfishes							
Nearshore Rockfish Complex							
Black rockfish	From Oregon south to Huntington Beach	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Black-and-Yellow Rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Blue rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Brown rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Calico rockfish	From San Francisco south to Mexico		PN	PN	PN		
China rockfish	From Oregon south to Redondo Beach	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Copper rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Gopher rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Grass rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Kelp rockfish	From Albion, California to Mexico	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Olive rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Quillback rockfish	From Oregon south to the northern Channel Islands	PN	PN	PN	PN		
California scorpionfish	From Monterey Bay south to Mexico		PC	PN	PN		
Treefish	From San Francisco south to Mexico		PN	PN	PN		

Table III-4. (continued)

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Shelf Rockfish Complex							
Bocaccio	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Bronzespotted rockfish	From Eureka, California south to Mexico			PO	PO		
Canary rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Chilipepper	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Cowcod	All of California	PC	PC	PC	PC		
Flag rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PC		
Greenblotched rockfish	From Punta Delgada, California to Mexico	PO	PO	PC	PO		
Greenspotted rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Greenstriped rockfish	All of California	PC	PC	PC	PC		
Honeycomb rockfish	From Point Pinos, Monterey County, California to Mexico			PC	PC		
Mexican rockfish	From Point Sur, California to Mexico			PC	PC		
Pink rockfish	All of California	PC	PO	PC	PO		
Redstripe rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Rosethorn rockfish	All of California	PC	PO	PC	PC		
Rosy rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Shortbelly rockfish	All of California	PC	PC	PC	PC		
Silvergray rockfish	From Oregon south to Santa Barbara Island	PO					

Table III-4. (continued)

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Shelf Rockfish Complex (continued)							
Speckled rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Squarespot rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Starry rockfish	From San Francisco south to Mexico		PC	PN	PC		
Stripetail rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Tiger rockfish	From Oregon south to Tanner and Cortes Banks	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Vermilion rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Widow rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Yelloweye rockfish	All of California	PN	PC	PN	PC		
Yellowtail rockfish	From Oregon south to La Jolla	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Slope Rockfish Complex							
Aurora rockfish	All of California	PC	PO	PC	PC		
Bank rockfish	All of California	PC	PC	PC	PC		
Blackgill rockfish	All of California	PC	PO	PC	PO		
Darkblotched rockfish	From Oregon south to Santa Catalina Island	PC	PC	PC	PC		
Pacific ocean perch	From Oregon south to La Jolla	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Redbanded rockfish	From Oregon south to San Diego	PC	PO	PC	PO		

Table III-4. (continued)

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Slope Rockfish Complex (continued)							
Rougheye rockfish	From Oregon south to San Diego	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Sharpchin rockfish	From Oregon south to San Clemente Island	PN	PC	PC	PC		
Shortraker rockfish	From Oregon south to Point Conception	PC	PO	PC			
Splitnose rockfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Yellowmouth rockfish	From Oregon south to Point Arena	PO					
Thornyheads							
Longspine thornyhead	All of California	PO	PO	PO	PO		
Shortspine thornyhead	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PC		
Roundfish							
Lingcod	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Cabezon	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Kelp greenling	From Oregon south to La Jolla	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Pacific cod	From Oregon south to Santa Monica	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Pacific hake (pacific whiting)	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Pacific flatnose (finescale codling)	All of California	PO	PO	PO	PO		

Table III-4. (continued)

Name	Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)	Sacramento River (1, 2, 3, 4, and 10)
Roundfish (continued)							
Pacific grenadier	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Sablefish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Sharks, Skates, and Chimaeras							
Leopard shark	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Soupfin shark	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Spiny dogfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Big skate	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
California skate	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Longnose skate	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Spotted ratfish	All of California	PN	PN	PN	PN		
Pacific Salmon[b]							
Pacific salmon essential fish habitat		Marine, freshwater	Marine, freshwater	Marine, freshwater		Freshwater	Freshwater
Chinook salmon		Marine, freshwater	Marine, freshwater	Marine	Marine	Freshwater	Freshwater
Coho salmon		Marine, freshwater	Marine, freshwater	Marine, freshwater			

Table III-4. (continued)

Name		Range in California Coastal Waters	North Coast (1, 2, 3, and 4)	San Francisco Bay (1 and 4)	Central Coast (4, 5, 6, and 7)	South Coast (5, 6, 7, 8, 11, and 12)	San Joaquin River (3, 4, 5, 6, and 10)
Coastal Pelagic Species[c]							
Northern anchovy	All of California (seasonally following waters warmer than 10ºC)	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore		
Pacific sardine	All of California (seasonally following waters warmer than 10ºC)	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore		
Pacific (chub) mackerel	All of California (seasonally following waters warmer than 10ºC)	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore		
Jack mackerel	All of California (seasonally following waters warmer than 10ºC)	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore	Estuarine, nearshore		
Market squid	All of California (probably seasonally following waters warmer than 10ºC)	Rarely found in estuaries, bays or near river mouths	Rarely found in estuaries, bays or near river mouths	Rarely found in estuaries, bays or near river mouths	Rarely found in estuaries, bays or near river mouths		

PN = Present in nearshore PC = Present in coastal waters PO = Present offshore only

[a] Information obtained from Coastal Groundfish Fisheries Management Plan, Appendices B4 and I and from the California Department of Fish and Wildlife website, http://www.dfg.ca.gov/marine/groundfish_fedlist.asp.

[b] Information obtained from Pacific Coast Salmon Fisheries Management Plan, Amendment 14, Appendix A.

[c] Information obtained from Coastal Pelagic Fisheries Management Plan, Appendix D.

III.4 Habitat

Typical aquatic habitat types in which Caltrans may conduct pile driving projects are divided into three categories: (1) aquatic areas occurring within areas of tidal influence, including marine nearshore areas and estuaries; (2) rivers and streams outside the influence of marine tidal habitats; and (3) lakes and isolated ponds. The boundary between tidally influenced areas and lower portions of streams and rivers is not rigid but is generally evident from the types of conditions found in these areas. Lakes may be man made (reservoirs) or natural, and may or may not be connected to large riverine systems.

III.4.1 Estuarine Areas under Tidal Influence

Estuarine areas under tidal influence include tidal flats, lagoons, vegetated marshes, wetlands, sloughs, and lower river-reaches.

Estuaries are places where freshwater streams and rivers meet the marine environment; they may be highly influenced by tides. During the outgoing tide, lagoons may be drained, mud flats may be exposed, flow may be reversed in sloughs, and the extent of saltwater in lower river systems recedes. Incoming tides may send ocean waters across tidal flats, fill lagoons, and extend saltwater some distance upstream of lower river reaches.

Tidally influenced areas provide important habitat for a number of fish species. Some species occur in brackish estuarine waters throughout their lives; others are dependent on estuaries only for reproduction, migration, or feeding. Anadromous species such as salmon, sturgeon, and lamprey also use estuaries to acclimate before entering the ocean or freshwater.

III.4.1.1 Key Habitats in Tidally Influenced Environments

Key habitats in tidally influenced environments of California include lower river reaches, sloughs, vegetated marsh wetlands, tidal flats, and lagoons. These key habitats are discussed briefly in this section.

Lower River Reaches

Tidal zones of rivers are unique environments due to the daily fluctuation of flow and mixing of saltwater and freshwater.

Tidally influenced riverine habitats are typically low-gradient, low-velocity areas with brackish water created from tidal influx (Figure III-3). Substrates usually consist of fine-grained mud and sand. River reaches influenced by tides can comprise a complex of main and secondary channels with associated sloughs and tidally inundated wetlands.

Estuarine river reaches are where adult and juvenile anadromous fish make their transitions to and from freshwater and saltwater life history stages.

III.4.1.2 Representative Fish Species in Tidally Influenced Habitats

Fish communities in tidal areas include a mix of marine, estuarine, and anadromous freshwater species. Species like starry flounder and herring move in and out of estuarine areas to feed or reproduce. Other species, such as tidewater gobies or Delta smelt, are residents within tidal habitats. Salmon, sturgeon, and other anadromous species move between freshwater and marine areas. For anadromous species, estuaries are transitional environments that are used during adult and juvenile migrations. Table III-2 lists common species likely to be encountered in different habitat types, including tidally influenced and marine areas (also see Section III.4).

Figure III-3. Tidally Influenced Riverine Habitat – Sacramento River at Rio Vista

Sloughs

Sloughs are tidally flushed channels typical of estuarine delta areas (Figure III-4). Sloughs are often, although not necessarily, connected to the river channel. They have little or no gradient, and flow is controlled significantly by tidal flow. Flow direction in sloughs often reverses with the direction of tides. Consequently, water velocities can be near zero during slack tide and then can be pronounced during ebb and flood tides. Substrates in sloughs usually consist of mud and silt.

Figure III-4. Tidal Slough – Watsonville Slough

Vegetated Marsh

Vegetated marshes are typical of estuarine areas on the north coast. Marshes include both emergent and submerged vegetation (Figure III-5). Eelgrass beds occur in deeper water and provide important habitat for a variety of fish species. The invasive grass *Spartina* also occurs in vegetated tidal marshes along the North Coast.

Figure III-5. Vegetated Wetland/Marsh – Fish Slough near Bishop, California

Tidal Flats

Tidal flats are very low-gradient mud and sand banks exposed by tidal fluctuations (Figure III-6). They create important habitat for many fishes, including shiner perch, surf smelt, and eulachon.

Figure III-6. Tidal Flats – San Felipe, Baja California

Lagoons

Lagoons are estuarine habitats typical of Southern California. Lagoons in Southern California are located at the lower end of stream confluences with the Pacific Ocean (Figure III-7). Many Southern California lagoons are disconnected from the stream and the ocean during much of the year. A sand berm is often built between the lagoon and the ocean by deposited sediments. Stream reconnection may occur only after several days of heavy rainfall due to an increase in the connected stream's water quantity, groundwater recharge, and water velocity. The stream's water velocity and quantity then will allow the sand berm to breach, connecting the stream, lagoon, and the marine nearshore. Extreme high tides may occasionally overtop the sand berm that keeps the outlet closed and recharge the lagoon with fresh saltwater. Southern California lagoons tend to have extremely high salinities and temperatures, and extremely poor water quality due to pollution and stagnant water. Some species that may be found in Southern California lagoons are included in Table III-2 (also see Section III.4). Other species found in these environments include topsmelt, California killifish, mosquitofish, and arrow gobies.

Figure III-7. Lagoon – Ventura River Lagoon

III.4.2 Rivers and Streams

Above areas influenced by tides, are large mainstem river reaches, primary tributaries, and headwater streams. In rivers and streams, native fish communities are primarily anadromous and resident salmonids, suckers, lamprey, and various minnow and sculpin species.

III.4.2.1 Key Riverine Habitats

Main River Channels

Large mainstem rivers, such as the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, represent distinct habitats. In their natural condition, these main rivers also would contain secondary channels, sloughs, and wetlands. In most cases, however, large rivers in California have been diked and channelized to allow development on adjacent floodplains. As a result, most large rivers are characterized by a single large channel (Figure III-8). In upper watershed areas, the main channel may consist of rapids and pools; however, lower sections are generally simpler and consist of long stretches of relatively flat, deep water.

Figure III-8. Main River Habitat – Sacramento River at Knights Landing

Floodplains

Floodplains are the areas adjacent to a stream or river channel that are seasonally inundated by floods (Figure III-9). There is often a gradation of habitats—from the permanently wetted channel, to secondary channels that flow during high-flow periods, to wetlands and ponds that are inundated only during floods. Floodplains provide important habitat for wildlife and fish. In the Sacramento River, for example, the Yolo Bypass and intact floodplains in the Cosumnes River provide important habitat for juvenile Chinook salmon and spawning habitat for splittail and other native fish species. Floodplain habitats in California have been reduced by channelization and diking of stream banks.

Figure III-9. Floodplain of the Sacramento River

Tributaries (Riffles and Pools)

Tributary streams of higher elevations drain smaller sub-watersheds and feed main river channels. These tributary streams contain rapid and riffle, and pool habitat. Rapids and riffles are characterized by surface turbulence and white water, reflecting relatively shallow water over underlying boulders or cobble (Figure III-10). In large rivers, these can be dramatic rapids formed by boulders and bedrock; in smaller streams, they are often riffles flowing over small cobble. Riffles are primary spawning areas for salmon and steelhead as well as resident trout. Coho often spawn in riffles in smaller tributaries such as those entering the rivers along the North Coast. Steelhead are the most athletic salmonid and often spawn in small, higher gradient tributaries. Larger Chinook, especially fall Chinook, use larger cobble riffles and rapids found in large rivers, such as those found in the Sacramento River.

Figure III-10. Riffle Habitat in a Small Stream

Tributary pools are flat-water areas of relatively deeper water scoured out by flow. Pools form in conjunction with riffles, and an alteration of pools and riffles usually occurs along a stream (Figure III-11). Water velocities are reduced in pools, causing deposition of finer suspended sediment. In small streams, pools provide key feeding and rearing habitat for juvenile coho and trout. Deep pools provide resting areas for adult salmon, especially spring-run Chinook and steelhead/rainbow trout that must survive over the summer. Pools and riffles often form because of large wood in the stream channel—downed trees, limbs, and root wads. The lack of these materials often leads to reduction in the frequency of pools and riffles and the loss of key habitat for many fish species.

Figure III-11. Riffle-Pool Sequence in a Small Stream

III.4.2.2 Representative Fish Species in Riverine Habitats

Freshwater riverine habitats above tidal influence support a number of important and rare fish species (Tables III-2 and III-3). Widely recognized species such as salmon, steelhead, and sturgeon are anadromous. These species use freshwater environments for spawning and juvenile rearing, and then migrate to the estuaries and ocean to grow and mature. Life stages of anadromous salmon and steelhead are likely to be found in virtually any stream or river with free access to the ocean. Because of habitat loss and other factors, many salmon populations are listed under the CESA and ESA.

III.4.3 Lakes

Lakes are characterized by deep water and little or no discernible current. They include natural lakes and ponds, as well as artificial lakes or reservoirs. Reservoirs are common features in California river systems because most rivers contain one or more dams. Although some seasonal variation occurs, natural lakes usually have relatively stable water levels. In contrast, reservoirs can be quite dynamic; and water levels can vary widely seasonally, as well as daily. Reservoirs can be drawn down to provide flood storage, irrigation, groundwater recharge, or energy and later can be refilled during the rainy season.

III.4.3.1 Key Habitats in Lakes

Overall, habitats in lakes are generally simpler than those defined in streams and estuaries. A unique feature of lakes and many reservoirs is that they thermally stratify (Figure III-12). As surface water warms, it becomes less dense and “floats” on top of a cooler and denser layer. The demarcation between these layers (the thermocline) can be abrupt and is often used to define two general lake habitats: a surface layer (usually 10–15 feet deep) and a deep layer. The surface layer consists of a shallow fringe area that follows the shoreline and an open water area that sits atop the deep, cooler water.

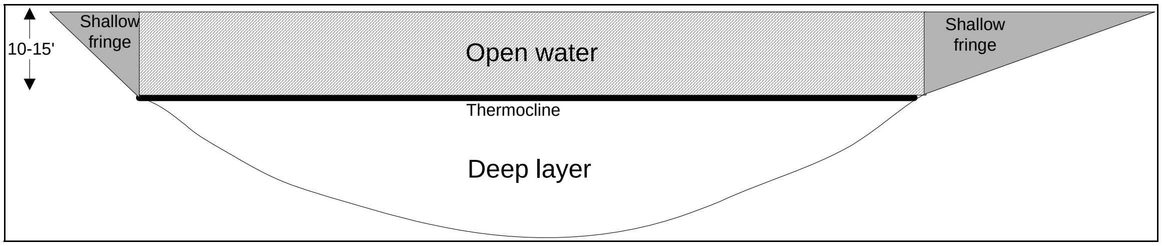


Figure III-12. Cross Section III of a Thermally Stratified Lake Showing General Habitat Types

The shallow fringe has structure provided by downed trees, aquatic plants, and bottom topography. Many juvenile fish take refuge around this structure while other species use the shallow areas for spawning. The open water above the thermocline is where aquatic algae and zooplankton are found and where many fish feed. The deeper layer provides a cooler refuge area. However, the thermocline can isolate the deeper layer; in some lakes, oxygen levels below the thermocline become low enough to exclude most fish species.

Ponds

In addition to lakes and reservoirs, California has numerous small ponds, particularly in the more eastern arid regions. These ponds can contain rare fish species that are often listed under the CESA and ESA. Table III-3 lists these rare fish species found in ponds, as well as fish species found in isolated lakes and headwater tributaries.

III.4.3.2 Representative Fish Species in Lakes

Lakes display a wide variety of environments and consequently a diverse array of fish species. Many California lakes support large numbers of non-native species, such as large mouth bass, crappie, and sunfish. Other lakes support unique sub-species of fish such those listed in Table III-3. Table III-2 (also see Section III.4) provides some guidance as to which species are common in California lakes. Take note, however, that many dams block passage of anadromous fish, and that each reservoir or lake must be reviewed independently for fish occurrence.

III.5 References

California Wetland Recovery Project. 2001. Available online at: http://www.scwrp.org/regional_strategy.htm.

Southern California Coastal Wetland Inventory. 1998. Available online at: http://ceres.ca.gov/wetlands/geo_info/so_cal.html.

Appendix IV Tools for Preparing Biological Assessment

NOAA's Fisheries Northwest and Southwest Regions | *U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Regions 1 & 8* | *California/Washington/ Oregon Departments of Transportation* | *California Department of Fish and Game* | *U.S. Federal Highway Administration*

MEMORANDUM

June 12, 2008

From: Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group

Subject: Agreement in Principle for Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities

To: Applicable Agency Staff

The signatory agencies, identified below, have agreed in principle to use the attached Interim Criteria for Injury to Fish from Pile Driving Activities. The agreement was concluded at a meeting in Vancouver, Washington on June 10-11, 2008 with key technical and policy staff from the Federal Highway Administration, NOAA Fisheries, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, the Departments of Transportation from California, Oregon, and Washington; and national experts on sound propagation activities that affect fish and wildlife species of concern. The agreed upon criteria identify sound pressure levels of 206 dB peak and 187 dB accumulated sound exposure level(SEL) for all listed fish except those that are less than 2 grams. In that case, the criteria for the accumulated SEL will be 183 dB.

These criteria will apply to all new projects beginning no later than 60 days from the date of this memorandum. During the interim 60 day period, the Transportation Agencies will work with the Services to identify projects currently in the consultation process and reach agreement on which criteria will be used to assess project effects.

The agencies agree to review the science periodically and revise the threshold and cumulative levels as needed to reflect current information. Behavioral impacts to fish and impacts to marine mammals are not addressed in this agreement. Sub-injurious effects will continue to be discussed in future meetings.

The respective agencies also agree to develop appropriate training for staff on these revised criteria, as well as a process to review and possibly refine the criteria, when appropriate.

For questions or concerns about the revised criteria, we recommend staff contact their agency environmental coordinator or agency expert on pile driving issues.

____

Federal Highway Administration*

*FHWA supports the use of these interim criteria in the states signing this agreement in principle. FHWA leaves the schedule for implementation to the discretion of the state DOTs in cooperation with their respective FHWA Division Offices and the Services.

____

NOAA Fisheries – NWR

____

NOAA Fisheries – SWR

____

US Fish and Wildlife Service Region 1

____

US Fish and Wildlife Service Region 8

____

California Department of Transportation

____

California Department of Fish and Game

______________________ Geo-Environmental Mgr

Oregon Department of Transportation

Washington State Department of Transportation

Washington State Department of Transportation

FHWG Agreement in Principle
Technical/Policy Meeting Vancouver, WA
June, 11 2008

Interim Criteria for Injury	Agreement in Principle
Peak	206 dB (for all size of fish)
Cumulative SEL	187 dB - for fish size of two grams or greater. 183 dB - for fish size of less than two grams.*

**see Table—to be developed*

Caltrans
Hydroacoustic Project Information Checklist

The information indicated is necessary in order to evaluate the effects of underwater sound pressure levels, for fish and other in-water species. This checklist is for general project use. Certain items may not be applicable to your specific project and/or additional items may be required in consultation with state and federal resource agencies.

____ **Project Description;** Briefly describe the location of, purpose and need, and basic design concepts of the project.

____ **Environmental Setting;** Describe the drainage in the vicinity of the project. Indicate the drainage width; depth; approximate flow; whether tidally influenced; whether freshwater, salt water or estuarine conditions; and the types of habitat present.

____ **Description of Pile and Pile Driving Activities;**

- ____ Type(s) and number of piles; Specify the number, composition, size & locations of piles (e.g. in water, within 5 meters of water). Identify locations of temporary (if known) & permanent piles.
- ____ Location of piles in the channel; Location of piles in the channel; Provide drawings that include the water depth in profile view and the channel width in design plan view. Illustrate the approximate locations of temporary (if known) and permanent piles. Indicate the location and distance of piles not driven in the water to ordinary high water.
- ____ Type(s) of Pile Driver(s) to be used; Identify whether impact hammer, vibratory or other type of hammer would be used & if pre-drilling is proposed.
- ____ Project Phasing for Pile Driving; Indicate the duration and intent of the project, (e.g. project work proposed to occur during which years and/or work windows).
- ____ Number of Pile Strikes per Day; Estimate the number of strikes per pile by pile type/size, based on the pile type & project substrate (engineers estimate based on suitable comparison project).
- ____ Number of piles Driven Per Day & Total Pile Driving Days; Provide a conservative estimate of the number of piles that are anticipated to be driven in a day & how many hours of pile driving are expected (per NMFS guidelines, a 12 hour rest period is required between driving events).
- ____ Cofferdams; Are cofferdams proposed for use to isolate pile footings? If so, provide information regarding size, placement methodology, when they would be installed and removed and if they would need to be dewatered.
- ____ Sound Attenuation; Identify the type of attenuation anticipated for use (e.g. bubble curtain, isolation casing, dewatered cofferdam), and indicate which piles the attenuation would be used for. Estimate the anticipated decrease in transmitted pressure due to the attenuation device.

____ **Methods of Evaluation;** Describe the methods used to evaluate the potential effects on fish of pile driving noise.

____ **Results;** Reporting the outcome of project specific noise analysis.

____ Pile Driving-Generated Sound; Estimate the sound generated from each pile type/size with attenuation, if proposed, to include the metric referenced to the pressure (i.e., peak dB re: 1 μPa, for SEL and RMS).

____ Project Action Area; Define the project action area for pile driving-generated noise. The distance at which the generated underwater sound attenuates to the background noise level is considered the project action area for pile driving noise, although the injury threshold is generally a much smaller area.

____ Acoustic Impact Area; Estimate the attenuation of sound through water to the background sound pressure level and to the injury threshold, as well as the distance from the action area to the estimated default for sub-injurious impacts (currently 150 dB RMS).

____ **Special-Status Species;** Identify the special-status species that have the potential to occur in the project action area. Contact USFWS, NMFS, & DFG to identify federally and state-listed species that have the potential to occur in the project action area. Also document any designated critical habitat within the project action area.

____ **Agency Consultation;** Provide information regarding any ongoing consultations (e.g. meeting, decisions, prior written documentation), and include any changes to the project description.

____ **Impact Assessment;** Estimate the number of individual species and/or habitat area of listed species or other species potentially affected by pile driving-generated noise.

____ **Mitigation;** Avoidance, Minimization & Mitigation

____ Proposed Mitigation; Identify other mitigation to avoid and minimize impacts, (e.g. pile type, placement, type of driver used & project timing).

____ Best Management Practices; Identify any best management practices included in the project, (e.g. air bubble curtains, cofferdams, isolation casing & cushion blocks).

____ Performance Measures; Identify performance measures & any proposed underwater noise monitoring.

____ Mitigation for take of Listed Species; Identify the potential mitigation for take of state-listed species. Under CESA, the State requires mitigation for take of listed species. The mitigation must offset the loss of individuals due to the project.

____ **Essential Fish Habitat (EFH);** Identify EFH within the project action area. The EFH analysis typically is included within the Biological Assessment. The Pacific Salmon EFH in California includes only Chinook and coho salmon habitats.

For your use, Caltrans "Technical Guidance for Assessment and Mitigation of Hydroacoustic Effects of Pile Driving on Fish" can be found at; http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/fisheries_bioacoustics.htm, or Wash DOT "Biological Assessment Preparation for Transportation Projects – Advanced Training Manual – Version 2012/2013" located at; http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/Biology/BA/BAguidance.htm

Introduction

DISCLAIMER: This spreadsheet was developed by NMFS as an in-house tool for assessing the potential effect to fishes exposed to elevated levels of underwater sound produced during pile driving. NMFS assumes no responsibility for interpretation of the results of these models by non-NMFS users.

Please contact the following NMFS staff to report errors or submit questions:
John Stadler, NMFS Northwest Region, 360-753-9576, John.Stadler@noaa.gov
Jacqueline Meyer, NMFS Southwest Region, 707-575-6057, Jacqueline.Pearson-Meyer@noaa.gov

This model is used to estimate the levels of underwater sound (peak and RMS pressure, as well as accumulated Sound Exposure Level [SEL]) received by fishes that are exposed to elevated levels of underwater sound produced during pile driving. It calculates the distance from the pile that the sound attenuates to threshold levels.

The criteria used for the onset of physical injury and adverse behavioral effects are listed in the table below. The onset of physical injury uses dual criteria - peak pressure and SEL. The onset of physical injury is expected if either of these criteria are exceeded. The criterion for accumulated SEL is based upon the mass of the fishes under consideration. If fishes smaller than 2 grams are present, then the more conservative 183 dB SEL criterion may be required.

Effect	Metric	Fish mass	Threshold
Onset of physical injury	Peak pressure	N/A	206 dB (re: 1 μPa)
	Accumulated Sound Exposure Level (SEL)	≥ 2 g	187 dB (re: 1μPa^2•sec)
		< 2 g	183 dB (re: 1μPa^2•sec)
Adverse behavioral effects	Root Mean Square Pressure (RMS)	N/A	150 dB (re: 1 μPa)

Assumptions

1) Estimates of underwater sound are based on measured levels from similar size and type of pile. Please refer to Caltrans' compendium (http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/env/bio/files/pile_driving_snd_comp9_27_07.pdf).

2) Fish are assumed to remain stationary and the single strike SEL does not vary in magnitude between strikes. Cumulative SEL = single-strike SEL + 10*log(# strikes).

3) Currently there are no data to support a tissue recovery allowance between pile strikes. Therefore, all strikes in any given day are counted, regardless of time between strikes. However, generally the accumulated SEL can be reset to zero overnight (or after a 12 hour period), especially in a river or tidally-influenced waterway when the fish should be moving.

4) Effective Quiet. When the received SEL from an individual pile strike is below a certain level, then the accumulated energy from multiple strikes would not contribute to injury, regardless of how many pile strikes occur. This SEL is referred to as "effective quiet", and is assumed, for the purposes of this spreadsheet, to be 150 dB (re: 1 μPa^2*sec). Effective quiet establishes a limit on the maximum distance from the pile where injury to fishes is expected – the distance at which the single-strike SEL attenuates to 150 dB. Beyond this distance, no physical injury is expected, regardless of the number of pile strikes. However, the severity of the injury can increase within this zone as the number of strikes increases.

5) NMFS recommends using the Practical Spreading Loss model (TL = 15*log(R_1/R_0)), unless data are available to support a different model.

Worksheet Calculator

Input: Fill in the green colored cells - NOTE: THERE ARE NO DEFAULT VALUES FOR THE GREEN CELLS
B10 is the estimated single strike peak pressure (dB re: 1μPa)
B11 is the distance (m) from the pile where peak pressure was measured
C10 is the estimated single strike SEL (dB re: 1μPa^{2}s). If no direct measurement available, then SEL = peak pressure minus 25.
C11 is the distance (m) from the pile where SEL was measured
D10 is the estimated single strike RMS pressure (dB re: 1μPa). If no direct measurement available, then RMS = peak pressure minus 15
D11 is the distance (m) from the pile where RMS pressure was measured
B13 is the expected number of pile strikes
A22 is the Transmission Loss Constant. Default is 15 unless site-specific transmission loss information is available.
A28 is for comments on assumptions, sources of estimates of metrics, pile size, etc.

Preset Values
E10 is the SEL for "effective quiet" (current set at 150 dB)
B21 is the peak pressure criteria (see table above)
C21 is the SEL criteria for when all fish are 2 grams or larger (see table above)
D21 is the SEL criteria for when fish smaller than 2 grams are present (see table above)
E21 is the RMS criteria for adverse behavioral disruption (see table above)

Output: Read the blue cells
A16 is the calculated cumulative SEL, in dB (re: 1μPa^2•s), at measured distance from pile
B22 is the distance (m) at which 206 dB peak is expected to be exceeded
C22 is the distance (m) at which 187 dB accumulated SEL is expected to be exceeded
D22 is the distance (m) at which 183 dB accumulated SEL is expected to be exceeded
E22 is the distance (m) at which 150 dB rms is expected to be exceeded

Cells in light green are for project identification, project specifics, and comments.

Project Title	
Pile information (size, type, number, pile strikes, etc.)	

Fill in green cells: estimated sound levels and distances at which they were measured, estimated number of pile strikes per day, and transmission loss constant.

	Acoustic Metric			
	Peak	SEL	RMS	Effective Quiet
Measured single strike level (dB)	**206**	**155**	**150**	**150**
Distance (m)	**10**	**10**	**10**	

Estimated number of strikes	**3750**

Cumulative SEL at measured distance
190.74

	Distance (m) to threshold			
	Onset of Physical Injury			Behavior
	Peak dB	Cumulative SEL dB**		RMS dB
		Fish ≥ 2 g	Fish < 2 g	
Transmission loss constant (15 if unknown)	206	187	183	150
15	**10**	**18**	**22**	**10**

** This calculation assumes that single strike SELs < 150 dB do not accumulate to cause injury (Effective Quiet)

Notes (source for estimates, etc.)

NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Regions 1 & 8	California/ Washington/ Oregon Departments of Transportation	California Department of Fish and Wildlife	U.S. Federal Highway Administration

August 28, 2013

From: Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group

Subject: Concurrence and General Instructions on Use of the Underwater Noise Monitoring Plan Template

To: Monitoring Plan Template Users

Representatives of the agencies listed at the top of this cover letter (Fisheries Hydroacoustic Working Group (FHWG)) have developed the Underwater Noise Monitoring Template (attached) for use when monitoring is conducted of the underwater sounds generated by pile driving. The goal is to standardize collecting and reporting monitoring data of underwater noise. The FHWG steering committee agreed and concurred on the use of the monitoring template at the July 25, 2013 meeting, with key technical and policy staff present from the Federal Highway Administration, NOAA Fisheries, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, and the Departments of Transportation from California, Oregon, and Washington.

The template is designed as a general monitoring report outline and provides guidance for monitoring and reporting underwater sound levels generated during impact pile driving. It was developed as a tool to help the transportation agencies meet their obligations under the Endangered Species Act (ESA). However, the monitoring needs may vary among regions or states if they have different ESA-listed species and it may be necessary to modify the monitoring plan accordingly. For instance, the sections on marine mammals or marbled murrelets would not be necessary for projects in inland waters. The template also contains some items that are recommended or optional and others that are required (e.g., using terms such as will or shall). For example, airborne noise monitoring is not required for fishes but may be for marine mammals or marbled murrelets. Monitoring of vibratory pile driving activities is not usually required but may be under certain circumstances, such as to determine the extent of marine mammal monitoring during construction or during times of the year when juvenile ESA-listed salmon are present. Measurements of background sound levels are not required but may be helpful in estimating the distance at which vibratory pile driving sound can affect the behavior of marine mammals. The user is encouraged to contact the appropriate agency staff (see table below) early in the process to answer questions about the template and to discuss project-specific information that can be used to ensure that their monitoring plan meets the needs of the relevant agencies.

Although this template was developed specifically to help transportation agencies meet their obligations under the ESA, the FHWG supports its use by other agencies and for other purposes, such as meeting the essential fish habitat provisions of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act or monitoring the effects on other aquatic species of concern. Doing so will promote consistency in conducting hydroacoustic monitoring and the reporting of the results, which will benefit a wider group.

FHWG Member Agency Contacts

Agency	**Contact**	**Email**	**Phone**
Calif. Dept. Fish & Wildlife	Russ Bellmer	Russ.Bellmer@wildlife.ca.gov	916-327-8850
Caltrans	Melinda Molnar	Melinda.Molnar@dot.ca.gov	707-445-6627
	Jim Andrews	Jim.Andrews@dot.ca.gov	916-653-9554
	Bruce Rymer	Bruce.Rymer@dot.ca.gov	916-653-6073
FHWA California	Larry Vinzant	Larry.vinzant@dot.gov	916-498-5040
FHWA WA/OR/D.C.	Cindy Callahan	Cindy.Callahan@dot.gov	360-753-9078
NOAA Fisheries CA	Jacqueline Pearson-Meyer	Jacqueline.Pearson-Meyer@noaa.gov	707-575-6057
NOAA Fisheries WA/OR/ID	John Stadler	John.Stadler@noaa.gov	503-231-6290
Oregon DOT	Tom Loynes	Thomas.m.Loynes@odot.state.or.us	541-957-3380
USFWS Region 1	Lindsy Wright	Lindsy_Wright@fws.gov	360-753-6037
USFWS Region 8	Erin Gleason	Erin_Gleason@fws.gov	916-930-5603
Washington DOT	Marion Carey	CareyM@wsdot.wa.gov	360-705-7404
	Jim Laughlin	LaughlJ@wsdot.wa.gov	206-440-4643

Project Name

UNDERWATER NOISE MONITORING PLAN

*****TEMPLATE*****

Replace underlined blue italic text with project information.
Blue italic text is guidance.
Plain, black text ***is template language.***
All blue italic text should be replaced or omitted for final production.

Prepared by:
Name and full contact information
Signature Block

Date

INTRODUCTION *(This section will be project specific)*

The *full agency name* proposes to *detailed project description*. See vicinity map (Figure 1).

Figure 1. Vicinity map of *name project*.

PROJECT AREA *(This section will be project specific)*

Describe the location of the project, including all water bodies that are affected. Identify the USGS hydrologic unit, both the name and code, where the project is located. Include detailed maps and figures, when available, relative to environmental features that influence monitoring (e.g., geology, bathymetry, etc.).

PERMIT/ESA CONDITIONS *(This section will be project specific and is applicable only when the ESA consultation is complete or Federal/State/local permits have been issued. Each agency should modify this section to reflect the various types of permit/ESA conditions that they see.)*

> *Summarize the Federal/State/local permit conditions and the ESA requirements that relate to the underwater noise. Permit conditions include monitoring requirements, timing restrictions, etc. The ESA requirements are found in the Incidental Take Statement and Terms and Conditions sections of the biological opinion. These requirements vary between biological opinions, but can include monitoring requirements, timing restrictions, limits on cumulative sound exposure level (cSEL) at a given distance, description of the area where the thresholds must not be exceeded, the allowable number of piles driven per day, the allowable number of pile strikes per day, or a limit on the single strike SEL.*

PILE INSTALLATION LOCATION *(This section will be project specific)*

Figure 2 indicates the location of the *provide location of the structure(s) in need of pile driving*. There will be a total of *XX* piles driven as part of the *name structure(s)*.

Figure 2. Location of *name structure(s)* where pile driving activity will take place. *This information must be in enough detail to allow the reader to assess the monitoring locations.*

PILE INSTALLATION

Impact Pile Driving for Fish Consultations (& listed US FWS, diving sea bird, if relevant)

Provide pile installation information. For example:

Hydroacoustic monitoring will be conducted for *X* piles struck with an impact hammer. Piles chosen to be monitored are driven in water depths that are representative of mid-channel or typical water depths at the project location where piles will be driven.

The number of piles to be monitored will depend on a variety of factors – some projects may require that all piles be monitored, while others may require a representative sample of piles be monitored. If a sample of piles is to be monitored, provide the considerations taken and the rationale used in choosing a representative number of piles, such as, bathymetry, total number of piles to be driven, substrate type, depth of water, distance from shore, river, or stream bank, and *any other considerations, as appropriate. When monitoring a subset, a minimum of 5 piles should be monitored. Additional monitoring to produce a representative sample may be warranted when projects are driving a large number of piles, driving multiple piles of varying diameters in differing substrates, driving different types of piles, or driving piles in widely differing depths.*

Hydroacoustic monitoring of *type of pile* with impact driving will include:

- Monitoring *X piles, out of a total of Y piles driven for the project*.
- Testing sound attenuation system effectiveness.
- *Include airborne noise monitoring as bullet here if necessary for other listed species (e.g., marine mammal haul out present, etc.).*

Figure 3 indicates the location of the piles to be monitored and the approximate hydrophone locations for each pile being monitored. All hydrophones will be placed at least 1 m (3.3 feet) below the surface. *If only one hydrophone at one distance is to be used it is acceptable for the hydrophone to be placed 10 meters from the pile at midwater depth. If hydrophones will be placed at more than one distance from the pile and used to calculate transmission loss over distance, water depth should be at least 4m (13 ft) and it is suggested that the additional hydrophone nearest the pile be placed at least 3H from the pile where H is the water depth at the pile and at 0.7 to 0.85H depth from the surface. In waters less than 4m (13 ft) deep, a single hydrophone at midwater depth is sufficient*[1]. Hydrophones will be located *X* meters from each pile with a clear acoustic line-of-sight between the pile and the hydrophone. *Additional distances measured concurrently are desirable, if possible, to estimate the site specific range to the threshold boundary. Include any additional distances or depths where hydrophones will be located. If airborne noise monitoring is required, the primary measurement microphone shall be placed 50 feet (e.g. 15 meters) from the pile at least 6 feet above the ground or water, and shall have an unobstructed view of the length of the pile.*

[1] Some projects may need or require more than one hydrophone to collect real time measurements at multiple locations or multiple distances. In these situations multiple hydrophones can be placed at midwater depths.

Figure 3. Location of the piles that will be monitored on the *name structure(s)*.

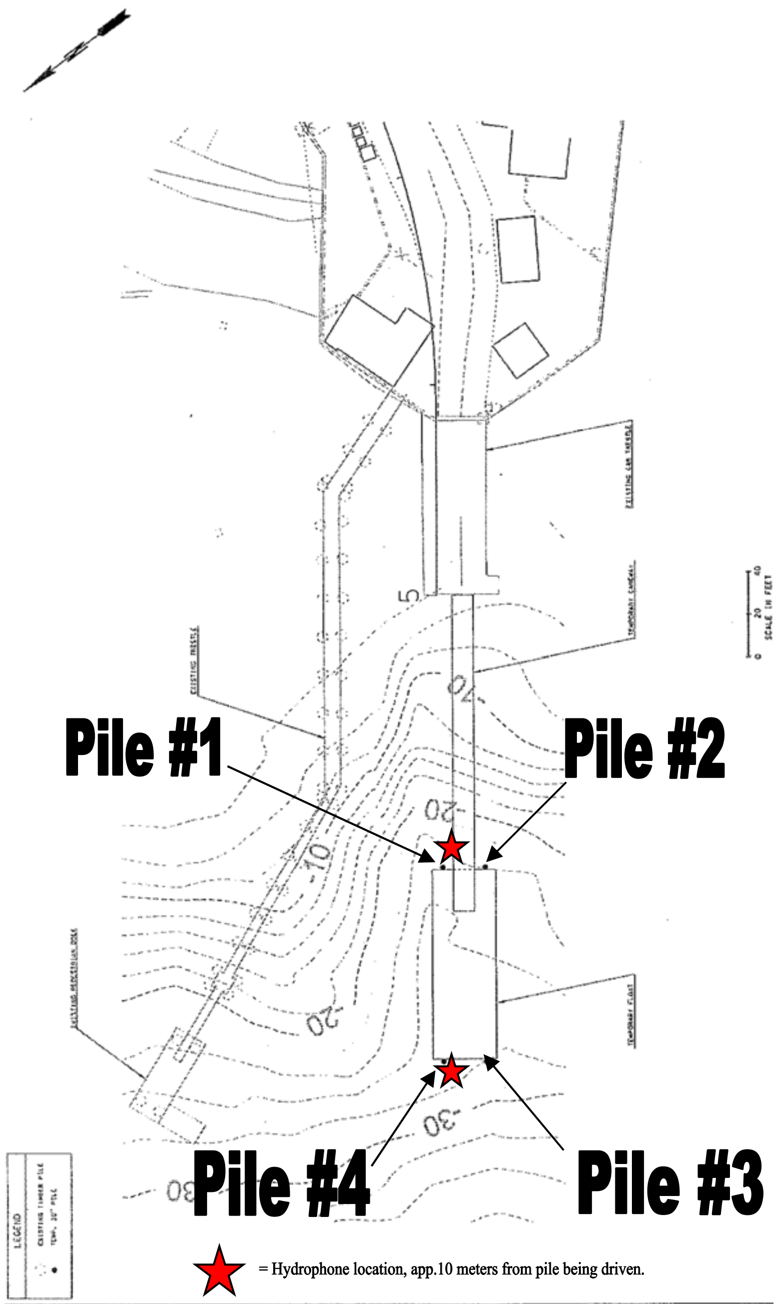


Table 1 lists the *name structure(s)* to be installed, the water depth, and the number and size of piles that will be installed.

Table 1
Depth, Number Piles to be Monitored

Structure	Water Depth	Structural Components Installed
Name structure	*X feet to X feet*	*X - XX-inch diameter type of pile*

Vibratory Pile Driving for Marine Mammal Consultations

Currently, hydroacoustic monitoring of vibratory pile installation is not required for fish or marine mammal consultations. Monitoring of vibratory pile installation is voluntary and is designed to evaluate site specific conditions so that the biological monitoring area for marine mammals may be reduced. In addition to the monitoring requirements above, with the exception of a sound attenuation device, NMFS has provided guidance for measuring background and source sound levels as well as how to evaluate site specific propagation loss (NMFS 2012a, b, c). Please use this guidance to develop a plan for hydroacoustic monitoring of vibratory pile installation if applicable.

CONTRACTOR REQUIREMENTS

The contractor will submit a detailed description of their qualifications, which must include a minimum of a bachelor's degree in a related field[2] and 3 years' experience in noise monitoring and analysis, and monitoring plan based on this template for approval by [INSERT AGENCY NAME]. A list of the contractors' proposed sound level monitoring equipment shall be included along with specifications and a description of the purpose. The measurement range in terms of amplitude (in dB referenced to one micropascal (re: 1 uPa)), sensitivity and frequency shall be stated. A minimum frequency range of 20 Hz to 20 kHz and a minimum sampling rate of 48,000 Hz will be used when monitoring. Sampling rates higher than 48 kHz are preferred. Table 2 describes the minimum requirements of the equipment to be used. In addition to the equipment selection, quality control/quality assurance procedures should be described (e.g., how will system responses be verified and how will data be managed).

Table 2.

Equipment for underwater sound monitoring (hydrophone, signal amplifier, and calibrator). All have current National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) traceable calibration. *This table is intended as a guideline and exact specifications can be adjusted to meet the needs of the individual project or contractors' equipment.*

Item	Specifications	Minimum Quantity	Usage

[2] This can include Institute of Noise Control Engineering of the USA (INCE/USA) certification or related fields such as acoustics, physics, oceanography, geology or other physical sciences that have required coursework in physics.

Hydrophone	Receiving Sensitivity- -211dB re 1V/µPa	1	Capture underwater sound pressures near the source and convert to voltages that can be recorded/analyzed by other equipment.
Hydrophone	Receiving Sensitivity – -200dB re 1/µPa	1	Capture underwater sound pressures for background levels and convert to voltages that can be recorded/analyzed by other equipment.
Signal Conditioning Amplifier	Amplifier Gain- 0.1 mV/pC to 10 V/pC Transducer Sensitivity Range- 10-12 to 103 C/MU	1	Adjust signals from hydrophone to levels compatible with recording equipment.
Calibrator (pistonphone-type)	Accuracy- IEC 942 (1988) Class 1	1	Calibration check of hydrophone in the field.
Digital Signal Analyzer	Sampling Rate- 48kHz or greater	1	Analyzes and transfers digital data to laptop hard drive.
Microphone (free field type)	Range- 30 – 120 dBA Sensitivity- -29 dB ± 3 dB (0 dB = 1 V/Pa) Wind Screen	1	Monitoring airborne sounds from pile driving activities (if not raining).
If water velocity ~> 1m/s, Flow shield	Open cell foam cover or functional equivalent	1/hydrophone	Eliminate flow noise contamination.
Laptop computer or Digital Audio Recorder	Compatible with digital signal analyzer	1	Record digital data on hard drive or digital tape.
Real Time and Post-analysis software	-	1	Monitor real-time signal and post-analysis of sound signals.

To facilitate further analysis of data full bandwidth, time-series underwater signal shall be recorded as a text file (.txt) or wave file (.wav) or similar format. Recorded data shall not use data compression algorithms or technologies (e.g. MP3, compressed .wav, etc.).

METHODOLOGY

Impact Pile Driving for Fish Consultations (and listed US FWS, diving sea bird, if relevant)

Underwater background sound level measurements are optional, however, if desired then the NMFS (2012a) guidance should be followed.

If one hydrophone at one distance is to be used it is acceptable for the hydrophone to be placed 10 meters from the pile and at midwater depth. If hydrophones will be placed at more than one distance from the pile it is suggested that the hydrophone nearest the pile be placed at least 3H from the pile where H is the water depth at the pile and 0.7 to 0.85H depth from the surface. The hydrophone*(s)* will be placed at *X meters* depth at a distance of *X meters* from each pile being monitored, in waters of *X meters* depth. *If water velocity is 1 meter/second or greater, 1-3 meters off the bottom may be recommended for near field hydrophones and greater than 5 meters from the surface may be recommended for any far field hydrophones.* A weighted tape measure will be used to determine the depth of the water. The hydrophone*(s)* will be attached to a nylon cord, a steel chain, or other proven anti-strum features if the current is swift enough to cause strumming of the line. The nylon cord or chain will be attached to an anchor that will keep the line the appropriate distance from each pile. The nylon cord or chain will be attached to a float or tied to a static line at the surface. The distances will be measured by a tape measure, where possible, or a range-finder. The acoustic path (line of sight) between the pile and the hydrophone*(s)* should be unobstructed in all cases.

When collecting sound measurements in an area with currents (i.e., in rivers or tidally influenced areas), appropriate measures will be taken, when necessary, to ensure that the flow-induced noise at the hydrophone will not interfere with the recording and analysis of the relevant sounds (NMFS, 2012a). As a general rule, current speeds of 1.5 meters/second or greater are expected to generate significant flow-induced noise, which may interfere with the detection and analysis of low-level sounds such as the sounds from a distant pile driver or background sounds. If such measures are necessary, include a description of those measures. For example:

> *If it becomes necessary to reduce the flow-induced noise at the hydrophone, a flow shield will be described and installed around the hydrophone to provide a barrier between the irregular, turbulent flow and the hydrophone. If no flow shield is used in these situations, the current velocity will be measured and a correlation between the levels of the relevant sounds (background or pile driving) and current speed will be made to determine whether the data is valid and can be included in the analysis.*

The hydrophone calibration*(s)* will be checked at the beginning of each day of monitoring activity. *The method of calibration and calibration equipment used will be described.* NIST traceable calibration forms shall be provided for all relevant monitoring equipment. Prior to the initiation of pile driving, the hydrophone will be placed at the appropriate distance and depth as described above.

The onsite inspector/contractor will inform the acoustics specialist when pile driving is about to start to ensure that the monitoring equipment is operational. Underwater sound levels will be continuously monitored during the entire duration of each pile being driven with a minimum one-third octave band frequency resolution. The wideband instantaneous absolute peak pressure and Sound Exposure Level (SEL) values of each strike, and daily cumulative SEL should be monitored in real time during construction to ensure that the project does not exceed its authorized take level. Peak and rms pressures will be reported in dB (re:1 μPa). SEL will be reported in dB (re: 1 $\mu Pa^2 \cdot sec$). Wideband time series recording is strongly recommended during all impact pile driving.

Prior to, and during, the pile driving activity, environmental data will be gathered, such as water depth and tidal level, wave height, and other factors that could contribute to influencing the underwater sound levels (e.g. aircraft, boats, etc.). Start and stop time of each pile driving event and the time at which the bubble curtain or functional equivalent[3] is turned on and off will be logged.

The contractor or agency will provide the following information, in writing, to the contractor conducting the hydroacoustic monitoring for inclusion in the final monitoring report: a description of the substrate composition, approximate depth of significant substrate layers, hammer model and size, pile cap or cushion type, hammer energy settingsand any changes to those settings during the piles being monitored, depth pile driven, blows per foot for the piles monitored, and total number of strikes to drive each pile that is monitored.

If airborne noise monitoring is required, background measurements from 20 Hz to 20 kHz will be taken to establish background noise without the pile driver and associated equipment running. Spectral analysis shall be provided showing the frequency content of the background noise spectra using a minimum bandwidth resolution of one-third octave using both A-weighted and unweighted filters. For monitoring pile driving noise, the microphone shall be positioned 50 feet from the driven pile, at least 6 feet above the ground, water, or deck level. The microphone should not be positioned near other noisy equipment, such as the crane engine, compressors, while operating. Equipment used for airborne noise measurements shall demonstrate calibration traceability to NIST standards.

Vibratory Pile Driving for Marine Mammal Consultations

If hydroacoustic monitoring of vibratory pile installation is conducted for marine mammal consultations NMFS (2012a,b,c) guidance should be followed. In addition to the monitoring methodology above, the following differences should be noted:

- *Use of a sound attenuation device is not required*
- *Placement of the hydrophones*

NMFS has provided guidance for measuring background and source sound levels as well as how to evaluate site specific propagation loss (NMFS 2012a, b, c). Please use this guidance to develop a methodology for hydroacoustic monitoring of vibratory pile installation if applicable.

---

[3] A functional equivalent must function as well as or better than the attenuation device that was proposed during consultation or required by the ESA consultation or applicable permits. It must achieve the same or better sound level reductions that were used in the calculations during ESA consultation or the permitting process.

If marine mammals are present in the project area it is recommended that background sound levels be measured to more accurately determine the site specific range to the threshold using the protocol outlined in NMFS 2012a. Background underwater sound levels will be measured for a minimum of three full 24-hour cycles (i.e., 6 am to 6 am) in the absence of construction activities to determine background sound levels (NMFS, 2012a). Analysis will be conducted using both data from the full range of frequencies recorded (typically 20 Hz to 20 kHz) and using high pass filters at 7 Hz, 75 Hz, and 150 Hz thus eliminating those frequencies below these levels (NMFS, 2012a) which follows the marine mammal functional hearing groups of Southall et al. (2007). Data will be used to calculate 30-second Root Mean Square (RMS) values for each 30 seconds of the three 24-hour cycles measured. These data will be used to calculate and plot a Cumulative Distribution Function (CDF) (NMFS, 2012a). Overall background sound levels will be reported as the 50% CDF and include a spectral analysis of the frequencies (NMFS, 2012a) for a minimum of one hourly cycle. *Alternately, if pile driving will be conducted during the daytime only the background sound levels collected during daytime hours (6am to 6pm) can be used in this analysis.*

If only one hydrophone at one distance is to be used it is acceptable for the hydrophone to be placed 10 meters from the pile at midwater depth. If hydrophones will be placed at more than one distance from the pile it is suggested that the hydrophone nearest the pile be placed at least 3H from the pile where H is the water depth at the pile and at 0.7 to 0.85H depth.

If water velocity is 1 meter/second or greater, 1-3 meters off the bottom may be recommended for near field hydrophones and greater than 5 meters from the surface may be recommended for any far field hydrophones.

Include information on methodology, instrument specifications and settings and measurement location if airborne measurements are to be included for other listed species (e.g., marine mammal haul out present, etc.), as required.

Sound Attenuation Monitoring

All monitored piles may be tested with the sound attenuation system on and off (or presence and absence) to test its effectiveness[4]. To account for varying resistance as the pile is driven; the sound attenuation device will be turned off for *(describe schedule for turning on and off)* periods during the beginning, the middle third, and near the end of the drive. After turning off the attenuation system, pile driving should not resume for at least 2 minutes to allow time for air bubbles to completely disperse. *For piles that require less than 5 minutes to drive, pile driving should occur for only two periods with the bubbles off, one near the beginning and once near the end of the drive.*

---

[4] Note: There may be circumstances where the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service determines that unattenuated pile driving (striking the pile with the bubble curtain turned off) would pose a significant risk of injury to species. In those situations, the Service may request that unattenuated pile driving does not occur and that hydroacoustic monitoring be conducted to determine the extent at which certain thresholds are met instead. This will need to be determined on a case by case basis for projects that may affect listed species.

SIGNAL PROCESSING

Impact Pile Driving for Fish Consultations (and any US FWS listed, diving sea bird)

Post-analysis of the underwater pile driving sounds will include:

- Number of pile strikes per pile and per day.
- For each recorded strike (or each strike from a subset), determine the following:
  - The peak pressure, defined as the maximum absolute value of the instantaneous pressure (overpressure or underpressure).
  - The root mean squared sound pressure across 90% of the strikes energy ($RMS_{90\%}$).
  - Sound exposure level, measured across 90% of the accumulated sound energy ($SEL_{90\%}$). Calculation methodology is provided in Appendix A.
- Maximum, mean, and range of the peak pressure, with, and if applicable, without attenuation.
- Maximum, mean, range, and Cumulative Distribution Function (CDF) of the $RMS_{90\%}$, both with and if applicable, without attenuation where the CDF is used to report the percentage of $RMS_{90\%}$ values above the thresholds.
- Maximum, mean, and range of the $SEL_{90\%}$, both with and if applicable, without attenuation.
- Cumulative SEL (cSEL) across all of the pile strikes. If SEL was calculated for all strikes, cSEL is estimated as indicated in Appendix A. If SEL was calculated for a subset of strikes, cSEL is estimated as follows: cSEL = SEL_{mean} + 10*log(total # strikes).
- Where surrogate piles are monitored to represent a larger project, an estimate of the cSEL during a typical day of construction driving must be reported by summing the SEL over the expected number of pile strikes in a typical day for the larger project: cSEL = SEL_{mean} + 10*log(#strikes). The SEL_{mean} used in this calculation must correspond with the actual sound attenuation measures that will be used during construction of the larger project.
- A frequency spectrum both with and, *if applicable*, without attenuation, between a minimum of 20 and 20 kHz for up to eight successive strikes with similar sound levels.

If airborne noise monitoring is required, both A-weighted and unweighted measurements will be acquired. Broadband back-to-back RMS L_{max} (peak) and L_{eq} (average) 5-minute measurements will be made over the duration of pile driving,. L_{max} measurements should be taken with a portable analyzer set for "fast" response (125 msec). For at least one full pile sequence of each pile size and substrate type, frequency spectrum measurements (L_{max} and L_{eq}) using a minimum resolution of one-third octave bands shall be taken to show the spectral content of the impact pile. If measuring background sound levels in the absence of construction is not possible, then report the L_{95} statistic.

Vibratory Pile Driving for Marine Mammal Consultations

Background sound levels will be analyzed by calculating 30-second RMS values and plotting these values on a CDF. The average background sound level will be estimated using the 50% CDF (See Appendix B).

If vibratory installation of piles will be monitored for marine mammals, add the following text: Vibratory monitoring data will be analyzed by calculating 10-second RMS values for every 10 seconds for each pile. The 10-second RMS values will be averaged for the entire pile and reported as the average RMS. The average RMS will be calculated for each marine mammal functional hearing group as reported by Southall et al. (2007) (NMFS, 2012b).

ANALYSIS

Impact Pile Driving for Fish Consultations (and listed US FWS, diving sea bird, if relevant)

Analysis of the data from the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge Pile Installation Demonstration project (PIDP) indicated that 90 percent of the acoustic energy for most pile driving impulses occurred over a 50 to 100 millisecond period with most of the energy concentrated in the first 30 to 50 milliseconds (Illingworth and Rodkin, 2001). The RMS values computed for this project will be computed over the duration between where 5% and 95% of the energy of the pulse occurs. The SEL energy plot will assist in interpretation of the single strike waveform. The single strike SEL associated with the highest absolute peak strike along with the total number of strikes per pile and per day will be used to calculate the cumulative SEL for each pile and each 24-hour period.

In addition a waveform analysis of the individual absolute peak pile strikes will be performed to determine any changes to the waveform with the *name type of noise attenuation device*. A comparison of the frequency content with and without noise attenuation will be conducted. Units of underwater sound pressure levels will be dB (re:1 µPa)and units of SEL will be re:1 $\mu Pa^2 \bullet sec$.

Vibratory Pile Driving for Marine Mammal Consultations

If vibratory installation will be monitored for marine mammals, add the following text: Vibratory monitoring results will include the maximum and average RMS values for each pile monitored and a comparison of the frequency content between piles. The maximum and overall average RMS calculated from 10-second RMS values during the drive of the pile for will be calculated for each of the functional hearing groups of Southall et al. (2007) (NMFS, 2012b).

REPORTING

If sound attenuation devices are used during the monitoring, include the following text and analysis:

An analysis of the change in the waveform and sound levels with and without the *name type of noise attenuation device for impact driving* operating will be conducted.

Preliminary results for the daily monitoring activities, if required, will be submitted/reported to the primary point of contact[5] at each of the Services within *X hours* after monitoring concludes

[5] The primary point of contact is the biologist that conducted the Section 7 consultation for the Service(s). In the event that the consulting biologist is not available, communication regarding monitoring results and reports should be addressed to the manager of the consultation branch or division with a reference to the consultation title.

for the day. In addition a final draft report including data collected and summarized from all monitoring locations will be submitted to the Services within 90 days of the completion of hydroacoustic monitoring. The results will be summarized in graphical form and include summary statistics and time histories of impact sound values for each pile. A final report will be prepared and submitted to the Services within 30 days following receipt of comments on the draft report from the Services. The report shall include:

1. Size and type of piles.
2. A detailed description of the *name type of noise attenuation device*, including design specifications *(if applicable)*.
3. The impact hammer energy rating used to drive the piles, make and model of the hammer.
4. A description of the sound monitoring equipment.
5. The distance between hydrophone*(s) or microphone(s)* and pile.
6. The depth of the hydrophone*(s)* and depth of water at hydrophone locations.
7. The distance from the pile to the water's edge.
8. The depth of water in which the pile was driven.
9. The depth into the substrate that the pile was driven.
10. The physical characteristics of the bottom substrate into which the piles were driven.
11. The total number of strikes to drive each pile and for all piles driven during a 24-hour period.
12. The underwater wideband background sound pressure level reported as the 50% CDF *(if applicable)*.
13. The results of the hydroacoustic monitoring, as described under Signal Processing. An example table is provided in Appendix C for reporting the results of the monitoring.
14. The distance at which peak, cSEL, and rms values exceed the respective threshold values.
15. *If vibratory installation was monitored for marine mammals, add the following text: Vibratory monitoring results will include the maximum and overall average RMS calculated from 10-second RMS values during the drive of the pile for each of the functional hearing groups of Southall et al. (2007) (NMFS, 2012b).*
16. A description of any observable fish, marine mammal, or bird behavior in the immediate area will and, if possible, correlation to underwater sound levels occurring at that time.
17. *If airborne noise monitoring is required, broadband A-weighted and unweighted maximum, minimum, and average Lmax and Leq levels shall be tabulated for every pile. For each pile size and substrate type frequency spectra (one-third octave minimum frequency resolution) charts will be included to show the frequency content of Lmax and Leq signatures. The frequency content of airborne noise background levels shall also be shown. Background sound levels or L95 surrogate for background sound shall be reported.*

REFERENCES

Illingworth and Rodkin, Inc. 2001. Noise and Vibration Measurements Associated with the Pile Installation Demonstration Project for the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge East Span, Final Data Report, Task Order 2, Contract No. 43A0063.

NMFS, 2012a. Guidance Document: Data Collection Methods to Characterize Underwater Background Sound Relevant to Marine Mammals in Coastal Nearshore Waters and Rivers of Washington and Oregon. Memorandum: NMFS Northwest Fisheries Science Center – Conservation Biology Division and Northwest Regional Office – Protected Resources Division, January 31, 2012.

NMFS, 2012b. Guidance Document: Data Collection Methods to Characterize Impact and Vibratory Pile Driving Source Levels Relevant to Marine Mammals. Memorandum: NMFS Northwest Fisheries Science Center – Conservation Biology Division and Northwest Regional Office – Protected Resources Division, January 31, 2012.

NMFS, 2012c. Guidance Document: Sound Propagation Modeling to Characterize Pile Driving Sounds Relevant to Marine Mammals. Memorandum: NMFS Northwest Fisheries Science Center – Conservation Biology Division and Northwest Regional Office – Protected Resources Division, January 31, 2012.

Southall, B.L., A.E. Bowles, W.T. Ellison, J.J. Finneran, R.L. Gentry, C.R. Greene, D. Kastak, D.R. Ketten, J.H. Miller, P.E. Nachtigall, W.J. Richardson, J.A. Thomas, and P.L. Tyack. 2007. Marine Mammal Noise Exposure Criteria: Initial Scientific Recommendations. Aquatic Mammals 33(4): 411-521.

APPENDIX A

Calculation of Cumulative SEL

An estimation of individual SEL values can be calculated for each pile strike by calculating the following integral, where T is T_{90}, the period containing 90% of the cumulative energy of the pulse (eq. 1).

$$SEL = 10 \log \left(\int_0^T \frac{p^2(t)}{p_0^2} dt \right) \quad dB \qquad \text{(eq. 1)}$$

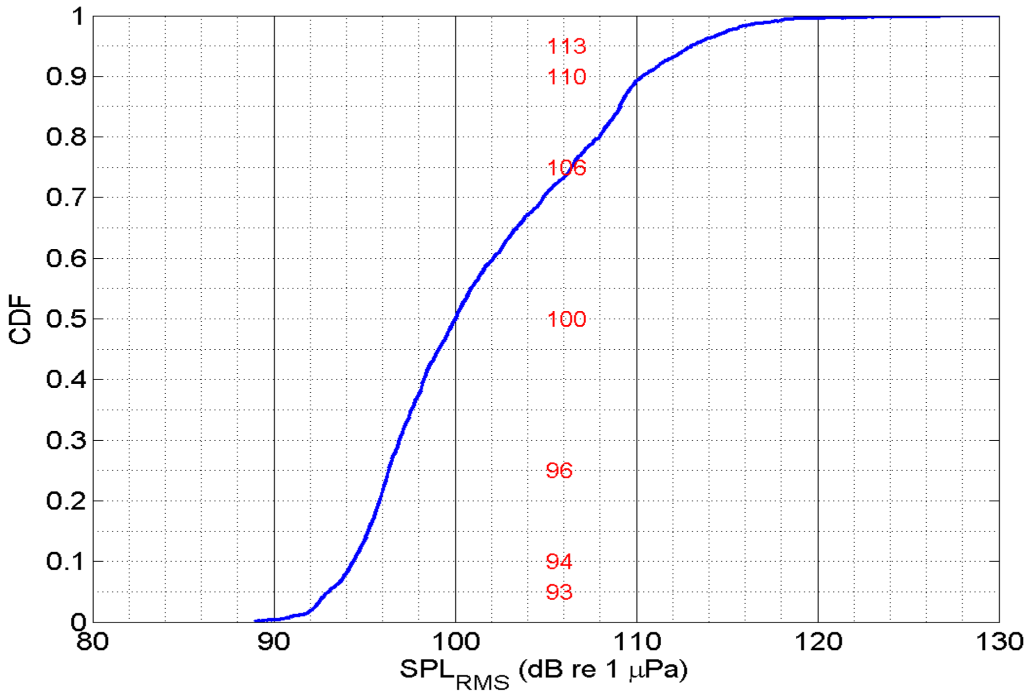
Calculating a cumulative SEL from individual SEL values cannot be accomplished simply by adding each SEL decibel level arithmetically. Because these values are logarithms they must first be converted to antilogs and then accumulated. Note, first, that if the single strike SEL is very close to a constant value (within 1 dB), then cumulative SEL = single strike SEL + 10 times log base 10 of the number of strikes N, i.e, $10Log_{10}(N)$. However if the single strike SEL varies over the sequence of strikes, then a linear sum of the energies for all the different strikes needs to be computed. This is done as follows: divide each SEL decibel level by 10 and then take the antilog. This will convert the decibels to linear units (or $uPa^2 \bullet s$). Next compute the sum of the linear units and convert this sum back into dB by taking $10Log_{10}$ of the value. This will be the cumulative SEL for all of the pile strikes.

APPENDIX B

Calculation of a Cumulative Distribution Function and Plot for Background Sound Level Analysis

Data from three full 24-hour underwater measurement cycles (minimum) are used to calculate a 30-second Root Mean Square (RMS) value for each 30-second period for the entire dataset. The RMS should be calculated for both the full frequency range recorded as well as a separate dataset which has been passed through a high pass filter thus eliminating those frequencies below 1000 Hz. These datasets are then grouped into 24-hour periods. To determine if the data is approximately log-normal in distribution, each 24-hour period is plotted as a Probability Density Function (PDF). Each 24-hour period can be plotted on the same PDF plot. The plots should be approximately log normal in distribution and thus can be used in the further analysis. Each day of data should have an approximately Gaussian sigmoid shape, the differences between them and the ideal might be hard to spot, but the sigmoid from day to day will show noticeable variation. Data which does not approximate a log normal distribution should be excluded from further analysis.

The Cumulative Distribution Function (CDF) plot is obtained by plotting the normalized cumulative sum vs. the bin location. You can also get the PDF from plotting the normalized bin count vs. the bin location. The normalized bin count is obtained by dividing the count column by (number of data points multiplied by the space between 2 consecutive bins). This provides the integral of the PDF equal to 1. For instructions on creating a histogram in Microsoft Excel, see: http://www.vertex42.com/ExcelArticles/mc/Histogram.html



CDF
SPL$_{RMS}$ (dB re 1 μPa)
113
110
106
100
96
94
93

APPENDIX C

Table 1. Example table for required information for reporting the results of hydroacoustic monitoring of pile driving.

Date and Time	Pile ID	Hammer Impact or Vibratory	# Strikes or Vibratory Seconds	Distance to Pile from Hydrophone (m)	Water Depth (m)		Peak (dB)			$SEL_{90\%}$ (dB)				$RMS_{90\%}$ (dB)			Notes
					At Pile	At H-phone	Max	Min	Mean	Max	Min	Mean	$cSEL_{90\%}$	Max	Min	Mean	

Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool

Caltrans has developed a spreadsheet-based screening tool to provide general guidance for determining pile driving impacts on fish when pile driving will occur in or near water. The tool lists a range of pile types and sizes in the first column along with reasonable worst-case single strike source levels taken from Appendix I, *Compendium of Pile Driving Sound Data*. The distance to effective quiet is calculated using the single strike SEL value (refer to Section 4.6.5.6 for a discussion of this calculation). Cumulative SEL values and the effect distance (the distance within which a given injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded) are then shown for a range of strikes-per-day values. A distance attenuation rate of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance is assumed. The user can change the injury threshold (either 183 dB or 187 dB $SEL_{cumulative}$) in the lower green cell. The table starts with very low strikes-per-day values so that the user can see how the results change as the number of strikes per day increases. When the injury threshold is predicted to be exceeded, the cell is automatically highlighted in red. The user can also change the assumed amount of attenuation provided by an attenuation system such as a bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. The attenuation can be increased to 10 dB for pile driving on land. See table footnotes for guidance.

Tables VI-1 through VI-6 provide results for the following conditions.

Table VI-1: 187 dB threshold with no attenuation.

Table VI-2: 187 dB threshold with 5 dB attenuation from an attenuation system.

Table VI-3: 187 dB threshold with 10 dB reduction for pile driving on land.

Table VI-4. 183 dB threshold with no attenuation.

Table VI-5. 183 dB threshold with 5 dB attenuation from an attenuation system.

Table VI-6. 183 dB threshold with 10 dB reduction for pile driving on land.

Contact Melinda Molnar (Melinda.Molnar@dot.ca.gov) or Bruce Rymer (Bruce.Rymer@dot.ca.gov) for a copy of the spreadsheet. This screening tool should be used for general guidance only. The use of this tool is at the user's own risk and does not relieve the user of the responsibility to analyze pile driving impacts using the full methods specified in the guidance manual. Engineers and biologists should always work closely with their resource agency specialist when completing permitting requirements.

This page intentionally left blank

Table VI-1. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (187 dB criterion, no attenuation system)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
					3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
	Peak	SEL	RMS		SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	182	157	167	29	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	10	190	16	192	22	194	29	<10
18 inch concrete	185	160	170	46	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	<10	190	16	193	25	195	34	197	46	<10
24 inch concrete	192	174	181	398	179	<10	184	<10	189	14	194	29	199	64	204	136	207	215	209	295	211	398	<10
12 inch steel H	200	166	178	117	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	<10	191	19	196	40	199	63	201	86	203	117	<10
14 inch steel H	208	177	187	631	182	<10	187	10	192	22	197	46	202	101	207	215	210	341	212	468	214	631	14
24 inch AZ steel sheet	205	180	190	1000	185	<10	190	16	195	34	200	74	205	160	210	341	213	541	215	741	217	1000	<10
12 inch steel pipe	192	167	177	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	10	192	22	197	46	200	74	202	101	204	136	<10
14 inch steel pipe	200	175	185	464	180	<10	185	<10	190	16	195	34	200	74	205	158	208	251	210	344	212	464	<10
20 inch steel pipe	208	176	187	541	181	<10	186	<10	191	19	196	40	201	86	206	185	209	293	211	401	213	541	14
30 inch steel pipe	210	177	190	631	182	<10	187	10	192	22	197	46	202	101	207	215	210	341	212	468	214	631	18
36 inch steel pipe	210	183	193	1585	188	11	193	25	198	55	203	117	208	253	213	541	216	858	218	1175	220	1585	18
48 inch Steel Pipe	213	179	192	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	210	185	195	2154	190	15	195	34	200	74	205	158	210	344	215	736	218	1166	220	1597	222	2154	18
96 inch steel pipe	220	195	205	10000	200	71	205	158	210	344	215	736	220	1597	225	3415	228	5412	230	7415	232	10000	86

Notes:	Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
	Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
	"Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
	Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
	Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
	Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
	SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
	All distances are in meters

	0	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
	187	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Table VI-2. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (187 dB criterion, attenuation system with 5 dB of attenuation included)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
					3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
	Peak	SEL	RMS		SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	177	152	162	14	157	<10	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	185	<10	187	10	189	14	<10
18 inch concrete	180	155	165	22	160	<10	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	<10	188	12	190	16	192	22	<10
24 inch concrete	187	169	176	185	174	<10	179	<10	184	<10	189	14	194	30	199	63	202	100	204	137	206	185	<10
12 inch steel H	195	161	173	54	166	<10	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	<10	191	18	194	29	196	40	198	54	<10
14 inch steel H	203	172	182	293	177	<10	182	<10	187	10	192	22	197	47	202	100	205	158	207	217	209	293	<10
24 inch AZ steel sheet	200	175	185	464	180	<10	185	<10	190	16	195	34	200	74	205	158	208	251	210	344	212	464	<10
12 inch steel pipe	187	162	172	63	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	10	192	22	195	34	197	47	199	63	<10
14 inch steel pipe	195	170	180	215	175	<10	180	<10	185	<10	190	16	195	34	200	74	203	117	205	160	207	215	<10
20 inch steel pipe	203	171	182	251	176	<10	181	<10	186	<10	191	18	196	40	201	86	204	136	206	186	208	251	<10
30 inch steel pipe	205	172	185	293	177	<10	182	<10	187	10	192	22	197	47	202	100	205	158	207	217	209	293	<10
36 inch steel pipe	205	178	188	736	183	<10	188	12	193	25	198	54	203	118	208	251	211	398	213	545	215	736	<10
48 inch Steel Pipe	208	174	187	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	205	185	190	2154	190	15	195	34	200	74	205	158	210	344	215	736	218	1166	220	1597	222	2154	<10
96 inch steel pipe	215	190	200	4642	195	33	200	74	205	160	210	341	215	741	220	1585	223	2512	225	3442	227	4642	40

Notes:

- Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
- Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
- "Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
- Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
- All distances are in meters

5	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
187	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Table VI-3. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (187 dB criterion, 10 dB of attenuation assumed for land-based piles)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
					3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
	Peak	SEL	RMS		SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	172	147	157	6	152	<10	157	<10	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	180	<10	182	<10	184	<10	<10
18 inch concrete	175	150	160	10	155	<10	160	<10	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	183	<10	185	10	187	10	<10
24 inch concrete	182	164	171	86	169	<10	174	<10	179	<10	184	12	189	25	194	54	197	86	199	86	201	86	<10
12 inch steel H	190	156	168	25	161	<10	166	<10	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	189	25	191	25	193	25	<10
14 inch steel H	198	167	177	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	200	136	202	136	204	136	<10
24 inch AZ steel sheet	195	170	180	215	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	29	195	64	200	136	203	215	205	215	207	215	<10
12 inch steel pipe	182	157	167	29	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	190	29	192	29	194	29	<10
14 inch steel pipe	190	165	175	100	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	30	195	63	198	100	200	100	202	100	<10
20 inch steel pipe	198	166	177	117	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	191	34	196	74	199	117	201	117	203	117	<10
30 inch steel pipe	200	167	180	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	200	136	202	136	204	136	<10
36 inch steel pipe	200	173	183	341	178	<10	183	10	188	22	193	46	198	101	203	215	206	341	208	341	210	341	<10
48 inch Steel Pipe	203	169	182	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	200	185	185	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	<10
96 inch steel pipe	210	185	195	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	18

Notes:

- Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
- Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
- "Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
- Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
- All distances are in meters

10	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
183	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Table VI-4. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (183 dB criterion, no attenuation system)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
	Peak	SEL	RMS		3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
					SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	182	157	167	29	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	190	29	192	29	194	29	<10
18 inch concrete	185	160	170	46	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	29	193	46	195	46	197	46	<10
24 inch concrete	192	174	181	398	179	<10	184	12	189	25	194	54	199	118	204	251	207	398	209	398	211	398	<10
12 inch steel H	200	166	178	117	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	191	34	196	74	199	117	201	117	203	117	<10
14 inch steel H	208	177	187	631	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	202	186	207	398	210	631	212	631	214	631	14
24 inch AZ steel sheet	205	180	190	1000	185	13	190	29	195	64	200	136	205	295	210	631	213	1000	215	1000	217	1000	<10
12 inch steel pipe	192	167	177	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	200	136	202	136	204	136	<10
14 inch steel pipe	200	175	185	464	180	<10	185	14	190	30	195	63	200	137	205	293	208	464	210	464	212	464	<10
20 inch steel pipe	208	176	187	541	181	<10	186	16	191	34	196	74	201	160	206	341	209	541	211	541	213	541	14
30 inch steel pipe	210	177	190	631	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	202	186	207	398	210	631	212	631	214	631	18
36 inch steel pipe	210	183	193	1585	188	21	193	46	198	101	203	215	208	468	213	1000	216	1585	218	1585	220	1585	18
48 inch Steel Pipe	213	179	192	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	210	185	195	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	18
96 inch steel pipe	220	195	205	10000	200	131	205	293	210	636	215	1359	220	2952	225	6310	228	10000	230	10000	232	10000	86

Notes:	Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
	Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
	"Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
	Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
	Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
	Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
	SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
	All distances are in meters

	0	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
	183	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Table VI-5. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (183 dB criterion, attenuation system with 5 dB of attenuation included)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
					3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
	Peak	SEL	RMS		SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	177	152	162	14	157	<10	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	185	14	187	14	189	14	<10
18 inch concrete	180	155	165	22	160	<10	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	188	22	190	22	192	22	<10
24 inch concrete	187	169	176	185	174	<10	179	<10	184	12	189	25	194	55	199	117	202	185	204	185	206	185	<10
12 inch steel H	195	161	173	54	166	<10	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	191	34	194	54	196	54	198	54	<10
14 inch steel H	203	172	182	293	177	<10	182	<10	187	19	192	40	197	86	202	185	205	293	207	293	209	293	<10
24 inch AZ steel sheet	200	175	185	464	180	<10	185	14	190	30	195	63	200	137	205	293	208	464	210	464	212	464	<10
12 inch steel pipe	187	162	172	63	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	19	192	40	195	63	197	63	199	63	<10
14 inch steel pipe	195	170	180	215	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	29	195	64	200	136	203	215	205	215	207	215	<10
20 inch steel pipe	203	171	182	251	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	191	34	196	74	201	158	204	251	206	251	208	251	<10
30 inch steel pipe	205	172	185	293	177	<10	182	<10	187	19	192	40	197	86	202	185	205	293	207	293	209	293	<10
36 inch steel pipe	205	178	188	736	183	<10	188	22	193	47	198	100	203	217	208	464	211	736	213	736	215	736	<10
48 inch Steel Pipe	208	174	187	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	205	185	190	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	<10
96 inch steel pipe	215	190	200	4642	195	61	200	136	205	295	210	631	215	1370	220	2929	223	4641	225	4642	227	4642	40

Notes:

- Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
- Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
- "Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
- Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
- All distances are in meters

5	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
183	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Table VI-6. Caltrans Pile Driving Screening Tool (183 dB criterion, 10 dB of attenuation assumed for land-based piles)

Pile	Single Strike at 10 m			Distance to Effective Quiet	Number of Strikes Per Day																		Peak Effect Distance
					3		10		32		100		320		1,000		1,995		3,200		5,012		
	Peak	SEL	RMS		SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	SEL_{cumul}	Eff Dist	
12 inch wood	172	147	157	6	152	<10	157	<10	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	180	<10	182	<10	184	<10	<10
18 inch concrete	175	150	160	10	155	<10	160	<10	165	<10	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	183	<10	185	10	187	10	<10
24 inch concrete	182	164	171	86	169	<10	174	<10	179	<10	184	12	189	25	194	54	197	86	199	86	201	86	<10
12 inch steel H	190	156	168	25	161	<10	166	<10	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	189	25	191	25	193	25	<10
14 inch steel H	198	167	177	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	200	136	202	136	204	136	<10
24 inch AZ steel sheet	195	170	180	215	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	29	195	64	200	136	203	215	205	215	207	215	<10
12 inch steel pipe	182	157	167	29	162	<10	167	<10	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	190	29	192	29	194	29	<10
14 inch steel pipe	190	165	175	100	170	<10	175	<10	180	<10	185	14	190	30	195	63	198	100	200	100	202	100	<10
20 inch steel pipe	198	166	177	117	171	<10	176	<10	181	<10	186	16	191	34	196	74	199	117	201	117	203	117	<10
30 inch steel pipe	200	167	180	136	172	<10	177	<10	182	<10	187	18	192	40	197	86	200	136	202	136	204	136	<10
36 inch steel pipe	200	173	183	341	178	<10	183	10	188	22	193	46	198	101	203	215	206	341	208	341	210	341	<10
48 inch Steel Pipe	203	169	182	2929	192	21	197	46	202	101	207	215	212	468	217	1000	220	1585	222	2172	224	2929	25
60 inch steel pipe	200	185	185	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	<10
96 inch steel pipe	210	185	195	2154	190	28	195	63	200	137	205	293	210	636	215	1359	218	2154	220	2154	222	2154	18

Notes:

- Assumes attenuation of 4.5 dB per doubling of distance.
- Single strike values are from Appendix I. Where the data are incomplete, the incomplete missing data is calculated per NMFS guidance. Peak = SEL + 25. RMS = SEL + 10.
- "Effect distance" is the distance within which injury criterion is predicted to be exceeded.
- Underwater sound does not accumulative when the sound level drops below "effective quite" which is 150 dB.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 5,012 strikes per day does not increase the 187 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- Increasing the number of strikes beyond 1,995 strikes per day does not increase the 183 dB effect distance beyond the distance to effective quiet.
- SEL_{cumul} is at 10 meters from pile.
- All distances are in meters

10	Enter dB attenuation assumed from attenuation system or driving on land. Use 5 dB for bubble curtain or dewatered cofferdam. Use 10 dB for driving on land.
183	Enter cumumulative SEL threshold. 187 dB for fish greater than 2 g. 183 dB for fish 2g or less.

Appendix V U.S. Patent for Underwater Energy Dampening Device

US007126875B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Baskerville et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 7,126,875 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: Oct. 24, 2006**

(54) **UNDERWATER ENERGY DAMPENING DEVICE**

(75) Inventors: **Andrew J. Baskerville**, Concord, CA (US); **David D. Ambuehl**, Brentwood, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **State of California, Department of Transportation**, Sacramento, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/690,419**

(22) Filed: **Oct. 20, 2003**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2005/0083783 A1 Apr. 21, 2005

(51) **Int. Cl.**
G01V 1/387 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **367/24**

(58) **Field of Classification Search** 367/24; 181/110, 112

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

1,348,828	A *	8/1920	Fessenden	....	181/175
3,177,466	A	4/1965	Arnoldi		
3,212,602	A	10/1965	Jones et al.		
3,713,540	A	1/1973	Davidson et al.		
3,896,898	A	7/1975	Kirby et al.		
4,320,989	A	3/1982	Mamo		
4,425,240	A	1/1984	Johnson		
4,625,302	A	11/1986	Clark		
4,903,793	A	2/1990	Firey		
5,253,603	A	10/1993	Mascolo		
5,513,149	A	4/1996	Salmi et al.		
5,959,938	A	9/1999	Behrens		
5,999,491	A	12/1999	Harvey et al.		
6,222,794	B1	4/2001	Woodall et al.		
6,567,341	B1	5/2003	Dreyer et al.		
6,571,906	B1	6/2003	Jones		
6,606,278	B1 *	8/2003	Lee et al.	....	367/24
2002/0080681	A1	6/2002	Dreyer et al.		
2003/0034197	A1	2/2003	Jones		

* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Ian J. Lobo
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Heisler & Associates

(57) **ABSTRACT**

An underwater energy dampening device is disclosed. This device includes a plurality of vertically-spaced bubble producing units. With bubbles produced at various depths, the present invention can effectively attenuate sound and other energy from underwater construction projects in high current or deep water areas.

16 Claims, 9 Drawing Sheets

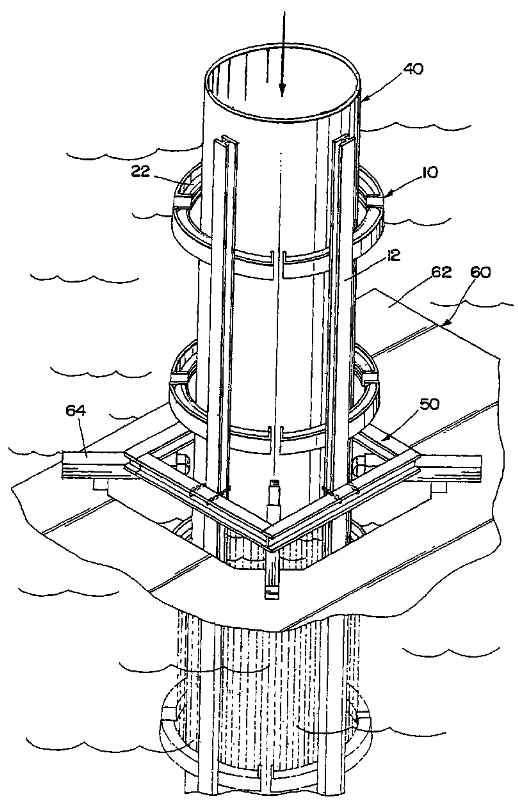
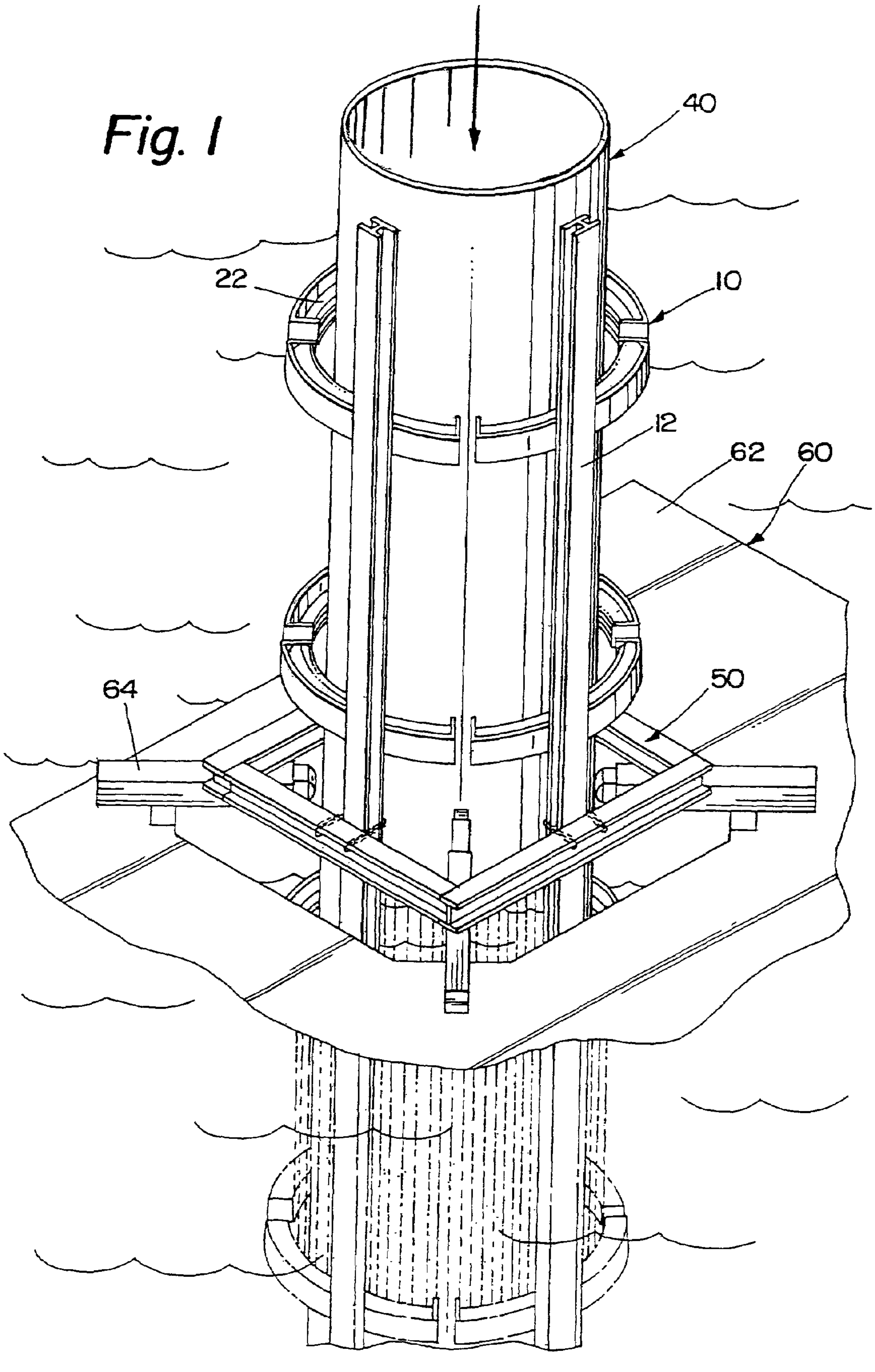


Fig. 1



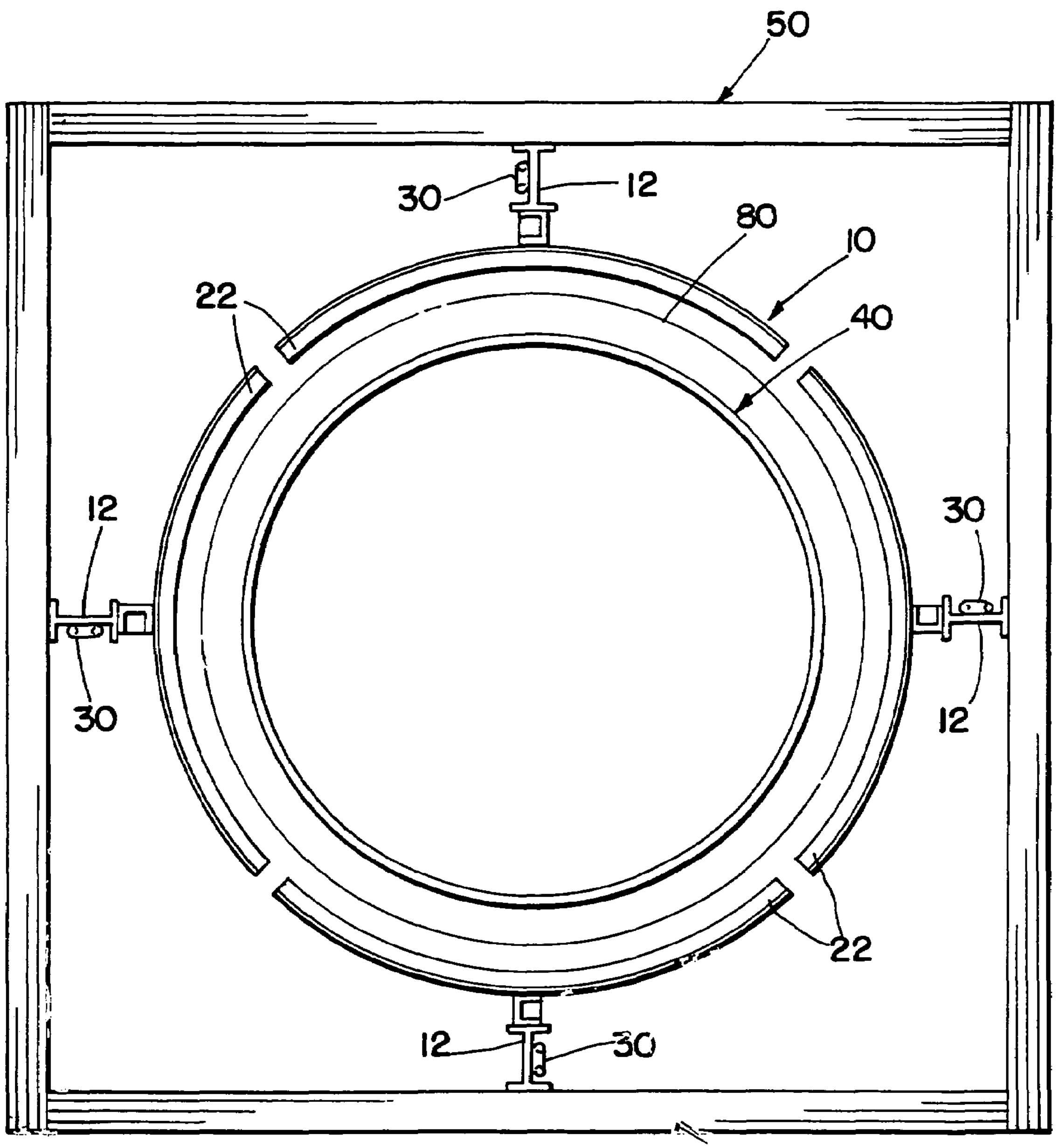


Fig. 2

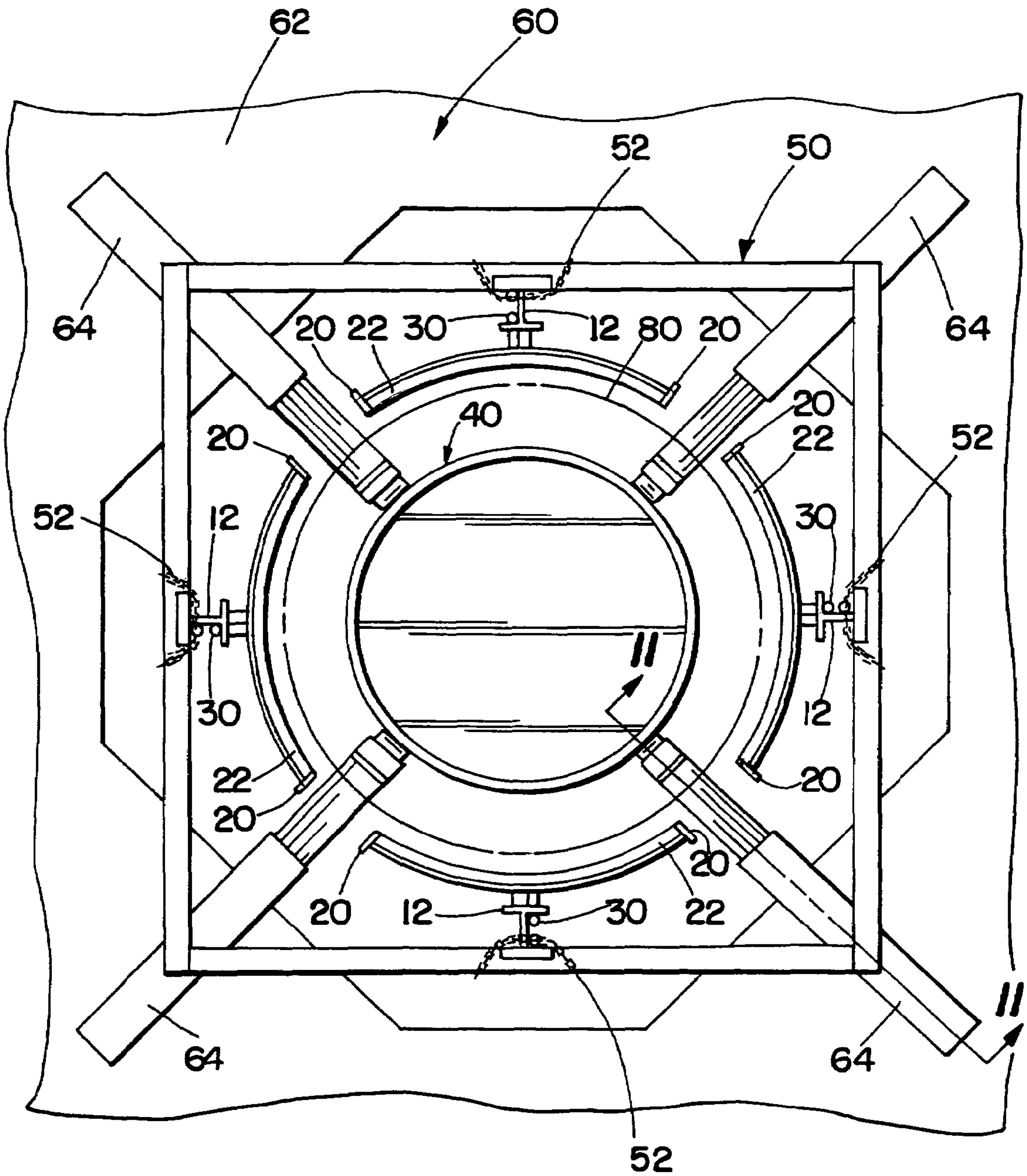

62
60
52
50
64
20 22 30
12 80 20
40
20
22
52
30
12
II
22
20
20
20
12
30
22
II
52

Fig. 3

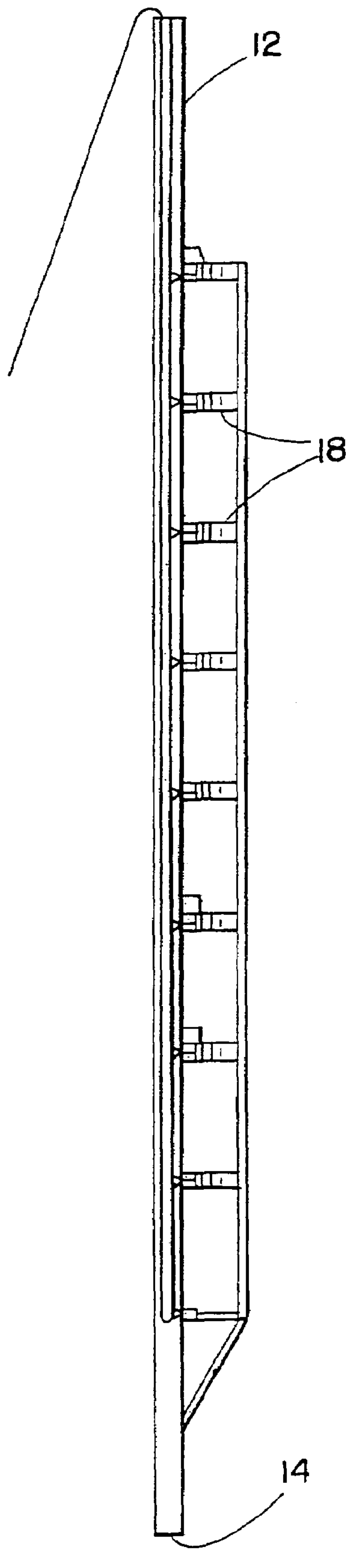


Fig. 4

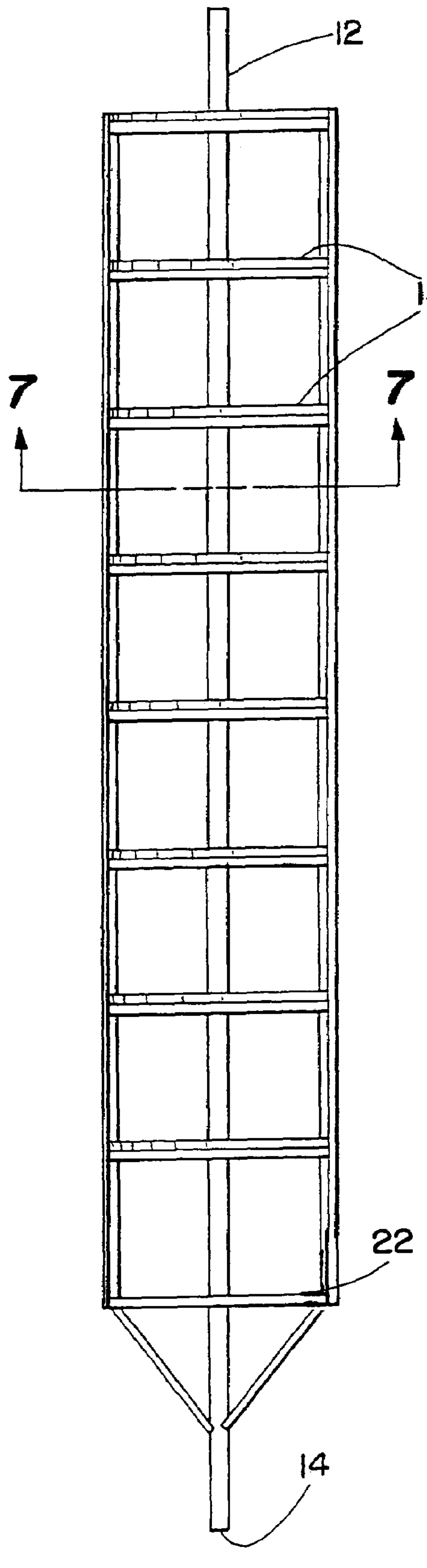


Fig. 5

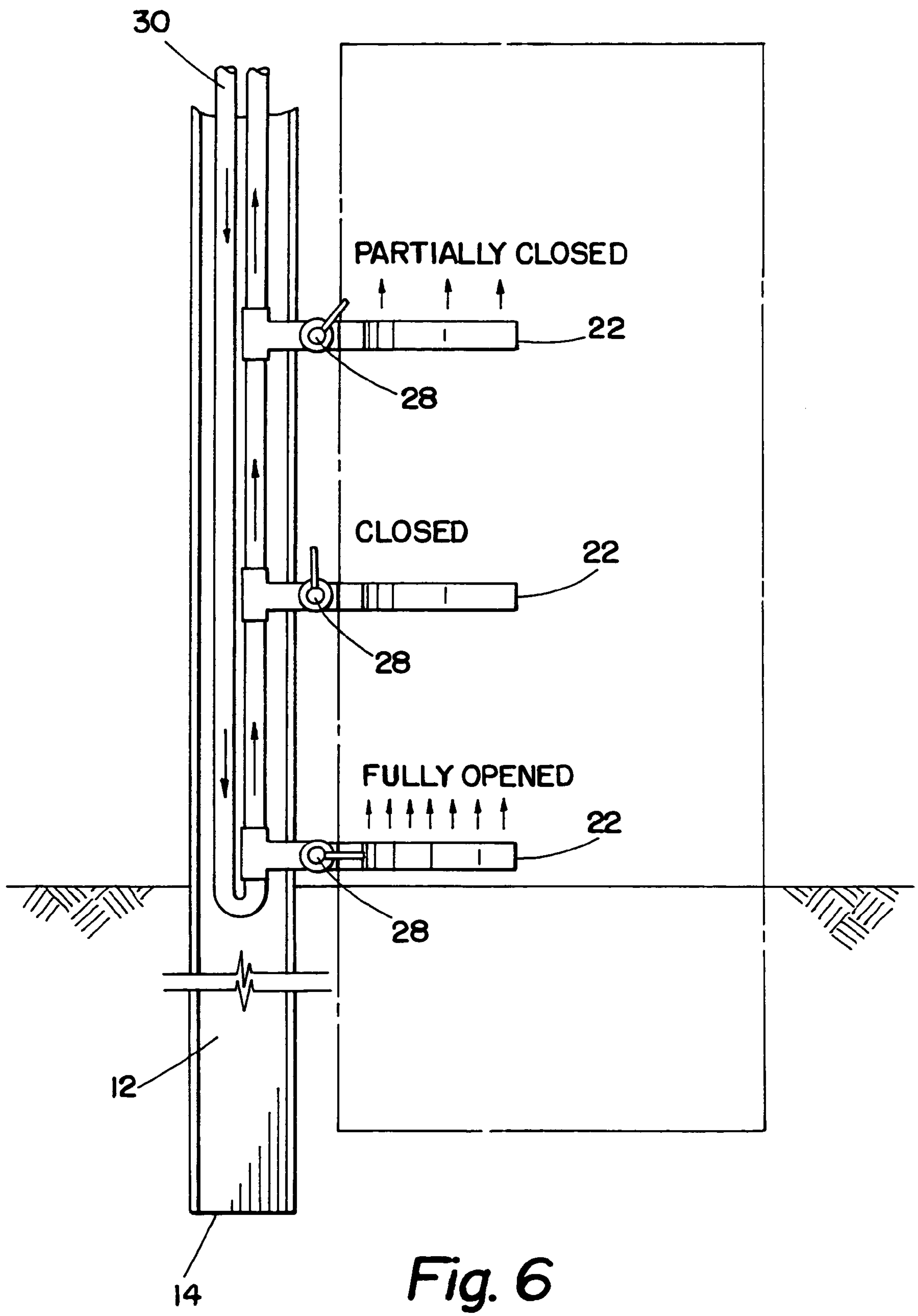

30
PARTIALLY CLOSED
22
28
CLOSED
22
28
FULLY OPENED
22
28
12
14

Fig. 6

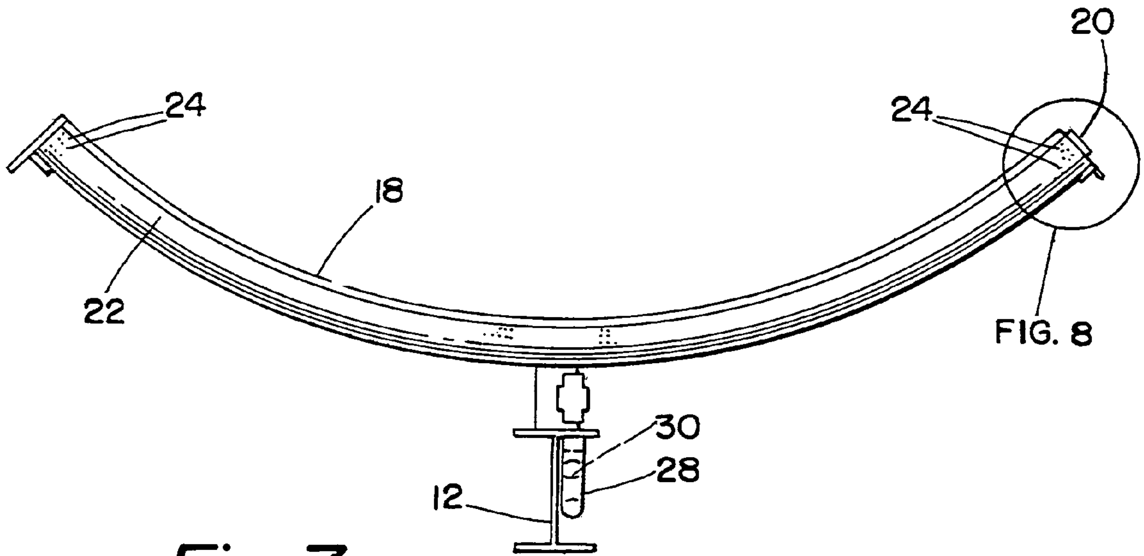


Fig. 7

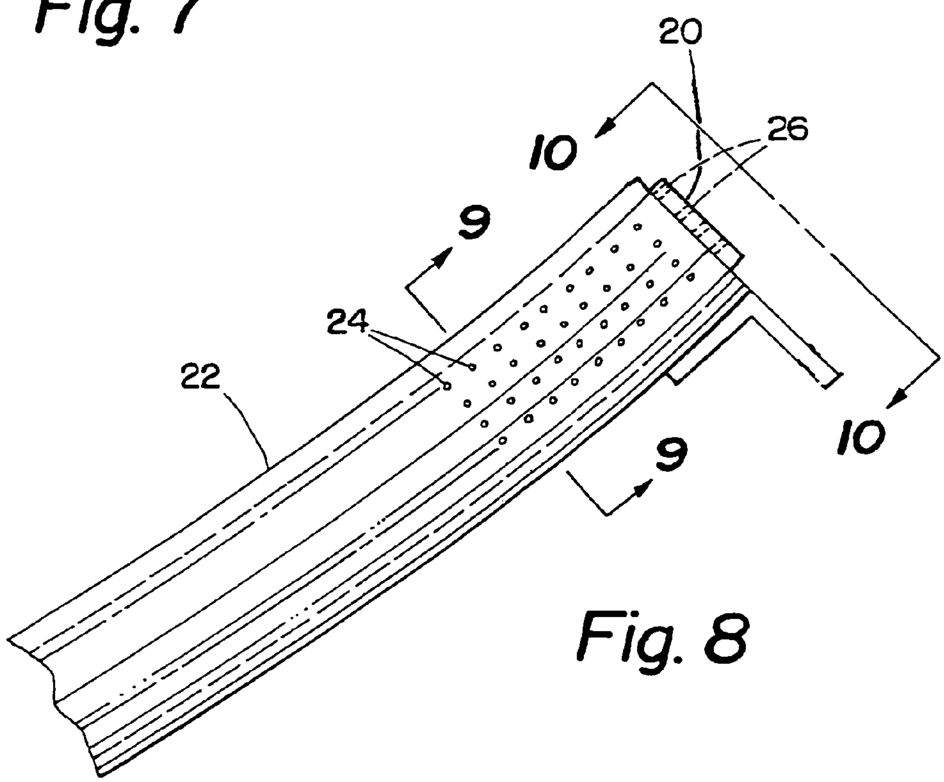


Fig. 8

Fig. 9

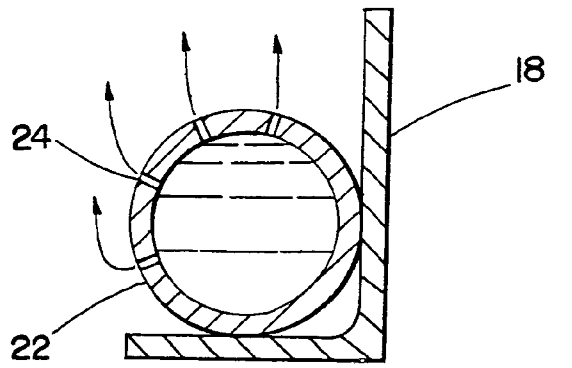


Fig. 10

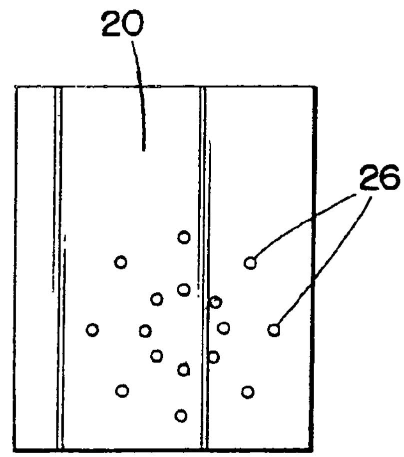
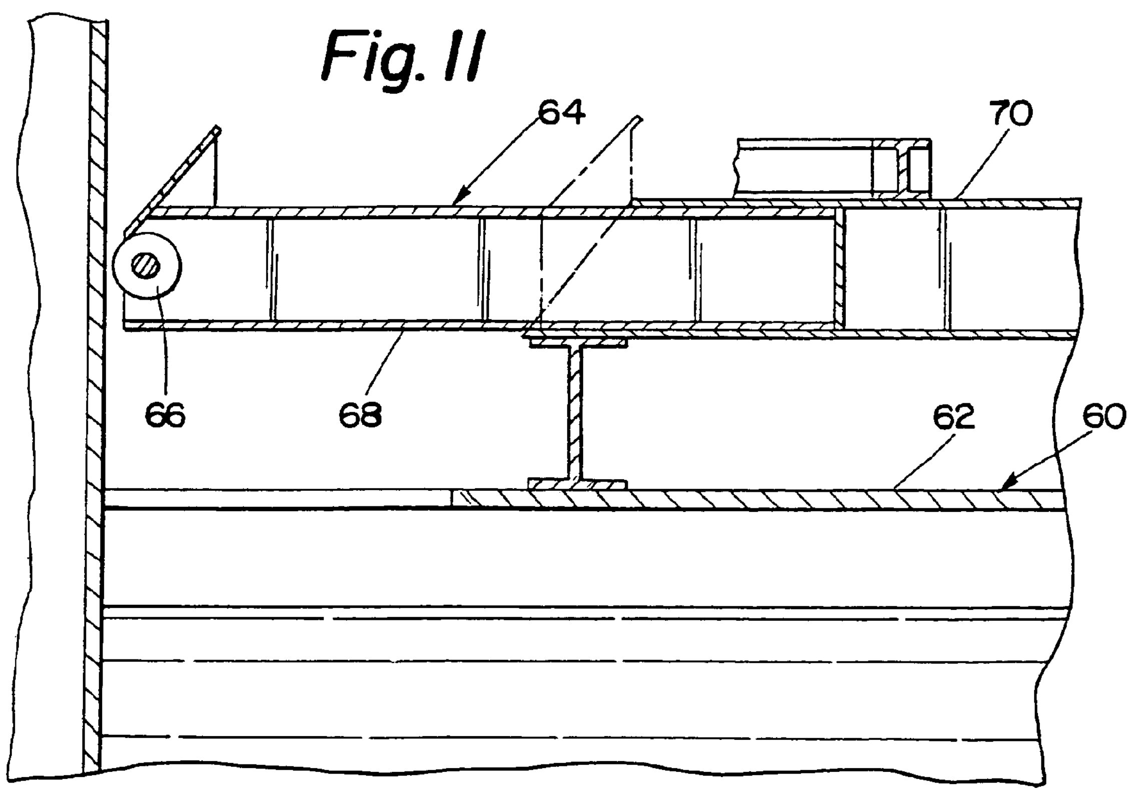


Fig. 11



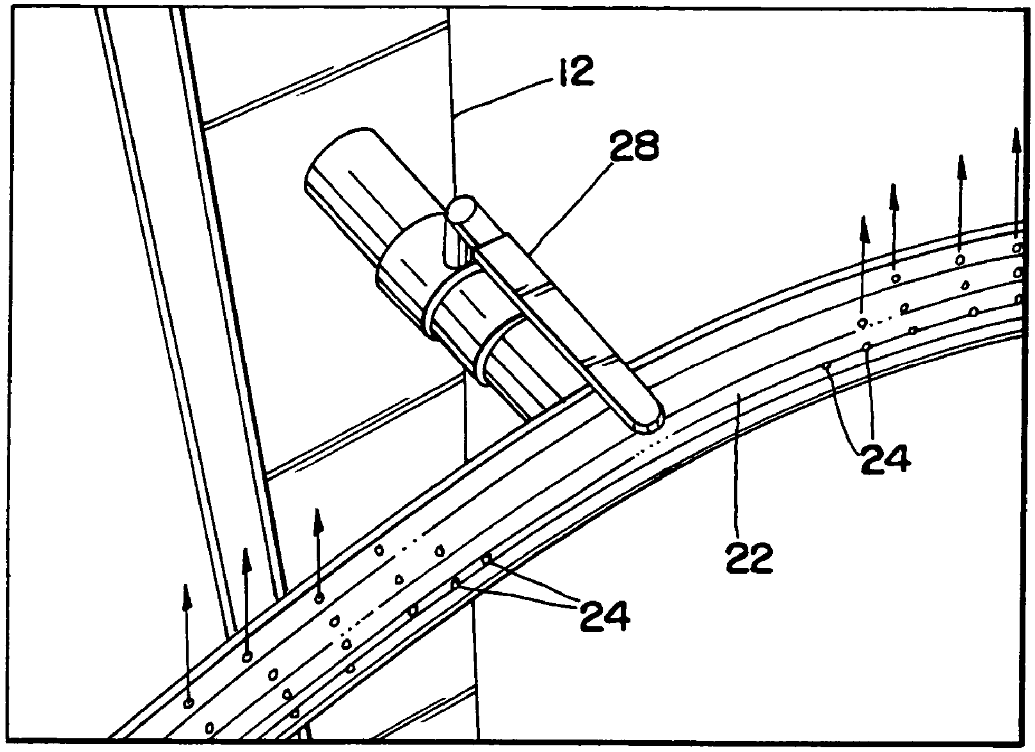


Fig. 12

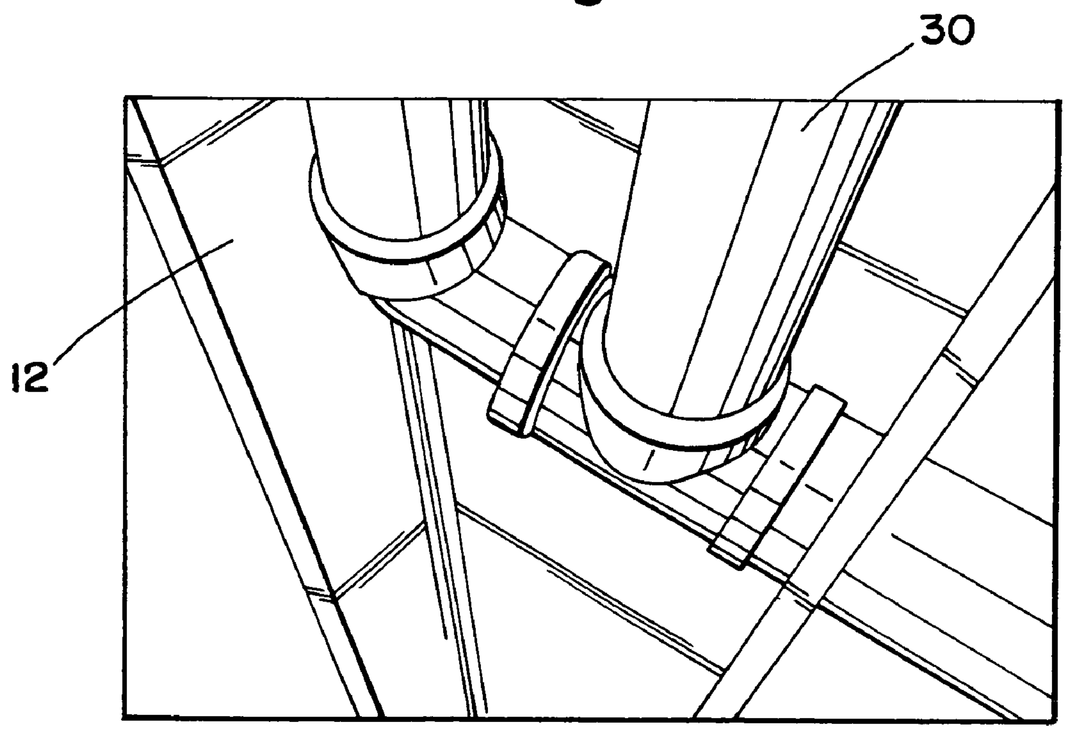


Fig. 13

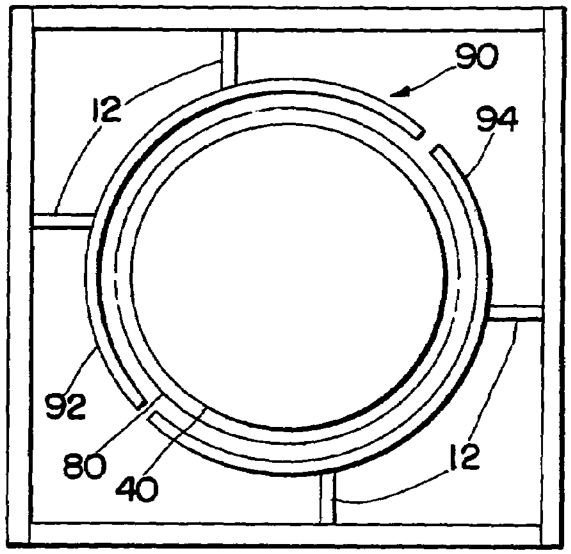


Fig. 14

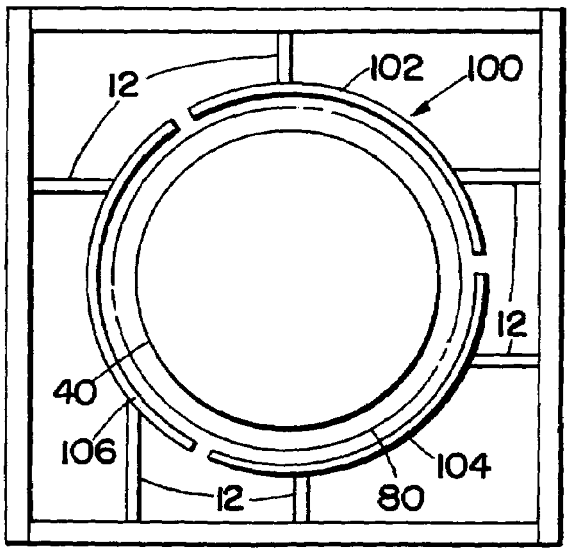


Fig. 15

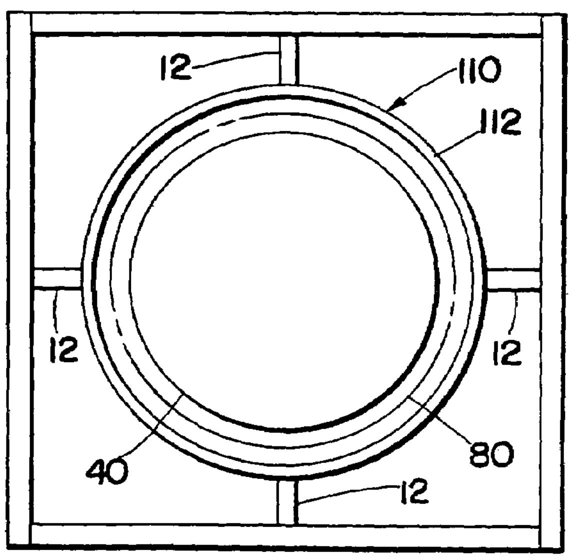


Fig. 16

UNDERWATER ENERGY DAMPENING DEVICE

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to devices and methods for attenuating energy that is transmitted underwater.

2. General Background

Many underwater engineering projects generate significant amounts of sound and other energy. This energy can have adverse consequences on marine ecology. For instance, the energy generated by a pile driving hammer can be great enough to kill fish that swim nearby. Especially when such noisy underwater projects are undertaken in environmentally sensitive areas, these ecological consequences are unacceptable.

A number of techniques have been developed to mitigate the adverse biological consequences of underwater construction. The first technique is to stage the project so that noisy phases occur only at times when the biological consequences are minimal. For instance, if the project is in a waterway traveled by anadromous or catadromous fish, noisy phases can be postponed when the fish are migrating. However, this technique is far from ideal, both because it is wasteful to allow labor and equipment to sit idle waiting for fish to migrate, and because most waterways have a residual fish population at all times.

The second technique is to erect a cofferdam around the project. The cofferdam can be constructed using traditional methods such as sheet piling, or by less traditional methods. For instance, an oversized casing tube can be fitted over a pile casing that is being driven, and then the water can be evacuated from the area between the casings, either partially by injecting air bubbles or fully by dewatering the annular space. The air within the casing or other cofferdam does attenuate the energy from the construction project, but this technique is quite expensive. Indeed, for some underwater projects, it is cost prohibitive to establish a persistent envelope of air around the work area.

A third technique is to enshroud the underwater construction area with a stream of bubbles. Like a cofferdam, this technique uses air to attenuate the energy, but unlike a cofferdam very little structure is needed. Indeed, this technique only requires bubble-producing units to be placed around and at the bottom of the construction project. The bubbles then travel from the bubble-producing units to the surface, blanketing the project in sound-dampening air.

While elegant, this technique is ineffective in areas of deep water or strong currents. In these circumstances, the bubbles disperse too far laterally while traveling upward, and cannot completely envelop the project. To contain the bubbles as they ascend, a skirt or blanket of flexible material can be placed around the work area. However, this technique can also be expensive, and is not particularly robust, since the flexible material can be torn or damaged. Also, the flexible material acts like a sail, and therefore this system is not appropriate for areas of high current. A substantial support frame would also be required to implement this system.

Thus, there is a need for a system that can robustly and inexpensively create a curtain of bubbles around underwater construction sites, even in areas of deep water or strong current.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is an underwater energy dampening device that can be used to envelop an underwater construction area in a curtain of bubbles. It comprises a plurality of vertically spaced bubble producing units.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. **1** is an environmental perspective view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention, as deployed for use in a pile driving operation.

FIG. **2** is a top view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention, as deployed for use in a pile driving operation.

FIG. **3** is an environmental top view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention, as deployed for use in a pile driving operation.

FIG. **4** is a side view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. **5** is a front view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. **6** is is a side view of an underwater energy dampening device according to an embodiment of the present invention, showing the air flow patterns and valve positions within the device.

FIG. **7** is a sectional view of a bubble producing tube and frame according to an embodiment of the patent invention, taken along line **7**—**7** of FIG. **5**.

FIG. **8** is a close-up of the circled area on FIG. **7**.

FIG. **9** is a cross-sectional view of a bubble producing tube and frame according to an embodiment of the patent invention, taken along line **9**—**9** of FIG. **8**.

FIG. **10** is a close-up end view of a bubble producing tube according to an embodiment of the patent invention, taken along line **10**—**10** of FIG. **8**.

FIG. **11** is a cross-sectional view taken along line **11**—**11** of FIG. **3**.

FIG. **12** is a top perspective close-up view of a valve that regulates the supply of compressed air to the bubble producing unit, according to an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. **13** is a top perspective close-up view of an air supply line at the bottom of a device according to an embodiment of the present invention, as the line branches off to provide air to the bottom bubble-producing tube.

FIG. **14** is a top view of an alternative bubble producing unit configuration according to an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. **15** is a top view of another alternative bubble producing unit configuration according to an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. **16** is a top view of another alternative bubble producing unit configuration according to an embodiment of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

The present invention is an underwater energy dampening device **10** comprising a series of vertically spaced bubble producing units. In one embodiment, the invention comprises a (i) spine **12**, (ii) a series of vertically spaced frames **18** attached to the spine **12**, (iii) a series of tubes **22** on the frames **18**, and (iv) air supply tubing and hardware.

As shown best in FIGS. **1**, **4**, and **5**, the spine **12** comprises a beam, typically made of steel. Other potential materials include rust resistant materials such as stainless steel. The spine **12** should have a length adequate for the water depth in the area of the underwater project. When installed, its bottom end **14** may be planted into the bed of the waterway, so that the bottom frame **18** is as close to the mudline as practical. See FIG. **6**.

A series of vertically-spaced frames **18** are attached to the spine **12**. See FIGS. **1**, **4**, **5**, and **6**. These frames **18** may be semi-circular, and their purpose is to provide support for the bubble-producing tubes **22**.

The bubble-producing tubes **22** sit within the frames **18**. See FIGS. **1** and **9**. These tubes will typically be made of a rust-resistant material like high density polyethylene (HDPE) or stainless steel. The tubes **22** have end plates **20** to seal the ends of the tubes.

The bubble-producing tubes **22** have a plurality of openings **24** on their top sides for release of bubbles. See FIGS. **8**, **9**, and **12**. The tubes also may have a plurality of openings **26** on their end plates **20** for lateral dispersal of bubbles. See FIG. **10**. These end openings **26** are useful when there is a gap between one device and the next, as in the embodiments shown in FIGS. **1**, **2**, **3**, **14**, and **15**. By releasing bubbles at the end of each tube through the end plate **20**, the curtain of bubbles will be continuous, notwithstanding a gap between the tubes **22**.

The bubble-producing tubes **22** and frames **18** are just one example of a bubble producing unit. For purposes of this patent, a bubble producing unit is any device or system that delivers bubbles. Such a unit a can be a tube, ring, hose, bubbler, chemical gas generation system, or any other device that can create bubbles.

The bubble-producing tubes **22** or other bubble producing units are vertically spaced, so that bubbles are being generated at various depths. See FIGS. **1**, **4**–**6**. Thus, in one embodiment, the bubble-producing tubes **22** are spaced every 3 to 5 meters along the spine **12**. See FIGS. **1**, **4**, and **5**. This distance may vary depending on the conditions within which the invention is operating.

Air supply tubing and hardware is used to provide and regulate airflow to the bubble-producing tubes **22**. An air supply line **30** supplies air to each of the tubes **22**. See FIG. **2**, **3**, and **13**. Because greater air pressure is needed at the bottom, the air supply line **30** first travels all the way down the spine **12** to the bottom of the device, and then starts distributing air to each bubble-producing unit. See FIGS. **6** and **13**. This air can be generated by a compressor, pressurized gas, or by other gas generation means such as a chemical reaction. Other gases besides air can be used. The pressure to be generated depends on the depth to which the air is delivered.

Each tube **22** has a valve **28** to control the flow of air. See FIGS. **2**, **3**, **6**, and **12**. As shown in FIG. **6**, the position of the valves can be adjusted to regulate the air flow. Depending on the water current and other conditions within which the device is operated, only certain tubes **22** may be operated at any time. For instance, in certain circumstances, only every other tube needs to be operational at any given time. Also, because greater pressure is needed at lower depths, the position of the valves may vary incrementally from bottom to top. Pressure gauges (not shown) may be installed for each valve, so that operators can more precisely determine the proper position for each valve.

Although manual valves are shown, the valves may also be pneumatically or hydraulically controlled. Additionally, a more automated version of the present invention could be created, in which acoustic sensors provide data to a processing unit, which in turn control air flow or pressure so that a sufficient but not superfluous quantity of bubbles is produced.

With the basic structure of the invention now in mind, a particular operational embodiment can be described. In this embodiment, the invention is used in a pile driving operation.

In this operation, the pile casing **40** is driven deep into the bed of the waterway. A pile driving hammer (not shown) is used, and this hammer has a footprint **80** extending beyond the perimeter of the casing. Thus, the topmost portion of the energy dampening device cannot be inside the hammer's footprint **80**. See FIGS. **1**, **2**, **3**, **14**, **15**, **16**. However, the bottom portion of the device can be very close to the casing, and the device can be angled slightly outward so that it is farther away from the casing at the top.

Typically, a template or deck structure **60** with a deck floor **62** is erected to support the pile driving operations. See FIGS. **1**, **2**, and **3**. The energy dampening device must be installed within the framework provided by the deck structure **60**. This framework may include telescoping struts **64** to secure the casing, and these struts may comprise a wheel **66** on the end of an inner beam **68**, which in turn sits inside of an outer beam **70**. See FIGS. **1**, **3**, and **11**.

To install an energy dampening device **10** within such a deck structure **60**, a dampening device frame **50** is placed atop the structure **60**, over the opening into which the pile casing **40** is being driven. See FIGS. **1**, **2**, **3**, **14**, **15**, and **16**. The device **10** is then lifted by a crane and then stabbed between the pile casing **40** and the frame **50** into the bed of the waterway. Depending on conditions, the weight of the device **10** may be sufficient to firmly implant the device into the mud. The device should be implanted so that the lowermost bubble producing unit is just above the mudline. To secure or cinch the device **10** to the frame **50**, coupling means **52** such as a chain with a ratcheting device can be used. See FIGS. **1** and **3**.

To completely surround the pile casing, it may be necessary to use more than one energy dampening device **10**. Thus, in the embodiment depicted in FIGS. **1**–**13**, four devices **10** are used to surround the pile casing **40**. However, fewer or more devices **10** may be appropriate, depending on the particular conditions, including the geometry of the deck structure **60**. Thus, FIG. **14** shows an alternative embodiment **90** of the device in which two bubble-producing units **92**, **94** surround the pile casing **40**, FIG. **15** shows an embodiment **100** three bubble-producing units **102**, **104**, and **106** surrounding a pile casing **40**, and FIG. **16** shows a third embodiment **110** with unitary unit **112** surrounding the pile casing **40**.

Preferably, the device or devices are installed as close to the energy source as possible. For instance, for pile driving operations, it is preferable to surrounding each pile casing with bubbles, rather than the entire pile group. However, except where limited by express claim language, the present patent covers any version of the present invention, including versions in which the device is placed around the periphery of a large work area.

The present invention offers a number of advantages over the prior art. First, the present invention can be inexpensively and effectively used in an area of high current and great depth. Before the present invention, the only effective high current/high depth technique was the use of a cofferdam such as an oversized casing, but this technique is quite expensive and difficult to implement at great depths. Second, the present invention can be modular, with the number, shape, and configuration of the energy dampening devices adjusted based on the particular requirements of the project and the available equipment. Third, the present invention is easier to use than the alternatives, since the amount of needed structure is minimal—all that is needed is an array of vertically spaced bubble-producing units.

One skilled in the art will appreciate that the present invention can be practiced by other than the preferred embodiments, which are presented for purposes of illustration and not of limitation.

We claim:

1. An underwater energy dampening device, comprising:
- a first bubble producing unit and a second bubble producing unit;
- a spine for supporting said first bubble producing unit and said second bubble producing unit;
- wherein said first bubble producing unit comprises:
  - a tube support frame attached to said spine; and
  - a tube with holes, said tube being placed within said frame;
- said second bubble producing unit being vertically spaced from said first bubble producing unit; and
- one or more means for supplying gas to said first bubble producing unit and to said second bubble producing unit.

2. The device according to claim **1**, wherein said means for supplying gas to said first bubble producing unit and said second bubble producing unit comprises:
- at least one compressor; and
- tubing attached to said compressor and to said first bubble producing unit and to said second bubble producing unit.

3. The device according to claim **2**, additionally comprising a frame for removable attachment to the top of said spine.

4. The device according to claim **3**, wherein said first bubble producing unit is vertically spaced from between three and five meters from said second bubble producing unit.

5. The device according to claim **4**, additionally comprising a third bubble producing unit, said third bubble producing unit being vertically spaced from said first bubble producing unit and from said second bubble producing unit.

6. The device according to claim **5**, additionally comprising a fourth bubble producing unit, said fourth bubble producing unit being vertically spaced from said first bubble producing unit, from said second bubble producing unit, and from said third bubble producing unit.

7. A method for dampening energy that is generated from an underwater energy source, comprising:
- providing at least two devices according to claim **1**;
- surrounding said energy source with said devices; and
- producing bubbles through said devices.

8. The method according to claim **7**, wherein at least three devices according to claim **1** are provided and used to create bubbles.

9. The method according to claim **8**, wherein at least four devices according to claim **1** are provided and used to create bubbles.

10. A stationary underwater energy dampening device, comprising in combination:
- a first tube segment with holes for release of a gas;
- a second tube segment with holes for release of a gas;
- a source of gas coupled to each said tube segment;
- said first tube segment located vertically spaced below said second tube segment;
- each said tube segment adapted to be held stationary; and
- wherein said first tube segment and said second tube segment are separate from each other and are each coupled to a common elongate vertically extending spine.

11. The energy dampening device of claim **10**, wherein said first tube segment and said second tube segment are aligned such that bubbles released from holes in said first tube segment travel up to a location of said second tube segment and substantially intersecting with the position of said second tube segment, except when disturbing forces such as water currents influence bubble travel.

12. The energy dampening device of claim **10**, wherein a tube support frame is coupled to each said tube segment, said tube support frames adapted to hold adjacent tube segments to said spine.

13. The energy dampening device of claim **12**, wherein each said tube support frame is adapted to support one of said tube segments within said tube support frame.

14. The energy dampening device of claim **10**, wherein each said tube segment is arcuate extending circumferentially around a cylindrical region in which a sound source can be located with dampening of energy from the sound source by bubbles released from said holes in said tube segments.

15. An underwater energy dampening device, comprising in combination:
- a first hole for release of a gas;
- a second hole for release of a gas;
- a source of gas coupled to each said hole;
- said first hole located vertically spaced below said second hole;
- said first hole and said second hole aligned such that bubbles released from said first hole travel upward to a location of said second hole, except when forces such as water currents influence bubble travel; and
- wherein said first hole is located within a first tube segment and said second hole is located within a second tube segment, said first tube segment and said second tube segment separate from each other and each extending arcuately and circumferentially around a cylindrical region in which a sound source can be located, with dampening of energy emanating from the sound source by bubbles released from said holes in said tube segments.

16. The energy dampening device of claim **15**, wherein each said hole is coupled to a common elongate vertically extending spine.

* * * * *

This page intentionally left blank